ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

World Journal of *Gastroenterology*

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6335-6564

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Gastroenterology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of gastroenterology and hepatology

Editorial Board

2014-2017

The *World Journal of Gastroenterology* Editorial Board consists of 1376 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in gastroenterology and hepatology. They are from 68 countries, including Algeria (2), Argentina (7), Australia (31), Austria (9), Belgium (11), Brazil (20), Brunei Darussalam (1), Bulgaria (2), Cambodia (1), Canada (26), Chile (4), China (164), Croatia (2), Cuba (1), Czech (6), Denmark (2), Egypt (9), Estonia (2), Finland (6), France (20), Germany (58), Greece (31), Guatemala (1), Hungary (15), Iceland (1), India (33), Indonesia (2), Iran (10), Ireland (9), Israel (18), Italy (194), Japan (149), Jordan (1), Kuwait (1), Lebanon (7), Lithuania (1), Malaysia (1), Mexico (11), Morocco (1), Netherlands (5), New Zealand (4), Nigeria (3), Norway (6), Pakistan (6), Poland (12), Portugal (8), Puerto Rico (1), Qatar (1), Romania (10), Russia (3), Saudi Arabia (2), Singapore (7), Slovenia (2), South Africa (1), South Korea (69), Spain (51), Sri Lanka (1), Sudan (1), Sweden (12), Switzerland (5), Thailand (7), Trinidad and Tobago (1), Tunisia (2), Turkey (55), United Kingdom (49), United States (180), Venezuela (1), and Vietnam (1).

Gordon Stanley Howarth, *Roseworthy*
Seungha Kang, *Brisbane*
Alfred King Lam, *Gold Coast*
Ian C Lawrance, *PerthFremantle*
Barbara Anne Leggett, *Brisbane*
Daniel A Lemberg, *Sydney*
Rupert W Leong, *Sydney*
Finlay A Macrae, *Victoria*
Vance Matthews, *Melbourne*
David L Morris, *Sydney*
Reme Mountifield, *Bedford Park*
Hans J Netter, *Melbourne*
Nam Q Nguyen, *Adelaide*
Liang Qiao, *Westmead*
Rajvinder Singh, *Adelaide*
Ross Cyril Smith, *StLeonards*
Kevin J Spring, *Sydney*
Debbie Trinder, *Fremantle*
Daniel R van Langenberg, *Box Hill*
David Ian Watson, *Adelaide*
Desmond Yip, *Garran*
Li Zhang, *Sydney*

Austria

Felix Aigner, *Innsbruck*
Gabriela A Berlakovich, *Vienna*
Herwig R Cerwenka, *Graz*
Peter Ferenci, *Wien*
Alfred Gangl, *Vienna*
Kurt Lenz, *Linz*
Markus Peck-Radosavljevic, *Vienna*
Markus Raderer, *Vienna*
Stefan Riss, *Vienna*

Belgium

Michael George Adler, *Brussels*
Benedicte Y De Winter, *Antwerp*
Mark De Ridder, *Jette*
Olivier Detry, *Liege*
Denis Dufrane Dufrane, *Brussels*
Sven M Francque, *Edegem*
Nikos Kotzampassakis, *Liège*
Geert KMM Robaeys, *Genk*
Xavier Sagaert, *Leuven*
Peter Starkel, *Brussels*
Eddie Wisse, *Keerbergen*

Brazil

SMP Balzan, *Santa Cruz do Sul*
JLF Caboclo, *Sao jose do rio preto*
Fábio Guilherme Campos, *Sao Paulo*
Claudia RL Cardoso, *Rio de Janeiro*
Roberto J Carvalho-Filho, *Sao Paulo*
Carla Daltro, *Salvador*
José Sebastiao dos Santos, *Ribeirao Preto*
Eduardo LR Mello, *Rio de Janeiro*
Sthela Maria Murad-Regadas, *Fortaleza*
Claudia PMS Oliveira, *Sao Paulo*
Júlio C Pereira-Lima, *Porto Alegre*
Marcos V Perini, *Sao Paulo*
Vietla Satyanarayana Rao, *Fortaleza*
Raquel Rocha, *Salvador*
AC Simoes e Silva, *Belo Horizonte*
Mauricio F Silva, *Porto Alefre*
Aytan Miranda Sipahi, *Sao Paulo*
Rosa Leonôra Salerno Soares, *Niterói*
Cristiane Valle Tovo, *Porto Alegre*
Eduardo Garcia Vilela, *Belo Horizonte*

Brunei Darussalam

Vui Heng Chong, *Bandar Seri Begawan*

Bulgaria

Tanya Kirilova Kadiyska, *Sofia*
Mihaela Petrova, *Sofia*

Cambodia

Francois Rouet, *Phnom Penh*

Canada

Brian Bressler, *Vancouver*
Frank J Burczynski, *Winnipeg*
Wangxue Chen, *Ottawa*
Francesco Crea, *Vancouver*
Mirko Diksic, *Montreal*
Jane A Foster, *Hamilton*
Hugh J Freeman, *Vancouver*
Shahrokh M Ghobadloo, *Ottawa*
Yuewen Gong, *Winnipeg*
Philip H Gordon, *Quebec*
Rakesh Kumar, *Edmonton*
Wolfgang A Kunze, *Hamilton*
Patrick Labonte, *Laval*
Zhikang Peng, *Winnipeg*
Jayadev Raju, *Ottawa*
Maitreyi Raman, *Calgary*
Giada Sebastiani, *Montreal*
Maida J Sewitch, *Montreal*
Eldon A Shaffer, *Alberta*
Christopher W Teshima, *Edmonton*
Jean Sévigny, *Québec*
Pingchang Yang, *Hamilton*
Pingchang Yang, *Hamilton*
Eric M Yoshida, *Vancouver*
Bin Zheng, *Edmonton*

Chile

Marcelo A Beltran, *La Serena*
Flavio Nervi, *Santiago*
Adolfo Parra-Blanco, *Santiago*
Alejandro Soza, *Santiago*

China

Zhao-Xiang Bian, *Hong Kong*
San-Jun Cai, *Shanghai*
Guang-Wen Cao, *Shanghai*
Long Chen, *Nanjing*
Ru-Fu Chen, *Guangzhou*
George G Chen, *Hong Kong*
Li-Bo Chen, *Wuhan*
Jia-Xu Chen, *Beijing*
Hong-Song Chen, *Beijing*
Lin Chen, *Beijing*
Yang-Chao Chen, *Hong Kong*
Zhen Chen, *Shanghai*
Ying-Sheng Cheng, *Shanghai*
Kent-Man Chu, *Hong Kong*
Zhi-Jun Dai, *Xi'an*
Jing-Yu Deng, *Tianjin*
Yi-Qi Du, *Shanghai*
Zhi Du, *Tianjin*
Hani El-Nezami, *Hong Kong*
Bao-Ying Fei, *Hangzhou*
Chang-Ming Gao, *Nanjing*
Jian-Ping Gong, *Chongqing*
Zuo-Jiong Gong, *Wuhan*
Jing-Shan Gong, *Shenzhen*
Guo-Li Gu, *Beijing*
Yong-Song Guan, *Chengdu*
Mao-Lin Guo, *Luoyang*
Jun-Ming Guo, *Ningbo*
Yan-Mei Guo, *Shanghai*
Xiao-Zhong Guo, *Shenyang*
Guo-Hong Han, *Xi'an*
Ming-Liang He, *Hong Kong*
Peng Hou, *Xi'an*
Zhao-Hui Huang, *Wuxi*
Feng Ji, *Hangzhou*
Simon Law, *Hong Kong*
Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*
Meng-Sen Li, *Haikou*
Shu-De Li, *Shanghai*
Zong-Fang Li, *Xi'an*
Qing-Quan Li, *Shanghai*
Kang Li, *Lasa*
Han Liang, *Tianjin*
Xing'e Liu, *Hangzhou*
Zheng-Wen Liu, *Xi'an*
Xiao-Fang Liu, *Yantai*
Bin Liu, *Tianjin*
Quan-Da Liu, *Beijing*
Hai-Feng Liu, *Beijing*
Fei Liu, *Shanghai*
Ai-Guo Lu, *Shanghai*
He-Sheng Luo, *Wuhan*
Xiao-Peng Ma, *Shanghai*
Yong Meng, *Shantou*
Ke-Jun Nan, *Xi'an*
Siew Chien Ng, *Hong Kong*
Simon SM Ng, *Hong Kong*
Zhao-Shan Niu, *Qingdao*
Di Qu, *Shanghai*
Ju-Wei Mu, *Beijing*
Rui-Hua Shi, *Nanjing*
Bao-Min Shi, *Shanghai*
Xiao-Dong Sun, *Hangzhou*
Si-Yu Sun, *Shenyang*
Guang-Hong Tan, *Haikou*
Wen-Fu Tang, *Chengdu*
Anthony YB Teoh, *Hong Kong*
Wei-Dong Tong, *Chongqing*
Eric Tse, *Hong Kong*
Hong Tu, *Shanghai*

Stavros Gourgiotis, *Athens*
Leontios J Hadjileontiadis, *Thessaloniki*
Thomas Hyphantis, *Ioannina*
Ioannis Kanellos, *Thessaloniki*
Stylianos Karatapanis, *Rhodes*
Michael Koutsilieris, *Athens*
Spiros D Ladas, *Athens*
Theodoros K Liakakos, *Athens*
Emanuel K Manesis, *Athens*
Spilios Manolakopoulos, *Athens*
Gerassimos John Mantzaris, *Athens*
Athanasios D Marinis, *Piraeus*
Nikolaos Ioannis Nikiteas, *Athens*
Konstantinos X Papamichael, *Athens*
George Sgourakis, *Athens*
Konstantinos C Thomopoulos, *Patras*
Konstantinos Triantafyllou, *Athens*
Christos Triantos, *Patras*
Georgios Zacharakis, *Athens*
Petros Zezos, *Alexandroupolis*
Demosthenes E Ziogas, *Ioannina*

Guatemala

Carlos Maria Parellada, *Guatemala*

Hungary

Mihaly Boros, *Szeged*
Tamás Decsi, *Pécs*
Gyula Farkas, *Szeged*
Andrea Furka, *Debrecen*
Y vette Mandi, *Szeged*
Peter L Lakatos, *Budapest*
Pal Miheller, *Budapest*
Tamás Molnar, *Szeged*
Attila Olah, *Gyor*
Maria Papp, *Debrecen*
Zoltan Rakonczay, *Szeged*
Ferenc Sipos, *Budapest*
Miklós Tanyi, *Debrecen*
Tibor Wittmann, *Szeged*

Iceland

Tryggvi Bjorn Stefánsson, *Reykjavík*

Indiad

Brij B Agarwal, *New Delhi*
Deepak N Amarapurkar, *Mumbai*
Shams ul Bari, *Srinagar*
Sriparna Basu, *Varanasi*
Runu Chakravarty, *Kolkata*
Devendra C Desai, *Mumbai*
Nutan D Desai, *Mumbai*
Suneela Sunil Dhaneshwar, *Pune*
Radha K Dhiman, *Chandigarh*
Pankaj Garg, *Mohali*
Uday C Ghoshal, *Lucknow*
Kalpesh Jani, *Vadodara*
Premashis Kar, *New Delhi*
Jyotdeep Kaur, *Chandigarh*
Rakesh Kochhar, *Chandigarh*
Pradyumna K Mishra, *Mumbai*
Asish K Mukhopadhyay, *Kolkata*
Imtiyaz Murtaza, *Srinagar*
P Nagarajan, *New Delhi*
Samiran Nundy, *Delhi*
Gopal Pande, *Hyderabad*
Benjamin Perakath, *Vellore*
Arun Prasad, *New Delhi*
D Nageshwar Reddy, *Hyderabad*
Lekha Saha, *Chandigarh*
Sundeep Singh Saluja, *New Delhi*
Mahesh Prakash Sharma, *New Delhi*
Sadiq Saleem Sikora, *Bangalore*
Sarman Singh, *New Delhi*
Rajeev Sinha, *Jhansi*
Rupjyoti Talukdar, *Hyderabad*
Rakesh Kumar Tandon, *New Delhi*
Narayanan Thirumoorthy, *Coimbatore*

Indonesia

David Handojo Muljono, *Jakarta*
Andi Utama, *Jakarta*

Iran

Arezoo Aghakhani, *Tehran*
Seyed Mohsen Dehghani, *Shiraz*
Ahad Eshraghian, *Shiraz*
Hossein Khedmat, *Tehran*
Sadegh Massarrat, *Tehran*
Marjan Mohammadi, *Tehran*
Roja Rahimi, *Tehran*
Farzaneh Sabahi, *Tehran*
Majid Sadeghizadeh, *Tehran*
Farideh Siavoshi, *Tehran*

Ireland

Gary Alan Bass, *Dublin*
David J Brayden, *Dublin*
Ronan A Cahill, *Dublin*
Glen A Doherty, *Dublin*
Liam J Fanning, *Cork*
Barry Philip McMahon, *Dublin*
RossMcManus, *Dublin*
Dervla O'Malley, *Cork*
Sinead M Smith, *Dublin*

Israel

Dan Carter, *Ramat Gan*
Jorge-Shmuel Delgado, *Metar*
Eli Magen, *Ashdod*
Nitsan Maharshak, *Tel Aviv*
Shaul Mordechai, *Beer Sheva*
Menachem Moshkowitz, *Tel Aviv*
William Bahij Nseir, *Nazareth*
Shimon Reif, *Jerusalem*
Ram Reifen, *Rehovot*
Ariella Bar-Gil Shitrit, *Jerusalem*
Noam Shussman, *Jerusalem*
Igor Sukhotnik, *Haifa*
Nir Wasserberg, *Petach Tiqwa*
Jacob Yahav, *Rehovot*
Doron Levi Zamir, *Gedera*
Shira Zelber-Sagi, *Haifa*
Romy Zemel, *Petach-Tikva*

Italy

Ludovico Abenavoli, *Catanzaro*
Luigi Elio Adinolfi, *Naples*
Carlo Virginio Agostoni, *Milan*
Anna Alisi, *Rome*
Piero Luigi Almasio, *Palermo*
Donato Francesco Altomare, *Bari*
Amedeo Amedei, *Florence*
Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
Imerio Angriman, *Padova*
Vito Annese, *Florence*
Paolo Aurello, *Rome*
Salavtore Auricchio, *Naples*
Gian Luca Baiocchi, *Brescia*
Gianpaolo Balzano, *Milan*
Antonio Basoli, *Rome*
Gabrio Bassotti, *San Sisto*
Mauro Bernardi, *Bologna*
Alberto Biondi, *Rome*
Ennio Biscaldi, *Genova*
Massimo Bolognesi, *Padua*
Luigi Bonavina, *Milano*
Aldo Bove, *Chieti*
Raffaele Bruno, *Pavia*
Luigi Brusciano, *Napoli*
Giuseppe Cabibbo, *Palermo*
Carlo Calabrese, *Bologna*
Daniele Calistri, *Meldola*
Vincenza Calvaruso, *Palermo*
Lorenzo Camellini, *Reggio Emilia*
Marco Candela, *Bologna*
Raffaele Capasso, *Naples*
Lucia Carulli, *Modena*
Renato David Caviglia, *Rome*
Luigina Cellini, *Chieti*
Giuseppe Chiarioni, *Verona*
Claudio Chiesa, *Rome*
Michele Cicala, *Roma*
Rachele Ciccocioppo, *Pavia*
Sandro Contini, *Parma*
Gaetano Corso, *Foggia*
Renato Costi, *Parma*
Alessandro Cucchetti, *Bologna*
Rosario Cuomo, *Napoli*
Giuseppe Currò, *Messina*
Paola De Nardi, *Milano*
Giovanni D De Palma, *Naples*
Raffaele De Palma, *Napoli*
Giuseppina De Petro, *Brescia*
Valli De Re, *Aviano*
Paolo De Simone, *Pisa*
Giuliana Decorti, *Trieste*
Emanuele Miraglia del Giudice, *Napoli*
Isidoro Di Carlo, *Catania*
Matteo Nicola Dario Di Minno, *Naples*
Massimo Donadelli, *Verona*
Mirko D'Onofrio, *Verona*
Maria Pina Dore, *Sassari*
Luca Elli, *Milano*
Massimiliano Fabozzi, *Aosta*

Massimo Falconi, *Ancona*
Ezio Falletto, *Turin*
Silvia Fargion, *Milan*
Matteo Fassan, *Verona*
Gianfranco Delle Fave, *Roma*
Alessandro Federico, *Naples*
Francesco Feo, *Sassari*
Davide Festi, *Bologna*
Natale Figura, *Siena*
Vincenzo Formica, *Rome*
Mirella Fraquelli, *Milan*
Marzio Frazzoni, *Modena*
Walter Fries, *Messina*
Gennaro Galizia, *Naples*
Andrea Galli, *Florence*
Matteo Garcovich, *Rome*
Eugenio Gaudio, *Rome*
Paola Ghiorzo, *Genoa*
Edoardo G Giannini, *Genova*
Luca Gianotti, *Monza*
Maria Cecilia Giron, *Padova*
Alberto Grassi, *Rimini*
Gabriele Grassi, *Trieste*
Francesco Greco, *Bergamo*
Luigi Greco, *Naples*
Antonio Grieco, *Rome*
Fabio Grizzi, *Rozzano*
Laurino Grossi, *Pescara*
Simone Guglielmetti, *Milan*
Tiberiu Hershcovici, *Jerusalem*
Calogero Iacono, *Verona*
Enzo Ierardi, *Bari*
Amedeo Indriolo, *Bergamo*
Raffaele Iorio, *Naples*
Paola Iovino, *Salerno*
Angelo A Izzo, *Naples*
Loreta Kondili, *Rome*
Filippo La Torre, *Rome*
Giuseppe La Torre, *Rome*
Giovanni Latella, *L'Aquila*
Salvatore Leonardi, *Catania*
Massimo Libra, *Catania*
Anna Licata, *Palermo*
C armela Loguercio, *Naples*
Amedeo Lonardo, *Modena*
Carmelo Luigiano, *Catania*
Francesco Luzza, *Catanzaro*
Giovanni Maconi, *Milano*
Antonio Macrì, *Messina*
Mariano Malaguarnera, *Catania*
Francesco Manguso, *Napoli*
Tommaso Maria Manzia, *Rome*
Daniele Marrelli, *Siena*
Gabriele Masselli, *Rome*
Sara Massironi, *Milan*
Giuseppe Mazzarella, *Avellino*
Michele Milella, *Rome*
Giovanni Milito, *Rome*
Antonella d'Arminio Monforte, *Milan*
Fabrizio Montecucco, *Genoa*
Giovanni Monteleone, *Rome*
Mario Morino, *Torino*
Vincenzo La Mura, *Milan*
Gerardo Nardone, *Naples*
Riccardo Nascimbeni, *Brescia*
Gabriella Nesi, *Florence*
Giuseppe Nigri, *Rome*
Erica Novo, *Turin*
Veronica Ojetti, *Rome*
Michele Orditura, *Naples*
Fabio Pace, *Seriate*
Lucia Pacifico, *Rome*
Omero Alessandro Paoluzi, *Rome*
Valerio Pazienza, *San Giovanni Rotondo*
Rinaldo Pellicano, *Turin*
Adriano M Pellicelli, *Rome*
Nadia Peparini, *Ciampino*
Mario Pescatori, *Rome*
Antonio Picardi, *Rome*
Alberto Pilotto, *Padova*
Alberto Piperno, *Monza*
Anna Chiara Piscaglia, *Rome*
Maurizio Pompili, *Rome*
Francesca Romana Ponziani, *Rome*
Cosimo Prantera, *Rome*
Girolamo Ranieri, *Bari*
Carlo Ratto, *Tome*
Barbara Renga, *Perugia*
Alessandro Repici, *Rozzano*
Maria Elena Riccioni, *Rome*
Lucia Ricci-Vitiani, *Rome*
Luciana Rigoli, *Messina*
Mario Rizzetto, *Torino*
Ballarin Roberto, *Modena*
Roberto G Romanelli, *Florence*
Claudio Romano, *Messina*
Luca Roncucci, *Modena*
Cesare Ruffolo, *Treviso*
L ucia Sacchetti, *Napoli*
Rodolfo Sacco, *Pisa*
Lapo Sali, *Florence*
Romina Salpini, *Rome*
Giulio Aniello, *Santoro Treviso*
Armando Santoro, *Rozzano*
Edoardo Savarino, *Padua*
Marco Senzolo, *Padua*
Annalucia Serafino, *Rome*
Giuseppe S Sica, *Rome*
Pierpaolo Sileri, *Rome*
Cosimo Sperti, *Padua*
Vincenzo Stanghellini, *Bologna*
Cristina Stasi, *Florence*
Gabriele Stocco, *Trieste*
Roberto Tarquini, *Florence*
Mario Testini, *Bari*
Guido Torzilli, *Milan*
Guido Alberto Massimo, *Tiberio Brescia*
Giuseppe Toffoli, *Aviano*
Alberto Tommasini, *Trieste*
Francesco Tonelli, *Florence*
Cesare Tosetti Porretta, *Terme*
Lucio Trevisani, *Cona*
Guglielmo M Trovato, *Catania*
Mariapia Vairetti, *Pavia*
Luca Vittorio Valenti, *Milano*
Mariateresa T Ventura, *Bari*
Giuseppe Verlato, *Verona*
Marco Vivarelli, *Ancona*
Giovanni Li Volti, *Catania*
Giuseppe Zanotti, *Padua*
Vincenzo Zara, *Lecce*
Gianguglielmo Zehender, *Milan*
Anna Linda Zignego, *Florence*
Rocco Antonio Zoccali, *Messina*
Angelo Zullo, *Rome*

Japan

Yasushi Adachi, *Sapporo*
Takafumi Ando, *Nagoya*
Masahiro Arai, *Tokyo*
Makoto Arai, *Chiba*
Takaaki Arigami, *Kagoshima*
Itaru Endo,*Yokohama*
Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
Shunji Fujimori, *Tokyo*
Yasuhiro Fujino, *Akashi*
Toshiyoshi Fujiwara, *Okayama*
Yosuke Fukunaga, *Tokyo*
Toshio Fukusato, *Tokyo*
Takahisa Furuta, *Hamamatsu*
Osamu Handa, *Kyoto*
Naoki Hashimoto, *Osaka*
Yoichi Hiasa, *Toon*
Masatsugu Hiraki, *Saga*
Satoshi Hirano, *Sapporo*
Keiji Hirata, *Fukuoka*
Toru Hiyama, *Higashihiroshima*
Akira Hokama, *Nishihara*
Shu Hoteya, *Tokyo*
Masao Ichinose, *Wakayama*
Tatsuya Ide, *Kurume*
Masahiro Iizuka, *Akita*
Toshiro Iizuka, *Tokyo*
Kenichi Ikejima, *Tokyo*
Tetsuya Ikemoto, *Tokushima*
Hiroyuki Imaeda, *Saitama*
Atsushi Imagawa, *Kan-onji*
Hiroo Imazu, *Tokyo*
Shuji Isaji, *Tsu*
Toru Ishikawa, *Niigata*
Toshiyuki Ishiwata, *Tokyo*
Soichi Itaba, *Kitakyushu*
Yoshiaki Iwasaki, *Okayama*
Tatehiro Kagawa, *Isehara*
Satoru Kakizaki, *Maebashi*
Naomi Kakushima, *Shizuoka*
Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
Akihide Kamiya, *Isehara*
Osamu Kanauchi, *Tokyo*
Tatsuo Kanda, *Chiba*
Shin Kariya, *Okayama*
Shigeyuki Kawa, *Matsumoto*
Takumi Kawaguchi, *Kurume*
Takashi Kawai, *Tokyo*
Soo Ryang Kim, *Kobe*
Shinsuke Kiriyama, *Gunma*
Tsuneo Kitamura, *Urayasu*
Masayuki Kitano, *Osakasayama*
Hirotoshi Kobayashi, *Tokyo*
Hironori Koga, *Kurume*
Takashi Kojima, *Sapporo*
Satoshi Kokura, *Kyoto*
Shuhei Komatsu, *Kyoto*
Tadashi Kondo, *Tokyo*
Yasuteru Kondo, *Sendai*
Yasuhiro Kuramitsu, *Yamaguchi*
Yukinori Kurokawa, *Osaka*
Shin Maeda, *Yokohama*
Koutarou Maeda, *Toyoake*

Hitoshi Maruyama, *Chiba*
Atsushi Masamune, *Sendai*
Hiroyuki Matsubayashi, *Suntogun*
Akihisa Matsuda, *Inzai*
Hirofumi Matsui, *Tsukuba*
Akira Matsumori, *Kyoto*
Yoichi Matsuo, *Nagoya*
Y Matsuzaki, *Ami*
Toshihiro Mitaka, *Sapporo*
Kouichi Miura, *Akita*
Shinichi Miyagawa, *Matumoto*
Eiji Miyoshi, *Suita*
Toru Mizuguchi, *Sapporo*
Nobumasa Mizuno, *Nagoya*
Zenichi Morise, *Nagoya*
Tomohiko Moriyama, *Fukuoka*
Kunihiko Murase, *Tusima*
Michihiro Mutoh, *Tsukiji*
Akihito Nagahara, *Tokyo*
Hikaru Nagahara, *Tokyo*
Hidenari Nagai, *Tokyo*
Koichi Nagata, *Shimotsuke-shi*
Masaki Nagaya, *Kawasaki*
Hisato Nakajima, *Nishi-Shinbashi*
Toshifusa Nakajima, *Tokyo*
Hiroshi Nakano, *Kawasaki*
Hiroshi Nakase, *Kyoto*
Toshiyuki Nakayama, *Nagasaki*
Takahiro Nakazawa, *Nagoya*
Shoji Natsugoe, *Kagoshima City*
Tsutomu Nishida, *Suita*
Shuji Nomoto, *Naogya*
Sachiyo Nomura, *Tokyo*
Takeshi Ogura, *Takatsukishi*
Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
Toshifumi Ohkusa, *Kashiwa*
Hirohide Ohnishi, *Akita*
Teruo Okano, *Tokyo*
Satoshi Osawa, *Hamamatsu*
Motoyuki Otsuka, *Tokyo*
Michitaka Ozaki, *Sapporo*
Satoru Saito, *Yokohama*
Naoaki Sakata, *Sendai*
Ken Sato, *Maebashi*
Toshiro Sato, *Tokyo*
Tomoyuki Shibata, *Toyoake*
Tomohiko Shimatani, *Kure*
Yukihiro Shimizu, *Nanto*
Tadashi Shimoyama, *Hirosaki*
Masayuki Sho, *Nara*
Ikuo Shoji, *Kobe*
Atsushi Sofuni, *Tokyo*
Takeshi Suda, *Niigata*
M Sugimoto, *Hamamatsu*
Ken Sugimoto, *Hamamatsu*
Haruhiko Sugimura, *Hamamatsu*
Shoichiro Sumi, *Kyoto*
Hidekazu Suzuki, *Tokyo*
Masahiro Tajika, *Nagoya*
Hitoshi Takagi, *Takasaki*
Toru Takahashi, *Niigata*
Yoshihisa Takahashi, *Tokyo*
Shinsuke Takeno, *Fukuoka*
Akihiro Tamori, *Osaka*
Kyosuke Tanaka, *Tsu*
Shinji Tanaka, *Hiroshima*
Atsushi Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Yasuhito Tanaka, *Nagoya*
Shinji Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Minoru Tomizawa, *Yotsukaido City*
Kyoko Tsukiyama-Kohara, *Kagoshima*
Takuya Watanabe, *Niigata*
Kazuhiro Watanabe, *Sendai*
Satoshi Yamagiwa, *Niigata*
Takayuki Yamamoto, *Yokkaichi*
Hiroshi Yamamoto, *Otsu*
Kosho Yamanouchi, *Nagasaki*
Ichiro Yasuda, *Gifu*
Yutaka Yata, *Maebashi-city*
Shin-ichi Yokota, *Sapporo*
Norimasa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
Hiroshi Yoshida, *Tama-City*
Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Kashihara*
Kazuhiko Yoshimatsu, *Tokyo*
Kentaro Yoshioka, *Toyoake*
Nobuhiro Zaima, *Nara*

Jordan
Khaled Ali Jadallah, *Irbid*

Kuwait
Islam Khan, *Kuwait*

Lebanon
Bassam N Abboud, *Beirut*
Kassem A Barada, *Beirut*
Marwan Ghosn, *Beirut*
Iyad A Issa, *Beirut*
Fadi H Mourad, *Beirut*
AIa Sharara, *Beirut*
Rita Slim, *Beirut*

Lithuania
Antanas Mickevicius, *Kaunas*

Malaysia
Huck Joo Tan, *Petaling Jaya*

Mexico
Richard A Awad, *Mexico City*
Carlos R Camara-Lemarroy, *Monterrey*
Norberto C Chavez-Tapia, *Mexico City*
Wolfgang Gaertner, *Mexico City*
Diego Garcia-Compean, *Monterrey*
Arturo Panduro, *Guadalajara*
OT Teramoto-Matsubara, *Mexico City*
Felix Tellez-Avila, *Mexico City*
Omar Vergara-Fernandez, *Mexico City*
Saúl Villa-Trevino, *Cuidad de México*

Morocco
Samir Ahboucha, *Khouribga*

Netherlands
Robert J de Knegt, *Rotterdam*
Tom Johannes Gerardus Gevers, *Nijmegen*
Menno Hoekstra, *Leiden*
BW Marcel Spanier, *Arnhem*
Karel van Erpecum, *Utrecht*

New Zealand
Leo K Cheng, *Auckland*
Andrew Stewart Day, *Christchurch*
Jonathan Barnes Koea, *Auckland*
Max Petrov, *Auckland*

Nigeria
Olufunmilayo Adenike Lesi, *Lagos*
Jesse Abiodun Otegbayo, *Ibadan*
Stella Ifeanyi Smith, *Lagos*

Norway
Trond Berg, *Oslo*
Trond Arnulf Buanes, *Krokkleiva*
Thomas de Lange, *Rud*
Magdy El-Salhy, *Stord*
Rasmus Goll, *Tromso*
Dag Arne Lihaug Hoff, *Aalesund*

Pakistan
Zaigham Abbas, *Karachi*
Usman A Ashfaq, *Faisalabad*
Muhammad Adnan Bawany, *Hyderabad*
Muhammad Idrees, *Lahore*
Saeed Sadiq Hamid, *Karachi*
Yasir Waheed, *Islamabad*

Poland
Thomas Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Magdalena Chmiela, *Lodz*
Krzysztof Jonderko, *Sosnowiec*
Anna Kasicka-Jonderko, *Sosnowiec*
Michal Kukla, *Katowice*
Tomasz Hubert Mach, *Krakow*
Agata Mulak, *Wroclaw*
Danuta Owczarek, *Kraków*
Piotr Socha, *Warsaw*
Piotr Stalke, *Gdansk*
Julian Teodor Swierczynski, *Gdansk*
Anna M Zawilak-Pawlik, *Wroclaw*

Portugal
Marie Isabelle Cremers, *Setubal*
Ceu Figueiredo, *Porto*
Ana Isabel Lopes, *LIsbon*
M Paula Macedo, *Lisboa*
Ricardo Marcos, *Porto*
Rui T Marinho, *Lisboa*
Guida Portela-Gomes, *Estoril*

Filipa F Vale, *Lisbon*

Puerto Rico

Caroline B Appleyard, *Ponce*

Qatar

Abdulbari Bener, *Doha*

Romania

Mihai Ciocirlan, *Bucharest*
Dan LucianDumitrascu, *Cluj-Napoca*
Carmen Fierbinteanu-Braticevici, *Bucharest*
Romeo G Mihaila, *Sibiu*
Lucian Negreanu, *Bucharest*
Adrian Saftoiu, *Craiova*
Andrada Seicean, *Cluj-Napoca*
Ioan Sporea, *Timisoara*
Letiţia Adela Maria Streba, *Craiova*
Anca Trifan, *Iasi*

Russia

Victor Pasechnikov, *Stavropol*
Vasiliy Ivanovich Reshetnyak, *Moscow*
Vitaly Skoropad, *Obninsk*

Saudi Arabia

Abdul-Wahed N Meshikhes, *Dammam*
M Ezzedien Rabie, *Khamis Mushait*

Singapore

Brian KP Goh, *Singapore*
Richie Soong, *Singapore*
Ker-Kan Tan, *Singapore*
Kok-Yang Tan, *Singapore*
Yee-Joo Tan, *Singapore*
Mark Wong, *Singapore*
Hong Ping Xia, *Singapore*

Slovenia

Matjaz Homan, *Ljubljana*
Martina Perse, *Ljubljana*

South Korea

Sang Hoon Ahn, *Seoul*
Seung Hyuk Baik, *Seoul*
Soon Koo Baik, *Wonju*
Soo-Cheon Chae, *Iksan*
Byung-Ho Choe, *Daegu*
Suck Chei Choi, *Iksan*
Hoon Jai Chun, *Seoul*
Yeun-Jun Chung, *Seoul*
Young-Hwa Chung, *Seoul*
Ki-Baik Hahm, *Seongnam*
Sang Young Han, *Busan*
Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
Seung-Heon Hong, *Iksan*
Jin-Hyeok Hwang, *Seoungnam*
Jeong Won Jang, *Seoul*
Jin-Young Jang, *Seoul*
Dae-Won Jun, *Seoul*
Young Do Jung, *Kwangju*
Gyeong Hoon Kang, *Seoul*
Sung-Bum Kang, *Seoul*
Koo Jeong Kang, *Daegu*
Ki Mun Kang, *Jinju*
Chang Moo Kang, *Seodaemun-gu*
Gwang Ha Kim, *Busan*
Sang Soo Kim, *Goyang-si*
Jin Cheon Kim, *Seoul*
Tae Il Kim, *Seoul*
Jin Hong Kim, *Suwon*
Kyung Mo Kim, *Seoul*
Kyongmin Kim, *Suwon*
Hyung-Ho Kim, *Seongnam*
Seoung Hoon Kim, *Goyang*
Sang Il Kim, *Seoul*
Hyun-Soo Kim, *Wonju*
Jung Mogg Kim, *Seoul*
Dong Yi Kim, *Gwangju*
Kyun-Hwan Kim, *Seoul*
Jong-Han Kim, *Ansan*
Sang Wun Kim, *Seoul*
Ja-Lok Ku, *Seoul*
Kyu Taek Lee, *Seoul*
Hae-Wan Lee, *Chuncheon*
Inchul Lee, *Seoul*
Jung Eun Lee, *Seoul*
Sang Chul Lee, *Daejeon*
Song Woo Lee, *Ansan-si*
Hyuk-Joon Lee, *Seoul*
Seong-Wook Lee, *Yongin*
Kil Yeon Lee, *Seoul*
Jong-Inn Lee, *Seoul*
Kyung A Lee, *Seoul*
Jong-Baeck Lim, *Seoul*
Eun-Yi Moon, *Seoul*
SH Noh, *Seoul*
Seung Woon Paik, *Seoul*
Won Sang Park, *Seoul*
Sung-Joo Park, *Iksan*
Kyung Sik Park, *Daegu*
Se Hoon Park, *Seoul*
Yoonkyung Park, *Gwangju*
Seung-Wan Ryu, *Daegu*
Il Han Song, *Cheonan*
Myeong Jun Song, *Daejeon*
Yun Kyoung Yim, *Daejeon*
Dae-Yeul Yu *Daejeon*

Spain

Mariam Aguas, *Valencia*
Raul J Andrade, *Málaga*
Antonio Arroyo, *Elche*
Josep M Bordas, *Barcelona*
Lisardo Boscá, *Madrid*
Ricardo Robles Campos, *Murcia*
Jordi Camps, *Reus*
Carlos Cervera *Barcelona*
Alfonso Clemente, *Granada*
Pilar Codoner-Franch, *Valencia*
Fernando J Corrales, *Pamplona*
Fermin Sánchez de Medina, *Granada*
Alberto Herreros de Tejada, *Majadahonda*
Enrique de-Madaria, *Alicante*
JE Dominguez-Munoz, *Santiago de Compostela*
Vicente Felipo, *Valencia*
CM Fernandez-Rodriguez, *Madrid*
Carmen Frontela-Saseta, *Murcia*
Julio Galvez, *Granada*
Maria Teresa García, *Vigo*
MI Garcia-Fernandez, *Málaga*
Emilio Gonzalez-Reimers, *La Laguna*
Marcel Jimenez, *Bellaterra*
Angel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
Juan Ramón Larrubia, *Guadalajara*
Antonio Lopez-Sanroman, *Madrid*
Vicente Lorenzo-Zuniga, *Badalona*
Alfredo J Lucendo, *Tomelloso*
Vicenta Soledad Martinez-Zorzano, *Vigo*
José Manuel Martin-Villa, *Madrid*
Julio Mayol, *Madrid*
Manuel Morales-Ruiz, *Barcelona*
Alfredo Moreno-Egea, *Murcia*
Albert Pares, *Barcelona*
Maria Pellise, *Barcelona*
José Perea, *Madrid*
Miguel Angel Plaza, *Zaragoza*
María J Pozo, *Cáceres*
Enrique Quintero, *La Laguna*
Jose M Ramia, *Madrid*
Francisco Rodriguez-Frias, *Barcelona*
Silvia Ruiz-Gaspa, *Barcelona*
Xavier Serra-Aracil, *Barcelona*
Vincent Soriano, *Madrid*
Javier Suarez, *Pamplona*
Carlos Taxonera, *Madrid*
M Isabel Torres, *Jaén*
Manuel Vazquez-Carrera, *Barcelona*
Benito Velayos, *Valladolid*
Silvia Vidal, *Barcelona*

Sri Lanka

Arjuna Priyadarsin De Silva, *Colombo*

Sudan

Ishag Adam, *Khartoum*

Sweden

Roland G Andersson, *Lund*
Bergthor Björnsson, *Linkoping*
Johan Christopher Bohr, *Örebro*
Mauro D'Amato, *Stockholm*
Thomas Franzen, *Norrkoping*
Evangelos Kalaitzakis, *Lund*
Riadh Sadik, *Gothenburg*
Per Anders Sandstrom, *Linkoping*
Ervin Toth, *Malmö*
Konstantinos Tsimogiannis, *Vasteras*
Apostolos V Tsolakis, *Uppsala*

Switzerland

Gieri Cathomas, *Liestal*
Jean Louis Frossard, *Geneve*
Christian Toso, *Geneva*
Stephan Robert Vavricka, *Zurich*
Dominique Velin, *Lausanne*

Thailand

Thawatchai Akaraviputh, *Bangkok*
P Yoysungnoen Chintana, *Pathumthani*
Veerapol Kukongviriyapan, *Muang*
Vijittra Leardkamolkarn, *Bangkok*
Varut Lohsiriwat, *Bangkok*
Somchai Pinlaor, *Khaon Kaen*
D Wattanasirichaigoon, *Bangkok*

Trinidad and Tobago

B Shivananda Nayak, *Mount Hope*

Tunisia

Ibtissem Ghedira, *Sousse*
Lilia Zouiten-Mekki, *Tunis*

Turkey

Inci Alican, *Istanbul*
Mustafa Altindis, *Sakarya*
Mutay Aslan, *Antalya*
Oktar Asoglu, *Istanbul*
Yasemin Hatice Balaban, *Istanbul*
Metin Basaranoglu, *Ankara*
Yusuf Bayraktar, *Ankara*
Süleyman Bayram, *Adiyaman*
Ahmet Bilici, *Istanbul*
Ahmet Sedat Boyacioglu, *Ankara*
Züleyha Akkan Cetinkaya, *Kocaeli*
Cavit Col, *Bolu*
Yasar Colak, *Istanbul*
Cagatay Erden Daphan, *Kirikkale*
Mehmet Demir, *Hatay*
Ahmet Merih Dobrucali, *Istanbul*
Gülsüm Ozlem Elpek, *Antalya*
Ayse Basak Engin, *Ankara*
Eren Ersoy, *Ankara*
Osman Ersoy, *Ankara*
Yusuf Ziya Erzin, *Istanbul*
Mukaddes Esrefoglu, *Istanbul*
Levent Filik, *Ankara*
Ozgur Harmanci, *Ankara*
Koray Hekimoglu, *Ankara*
Abdurrahman Kadayifci, *Gaziantep*
Cem Kalayci, *Istanbul*
Selin Kapan, *Istanbul*
Huseyin Kayadibi, *Adana*
Sabahattin Kaymakoglu, *Istanbul*
Metin Kement, *Istanbul*
Mevlut Kurt, *Bolu*
Resat Ozaras, *Istanbul*
Elvan Ozbek, *Adapazari*
Cengiz Ozcan, *Mersin*
Hasan Ozen, *Ankara*
Halil Ozguc, *Bursa*
Mehmet Ozturk, *Izmir*
Orhan V Ozkan, *Sakarya*
Semra Paydas, *Adana*
Ozlem Durmaz Suoglu, *Istanbul*
Ilker Tasci, *Ankara*
Müge Tecder-ünal, *Ankara*
Mesut Tez, *Ankara*
Serdar Topaloglu, *Trabzon*
Murat Toruner, *Ankara*
Gokhan Tumgor, *Adana*
Oguz Uskudar, *Adana*
Mehmet Yalniz, *Elazig*
Mehmet Yaman, *Elazig*
Veli Yazisiz, *Antalya*
Yusuf Yilmaz, *Istanbul*
Ozlem Yilmaz, *Izmir*
Oya Yucel, *Istanbul*
Ilhami Yuksel, *Ankara*

United Kingdom

Nadeem Ahmad Afzal, *Southampton*
Navneet K Ahluwalia, *Stockport*
Yeng S Ang, *Lancashire*
Ramesh P Arasaradnam, *Coventry*
Ian Leonard Phillip Beales, *Norwich*
John Beynon, *Swansea*
Barbara Braden, *Oxford*
Simon Bramhall, *Birmingham*
Geoffrey Burnstock, *London*
Ian Chau, *Sutton*
Thean Soon Chew, *London*
Helen G Coleman, *Belfast*
Anil Dhawan, *London*
Sunil Dolwani, *Cardiff*
Piers Gatenby, *London*
Anil T George, *London*
Pasquale Giordano, *London*
Paul Henderson, *Edinburgh*
Georgina Louise Hold, *Aberdeen*
Stefan Hubscher, *Birmingham*
Robin D Hughes, *London*
Nusrat Husain, *Manchester*
Matt W Johnson, *Luton*
Konrad Koss, *Macclesfield*
Anastasios Koulaouzidis, *Edinburgh*
Simon Lal, *Salford*
John S Leeds, *Aberdeen*
JK K Limdi, *Manchester*
Hongxiang Liu, *Cambridge*
Michael Joseph McGarvey, *London*
Michael Anthony Mendall, *London*
Alexander H Mirnezami, *Southampton*
J Bernadette Moore, *Guildford*
Claudio Nicoletti, *Norwich*
Savvas Papagrigoriadis, *London*
Sylvia LF Pender, *Southampton*
David Mark Pritchard, *Liverpool*
James A Ross, *Edinburgh*
Kamran Rostami, *Worcester*
Xiong Z Ruan, *London*
Frank I Tovey, *London*
Dhiraj Tripathi, *Birmingham*
Vamsi R Velchuru, *Great Yarmouth*
Nicholas T Ventham, *Edinburgh*
Diego Vergani, *London*
Jack Westwood Winter, *Glasgow*
Terence Wong, *London*
Ling Yang, *Oxford*

United States

Daniel E Abbott, *Cincinnati*
Ghassan K Abou-Alfa, *New York*
Julian Abrams, *New York*
David William Adelson, *Los Angeles*
Jonathan Steven Alexander, *Shreveport*
Tauseef Ali, *Oklahoma City*
Mohamed R Ali, *Sacramento*
Rajagopal N Aravalli, *Minneapolis*
Hassan Ashktorab, *Washington*
Shashi Bala, *Worcester*
Charles F Barish, *Raleigh*
P Patrick Basu, *New York*
Robert L Bell, *Berkeley Heights*
David Bentrem, *Chicago*
Henry J Binder, *New Haven*
Joshua Bleier, *Philadelphia*
Wojciech Blonski, *Johnson City*
Kenneth Boorom, *Corvallis*
Brian Boulay, *Chicago*
Carla W Brady, *Durham*
Kyle E Brown, *Iowa City*
Adeel A Butt, *Pittsburgh*
Weibiao Cao, *Providence*
Andrea Castillo, *Cheney*
Fernando J Castro, *Weston*
Adam S Cheifetz, *Boston*
Xiaoxin Luke Chen, *Durham*
Ramsey Cheung, *Palo Alto*
Parimal Chowdhury, *Little Rock*
Edward John Ciaccio, *New York*
Dahn L Clemens, *Omaha*
Yingzi Cong, *Galveston*
Laura Iris Cosen-Binker, *Boston*
Joseph John Cullen, *Lowa*
Mark J Czaja, *Bronx*
Mariana D Dabeva, *Bronx*
Christopher James Damman, *Seattle*
Isabelle G De Plaen, *Chicago*
Punita Dhawan, *Nashville*
Hui Dong, *La Jolla*
Wael El-Rifai, *Nashville*
Sukru H Emre, *New Haven*
Paul Feuerstadt, *Hamden*
Josef E Fischer, *Boston*
Laurie N Fishman, *Boston*
Joseph Che Forbi, *Atlanta*
Temitope Foster, *Atlanta*
Amy E Foxx-Orenstein, *Scottsdale*
Daniel E Freedberg, *New York*
Shai Friedland, *Palo Alto*
Virgilio George, *Indianapolis*
Ajay Goel, *Dallas*
Oliver Grundmann, *Gainesville*
Stefano Guandalini, *Chicago*
Chakshu Gupta, *St. Joseph*
Grigoriy E Gurvits, *New York*

Xiaonan Han, *Cincinnati*
Mohamed Hassan, *Jackson*
Martin Hauer-Jensen, *Little Rock*
Koichi Hayano, *Boston*
Yingli Hee, *Atlanta*
Samuel B Ho, *San Diego*
Jason Ken Hou, *Houston*
Lifang Hou, *Chicago*
K-Qin Hu, *Orange*
Jamal A Ibdah, *Columbia*
Robert Thomas Jensen, *Bethesda*
Huanguang "Charlie" Jia, *Gainesville*
Rome Jutabha, *Los Angeles*
Andreas M Kaiser, *Los Angeles*
Avinash Kambadakone, *Boston*
David Edward Kaplan, *Philadelphia*
Randeep Kashyap, *Rochester*
Rashmi Kaul, *Tulsa*
Ali Keshavarzian, *Chicago*
Amir Maqbul Khan, *Marshall*
Nabeel Hasan Khan, *New Orleans*
Sahil Khanna, *Rochester*
Kusum K Kharbanda, *Omaha*
Hyun Sik Kim, *Pittsburgh*
Joseph Kim, *Duarte*
Jae S Kim, *Gainesville*
Miran Kim, *Providence*
Timothy R Koch, *Washington*
Burton I Korelitz, *New York*
Betsy Kren, *Minneapolis*
Shiu-Ming Kuo, *Buffalo*
Michelle Lai, *Boston*
Andreas Larentzakis, *Boston*
Edward Wolfgang Lee, *Los Angeles*
Daniel A Leffler, *Boston*
Michael Leitman, *New York*
Suthat Liangpunsakul, *Indianapolis*
Joseph K Lim, *New Haven*
Elaine Y Lin, *Bronx*
Henry C Lin, *Albuquerque*
Rohit Loomba, *La Jolla*
James David Luketich, *Pittsburgh*
Li Ma, *Stanford*
Mohammad F Madhoun, *Oklahoma City*
Thomas C Mahl, *Buffalo*
Ashish Malhotra, *Bettendorf*
Pranoti Mandrekar, *Worcester*
John Marks, *Wynnewood*
Wendy M Mars, *Pittsburgh*
Julien Vahe Matricon, *San Antonio*
Craig J McClain, *Louisville*
Tamir Miloh, *Phoenix*
Ayse Leyla Mindikoglu, *Baltimore*
Huanbiao Mo, *Denton*
Klaus Monkemuller, *Birmingham*
John Morton, *Stanford*
Adnan Muhammad, *Tampa*
Michael J Nowicki, *Jackson*
Patrick I Okolo, *Baltimore*
Giusepp Orlando, *Winston Salem*
Natalia A Osna, *Omaha*
Virendra N Pandey, *Newark*
Mansour A Parsi, *Cleveland*
Michael F Picco, *Jacksonville*
Daniel S Pratt, *Boston*
Xiaofa Qin, *Newark*
Janardan K Reddy, *Chicago*
Victor E Reyes, *Galveston*
Jon Marc Rhoads, *Houston*
Giulia Roda, *New York*
Jean-Francois Armand Rossignol, *Tampa*
Paul A Rufo, *Boston*
Madhusudana Girija Sanal, *New York*
Miguel Saps, *Chicago*
Sushil Sarna, *Galveston*
Ann O Scheimann, *Baltimore*
Bernd Schnabl, *La Jolla*
Matthew J Schuchert, *Pittsburgh*
Ekihiro Seki, *La Jolla*
Chanjuan Shi, *Nashville*
David Quan Shih, *Los Angeles*
Shadab A Siddiqi, *Orlando*
William B Silverman, *Iowa City*
Shashideep Singhal, *New York*
Bronislaw L Slomiany, *Newark*
Steven F Solga, *Bethlehem*
Byoung-Joon Song, *Bethesda*
Dario Sorrentino, *Roanoke*
Scott R Steele, *Fort Lewis*
Branko Stefanovic, *Tallahassee*
Arun Swaminath, *New York*
Kazuaki Takabe, *Richmond*
Naoki Tanaka, *Bethesda*
Hans Ludger Tillmann, *Durham*
George Triadafilopoulos, *Stanford*
John Richardson Thompson, *Nashville*
Andrew Ukleja, *Weston*
Miranda AL van Tilburg, *Chapel Hill*
Gilberto Vaughan, *Atlanta*
Vijayakumar Velu, *Atlanta*
Gebhard Wagener, *New York*
Kasper Saonun Wang, *Los Angeles*
Xiangbing Wang, *New Brunswick*
Daoyan Wei, *Houston*
Theodore H Welling, *Ann Arbor*
C Mel Wilcox, *Birmingham*
Jacqueline Lee Wolf, *Boston*
Laura Ann Woollett, *Cincinnati*
Harry Hua-Xiang Xia, *East Hanover*
Wen Xie, *Pittsburgh*
Guang Yu Yang, *Chicago*
Michele T Yip-Schneider, *Indianapolis*
Sam Zakhari, *Bethesda*
Kezhong Zhang, *Detroit*
Huiping Zhou, *Richmond*
Xiao-Jian Zhou, *Cambridge*
Richard Zubarik, *Burlington*

Venezuela

Miguel Angel Chiurillo, *Barquisimeto*

Vietnam

Van Bang Nguyen, *Hanoi*

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Contents

Weekly Volume 22 Number 28 July 28, 2016

EDITORIAL

6335 Management of acute pancreatitis in Japan: Analysis of nationwide epidemiological survey
Hamada S, Masamune A, Shimosegawa T

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

6345 Mechanisms of resistance to anti-epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in metastatic colorectal cancer
Sforza V, Martinelli E, Ciardiello F, Gambardella V, Napolitano S, Martini G, della Corte C, Cardone C, Ferrara ML, Reginelli A, Liguori G, Belli G, Troiani T

6362 Immunotherapy in human colorectal cancer: Challenges and prospective
Sun X, Suo J, Yan J

6373 Immunological battlefield in gastric cancer and role of immunotherapies
Wang M, Busuttil RA, Pattison S, Neeson PJ, Boussioutas A

6385 Benefits and harms of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer
Hamashima C

6393 Hepatitis C virus: Promising discoveries and new treatments
Bastos JCS, Padilla MA, Caserta LC, Miotto N, Vigani AG, Arns CW

6402 Personality traits and emotional patterns in irritable bowel syndrome
Muscatello MRA, Bruno A, Mento C, Pandolfo G, Zoccali RA

6416 Metabolic complications in liver transplant recipients
Jiménez-Pérez M, González-Grande R, Omonte Guzmán E, Amo Trillo V, Rodrigo López JM

6424 Re-evaluation of classical prognostic factors in resectable ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas
Åkerberg D, Ansari D, Andersson R

REVIEW

6434 Pathophysiological role of guanylate-binding proteins in gastrointestinal diseases
Britzen-Laurent N, Herrmann C, Naschberger E, Croner RS, Stürzl M

6444 Management of psoriasis patients with hepatitis B or hepatitis C virus infection
Bonifati C, Lora V, Graceffa D, Nosotti L

6456 Enhanced recovery pathways in pancreatic surgery: State of the art
Pecorelli N, Nobile S, Partelli S, Cardinali L, Crippa S, Balzano G, Beretta L, Falconi M

6469 Specific $CD8^+$ T cell response immunotherapy for hepatocellular carcinoma and viral hepatitis
Moreno-Cubero E, Larrubia JR

6484 Prevention and management of hepatitis B virus reactivation in patients with hematological malignancies treated with anticancer therapy
Law MF, Ho R, Cheung CKM, Tam LHP, Ma K, So KCY, Ip B, So J, Lai J, Ng J, Tam THC

MINIREVIEWS

6501 Polyethylene glycols: An effective strategy for limiting liver ischemia reperfusion injury
Pasut G, Panisello A, Folch-Puy E, Lopez A, Castro-Benítez C, Calvo M, Carbonell T, García-Gil A, Adam R, Roselló-Catafau J

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

6509 c-Jun N-terminal kinase-mediated Rubicon expression enhances hepatocyte lipoapoptosis and promotes hepatocyte ballooning
Suzuki A, Kakisaka K, Suzuki Y, Wang T, Takikawa Y

Case Control Study

6520 *TCF7L2* rs7903146 polymorphism is associated with gastric cancer: A case-control study in the Venezuelan population
Torres K, Labrador L, Valderrama E, Chiurillo MA

Observational Study

6527 Trends and predictions for gastric cancer mortality in Brazil
de Souza Giusti ACB, de Oliveira Salvado PTC, dos Santos J, Meira KC, Camacho AR, Guimarães RM, Souza DLB

Prospective Study

6539 Can optical diagnosis of small colon polyps be accurate? Comparing standard scope without narrow banding to high definition scope with narrow banding
Ashktorab H, Etaati F, Rezaeean F, Nouraie M, Paydar M, Namin HH, Sanderson A, Begum R, Alkhalloufi K, Brim H, Laiyemo AO

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

6547 Epidemiology of functional gastrointestinal disorders in infants and toddlers: A systematic review
Ferreira-Maia AP, Matijasevich A, Wang YP

CASE REPORT

6559 Systemic mastocytosis: A rare cause of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension

Martins C, Teixeira C, Ribeiro S, Trabulo D, Cardoso C, Mangualde J, Freire R, Gamito É, Alves AL, Cremers I, Alves C, Neves A, Oliveira AP

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Volume 22 Number 28 July 28, 2016

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial board member of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, Eugenio Gaudio, MD, Professor, Department of Anatomy, Histology, Forensic Medicine and Orthopedics , University of Rome "Sapienza", Rome I-00161, Italy

AIMS AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastroenterology (*World J Gastroenterol*, *WJG*, print ISSN 1007-9327, online ISSN 2219-2840, DOI: 10.3748) is a peer-reviewed open access journal. *WJG* was established on October 1, 1995. It is published weekly on the 7th, 14th, 21st, and 28th each month. The *WJG* Editorial Board consists of 1376 experts in gastroenterology and hepatology from 68 countries.

The primary task of *WJG* is to rapidly publish high-quality original articles, reviews, and commentaries in the fields of gastroenterology, hepatology, gastrointestinal endoscopy, gastrointestinal surgery, hepatobiliary surgery, gastrointestinal oncology, gastrointestinal radiation oncology, gastrointestinal imaging, gastrointestinal interventional therapy, gastrointestinal infectious diseases, gastrointestinal pharmacology, gastrointestinal pathophysiology, gastrointestinal pathology, evidence-based medicine in gastroenterology, pancreatology, gastrointestinal laboratory medicine, gastrointestinal molecular biology, gastrointestinal immunology, gastrointestinal microbiology, gastrointestinal genetics, gastrointestinal translational medicine, gastrointestinal diagnostics, and gastrointestinal therapeutics. *WJG* is dedicated to become an influential and prestigious journal in gastroenterology and hepatology, to promote the development of above disciplines, and to improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skill and expertise of clinicians.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Gastroenterology (*WJG*) is now indexed in Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®), Journal Citation Reports®, Index Medicus, MEDLINE, PubMed, PubMed Central, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals. The 2015 edition of Journal Citation Reports® released by Thomson Reuters (ISI) cites the 2015 impact factor for *WJG* as 2.787 (5-year impact factor: 2.848), ranking *WJG* as 38 among 78 journals in gastroenterology and hepatology (quartile in category Q2).

FLYLEAF **I-IX** Editorial Board

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastroenterology

ISSN
ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 1, 1995

FREQUENCY
Weekly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Gastroenterology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-59080039
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
July 28, 2016

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6335

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6335-6344
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

EDITORIAL

Management of acute pancreatitis in Japan: Analysis of nationwide epidemiological survey

Shin Hamada, Atsushi Masamune, Tooru Shimosegawa

Shin Hamada, Atsushi Masamune, Tooru Shimosegawa, Division of Gastroenterology, Tohoku University Graduate School of Medicine, Sendai 980-8574, Japan

Author contributions: Hamada S and Masamune A contributed equally to this work; Hamada S and Masamune A designed the study and conducted the analysis; Masamune A and Shimosegawa T obtained the funding and directed the survey; Hamada S and Masamune A wrote the paper; and Shimosegawa T critically revised the manuscript for important intellectual content.

Supported by Grants from the Smoking Research Foundation to Masamune A.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Atsushi Masamune, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Division of Gastroenterology, Tohoku University Graduate School of Medicine, 1-1 Seiryo-machi, Aoba-ku, Sendai 980-8574, Japan. amasamune@med.tohoku.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-22-7177172
Fax: +81-22-7177177

Received: April 14, 2016
Peer-review started: April 18, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 22, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016
Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Acute pancreatitis (AP) is an acute inflammatory disease of the exocrine pancreas. In Japan, nationwide epidemiological surveys have been conducted every 4 to 5 years by the Research Committee of Intractable Pancreatic Diseases, under the support of the Ministry of Health, Labour, and Welfare of Japan. We reviewed the results of the nationwide surveys focusing on the severity assessment and changes in the therapeutic strategy for walled-off necrosis. The severity assessment system currently used in Japan consists of 9 prognostic factors and the imaging grade on contrast-enhanced computed tomography. By univariate analysis, all of the 9 prognostic factors were associated with AP-related death. A multivariate analysis identified 4 out of the 9 prognostic factors (base excess or shock, renal failure, systemic inflammatory response syndrome criteria, and age) that were associated with AP-related death. Receiver-operating characteristics curve analysis showed that the area under the curve was 0.82 for these 4 prognostic factors and 0.84 for the 9 prognostic factors, suggesting the comparable utility of these 4 factors in the severity assessment. We also examined the temporal changes in treatment strategy for walled-off necrosis in Japan according to the 2003, 2007, and 2011 surveys. Step-up approaches and less-invasive endoscopic therapies were uncommon in 2003 and 2007, but became popular in 2011. Mortality has been decreasing in patients who require intervention for walled-off necrosis. In conclusion, the nationwide survey revealed the comparable utility of 4 prognostic factors in the severity assessment and the increased use of less-invasive, step-up approaches with improved clinical outcomes in the management of walled-off necrosis.

Key words: Endoscopic necrosectomy; Diagnostic criteria; Epidemiology; Pancreatic pseudocyst; Systemic inflammatory response syndrome; Step-up approach;

Walled-off necrosis

Core tip: We analyzed the results of nationwide epidemiological surveys of acute pancreatitis in Japan to clarify the utility of the prognostic factor scores in the severity assessment and the trend in the treatment of walled-off necrosis. Among the 9 prognostic factors, 4 factors including base excess or shock, renal failure, systemic inflammatory response syndrome criteria, and age were associated with mortality by multivariate analysis. Receiver operating characteristics curve analysis demonstrated the comparable utility of these 4 factors to the 9 factors in the severity assessment. Less-invasive, step-up approaches with improved clinical outcomes have become popular in the management of walled-off necrosis.

Hamada S, Masamune A, Shimosegawa T. Management of acute pancreatitis in Japan: Analysis of nationwide epidemiological survey. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6335-6344 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6335.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6335

INTRODUCTION

Acute pancreatitis (AP) is an acute inflammatory disease of the pancreas characterized by the sudden onset of upper abdominal pain, nausea, emesis, and an increase of pancreatic digestive enzymes in the serum and urine[1-4]. Most patients with AP have a mild disease that only affects the pancreas and resolves spontaneously. However, 10%-20% of the patients develop necrosis of the pancreas and multiple organ failure, which may eventually lead to death[1-5]. AP is the most common digestive disease requiring hospitalization in the United States[6].

In Japan, nationwide epidemiological surveys of AP have been conducted every 4 to 5 years mainly by the Research Committee of Intractable Pancreatic Diseases, with the support of the Ministry of Health, Labour, and Welfare of Japan[5,7,8]. The latest survey was conducted targeting the AP patients treated in 2011[5]. A detailed analysis of the nationwide surveys would enable us to understand the current status of AP management and the issues that remain to be clarified. In this editorial, we review the results of the surveys focusing on the severity assessment and changes in the therapeutic strategy for walled-off necrosis (WON).

OVERVIEW OF THE NATIONWIDE SURVEY

The nationwide survey consisted of 2-staged postal surveys. The first survey aimed to estimate the number of patients with AP and the second survey aimed to elucidate the clinical-epidemiological characteristics of AP. The departments of internal medicine, gastroenterology, surgery, digestive surgery, and emergency all over Japan were listed and subjected to stratified random sampling. The sampling rates were 5%, 10%, 20%, 40%, 80%, 100%, and 100% for the stratum of hospitals with < 100 beds, ⩽ 100 to < 200 beds, ⩽ 200 to < 299 beds, ⩽ 300 to < 399 beds, ⩽ 400 to < 499 beds, ⩽ 500 beds, and the affiliated university hospitals, respectively. Several departments treating many pancreatic disease patients and emergency centers were classified as a special stratum, and all of them were selected. In the first survey, a questionnaire requesting a report of the number of patients with AP was sent. The second questionnaire regarding detailed clinicoepidemiological information was sent to departments reporting on the first questionnaire that they had seen AP patients. Clinical data of 2694 patients with AP were collected in the 2011 survey[5], of 2256 patients in the 2007 survey[7], and of 1779 patients in the 2003 survey[8]. In the 2011 survey, the second questionnaire included questions about etiology/symptoms, laboratory data, imaging findings, therapy, complications, and prognosis. The laboratory data and clinical symptoms that were included in the prognostic factor scores in addition to contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CECT) imaging grade were primarily assessed at admission[5].

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF AP IN JAPAN

The latest nationwide epidemiological survey estimated the total number of AP patients in Japan in 2011 as 63080, with an overall prevalence of 49.4 per 100000 persons[5]. Previous studies showed that the incidence of AP in the United States was 10.6 per 10000 person-years in 2009 and that it was 14.7 per 100000 person-years in the Netherlands in 2005[9,10]. These results suggest that the incidence of AP might vary among different populations. The estimated number of AP patients increased to 57560 in the 2007 survey[7] from 35300 in the 2003 survey[8]. AP mostly occurs in those middle-aged to elderly. In the 2011 survey, the mean age of the AP patients was 60.9, and the sex ratio (male to female) was 1.9. The most frequently affected ages were 60 to 69 years in men and 70 to 79 years in women. The three major

Table 1 The severity scoring criteria of acute pancreatitis defined by the Japanese Ministry of Health, Labor and Welfare (2008)

Prognostic factor	
Base excess ≤ -3 mEq/L or shock (systolic blood pressure < 80 mmHg)	
PaO_2 ≤ 60 mmHg or respiratory failure (needing respirator)	
BUN ≥ 40 mg/dL (or Cr ≥ 2 mg/dL) or	
oliguria (< 400 mL/d even after fluid therapy)	
Elevation of LDH twice or more than upper normal limit	
Platelet count ≤ 100000/μL	
Serum calcium ≤ 7.5 mg/dL	
CRP ≥ 15 mg/dL	
Meeting 3 or more SIRS criteria (body temperature > 38 ℃ or < 36 ℃, heart rate > 90/min, respiratory rate > 20/min or $PaCO_2$ < 32 torr, WBC > 12000/μL or < 4000/μL or > 10% immature leukocyte)	
Age ≥ 70 yr	
Classification of CT grade by contrast-enhanced CT	
Factor 1: Extent of extrapancreatic inflammation	
To the anterior pararenal extraperitoneal space	0 point
To the root of mesocolon	1 point
Further than inferior pole of kidney	2 points
Factor 2: Less-enhanced region of pancreas (divided into three segments; head, body and tail)	
Localized within one segment or limited to peripheral pancreas	0 point
Occupies two segments	1 point
Occupies more than two segments	2 points
Sum of factor 1 and factor 2 ≤ 1	grade 1
Sum of factor 1 and factor 2 = 2	grade 2
Sum of factor 1 and factor 2 ≥ 3	grade 3

Severe acute pancreatitis is defined as fulfilling 3 or more criteria of prognostic factors or revealing CT grade 2 or more. BUN: Blood urea nitrogen; Cr: Creatinine; CRP: C-reactive protein; CT: Computed tomography; LDH: Lactate dehydrogenase; SIRS: Systemic inflammatory response syndrome; WBC: White blood cells.

causes of AP are alcohol, biliary, and idiopathic. Alcohol was the leading cause (46.2%) in men, followed by biliary (19.7%), and idiopathic (13.4%). Biliary was the leading cause (40.3%) in women followed by idiopathic (22.8%) and alcohol (9.9%). The age distribution differed according to the etiology. Alcoholic pancreatitis was most frequently seen from ages 50 to 59, whereas biliary or idiopathic pancreatitis cases increased according to age. In cases of severe AP, the proportion of alcoholic cases increased from 30.9% in 2007 to 42.0% in 2011. A case control study in Japan showed that the risk of alcoholic AP increased as daily alcohol consumption increased[11]. The odds ratio (95%CI) for daily alcohol consumption of 20 ≤ to < 40 g, 40 ≤ to < 60 g, 60 ≤ to < 80 g, 80 ≤ to < 100 g, and ≥ 100 g were 1.7 (0.9-3.0), 3.1 (1.6-5.9), 4.2 (2.1-8.2), 5.3 (2.4-12.0), and 6.4 (3.4-12.4), respectively[11]. Another Japanese study showed that women developed alcohol-related AP 6.8 years earlier compared to men[12,13]. The duration of alcohol consumption was shorter, and the cumulative amounts of alcohol consumption before the development of alcoholic AP were smaller in women than in men. In 2011, the overall mortality of AP was found to be 2.6% and in severe AP, 10.1%[5].

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA OF SEVERE AP IN JAPAN

The severity assessment system for AP (2008) currently used in Japan consists of prognostic factor scores based on 9 clinical parameters and the CECT imaging grade (Table 1). If the total prognostic factor score is ≥ 3 or the CECT grade is ≥ 2, the patient is defined as having severe AP. The previous severity assessment system proposed in 2002 was more complicated than the 2008 system; it consisted of 5 clinical parameters, 10 blood test items, and CT findings. In cases with a severity score ≥ 2, systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) criteria and age should be considered in the severity score[14,15]. Several reports have shown that the severity scoring system of AP (2008) is more useful and easier for the prediction of prognosis than the previous one (2002)[14,15]. Of note, diagnosis of severe AP can be performed by CECT grade only, which enables diagnosis of AP with a low prognostic factor score. However, no previous large-scale multicenter studies have validated this system. To validate the prognostic factor score in the diagnosis of severe AP, we analyzed the nationwide survey in 2011. The outcome was AP-related hospital mortality assessed by a univariate logistic regression analysis. A predictive accuracy receiver-operating characteristics (ROC) curve was generated, and the area under the curve (AUC) was calculated. This study was approved by the Ethics Committee of Tohoku University Graduate School of Medicine (article#: 2015-1-519).

Data about the prognostic factor scores at admission and prognosis were available for 1990 cases with AP. The mortality increased according to the prognostic factor score (Figure 1A). In patients whose prognostic factor scores were ≥ 6, the mortality was as high as 43.5%. Data about the CT grades at admission and prognosis were available in 1618 cases with AP. The mortality increased according to the CT grade (Figure 1B). As shown in Figure 2, mortality was higher if any of the prognostic scores appeared. By univariate analysis, all of the prognostic factors were associated with AP-related death (Table 2). A multivariate analysis identified 4 out of the 9 prognostic factors (base excess or shock, renal failure, SIRS criteria, and age) that were associated with AP-related death. We also performed ROC curve analysis to evaluate the predictive accuracy of the prognostic factor scores for mortality. As shown in Figure 3A, the AUC of the prognostic factor score for predicting mortality was 0.84. If the cut-off point was set at a severity score of 3, as adopted currently, the sensitivity reached 0.53 with a specificity of 0.94. If the cut-off point was set at a severity score of 2, the sensitivity reached 0.75 with a specificity of 0.83. If we adopted the 4 prognostic factors found to be associated with AP-related death by a multivariate analysis, the AUC for predicting mortality was 0.82 (Figure 3B). The

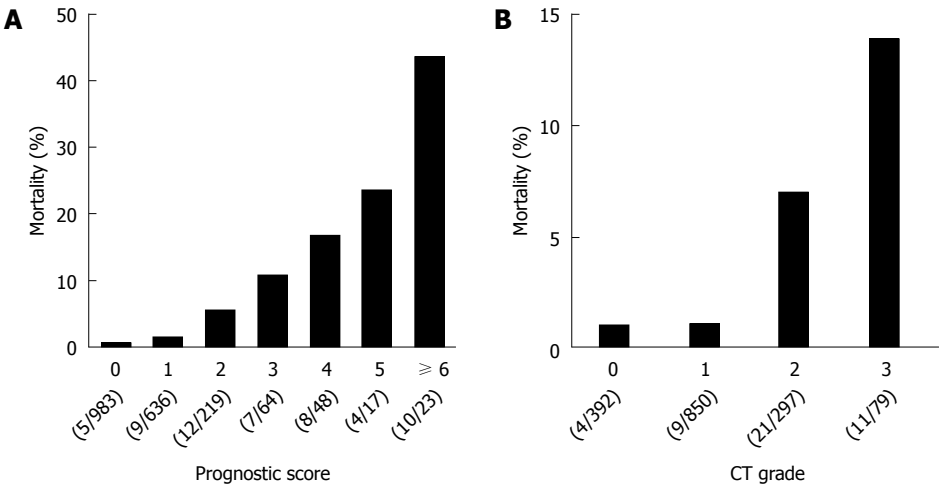


Figure 1 Mortality of the acute pancreatitis patients with the prognostic factor scores and computed tomography grades. A: Mortality of the 1990 AP patients stratified by the prognostic factor scores is shown. B: Mortality of the 1618 AP patients stratified by the CT grades is shown. AP: Acute pancreatitis; CT: Computed tomography.

Table 2 Univariate and multivariate analysis showing association of each prognostic factor with acute pancreatitis-related death

	OR (95%CI)	*P* value
Univariate analysis		
BE ⩽ -3 mEq/L or shock	12.1 (6.8-21.1)	< 0.0001
PaO_2 ⩽ 60 mmHg or respiratory failure	11.1 (5.7-20.9)	< 0.0001
BUN ⩾ 40 mg/dL (or Cr ⩾ 2 mg/dL or oliguria)	14.9 (8.3-26.4)	< 0.0001
Elevation of LDH (twice or more than UNL)	4.2 (2.3-7.4)	< 0.0001
Platelet count ⩽ 100000/μL	4.2 (1.6-9.5)	0.007
Serum calcium ⩽ 7.5 mg/dL	14.1 (7.2-26.8)	< 0.0001
CRP ⩾ 15 mg/dL	3.6 (1.9-6.7)	0.0003
Meeting 3 or more SIRS criteria	8.4 (4.7-14.8)	< 0.0001
Age ⩾ 70 yr	3.2 (1.8-5.5)	< 0.0001
Multivariate analysis		
BE ⩽ -3 mEq/L or shock	2.8 (1.3-6.1)	0.012
PaO_2 ⩽ 60 mmHg or respiratory failure	1.9 (0.8-4.4)	0.130
BUN ⩾ 40 mg/dL (or Cr ⩾ 2 mg/dL or oliguria)	3.8 (1.8-7.8)	0.0008
Elevation of LDH (twice or more than UNL)	1.5 (0.7-3.0)	0.280
Platelet count ⩽ 100000/μL	1.8 (0.6-4.9)	0.300
Serum calcium ⩽ 7.5 mg/dL	2.5 (0.99-6.1)	0.051
CRP ⩾ 15 mg/dL	1.0 (0.4-2.2)	0.980
Meeting 3 or more SIRS criteria	2.3 (1.0-4.7)	0.038
Age ⩾ 70 yr	3.5 (1.9-6.6)	< 0.0001

BE: Base excess; BUN: Blood urea nitrogen; CRP: C-reactive protein; LDH: Lactate dehydrogenase; SIRS: Systemic inflammatory response syndrome; UNL: Upper normal limit.

sensitivity reached 0.62 with a specificity of 0.92 if the cut-off point was set at score 2. These values were comparable or superior to those for the current severity assessment system using the 9 prognostic factor scores.

In the 2011 survey, the mortality of the patients defined as severe AP solely based on the prognostic factor scores was 7.5%[5]. The mortality of patients defined as severe AP based on the CT grade was 4.2%. The mortality was 25.9% in patients who were defined as severe for both prognostic factors and CT grade. In the revised Atlanta classification, severe AP is defined as the presence of persistent organ failure for more than 48 h[16]. In other words, using the Atlanta classification, severe AP cannot be diagnosed within 48 h of AP onset. CECT, especially used in combination with the prognostic factor score, could be useful to diagnose severe AP in patients at high risk of death in the early stages of AP.

FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH SEVERITY AND PROGNOSIS

Because the nationwide epidemiological survey collected detailed laboratory data and information about the clinical course of patients, analysis of the nationwide survey data would be useful to identify and validate factors associated with the severity and prognosis of patients with AP. For example, Kikuta *et al*[17] reported that impaired glucose tolerance might have an impact on the development and clinical outcome of AP based on an analysis of the nationwide survey in 2007. They showed that idiopathic, but not alcoholic or biliary, AP patients with diabetes mellitus had higher mortality than those without diabetes mellitus.

Very recently, Nawaz *et al*[18] from the United States reported that elevated serum triglycerides (TGs) were associated with organ failure in AP. They showed that elevated serum TGs measured within 72 h of presentation were correlated with persistent organ failure. Because the body size and contribution of hypertriglyceridemia (HTG) to the etiology of AP vary among different populations[5,19], we validated the clinical impact of HTG in 998 AP patients using the 2011 survey data[20]. The frequencies of severe AP, persisting renal failure, and the necessity for intensive care unit

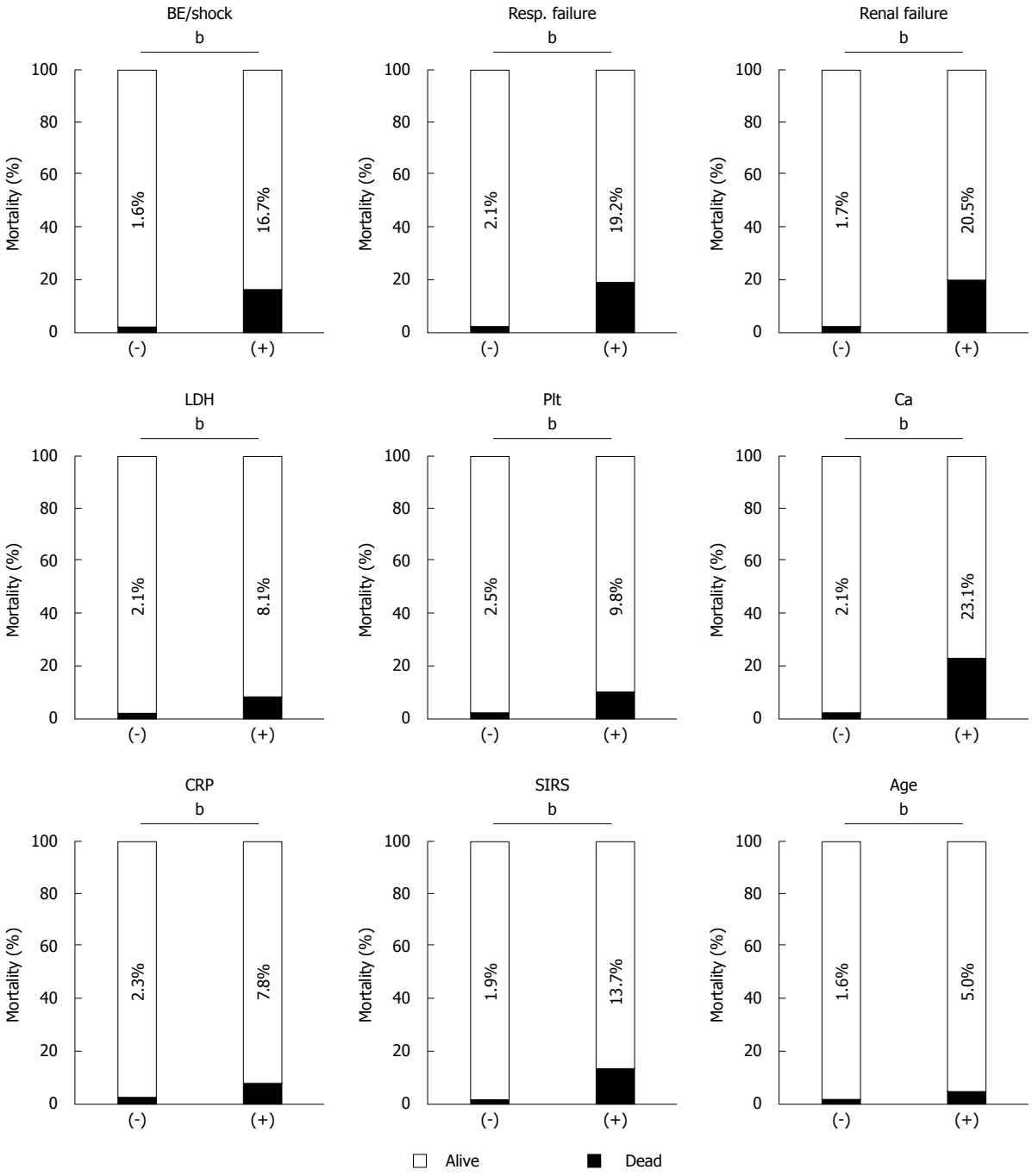


Figure 2 Mortality was higher if any of the prognostic factor items were positive. The mortality of the AP patients was assessed in the presence or absence of each prognostic factor items. $^{b}P < 0.01$ (χ^2 test). AP: Acute pancreatitis; BE: Base excess; BUN: Blood urea nitrogen; SIRS: Systemic inflammatory response syndrome; LDH: Lactate dehydrogenase.

treatment were higher in patients whose serum TG exceeded 200 mg/dL. The high-TG group patients were younger, predominantly male, obese, diabetic, and alcoholic.

However, the characteristics of the subjects were different between our study and the study by Nawaz *et al*[18]. The nationwide survey covered a wide range of hospitals and was not restricted to tertiary referral hospitals. The frequency of persistent organ failure was relatively low (4.9%) compared to the study by Nawaz *et al*[18] (26.9%). Subjects with a body mass index > 30% accounted for 43.8% of the patients in the study by Nawaz *et al*[18], whereas they accounted for only 4.8% in our study. Nevertheless, the nationwide survey confirmed that subjects with HTG are at high-risk for organ failure and require intensive care.

Age is also an important prognostic factor of patients with severe AP and it is included in the Japanese severity assessment system as well as in Ranson's criteria[21]. The mortality rate of severe AP patients younger than 30 years was 0%, but in those older than 80 years it exceeded 20%[5]. The high

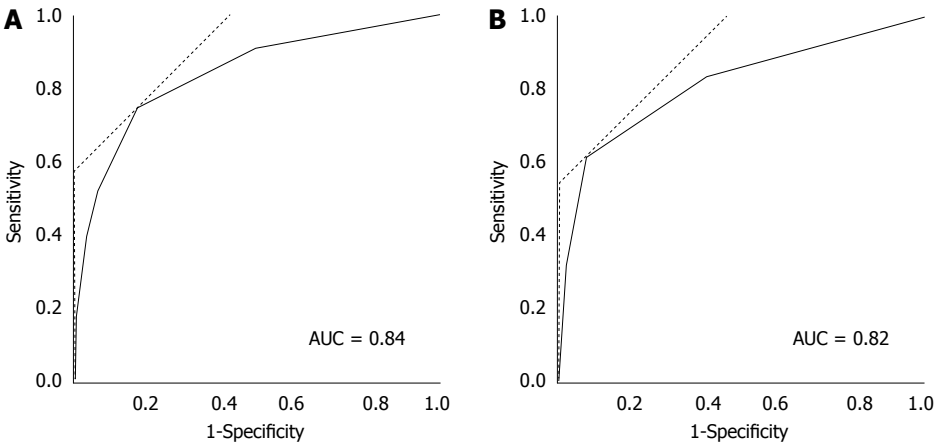


Figure 3 Receiver-operating characteristics curve analysis of the prognostic factor items. ROC curve analysis of the 9 (A) or 4 (B) prognostic factor items. AUC for predicting mortality was 0.84 for the 9 prognostic factor items and 0.82 for the 4 prognostic factors (base excess or shock, renal failure, SIRS criteria and age) and was found to be associated with AP-related death by a multivariate analysis. SIRS: Systemic inflammatory response syndrome; ROC: Receiver-operating characteristics curve; AUC: Area under the curve; AP: Acute pancreatitis.

Table 3 Comparison of the characteristics of patients with or without walled-off necrosis in 2011 survey *n* (%)

	WON (+), *n* = 124	WON (-), *n* = 226	*P* value
Median age (IQR)	59 (50-70)	62.5 (50-74)	0.190[1]
Male sex	102 (82.3)	164 (72.6)	0.042[2]
Severe pancreatitis	56 (45.2)	65 (28.8)	0.002[2]
Severity score ⩾ 3	19 (15.3)	23 (10.2)	0.160[2]
Severity score < 3	105 (84.7)	203 (89.8)	
CT grade ⩾ 2	51 (41.1)	54 (23.9)	0.001[2]
CT grade < 2	51 (41.1)	137 (60.6)	
CT grade unknown	22 (17.7)	35 (15.5)	
Etiology			
Biliary	23 (18.6)	42 (18.6)	0.980[2]
Alcohol	52 (41.9)	96 (42.5)	
Idiopathic	20 (16.1)	37 (16.4)	
Others	26 (21.0)	43 (19.0)	
Unknown	3 (2.4)	8 (3.5)	

[1]*t*-test; [2]χ^2 test. CT: Computed tomography; IQR: Interquartile range; WON: Walled-off necrosis.

mortality rate in aged patients was mainly due to organ failure, such as cardiovascular, respiratory, and renal failure. The higher mortality in aged patients will remain an important issue in the management of AP in aging countries like Japan.

MANAGEMENT OF WON IN JAPAN

The revised Atlanta classification for AP[16] defined WON, a disease entity previously known as pancreatic abscess or pseudocyst, as an encapsulated collection of necrotic tissue that develops later than 4 wk after the onset of AP. Infection of the necrotic tissue often requires prompt intervention, that had previously been performed primarily by open surgical approaches[22]. However, open surgical debridement of necrotizing pancreatitis is accompanied by a high hospital mortality of up to 23%[23].

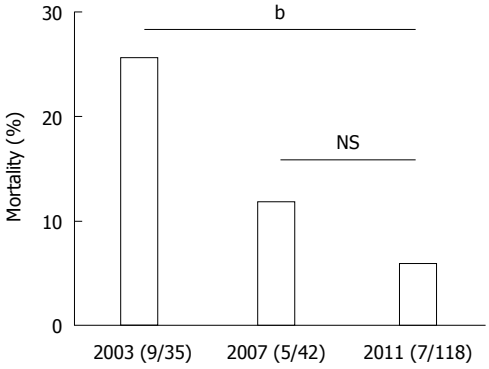


Figure 4 Temporal changes in mortality of patients with walled-off necrosis. Mortality of the patients with WON in the 2003, 2007, and 2011 surveys is shown. [b]$P < 0.01$ (χ^2 test). NS: Not significant; WON: Walled-off necrosis.

Recent advances in less-invasive, endoscopic approaches for WON treatment resulted in better clinical outcomes. A randomized, multicenter study clearly showed better clinical outcomes from the step-up approach over primary open necrosectomy in patients with necrotizing pancreatitis[24]. The management of WON has shifted from open surgical treatment to minimally invasive approaches. Due to its lower morbidity rate compared to surgical approaches, endoscopic treatment may be the preferred first-line approach for the treatment of WON[25].

To clarify the temporal changes in the treatment strategy and prognosis of WON in patients with AP in Japan, we analyzed the anonymous data of local complications collected by the 3 nationwide surveys in 2003, 2007, and 2011[5,7,8]. In the 2011 survey, information about the local complications was available for 350 patients. Because the term "pseudocyst" had been often used to describe a condition resembling WON in Japan, patients with pseudocysts later than 4 wk after the AP onset were included in this study.

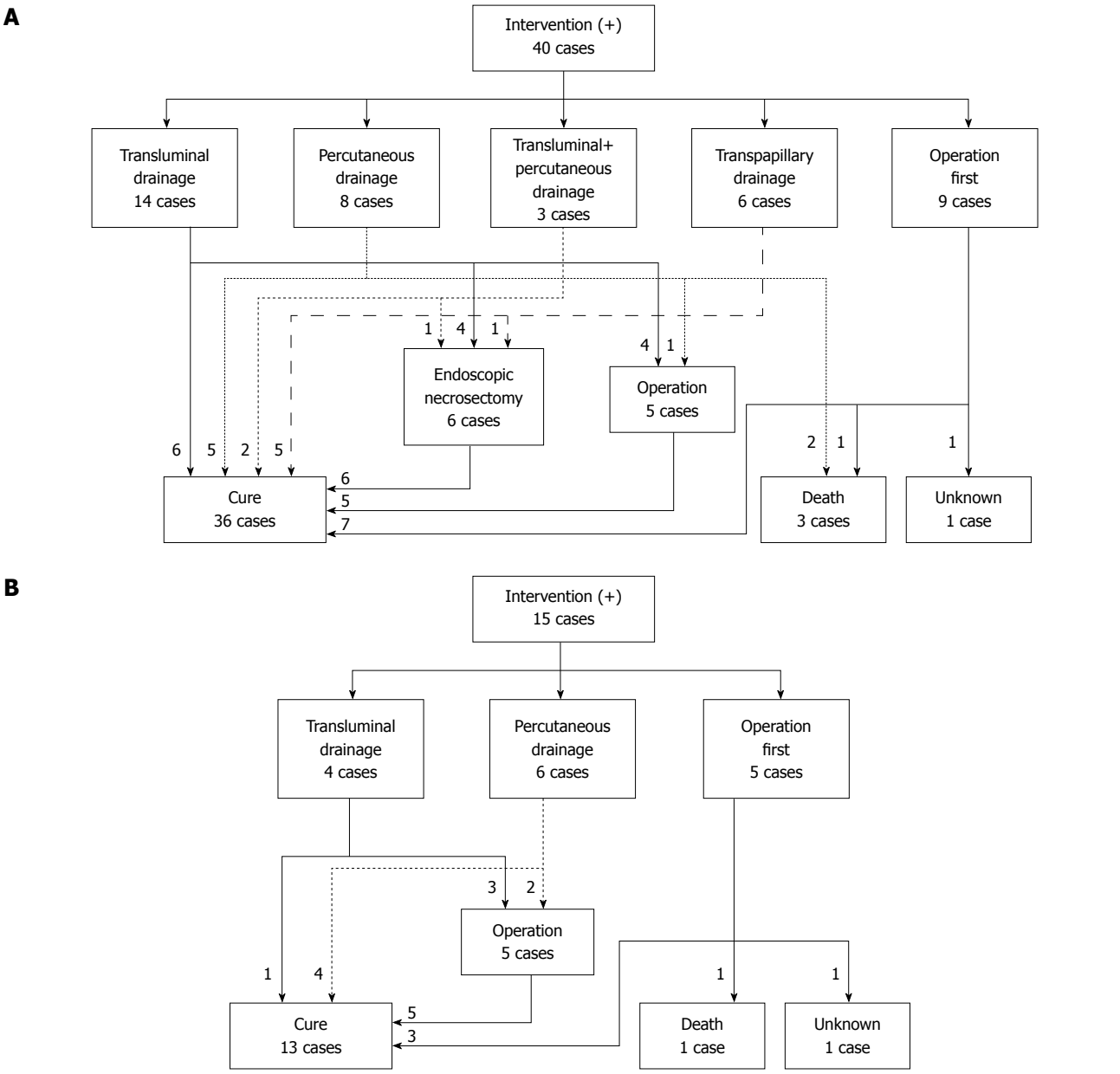


Figure 5 Flow-chart of treatment strategy for walled-off necrosis in the patients in the 2011 (A) and 2007 (B) surveys. A: The treatment strategy for the 40 patients who required intervention for WON in the 2011 survey is shown. B: The treatment strategy for the 15 patients who required intervention for WON in the 2007 survey is shown. WON: Walled-off necrosis.

At the time of the 2011 survey, the revised Atlanta classification for AP was not published yet and the term "WON" had not been well recognized in Japan.

The characteristics of the patients with WON (n = 124) were compared to those without WON (n = 226) (Table 3). Patients with WON were predominantly male, had more severe AP, and had higher CT imaging grades. In the 2003 and 2007 surveys, patients with pancreatic abscesses and/or intraabdominal abscesses were analyzed (n = 36 and n = 45, respectively). These patients were regarded herein as those with WON. The mortality of patients with WON due to AP-related events was 25.7% (9/35) in 2003, 11.9% (5/42) in 2007, and 5.9% (7/118) in 2011 (Figure 4). The mortality of AP patients with WON was significantly lower in 2011 compared to that in 2003 (P = 0.0008, χ^2 test).

Forty patients in the 2011 survey, 15 in the 2007 survey, and 25 patients in the 2003 survey required interventions for WON. In the 2011 survey, 9 of the 40 patients received open surgery as an initial treatment (Figure 5A). The other 31 patients received drainage therapies *via* transluminal, percutaneous, or transpapillary routes. Eighteen of the 31 patients were cured by drainage therapies alone. Endoscopic necrosectomy and surgery were performed in 6 and 5 patients, respectively. These 11 patients that received step-up approaches (drainage plus endoscopic necrosectomy or surgery) were cured. In the 2007 survey, 5 out of the 15 patients received surgery first

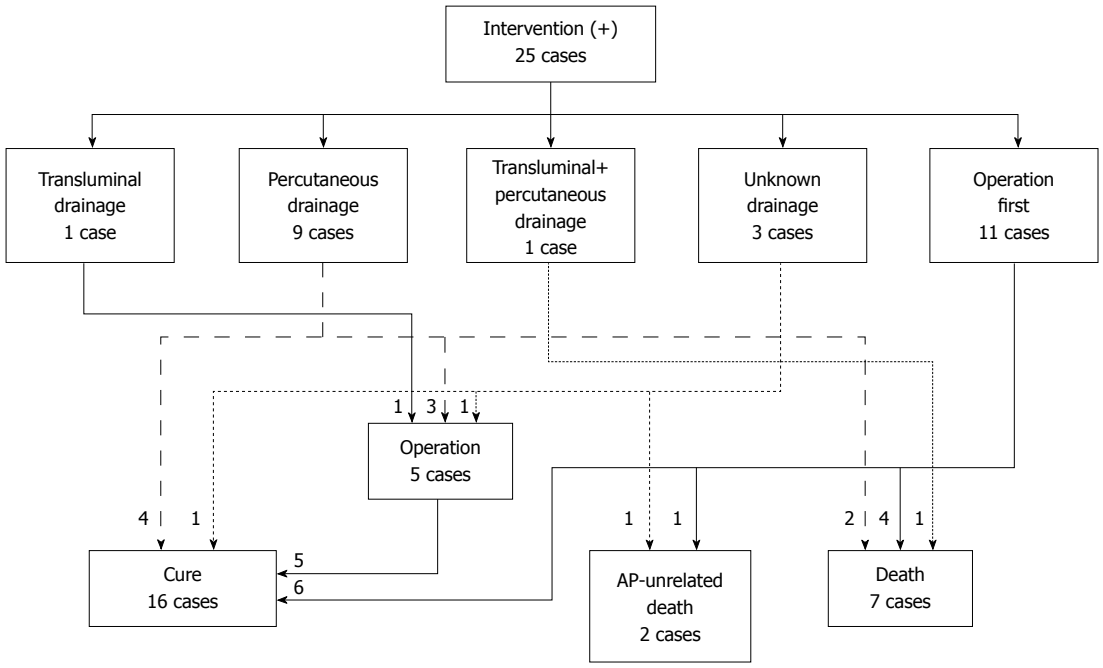


Figure 6 Flow-chart of treatment strategy for walled-off necrosis in the acute pancreatitis patients in the 2003 survey. The treatment strategy for the 25 patients who required intervention for WON in the 2003 survey is shown. AP: Acute pancreatitis WON: Walled-off necrosis.

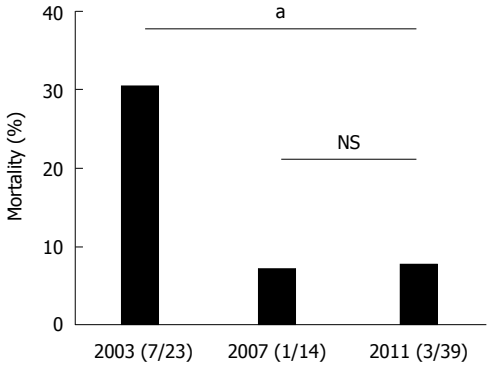


Figure 7 Temporal changes in mortality of patients with walled-off necrosis who received intervention. Mortality of the patients with WON in the 2003, 2007, and 2011 surveys is shown. $^{a}P < 0.05$ (χ^2 test). NS: Not significant; WON: Walled-off necrosis.

(Figure 5B). The other patients received drainage therapies and half of these patients were cured. The remaining 5 patients required surgery, and all of these patients were cured. In the 2003 survey, 11 out of 25 patients received surgery first (Figure 6). Among these patients, 4 patients died due to AP-related events. Other patients received drainage therapies, and 3 patients died. Five patients were cured by drainage therapies only and 5 patients required additional surgery (Figure 6).

The mortality of patients with WON receiving interventions was significantly lower in 2011 than that in 2003 (Figure 7). The mortality of the patients who required interventions was 30.4% (7/23) in 2003, 7.1% (1/14) in 2007, and 7.7% (3/39) in 2011 (excluding those with AP-unrelated deaths and unknown outcomes). In the 2003 survey, 44% (11/25) of the patients received surgery first treatment, and this ratio was reduced to 22.5% (9/40) in the 2011 survey. It is assumed that the proportion of patients receiving surgery first treatment has been decreasing further in recent years, because endoscopic necrosectomy has become popular since 2011[25]. Mortality would be further reduced by technical improvements in endoscopic interventions, such as balloon dilatation of a punctured tract, the placement of multiple plastic stents and a biflanged metal stent optimized for re-intervention[26,27].

Less-invasive endoscopic approaches for WON were accompanied by lower mortality, but several complications have been reported. Bleeding is the most common complication, followed by perforation and other rare complications[28]. Failure to control bleeding by an endoscopic approach will result in surgery or interventional radiology. A recent report described a standardized approach for endoscopic necrosectomy that could reduce the complication ratio, as defined by the assessment and management checklist for WON[29]. Such guidelines for the required equipment and backup preparations will further improve the clinical outcomes of WON treatment.

CONCLUSION

We reviewed the latest nationwide survey of AP in Japan. Nationwide surveys conducted regularly have provided us with updated information on the management of AP on a large, multicenter scale in Japan. Future studies on unsolved issues, including

the development of a more accurate and convenient severity assessment system and the optimization of therapeutic algorithms for the treatment of WON, would contribute to improved outcomes in this intractable disease.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are grateful to Drs. Makoto Otsuki and Yasuyuki Kihara for the 2003 nationwide survey.

REFERENCES

1 **Frossard JL**, Steer ML, Pastor CM. Acute pancreatitis. *Lancet* 2008; **371**: 143-152 [PMID: 18191686 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)60107-5]

2 **Bakker OJ**, Issa Y, van Santvoort HC, Besselink MG, Schepers NJ, Bruno MJ, Boermeester MA, Gooszen HG. Treatment options for acute pancreatitis. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 462-469 [PMID: 24662281 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2014.39]

3 **Wu BU**, Banks PA. Clinical management of patients with acute pancreatitis. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1272-1281 [PMID: 23622137 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.01.075]

4 **Afghani E**, Pandol SJ, Shimosegawa T, Sutton R, Wu BU, Vege SS, Gorelick F, Hirota M, Windsor J, Lo SK, Freeman ML, Lerch MM, Tsuji Y, Melmed GY, Wassef W, Mayerle J. Acute Pancreatitis-Progress and Challenges: A Report on an International Symposium. *Pancreas* 2015; **44**: 1195-1210 [PMID: 26465949 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000500]

5 **Hamada S**, Masamune A, Kikuta K, Hirota M, Tsuji I, Shimosegawa T. Nationwide epidemiological survey of acute pancreatitis in Japan. *Pancreas* 2014; **43**: 1244-1248 [PMID: 25084001 DOI: 10.1097/mpa.0000000000000200]

6 **Peery AF**, Dellon ES, Lund J, Crockett SD, McGowan CE, Bulsiewicz WJ, Gangarosa LM, Thiny MT, Stizenberg K, Morgan DR, Ringel Y, Kim HP, Dibonaventura MD, Carroll CF, Allen JK, Cook SF, Sandler RS, Kappelman MD, Shaheen NJ. Burden of gastrointestinal disease in the United States: 2012 update. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 1179-1187.e1-3 [PMID: 22885331 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.08.002]

7 **Satoh K**, Shimosegawa T, Masamune A, Hirota M, Kikuta K, Kihara Y, Kuriyama S, Tsuji I, Satoh A, Hamada S. Nationwide epidemiological survey of acute pancreatitis in Japan. *Pancreas* 2011; **40**: 503-507 [PMID: 21499203 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e318214812b]

8 **Otsuki M**, Hirota M, Arata S, Koizumi M, Kawa S, Kamisawa T, Takeda K, Mayumi T, Kitagawa M, Ito T, Inui K, Shimosegawa T, Tanaka S, Kataoka K, Saisho H, Okazaki K, Kuroda Y, Sawabu N, Takeyama Y. Consensus of primary care in acute pancreatitis in Japan. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 3314-3323 [PMID: 16733846 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v12.i21.3314]

9 **McNabb-Baltar J**, Ravi P, Isabwe GA, Suleiman SL, Yaghoobi M, Trinh QD, Banks PA. A population-based assessment of the burden of acute pancreatitis in the United States. *Pancreas* 2014; **43**: 687-691 [PMID: 24694835 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000123]

10 **Spanier B**, Bruno MJ, Dijkgraaf MG. Incidence and mortality of acute and chronic pancreatitis in the Netherlands: a nationwide record-linked cohort study for the years 1995-2005. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 3018-3026 [PMID: 23716981 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i20.3018]

11 **Kume K**, Masamune A, Ariga H, Shimosegawa T. Alcohol Consumption and the Risk for Developing Pancreatitis: A Case-Control Study in Japan. *Pancreas* 2015; **44**: 53-58 [PMID: 25386904 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000256]

12 **Masamune A**, Kume K, Shimosegawa T. Sex and age differences in alcoholic pancreatitis in Japan: a multicenter nationwide survey. *Pancreas* 2013; **42**: 578-583 [PMID: 23508016 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e31827a02bc]

13 **Masamune A**. Alcohol Misuse and Pancreatitis: A Lesson from Meta-Analysis. *EBioMedicine* 2015; **2**: 1860-1861 [PMID: 26844260 DOI: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2015.11.030]

14 **Otsuki M**, Takeda K, Matsuno S, Kihara Y, Koizumi M, Hirota M, Ito T, Kataoka K, Kitagawa M, Inui K, Takeyama Y. Criteria for the diagnosis and severity stratification of acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 5798-5805 [PMID: 24124324 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i35.5798]

15 **Ueda T**, Takeyama Y, Yasuda T, Kamei K, Satoi S, Sawa H, Shinzeki M, Ku Y, Kuroda Y, Ohyanagi H. Utility of the new Japanese severity score and indications for special therapies in acute pancreatitis. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 453-459 [PMID: 19308309 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0026-x]

16 **Banks PA**, Bollen TL, Dervenis C, Gooszen HG, Johnson CD, Sarr MG, Tsiotos GG, Vege SS. Classification of acute pancreatitis--2012: revision of the Atlanta classification and definitions by international consensus. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 102-111 [PMID: 23100216 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302779]

17 **Kikuta K**, Masamune A, Shimosegawa T. Impaired glucose tolerance in acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 7367-7374 [PMID: 26139984 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i24.7367]

18 **Nawaz H**, Koutroumpakis E, Easler J, Slivka A, Whitcomb DC, Singh VP, Yadav D, Papachristou GI. Elevated serum triglycerides are independently associated with persistent organ failure in acute pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2015; **110**: 1497-1503 [PMID: 26323188 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2015.261]

19 **Valdivielso P**, Ramírez-Bueno A, Ewald N. Current knowledge of hypertriglyceridemic pancreatitis. *Eur J Intern Med* 2014; **25**: 689-694 [PMID: 25269432 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2014.08.008]

20 **Hamada S**, Masamune A, Kikuta K, Shimosegawa T. Clinical Impact of Elevated Serum Triglycerides in Acute Pancreatitis: Validation from the Nationwide Epidemiological Survey in Japan. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2016; **111**: 575-576 [PMID: 27125713 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2015.421]

21 **Ranson JH**. Etiological and prognostic factors in human acute pancreatitis: a review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1982; **77**: 633-638 [PMID: 7051819]

22 **Forsmark CE**, Baillie J. AGA Institute technical review on acute pancreatitis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 2022-2044 [PMID: 17484894 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.03.065]

23 **Cheung MT**, Li WH, Kwok PC, Hong JK. Surgical management of pancreatic necrosis: towards lesser and later. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci* 2010; **17**: 338-344 [PMID: 20464564 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-009-0251-y]

24 **van Santvoort HC**, Besselink MG, Bakker OJ, Hofker HS, Boermeester MA, Dejong CH, van Goor H, Schaapherder AF, van Eijck CH, Bollen TL, van Ramshorst B, Nieuwenhuijs VB, Timmer R, Laméris JS, Kruyt PM, Manusama ER, van der Harst E, van der Schelling GP, Karsten T, Hesselink EJ, van Laarhoven CJ, Rosman C, Bosscha K, de Wit RJ, Houdijk AP, van Leeuwen MS, Buskens E, Gooszen HG. A step-up approach or open necrosectomy for necrotizing pancreatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1491-1502 [PMID: 20410514 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908821]

25 **Yasuda I**, Nakashima M, Iwai T, Isayama H, Itoi T, Hisai H, Inoue H, Kato H, Kanno A, Kubota K, Irisawa A, Igarashi H, Okabe Y, Kitano M, Kawakami H, Hayashi T, Mukai T, Sata N, Kida M, Shimosegawa T. Japanese multicenter experience of endoscopic necrosectomy for infected walled-off pancreatic necrosis: The JENIPaN study. *Endoscopy* 2013; **45**: 627-634 [PMID: 23807806 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1344027]

26 **Fabbri C**, Luigiano C, Maimone A, Polifemo AM, Tarantino I, Cennamo V. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided drainage of pancreatic fluid collections. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **4**: 479-488 [PMID: 23189219 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v4.i11.479]

27 **Mukai S**, Itoi T, Baron TH, Sofuni A, Itokawa F, Kurihara T, Tsuchiya T, Ishii K, Tsuji S, Ikeuchi N, Tanaka R, Umeda J, Tonozuka R, Honjo M, Gotoda T, Moriyasu F, Yasuda I. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided placement of plastic vs. biflanged metal stents for therapy of walled-off necrosis: a retrospective single-center series. *Endoscopy* 2015; **47**: 47-55 [PMID: 25264765 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1377966]

28 **van Brunschot S**, Fockens P, Bakker OJ, Besselink MG, Voermans RP, Poley JW, Gooszen HG, Bruno M, van Santvoort HC. Endoscopic transluminal necrosectomy in necrotising pancreatitis: a systematic review. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 1425-1438 [PMID: 24399524 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3382-9]

29 **Thompson CC**, Kumar N, Slattery J, Clancy TE, Ryan MB, Ryou M, Swanson RS, Banks PA, Conwell DL. A standardized method for endoscopic necrosectomy improves complication and mortality rates. *Pancreatology* 2016; **16**: 66-72 [PMID: 26748428 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2015.12.001]

P- Reviewer: Bramhall S, Chung MJ, Fujino Y, Inal V
S- Editor: Gong ZM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6345

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6345-6361
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Colorectal Cancer: Global view

Mechanisms of resistance to anti-epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in metastatic colorectal cancer

Vincenzo Sforza, Erika Martinelli, Fortunato Ciardiello, Valentina Gambardella, Stefania Napolitano, Giulia Martini, Carminia della Corte, Claudia Cardone, Marianna L Ferrara, Alfonso Reginelli, Giuseppina Liguori, Giulio Belli, Teresa Troiani

Vincenzo Sforza, Erika Martinelli, Fortunato Ciardiello, Stefania Napolitano, Giulia Martini, Carminia della Corte, Claudia Cardone, Marianna L Ferrara, Teresa Troiani, Oncologia medica, Dipartimento di Medicina Clinica e Sperimentale "F. Magrassi e A. Lanzara", Seconda Università degli Studi di Napoli, 80131 Naples, Italy

Valentina Gambardella, Department of Medical Oncology, Biomedical Research Institute INCLIVA, University of Valencia, 46940 Valencia, Spain

Alfonso Reginelli, Department of Internal and Experimental Medicine, Magrassi-Lanzara, Institute of Radiology, Seconda Università di Napoli, 80131 Naples, Italy

Giuseppina Liguori, Department of Pathology, Istituto Nazionale Tumori "Fond. Pascale" - IRCCS, 80142 Napoli, Italy

Giulio Belli, Department of General and Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Surgery, S. M. Loreto Nuovo Hospital, 80131 Naples, Italy

Correspondence to: Vincenzo Sforza, MD, Oncologia medica, Dipartimento di Medicina Clinica e Sperimentale "F. Magrassi e A. Lanzara", Seconda Università degli Studi di Napoli, via S. Pansini 5, 80131 Naples, Italy. vincenzosforza83@gmail.com
Telephone: +39-81-5666729
Fax: +39-81-5666745

Received: March 29, 2016
Peer-review started: April 4, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: June 11, 2016
Accepted: July 6, 2016
Article in press: July 6, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

The prognosis of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) remain poor despite the impressive improvement of treatments observed over the last 20 years that led to an increase in median overall survival from 6 mo, with the only best supportive care, to approximately 30 mo with the introduction of active chemotherapy drugs and targeted agents. The monoclonal antibodies (moAbs) cetuximab and panitumumab, directed against the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), undoubtedly represent a major step forward in the treatment of mCRC, given the relevant efficacy in terms of progression-free survival, overall survival, response rate, and quality of life observed in several phase Ⅲ clinical trials among different lines of treatment. However, the anti-EGFR moAbs were shown only to be effective in a subset of patients. For instance, *KRAS* and *NRAS* mutations have been identified as biomarkers of resistance to these drugs, improving the selection of patients who might derive a benefit from these treatments. Nevertheless,

Author contributions: Sforza V performed research and wrote the paper; Martinelli E , Ciardiello F, Gambardella V, Napolitano S, Martini G, della Corte C, Cardone C, Ferrara ML, Reginelli A, Liguori G, Belli G and Troiani T contributed critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No conflict of interest.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

several other alterations might affect the response to these drugs, and unfortunately, even the responders eventually become resistant by developing secondary (or acquired) resistance in approximately 13-18 mo. Several studies highlighted that the landscape of responsible alterations of both primary and acquired resistance to anti-EGFR drugs biochemically converge into MEK-ERK and PIK3CA-AKT pathways. In this review, we describe the currently known mechanisms of primary and acquired resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs together with the various strategies evaluated to prevent, overcame or revert them.

Key words: Metastatic colorectal cancer; Epidermal growth factor receptor; Resistance; Mutation; *KRAS*; *NRAS*; *BRAF*; *PIK3CA*; *MET*; Monoclonal antibodies

Core tip: The treatment with anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) monoclonal antibodies cetuximab and panitumumab in metastatic colorectal cancer is unfortunately burdened by the lack of clinical and molecular biomarkers that correlate with treatment response. Primary and acquired resistance have been shown to be the major culprits of the failure of anti-EGFR treatments. However, a deeper understanding of the molecular basis underlying both types of resistance has led to the proposal of several approaches designed to prevent, overcome or revert the drug resistance. Nevertheless, these approaches deserve further clinical investigation to allow us to use EGFR-targeted therapies more effectively in the correct population.

Sforza V, Martinelli E, Ciardiello F, Gambardella V, Napolitano S, Martini G, della Corte C, Cardone C, Ferrara ML, Reginelli A, Liguori G, Belli G, Troiani T. Mechanisms of resistance to anti-epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in metastatic colorectal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6345-6361 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6345.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6345

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is considered the third most commonly diagnosed cancer in males and the second in females worldwide, with an estimated 1.4 million new cases in 2012. In the same year, CRC was responsible for 693900 deaths, making it the fourth leading cause of cancer-related death in men and the third in women[1]. Although the advances in screening and medical treatments have led a trend in reduction of both incidence and mortality, almost 20% of patients present metastases at the time of diagnosis, and approximately 35% of patients will subsequently develop a metastatic disease[2]. The prognosis of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) remains poor despite the impressive improvement observed over the last 20 years that led to an increase in median overall survival (OS) from 6 mo, with the only best supportive care (BSC), to approximately 30 mo with the introduction of active chemotherapy drugs, such as fluropyrimidines, oxaliplatin, irinotecan, TAS-102, and of targeted drugs, such as bevacizumab, cetuximab, panitumumab, aflibercept, and regorafenib[3,4]. However, despite these great advances, the efficacy of these treatments remains limited and substantially unpredictable. The reasons for this restricted success are firstly the development of various mechanisms of resistance to treatments and secondly the lack of clinical and molecular biomarkers that correlate with treatment response. This drug resistance is particularly relevant for drugs that target the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR).

EGFR is a tyrosine kinases receptor (RTK) and a member of the ErbB family to which HER2/neu (ERBB2), HER3 (ErbB3), and HER4 (ErbB4) also belong. EGFR is expressed in various cancers and in 60% to 80% of CRC, where it plays a key role in tumour development and progression. Various ligands (EGF, TGFα, amphiregulin, and epiregulin) bind specific extracellular domains (ECDs) of EGFR, inducing homo- and hetero-dimerization with other ErbB members and the subsequent activation of several pathways, including RAS-RAF-MEK-ERK and PIK3CA-AKT cascades, the SRC family kinases, PLCγ-PKC, and STATs. These pathways are involved in several cellular processes including tumour growth, inhibition of apoptosis, angiogenesis, invasion, and metastasis[5,6] (Figure 1).

For this reason, EGFR has been proposed as a target for anticancer therapies, and to date, two monoclonal antibodies (moAbs) against the EGFR, cetuximab and panitumumab, have been registered for the treatment of mCRC patients. Cetuximab, is a human-mouse chimeric monoclonal antibody (IgG1 subtype), whereas panitumumab is a fully human anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody (IgG2κ subtype). These antibodies bind the ECD of EGFR, blocking ligand-induced EGFR tyrosine kinase activation and causing EGFR cellular internalization and degradation[7,8]. Furthermore, cetuximab activates antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. Cetuximab and panitumumab provided similar OS benefits in *KRAS* exon 2 wild-type (WT), chemotherapy-refractory mCRC in the ASPECCT trial[9].

EGFR-targeted therapies, both as single agents or in combination with chemotherapy, undoubtedly represent a major step forward in the treatment of mCRC, given the relevant efficacy in terms of progression-free survival (PFS), OS, response rate (RR), as well as quality of life, observed in several phase Ⅲ clinical trials among different lines of treatment[3]. However, not all patients will benefit from these treatments. Indeed, cetuximab and panitumumab

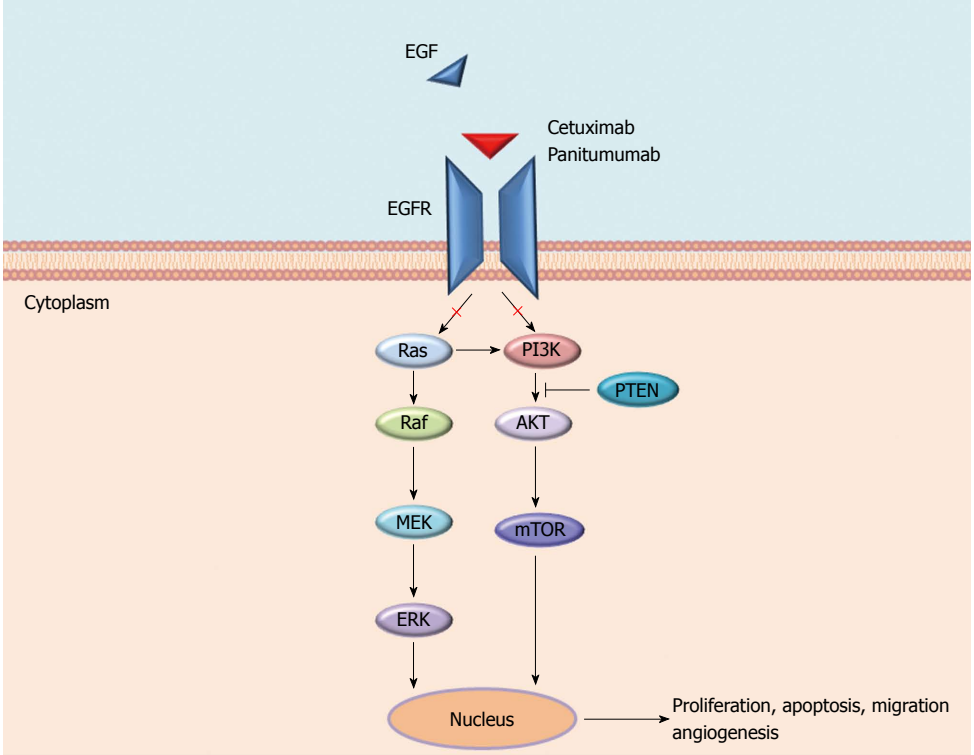


Figure 1 Epidermal growth factor receptor and its downstream signaling pathway. Binding of ligands such as epidermal growth factor (EGF) to Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) activates downstream Ras/ERK and PI3K/Akt pathways and regulates various physiological processes. The anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) cetuximab and panitumumab block the activation of these pathways.

when used as single agents in unselected patients with chemotherapy-refractory mCRC, achieved a RR of only 10%[10,11]. This low RR suggests that the majority of tumours harbour genetic alterations in proteins involved in EGFR pathway that impair the response to the anti-EGFR moAbs (intrinsic or primary resistance). Moreover, even the subset of patients who initially respond to these treatments will ultimately become refractory in approximately 3-18 mo by developing secondary (or acquired) resistance to anti-EGFR drugs[12]. These phenomenon might be explained if we consider that CRC, and in particular metastatic disease, is highly heterogeneous[13]. This heterogeneity implies that tumours from the same organ might have a completely different molecular landscape (inter-tumour heterogeneity) as well as different sensitivity to targeted agents, depending on which pathway is driving their growth. Furthermore, even in the same lesion, we might find clones with different sensitivity to drugs (intra-tumour heterogeneity) depending on the different molecular alterations harboured[14]. Unfortunately, to date, the molecular characteristics that allow the response to anti-EGFR moAbs are not yet completely understood, and the lack of predictive biomarkers do not permit the selection of patients who will potentially respond to these drugs. For instance, differently from other cancers, mutations in the EGFR or in downstream effectors of its signalling cascades (*e.g.*, KRAS, NRAS, BRAF, PIK3CA and PTEN loss) are not predictive of the efficacy of targeted agents[15,16].

In the era of targeted medicine, translational and clinical research efforts are being spent to better understand the complex molecular landscape of tumours to increasingly tailor the treatments to the molecular characteristics of the specific patient. The aim of this review is to provide an overview of the molecular mechanisms that underlie both primary and acquired resistance to anti-EGFR drugs in mCRC and to discuss possible future ways to circumvent them.

PRIMARY AND ACQUIRED RESISTANCE

Two sides of the same coin

The mechanisms of resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs can be categorized as primary or acquired according to the time of onset in respect to the treatment with these drugs, and also, although without a strict boundary, by the molecular alterations underlying them (Figure 2). Generally, the most frequent mechanisms of resistance are a result of genomic alterations in downstream effectors (*e.g.*, KRAS, NRAS, BRAF, and PIK3CA) of the EGFR signalling pathway, while the activation of other RTKs, such as MET or ERBB2 and their pathways, are more rare mechanisms[17-19]. In both cases, unless the EGFR continues to be pharmacologically blocked, an alternative signal transducer becomes activated, escaping the receptor inhibition. Notably, these genetic alterations have been identified as both mechanisms of primary and acquired resistance, and almost all of them biochemically converge on the activation of

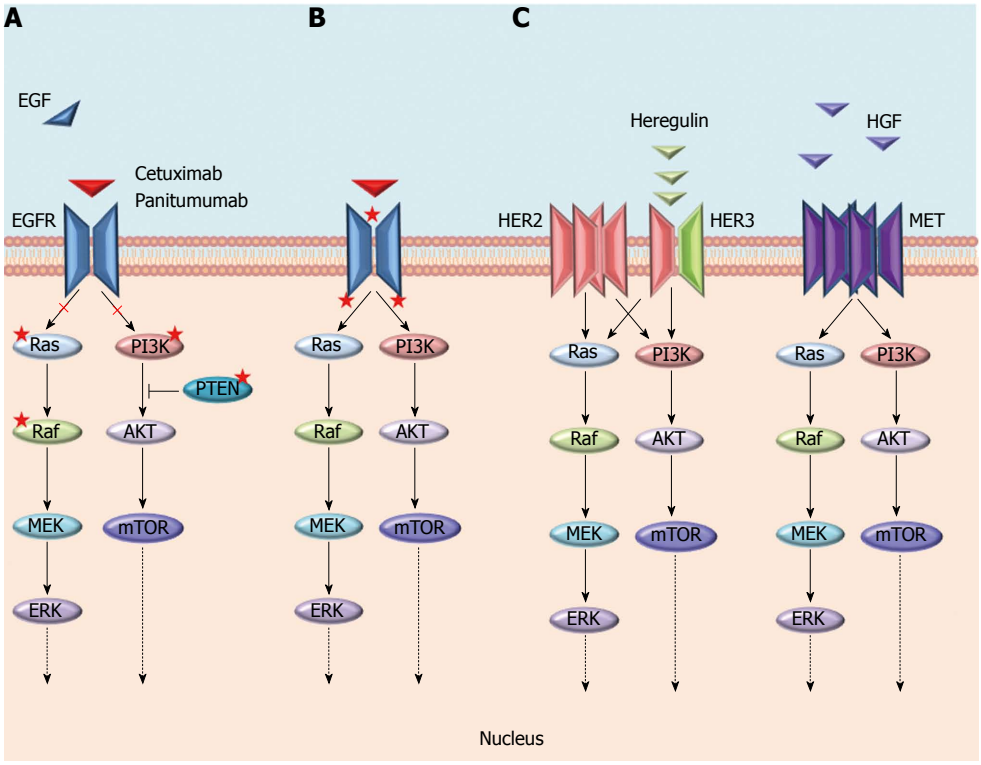


Figure 2 Mechanisms of resistance to anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies in metastatic colorectal cancer. A: Activating mutations of EGFR effectors, such as RAS, BRAF and PI3KCA, or PTEN loss of function, cause persistent activation of downstream signaling regardless of EGFR inhibition; B: Mutations in extracellular domain of EGFR inhibit cetuximab binding, but not panitumumab, mediating acquired resistance. Mutations in kinase domain of EGFR led pathways activation in the context of acquired resistance; C: Amplification/activation of alternative receptors such as HER2 or MET, can bypass the EGFR blockade and mediate pathways activation. EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor.

the MEK-ERK pathway[12]. The only exceptions are represented by rare mutations either in the ECD or in the tyrosine kinase domain of EGFR that have only been described as acquired mechanisms of resistance in patients treated with anti-EGFR moAbs[20-22]. Furthermore, different from primary resistance, acquired resistance is generally sustained by several genetic alterations that concomitantly emerge at treatment failure[22]. These aberrations may arise either as new genetic alterations, due to treatment-induced mutagenesis and tumour-intrinsic genomic instability (*e.g.*, mutations in ECD or tyrosine kinase domain of EGFR), or through the positive selection pressure of anti-EGFR therapies on a resistant subpopulation of cells already present in the original tumour[13]. Because of the overlapping of resistance mechanisms, the next chapters are focused on the description of single molecular alterations and whether the resulting mechanisms of resistance can be categorized as primary, secondary or both.

RAS

RAS is a family of three small GTPases (KRAS, NRAS, and HRAS) that work as downstream effectors within the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway, coupling EGFR with intracellular signalling cascades[23]. The KRAS gene has been found mutated in approximately 40% of CRCs, mostly in exon 2 codons 12 (70%-80%) and 13 (15%-20%), whereas only a small percentage has been found in codons 61 (5%) and 146 (5%). These point mutations impair the intrinsic ATPase activity of RAS and cause the accumulation of mutant proteins in the active conformation (GTP-bound). The latter leads to constitutive MAPK pathway activation, regardless of the EGFR inhibition, that results in mitogenic and antiapoptotic signalling[17]. The mutational status of KRAS is highly concordant between the primary tumour and the metastasis, suggesting it has a role in the early processes of carcinogenesis[24].

In the early clinical trials in which cetuximab and panitumumab were used as monotherapies to treat patients with chemorefractory mCRC, an objective response rate (ORR) of only 10% was achieved[10,11]; these findings motivated researchers to elucidate the factors that were negatively impacting the efficacy of these drugs. In particular, retrospective analysis of KRAS mutational status from tumour samples of several randomized trials were able to strongly support the hypothesis that the *KRAS* mutations in codons 12 and 13 (exon 2) were associated with the lack of patient response to EGFR moAbs[17,25-27]. All together, the evidence led the American and European health authorities in 2009 to restrict the use of panitumumab and cetuximab only to the approximately 60% of patients with *KRAS* exon 2 WT tumours[26,28-31].

Nevertheless, because not all KRAS WT patients benefit from treatment with EGFR-directed therapy, researchers have tried to identify additional biomarkers of resistance that could explain this heterogeneity in clinical response. In particular, the retrospective analysis of the PRIME trial assessed the efficacy and safety of panitumumab plus oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin (FOLFOX4) compared with chemotherapy alone in first-line mCRC patients, according to RAS (*KRAS* or *NRAS*) mutation status. The results suggested that even mutations occurring in exon 3 (comprising codons 59 and 61), and exon 4 (which includes codons 117 and 146) of KRAS as well as mutations in exons 2, 3 and 4 of NRAS (all together called "expanded RAS mutations") can also be predictive of resistance to anti-EGFR treatments. These data were subsequently confirmed by the analyses of other phase Ⅱ and Ⅲ clinical studies[32-36]. In these trials, the prevalence of the expanded RAS mutations in patients defined as WT at exon 2 of KRAS ranged from 15% to 27%. Thus, considering all KRAS and NRAS mutations, approximately 53% of patients with mCRC are considered to have mutations in RAS and, therefore, to be refractory to EGFR blockade[32-36]. In line with these findings, our group published the results from the phase Ⅱ CAPRI trial, in which patients with *KRAS* exon 2 WT mCRC were treated with FOLFIRI plus cetuximab in first-line treatment and were then randomized at progression to receive FOLFOX alone or FOLFOX plus cetuximab. Our results confirmed the lack of benefit of cetuximab among the subset of patients harbouring KRAS or NRAS mutations[37]. Furthermore, in 2014, Sorich *et al*[16] published a meta-analysis of nine randomized controlled trials (RCTs) evaluating the role of EGFR antibodies in all lines of mCRC therapy. The meta-analysis revealed that treatment with anti-EGFR antibodies had superior efficacy in terms of PFS and OS for all *RAS* WT tumours compared with the expanded RAS mutant subgroup, and the efficacy was not significantly different between the expanded RAS mutant and *KRAS* exon 2 mutant subgroups. These results suggest that tumours with one of the new RAS mutations are more appropriately grouped with the tumours with a *KRAS* exon 2 mutation (forming the any *RAS* mutant group), rather than with tumours that do not have any RAS mutations[16]. These results demonstrated the prominent role of RAS mutations as biomarkers of primary resistance to anti-EGFR therapies. In response to the meta-analysis, the EMA and FDA have updated the prescribing indications for panitumumab and cetuximab, restricting their use to patients with *RAS* WT mCRC[38,39].

As said before, genetic alterations in RAS are even the most common molecular mechanisms that drive secondary resistance to anti-EGFR therapy in 50% to 80% of patients. These mutations may be present in a small fraction of cells within the tumour before treatment initiation and then may be selected by pressure from the anti-EGFR treatments or arise as a result of continued mutagenesis during the treatment[40,41]. Different from primary resistance, secondary resistance generally arises from more than one driver and arises at different frequencies. This pattern has been observed in both cell lines made resistant to cetuximab or panitumumab as well as in samples obtained from patients[42,43]. It is worth noting that the frequency of mutations at codon 61 of exon 3, in either *KRAS* or *NRAS* genes, is more prevalent in the acquired setting[22,42]. However, the KRAS gene has been found not only mutated but also amplified, although in a very small percentage of patients (0.7%), and this amplification has been observed as a mechanism in both primary and acquired resistance[43].

However, preclinical data and retrospective analysis from phase Ⅲ trials highlighted that not all *KRAS* mutations have the same role in mediating EGFR-resistance, and some patients with *KRAS* mutated tumours occasionally respond to anti-EGFR treatments. In particular, patients harbouring the *KRAS* G13D mutation have been found to achieve a benefit from cetuximab in both first-line and advanced lines of treatment[44,45]. A recently published meta-analysis of eight RCTs have assessed whether the efficacy of anti-EGFR mAbs for mCRC differs between tumours harbouring the *KRAS* G13D mutation and *KRAS* mutations other than the *KRAS* G13D mutation. The authors did not find any significant difference in terms of PFS or in OS between *KRAS* G13D and other *KRAS* mutations[46]. Schirripa *et al*[47] conducted a phase Ⅱ single-arm trial to provide prospective proof of the clinical benefit of cetuximab in *KRAS* G13D mutant mCRC patients. However, among 12 treated patients, no responses have been observed. Along the same lines, the Australasian Gastro-Intestinal Trials Group recently published the results of the phase Ⅱ ICE CREAM study (Irinotecan Cetuximab Evaluation and Cetuximab Response Evaluation Among Patients with a G13D Mutation), in which patients with G13D-mutated chemotherapy-refractory mCRC, who had progressed within 6 mo of irinotecan therapy, were randomly assigned to receive cetuximab with or without irinotecan. Among the 51 patients recruited, there was no statistically significant improvement in disease control at 6 mo with either cetuximab monotherapy or cetuximab plus irinotecan. Furthermore, no responses were observed with single-agent cetuximab[48].

The intra-tumour heterogeneity noted that CRC is often formed of clones with different mutational profiles and that in many tumours only a fraction of neoplastic cells carries the mutant allele. Given these considerations, Normanno *et al*[49] have proposed a quantitative assessment of *KRAS* mutation load as a tool to discriminate whether a low content of *KRAS* mutant alleles in mCRC cells may affect the response anti-EGFR moAbs. Although they found that patients with low *KRAS* mutation content responded to EGFR-based therapy, this benefit did not translate in a PFS advantage; indeed, PFS was similar to patients with

high KRAS tumours. The authors have suggested that it might be explained by either the expansion of a small fraction of cells carrying a resistance mutation or by the coexistence, in several low *KRAS* mutated tumours, of other mutations such as *BRAF* and *PIK3CA*. A quantitative assessment of mutational load might be useful to identify the priority target for therapeutic intervention; however, the complexity of tumour mutational profiles suggests that for many tumours combinations of target-based agents will likely to be necessary to control tumour growth[49].

Considering the key role of *RAS* mutations as mechanisms of resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs, many approaches have been investigated to target these mutations. One of the earlier approaches was the inhibition of RAS farnesylation that showed a potent antitumour activity in preclinical studies; however, this result was not confirmed in clinical experience. Several other approaches have been used to target RAS: blocking downstream effectors such as MEK and PIK3CA, identification of synthetic lethal (SL) interactions with mutant *KRAS*, or the use of small molecule inhibitors of KRAS[42,50-54]. Recently, a combination therapy co-targeting MEK and CDK4/6 with trametinib and palbociclib, respectively, was well tolerated and highly efficacious in *KRAS*-mutant CRC patient tumour-derived PDX[55,56]. However, a clinical evaluation of these agents is currently lacking. A biological strategy with Reovirus Serotype 3 - Dearing Strain (Reolysin®), a naturally occurring ubiquitous, non-enveloped human Reovirus, has been explored in *KRAS*-mutated mCRC because reovirus has been shown to replicate selectively in RAS mutant cells, causing cell lysis. A multicentre phase I study of Reolysin® in combination with FOLFIRI and bevacizumab in naïve patients with *KRAS*-mutated mCRC is ongoing[57]. To date, RAS remains the most elusive gene to target; thus, patients with *RAS* mutations are currently treated with chemotherapy with or without antiangiogenic drugs[3].

BRAF mutations

Mutation in other downstream effectors of the MAPK pathway beyond RAS may invalidate the effects of anti-EGFR moAbs, cetuximab and panitumumab. One example is BRAF, a serine/threonine protein kinase that is found mutated in approximately 10%-15% of CRCs[58]. The most common BRAF alteration is the point mutation V600E in the kinase domain, accounting for 80% of all *BRAF* mutations[59]. The BRAF V600E mutation is generally mutually exclusive with RAS mutations. However, recent data from the CAPRI trial demonstrated, in 12 out of 15 *BRAF* mutated tumour samples, the coexistence of *BRAF* mutations with other mutations, including *TP53, KRAS,* and *PIK3CA* exon 9 and exon 20[37,60].

The BRAF V600E mutation represents a biomarker of poor prognosis in the CRC population. This finding emerged from analyses of a large cohort of patients enrolled in several clinical trials that have consistently demonstrated the association of the *BRAF* V600E mutation with an increased colon cancer-specific mortality[61,62].

Although the prognostic role of *BRAF* mutation is well established, its role as a predictive biomarker to anti-EGFR treatments is not clearly understood because of both its low prevalence and the prominent negative prognostic role. Several studies have showed that patients harbouring a *BRAF* mutation do not achieve any benefit from anti-EGFR treatments in second-line or in later lines of therapy[62-64]. However, data from the first-line setting are less clear. For instance, in both CRYSTAL and OPUS studies, the addition of cetuximab to FOLFIRI and FOLFOX, respectively, slightly improved PFS and OS compared to chemotherapy alone[31,65]. On the contrary, recent studies in patients receiving first-line anti-EGFR moAbs in combination with chemotherapy did not show a statistically significant correlation between *BRAF* V600E mutation and response[32,34]. Also a recent meta-analysis of nine phase Ⅲ trials revealed that the addition of an anti-EGFR moAbs to first-line doublet chemotherapy for patients with *BRAF*-mutant disease was not associated with improved OS, PFS or ORR[66]. In conclusion, the small percentage of *BRAF* mutated patients, together with a lack of prospective studies, do not allow one to establish with certainty the predictive role of BRAF mutation for treatment with cetuximab and panitumumab.

BRAF mutation has been recognized, by circulating tumour DNA (ctDNA) analysis, also as a mechanism of acquired resistance in patients who first responded to anti-EGFR therapy[22].

In a phase Ⅱ trial, the BRAF inhibitor vemurafenib has been tested in previously treated patients with *BRAF*-mutated mCRC showing only a modest clinical activity (5% of RR) with respect to the impressive results (RR of 48% to 67%) obtained in *BRAF*-mutated melanoma[67]. In cell line models, it has been found that resistance to the BRAF-targeted approach seems to be caused by either persistent activation of the EGFR signalling pathway or the activation of other pathways such as PIK3CA/AKT[68,69]. These findings showed that the biology of BRAF activation is more heterogeneous in CRC than in other tumours and suggested a potential role for a combination approach. Indeed, the combination of dabrafenib and trametinib (BRAF/MEK inhibitor therapy) obtained better results than vemurafenib monotherapy in 43 patients with BRAF V600-mutant mCRC[70]. Furthermore, the first trials testing the double blockade with the BRAF inhibitor vemurafenib and either the EGFR inhibitor panitumumab or a PI3KCA/mTOR inhibitor demonstrated modest activity[71,72]. To date, several clinical trials are assessing the effects of BRAF inhibitors in combination with MEK, EGFR and PI3K inhibitors[73].

The use of ERK inhibitors to suppress MAPK activity is another potential strategy because it has been

observed that MAPK is usually upregulated in patients resistant to RAF inhibitors[74].

It is worth noting that the TRIBE study, comparing FOLFOXIRI plus bevacizumab *vs* FOLFOXIRI in first-line mCRC patients, showed a relevant hazard ratio for progression of 0.55 in favour of the combination with bevacizumab (interaction test $P = 0.320$), in the subgroup of 28 patients with tumours harbouring BRAF mutations[75].

PIK3CA mutations and loss of PTEN

The PIK3CA/AKT/mTOR signalling pathway is associated with several RTKs, including EGFR[76]. Alterations in genes that encode for these proteins play an important role in the development of malignant tumours and could impair the response to EGFR-targeted moAbs. In particular, activating mutations of *PIK3CA*, mostly occurring in exons 9 and 20, have been found in 10%-20% of CRCs, and in preclinical models, they were found to be predictive of a lack of benefit from cetuximab treatment[77-79]. In a retrospective analysis of 110 mCRC patients treated with anti-EGFR moAbs, a statistically significant association between *PIK3CA* mutations and primary resistance to treatment with cetuximab or panitumumab was reported in the population of patients with KRAS WT tumours[80]. A large retrospective analysis of 1022 tumour samples of patients treated with cetuximab described two important findings: (1) only *PIK3CA* exon 20 mutations was predictive of a lack of response to cetuximab in the *KRAS* WT subpopulation; and (2) *PIK3CA* exon 9 mutations and *KRAS* mutations were associated, suggesting a secondary role of *PIK3CA* exon 9 mutations on cetuximab efficacy[17]. Thereafter, two meta-analyses also described a negative predictive role of only *PIK3CA* mutations in exon 20 in terms of ORR, PFS, and OS in WT *KRAS* mCRC patients treated with anti-EGFR therapies[81,82]. Nevertheless, is difficult to evaluate the precise role of *PIK3CA* mutations with respect to anti-EGFR resistance because they are mostly found concurrently with *KRAS* or *BRAF* mutations and because of their low incidence, especially the exon 20 mutations. *PIK3CA* mutations have also been identified as mechanisms of secondary resistance in samples from patients who experienced relapse after treatment with EGFR-targeted moAbs[21].

Several data have also suggested a role of PIK3CA mutations as a prognostic biomarker. Indeed, an increased colon cancer-specific mortality has been found in patients with *PIK3CA*-mutated tumours, compared with WT ones. However, only the coexistence of *PIK3CA* exon 9 and 20 mutations has been reported to be associated with a worse prognosis than WT tumours[83]. Furthermore, *PIK3CA* mutations seem to predict a worse prognosis only in *KRAS* WT patients compared with *KRAS*-mutated[84].

PIK3CA signalling pathway may also be pathologically activated by the loss of PTEN, found in 30% of CRCs[85]. Firstly, Frattini *et al*[86] found in a cohort of patients treated with cetuximab and irinotecan that of 11 patients with lower PTEN expression in tumour samples at immunohistochemistry (IHC), none of the patients responded to treatment when compared with patients with normal PTEN expression who achieved a partial response. PTEN loss was also associated with shorter OS in patients with *KRAS* WT tumours treated with a cetuximab-based regimen[64]. In a retrospective analysis of a cohort of patients treated with cetuximab plus irinotecan, Loupakis *et al*[87] showed that PTEN IHC results were not completely concordant between primary tumours and metastases and that the PTEN status of primary tumours was not significantly predictive of cetuximab activity. Conversely, when PTEN IHC was performed on metastases, 36% of the patients with PTEN-positive samples responded to therapy compared with patients who harboured a PTEN-negative status. They also showed that patients who harboured both a KRAS WT tumour and PTEN-positive metastasis were much more likely to benefit from treatment in terms of RR, PFS, and OS. However, in the NCIC CTG/AGITG CO.17 trial, where 572 patients with pretreated mCRC were randomly assigned to receive cetuximab or BSC, no statistical significance was found with respect of the loss of PTEN and the clinical outcome of patients treated with cetuximab[88].

PTEN loss has been identified only as a primary mechanism of resistance to cetuximab and panitumumab. However, to date, *PIK3CA* mutations and PTEN expression have not been validated as predictive markers for EGFR moAbs therapy in mCRC for several key reasons. Firstly, PIK3CA and PTEN alterations mostly co-occur with *RAS* and/or *BRAF* mutations; secondly, the expression of PTEN protein by IHC is burdened by conflicting interpretations; and lastly, only PTEN expression in metastases, but not in primary tumours, has been associated with outcome[89].

Targeted treatments against PIK3CA or its downstream effectors such as mTOR or AKT in patients harbouring *PIK3CA* mutations or *PTEN* loss, although interesting, did not show a meaningful clinical activity[90,91]. A greater therapeutic effect has been observed when these drugs have been combined with RTK inhibitors in preclinical models; however, this benefit has not been confirmed in phase I trials[92]. Clinical trials evaluating the combination of the mTOR inhibitor everolimus with panitumumab and irinotecan in first-line mCRC patients are ongoing[93]. The combination of a PIK3CA inhibitor and a MEK inhibitor in preclinical models was more effective than MEK and PI3K/mTOR inhibition, and several clinical trials are exploiting this combination[94-96]. Furthermore, low-dose aspirin seems to improve survival in patients with *PIK3CA*-mutant tumours by aspirin-mediated COX2 inhibition, but this observation requires further prospective evaluation[97].

HER2/HER3

HER2 is a member of the ErbB family and is a recognized target in breast cancer[6]. This receptor does not

have any known ligand, and its activation is provided by the hetero-dimerization with other ligand-bound receptors of the same family. The preferred partner is HER3, and the heterodimer HER2-HER3 represents a powerful activator of intracellular signalling[98]. HER2 amplification allows the activation of MEK-ERK cascade regardless of the signalling of EGFR.

In two different studies, HER2 amplification has been highlighted as a predictor of lack of response to anti-EGFR antibodies[99,100]. In 2011, Bertotti *et al*[19] recognized HER2 amplification as a potential mechanism of primary resistance to cetuximab within a quadruple WT population (*KRAS*, *NRAS*, *BRAF*, and *PIK3CA* wild type) of immune-compromised mice (xenopatients) transplanted with fragments of CRC samples from patients. Firstly, the authors observed that HER2 was amplified only in a small percentage (2%-3%) of genetically unselected CRC patients. However, a greater frequency of HER2 amplification was observed in *KRAS* WT patients resistant to cetuximab (13.6%) and in up to 36% of xenopatients in the subset of quadruple WT, in which treatment with cetuximab was ineffective. The authors also envisioned a possible role of HER2 as a positive predictor of response to HER2-targeting agents in CRC. Hence, they performed a multiarm xenotrial demonstrating that the association of a dual EGFR/HER2 small molecule inhibitor (lapatinib) and cetuximab or pertuzumab, a monoclonal antibody directed against EGFR/HER2 heterodimer, was active in the subset of cetuximab-resistant, quadruple-negative, HER2-amplified metastatic CRC xenopatients and was a feasible combination for clinical trials[19]. Based on these findings, Siena and colleagues designed the HERACLES trial, a multicentre open-label phase Ⅱ trial, assessing the RR of trastuzumab combined with either lapatinib (cohort A) or pertuzumab (cohort B), in *KRAS* exon 2 (codons 12 and 13) WT and HER2 amplified mCRC patients who were resistant to standard therapies, including anti-EGFRs. To date, the results from cohort A have been recently published. The authors reported a frequency of 5% (48 patients) of HER2-positive tumours among 914 patients screened for the trial. Of the 27 patients enrolled, eight (30%, 95%CI: 14-50) achieved an overall objective response, and the median duration of the responses was 38 wk. Median PFS was 21 wk (95%CI: 16-32), while median OS calculated post hoc was 46 wk (95%CI: 33-68). The authors reported that responses were significantly more common in tumours with high *HER2* gene copy number. Additionally, the PFS was longer in this population. Finally, the combination was well tolerated, with most toxic effects being grade 1 or 2. To date, HER2 is the first druggable target in mCRC that has been shown to be a good predictor of response to targeted treatments[99].

Data published by Yonesaka *et al*[99] demonstrated the role of HER2 signalling in the context of acquired resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs. Moreover, they reported that hyper-activation of HER2 signalling was not only led by HER2 amplification but also through the overproduction of heregulin, an HER3 ligand. Using resistant clones from cetuximab-sensitive cell lines, as well as plasma and tissue samples from cetuximab-treated mCRC patients, the authors found that patients with acquired resistance to cetuximab had an increased percentage of HER2 amplification in post-treatment samples (71%) compared to the proportion present in pretreatment tumour cells (14%). In the same way, heregulin levels in plasma and tumour samples were significantly higher in patients who experienced a disease progression on anti-EGFR therapy. This indicates that enhanced HER2 signalling confers not only primary but also acquired resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs by leading to persistent activation of ERK signalling[99].

Additionally, HER3 has been described to have a role as a potential biomarker of resistance to anti-EGFR treatments. In a cohort of metastatic CRC patients treated in second- or third-line therapy with irinotecan and cetuximab, HER3 overexpression was associated with shorter PFS and OS[101]. Moreover, HER3 has been found mutated in approximately 11% of CRC patients, and these mutations, even if HER2 is not amplified, may limit the responsiveness to EGFR inhibitors[102].

MEHD7945A is a humanized IgG1 mAb with dual anti HER3/EGFR activity. In multiple xenograft models, MEHD7945A was demonstrated to be significantly superior with respect to the monospecific EGFR targeting agents[103]. In a phase I study, promising results have been achieved among patients with pretreated mCRC; however, no benefit for MEHD7945A + FOLFIRI *vs* cetuximab + FOLFIRI has been observed in a phase Ⅱ randomized trial in KRAS WT mCRC patients refractory to oxaliplatin[104,105].

EGFR mutations

EGFR mutations in CRC represent a mechanism of resistance described only in the acquired setting and might occur in approximately 20% of patients treated with cetuximab and in only 1% of patients treated with panitumumab[106]. In particular, Montagut *et al*[20] discovered a point mutation in the ECD of EGFR (S492R) in a CRC cell line made resistant to cetuximab and also confirmed these data in a small percentage of patients who relapsed after cetuximab treatment. This mutation does not allow the binding of cetuximab to the receptor, but it still allows the binding of panitumumab; indeed, the authors reported the experience of a patient with this mutation who was treated with panitumumab and who achieved a response from treatment[20]. Recently, Arena *et al*[21] discovered several other mutations in the EGFR ECD. They analysed tumour samples (pre- and post-treatment with cetuximab) obtained from 37 mCRC patients with acquired resistance to cetuximab and found two novel mutations, R451C and K467T, in two patients. The authors also discovered several other novel EGFR variants (S464L, G465R and I491M)

in CRC cell lines made resistant to cetuximab. These mutations are located in the cetuximab-binding region, with the exception of the *R451C* mutation. Functionally, all of these mutations prevent binding of cetuximab, and only *R451C* and *K467T* mutations are permissive for interaction with panitumumab[21].

Furthermore, Bettegowda *et al*[22] also described mutations in the EGFR kinase domain at codons 714 and 794 that were identified as circulating mutations by cell-free DNA analysis only in the setting of acquired resistance.

One possible strategy to overcome the resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs mediated by mutations in ECD of EGFR would be to create moAbs that bind to different epitopes located in this region. For instance, Sym004 is a mixture of two different mAbs directed against non-overlapping epitopes of domain Ⅲ of the EGFR. The antibodies bind simultaneously to the ECD of EGFR, inducing internalization and degradation of the receptor. In preclinical studies, Sym004 demonstrated a stronger tumour suppression compared to cetuximab and panitumumab[22].

Dienstmann and colleagues reported the results from the phase Ⅰ trial in which 42 patients with mCRC and acquired resistance to anti-EGFR inhibitors were enrolled to receive different doses (9 or 12 mg/kg weekly) of Sym004. All patients had a documented response to previous anti-EGFR mAb treatment followed by disease progression. Of the 39 patients evaluable for response, 17 (44%) had a different degree of tumour shrinkage, with an overall disease control rate (partial response and stable disease) of 67%; median PFS was 3.3 mo (95%CI: 2.6-4.9). Regarding toxicities, the most common drug-related adverse events of any grade were skin rash, dry skin, hypomagnesemia and pruritus[107,108]. Currently, Sym004 is under investigation in a phase Ⅱ clinical trial as a monotherapy in selected patients with *KRAS* WT CRC progressing to previous cetuximab or panitumumab-based therapy within 6 mo from trial enrolment.

Another drug, MM-151, is a third-generation EGFR inhibitor consisting of a mixture of three fully human IgG1 antibodies that bind distinct, non-overlapping epitopes on EGFR. In preclinical models, MM-151 showed an enhanced anticancer effect by improving the EGFR pathway inhibition, as well as inducing a more profound downregulation of the receptor and stimulating the innate immune responses[109]. The results of the phase I trial with MM-151 alone *vs* combination with irinotecan demonstrated the safety of the drug, and in particular, demonstrated an unusually long-lasting disease control in the combination arm.

MET

MET is a tyrosine kinase receptor involved in several cell processes, such as proliferation, apoptosis, invasion and angiogenesis. It is activated by its ligand, the hepatocyte growth factor (HGF). Several mechanisms may lead to an abnormal activation of MET, including MET amplification and/or increased expression of HGF[110].

In mCRC cancer, MET has been found amplified in approximately 2% of samples, where it has been associated with the development of distant metastases, and it has been significantly correlated with poor outcomes[111,112]. Furthermore, Bardelli *et al*[18] highlighted the role of MET amplification as a mechanism of both primary and acquired resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs in WT *KRAS* mCRC patients. They also showed an increased rate of amplification (12.5%) in a cetuximab-resistant xenopatients WT for *RAS*, *BRAF*, *PIK3CA*, and *HER2*[18]. However, only focal, high-grade amplification of the MET locus is associated with lack of response instead of modest gene copy number gains or polysomy of chromosome 7[113].

In preclinical models, Troiani *et al*[114] found that overexpression of TGF-alpha might contribute to cetuximab resistance in CRC cells through the induction of a EGFR-MET interaction; the treatment of these cells with a selective MET inhibitor restores cetuximab sensitivity, suggesting that the combined inhibition of both EGFR and MET pathways could represent a rational therapeutic strategy for preventing and/or overcoming cetuximab resistance in patients with mCRC.

In a randomized phase Ⅱ clinical trial of chemo-refractory, *KRAS* WT, anti-EGFR-naive mCRC, the combination of an anti-HGF moAb and panitumumab led to higher RR and a trend for a better outcome in the population with MET-overexpressed[115]. A phase I trial assessing the role of cabozantinib, a small molecule inhibitor of the tyrosine kinases c-Met and VEGFR2, plus panitumumab in chemo-refractory, KRAS WT patients is currently ongoing[116].

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Treatment with anti-EGFR moAbs cetuximab and panitumumab might be limited by the presence of primary resistance or the emergence of multiple acquired mechanisms to escape from the EGFR blockade. To overcome these phenomena, several approaches have been proposed, and some of them have been anticipated above (Table 1).

To increase the efficacy of anti-EGFR mAbs, combinations of these drugs and vascular endothelial growth factor receptor (VEGFR) inhibitors were evaluated. However, the addition of cetuximab or panitumumab to bevacizumab and oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy in first-line *KRAS* WT mCRC patients, did not improve the outcomes[117,118].

Furthermore, although there were positive effects on both PFS and RR, the combination of cetuximab plus brivanib (a VEGFR multikinase inhibitor) increased toxicity and did not improve OS in patients with chemotherapy-refractory, *KRAS* WT mCRC[119].

One of the most promising approaches to circu-

Table 1 On-going clinical trials to overcome resistance to anti-epidermal growth factor receptor

Target	Drug	Study	ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier	Phase
EGFR	Afatinib Cetuximab	Afatinib and cetuximab combo *vs* cetuximab alone in treatment of patients with refractory *KRAS* WT mCRC	NCT01919879	Phase Ⅱ
EGFR	Sym004	Sym004 *vs* investigator's choice (best supportive care, capecitabine, 5-FU) in subjects with mCRC and acquired resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs	NCT02083653	Phase Ⅱ
EGFR, HER2, HER4	Neratinib Cetuximab	Neratinib and cetuximab in *KRAS*/*NRAS*/*BRAF*/*PIK3CA* WT mCRC patients resistant to cetuximab	NCT01960023	Phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ
EGFR	Cetuximab Irinotecan	Cetuximab plus irinotecan as rechallenge 3rd-line treatment of *KRAS*, *NRAS* and *BRAF* WT irinotecan-pretreated mCRC patients progressing after an initial response to a 1st-line cetuximab-containing therapy and a standard 2nd-line	NCT02296203	Phase Ⅱ
EGFR	Panitumumab FOLFIRI	FOLFIRI plus panitumumab in extended *RAS* WT and *BRAF* WT mCRC with acquired resistance to prior cetuximab (or Panitumumab) plus irinotecan-based therapy and who failed at least one subsequent non-anti-EGFR containing regimen	NCT02508077	Phase Ⅱ
ERBB2	Pertuzumab Trastuzumab	Pertuzumab and lapatinib in *KRAS* exon 2 WT and HER2-positive mCRC refractory to standard of care (including cetuximab or panitumumab)	-	Phase Ⅱ
MET	Cetuximab INC280	INC280 in combination with cetuximab in c-MET positive mCRC and HNSCC Patients who have progressed after anti-EGFR moAbs therapy	NCT02205398	Phase Ib
MET	Cabozantinib Panitumumab	Cabozantinib with panitumumab in subjects with *KRAS* WT refractory mCRC		Phase Ⅱ
BRAF/EGFR	Vemurafenib Cetuximab Irinotecan	Irinotecan and cetuximab with or without vemurafenib in *BRAF* mutant mCRC patients	NCT02164916	Phase Ⅱ
BRAF/PI3K/EGFR	LGX818 BYL719 Cetuximab	LGX818 and cetuximab or LGX818, BYL719, and cetuximab in *BRAF* mutant mCRC patients	NCT01719380	Phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ
BRAF/MEK/EGFR	Trametinib Dabrafenib Panitumumab	Trametinib and dabrafenib administered in combination with panitumumab in BRAF-V600E positive mCRC patients with secondary resistance to prior anti-EGFR therapy	NCT01750918	Phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ
PI3K-mTOR	Panitumumab Everolimus Irinotecan	Second line therapy with panitumumab, irinotecan and everolimus in *KRAS* WT mCRC patients	NCT01139138	Phase Ib/Ⅱ
PI3K/MEK	BKM120 MEK162	BKM120 plus MEK162 in adult patients with selected advanced solid tumors	NCT01363232	Phase Ib
Immune evasion	Pembrolizumab Cetuximab	Pembrolizumab plus cetuximab for *KRAS-NRAS-BRAF* WT mCRC patients	NCT02318901	Phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ

EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor; mCRC: Metastatic colorectal cancer; WT: Wild type; mAb: Monoclonal antibody; FOLFIRI: Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan; PI3K: Phosphoinositide kinase-3; mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin.

mvent or reverse resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs is to target more than one downstream effector of the EGFR pathway. As reported above, their use as single agents did not prove clinical efficacy because of the activation of alternative pathways as a mechanism to escape the blockade. Because the alterations that confer resistance to the anti-EGFR moAbs biochemically converge to activate the MEK-ERK and AKT pathways, selective inhibitors of MEK kinases seemed an attractive target. In preclinical models, MEK inhibitors suppressed KRAS mutated cells resistant to cetuximab[120]. Several studies showed that activation of the PIK3CA pathway is a major mechanism of resistance that impairs the efficacy of MEK inhibitors in KRAS mutated cancers. Hence, dual inhibition with MEK and PIK3CA inhibitors resulted in a strong inhibition of tumour cell growth[121,122]. Troiani *et al*[123] demonstrated that combined inhibition of both EGFR and MEK had a synergistic antiproliferative and apoptotic effect in cells and xenografts with either primary or acquired resistance to cetuximab, representing a rational therapeutic strategy for preventing and/or overcoming cetuximab resistance in patients with mCRC. The same group also suggested that combining classical EGFR inhibitors with multitarget agents may circumvent primary and acquired resistance to EGFR inhibitors. For example, the combination of cetuximab and regorafenib, an oral multi-kinase inhibitor, could be an active combination and deserves further testing in a clinical setting[124].

Re-challenging patients with an alternative anti-EGFR moAb after failure with a drug of the same family has been tested. However, panitumumab has been demonstrated to provide minimal benefit in patients with *KRAS* WT mCRC who have experienced progression to cetuximab as prior therapy[125,126]. The hypotheses that pre-existing sensitive subclones may emerge after treatment breaks with anti-EGFR moAb has led the design of several clinical trials prospectively evaluating the rechallenge with anti-EGFR moAbs in the third-line setting after a response to the first-line therapy. Only patients who are quadruple WT are

being enrolled[127].

Interestingly, Ciardiello *et al*[128] recently presented the results from the second line of the CAPRI study and demonstrated that quadruple WT mCRC patients showed a significantly prolonged PFS as well as OS and RR from continuing cetuximab with a different chemotherapeutic agent beyond cancer progression after first-line chemotherapy plus the same anti-EGFR. These findings highlighted that molecularly selected mCRC patients have tumours that are highly dependent on EGFR signalling for their growth, despite the progression to the anti-EGFR drug[128]. These data are interesting and deserve further investigations.

Furthermore, as described above, new anti-EGFR such as Sym004 and MM-151 seem to be active but deserve further investigations[108,109]. Another new drug that has been proposed is GA201 (also known as RG7160, imgatuzumab), a humanized anti-EGFR IgG1 moAb that has showed an increased binding affinity for all FcgRIIIa variants expressed on immune effector cells, such as natural killer cells, leading to a significant improvement in terms of antibody-dependent cell mediated cytotoxicity-based cell killing. Encouraging results have been emerged from the phase I trial; however, a randomized phase Ⅱ trial assessing the role of GA201 in combination with FOLFIRI *vs* cetuximab plus FOLFIRI in second-line mCRC patients showed no PFS benefit for the experimental arm in both KRAS WT and KRAS mutant patients[129,130].

A promising approach is represented by the immune check point blockade with the antibodies against CTLA-4 (ipilimumab) or PD-1 (pembrolizumab, nivolumab) designed to interrupt the immune evasion strategies adopted by cancer cells. Mismatch-repair status has been found to be a useful biomarker in predicting the clinical benefit of immune checkpoint blockade with pembrolizumab. Indeed, a higher response has been achieved by patients with Microsatellite Instability High (MSI-High) tumours[131]. Several trials mainly targeting the PD-1/PDL-1 immune checkpoint pathway are ongoing[132]. Furthermore, preclinical and clinical evidence has suggested that the immune system contributes substantially to the therapeutic effects of mAbs *in vivo*[133]. The combination of immune modulators or checkpoint inhibitors with cetuximab is under evaluation as a first-line therapy of *KRAS* WT mCRC[134].

Early detection of resistance cell clones to anti-EGFR moAbs is another possible approach. However, the classical tumour biopsy might not be representative of tumour heterogeneity and is also an invasive procedure that is often not feasible due to the inaccessibility of metastatic lesions or due to the refusal of patients to be re-biopsied. However, liquid biopsies, *i.e.*, analysing ctDNA in blood samples, have been demonstrated to be useful tools for monitoring the emergence of drug resistance during the course of treatment. Indeed, different groups have demonstrated that analysis of ctDNA in plasma samples allowed detection of mutations predictive of EGFR moAbs resistance, approximately 10 mo before progression was assessed by radiological methods[22,41,135]. Nevertheless, larger and prospective trials are needed before this technique can enter in clinical routine.

CONCLUSION

CRC is still a leading cause of cancer-related mortality in the developed world. In recent years, remarkable advances in the genetic and biological understanding of cancer have led to the development of different targeted cancer therapies, such as the anti-EGFR moAbs cetuximab and panitumumab. However, the overall progress achieved with these drugs has been modest because they have been shown to be effective only in a subset of patients. Primary and acquired resistance have been shown to be the major culprits of the failure of anti-EGFR treatments. However, a deeper understanding of the molecular basis underlying both types of resistance has contributed to the proposal of several approaches to prevent, overcome or reverse drug resistance. Nevertheless, these approaches deserve further clinical investigation to allow us to use the EGFR-targeted therapies more effectively in the correct population.

REFERENCES

1 **Torre LA**, Bray F, Siegel RL, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics, 2012. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2015; **65**: 87-108 [PMID: 25651787 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21262]

2 **Schmoll HJ**, Van Cutsem E, Stein A, Valentini V, Glimelius B, Haustermans K, Nordlinger B, van de Velde CJ, Balmana J, Regula J, Nagtegaal ID, Beets-Tan RG, Arnold D, Ciardiello F, Hoff P, Kerr D, Köhne CH, Labianca R, Price T, Scheithauer W, Sobrero A, Tabernero J, Aderka D, Barroso S, Bodoky G, Douillard JY, El Ghazaly H, Gallardo J, Garin A, Glynne-Jones R, Jordan K, Meshcheryakov A, Papamichail D, Pfeiffer P, Souglakos I, Turhal S, Cervantes A. ESMO Consensus Guidelines for management of patients with colon and rectal cancer. a personalized approach to clinical decision making. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 2479-2516 [PMID: 23012255 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds236]

3 **Van Cutsem E**, Cervantes A, Nordlinger B, Arnold D. Metastatic colorectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25** Suppl 3: iii1-iii9 [PMID: 25190710 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu260]

4 **Mayer RJ**, Van Cutsem E, Falcone A, Yoshino T, Garcia-Carbonero R, Mizunuma N, Yamazaki K, Shimada Y, Tabernero J, Komatsu Y, Sobrero A, Boucher E, Peeters M, Tran B, Lenz HJ, Zaniboni A, Hochster H, Cleary JM, Prenen H, Benedetti F, Mizuguchi H, Makris L, Ito M, Ohtsu A. Randomized trial of TAS-102 for refractory metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 1909-1919 [PMID: 25970050 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1414325]

5 **Yarden Y**, Sliwkowski MX. Untangling the ErbB signalling network. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **2**: 127-137 [PMID: 11252954 DOI: 10.1038/35052073]

6 **Hynes NE**, Lane HA. ERBB receptors and cancer: the complexity of targeted inhibitors. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2005; **5**: 341-354 [PMID: 15864276 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1609]

7 **Ciardiello F**, Tortora G. EGFR antagonists in cancer treatment. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 1160-1174 [PMID: 18337605 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra0707704]

8 **Martinelli E**, De Palma R, Orditura M, De Vita F, Ciardiello F.

Anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies in cancer therapy. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2009; **158**: 1-9 [PMID: 19737224 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2009.03992.x]

9 **Price TJ**, Peeters M, Kim TW, Li J, Cascinu S, Ruff P, Suresh AS, Thomas A, Tjulandin S, Zhang K, Murugappan S, Sidhu R. Panitumumab versus cetuximab in patients with chemotherapy-refractory wild-type KRAS exon 2 metastatic colorectal cancer (ASPECCT): a randomised, multicentre, open-label, non-inferiority phase 3 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 569-579 [PMID: 24739896 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70118-4]

10 **Cunningham D**, Humblet Y, Siena S, Khayat D, Bleiberg H, Santoro A, Bets D, Mueser M, Harstrick A, Verslype C, Chau I, Van Cutsem E. Cetuximab monotherapy and cetuximab plus irinotecan in irinotecan-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 337-345 [PMID: 15269313 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa033025]

11 **Van Cutsem E**, Peeters M, Siena S, Humblet Y, Hendlisz A, Neyns B, Canon JL, Van Laethem JL, Maurel J, Richardson G, Wolf M, Amado RG. Open-label phase III trial of panitumumab plus best supportive care compared with best supportive care alone in patients with chemotherapy-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 1658-1664 [PMID: 17470858 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2006.08.1620]

12 **Misale S**, Di Nicolantonio F, Sartore-Bianchi A, Siena S, Bardelli A. Resistance to anti-EGFR therapy in colorectal cancer: from heterogeneity to convergent evolution. *Cancer Discov* 2014; **4**: 1269-1280 [PMID: 25293556 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-0462]

13 **Burrell RA**, Swanton C. Tumour heterogeneity and the evolution of polyclonal drug resistance. *Mol Oncol* 2014; **8**: 1095-1111 [PMID: 25087573 DOI: 10.1016/j.molonc.2014.06.005]

14 **Burrell RA**, McGranahan N, Bartek J, Swanton C. The causes and consequences of genetic heterogeneity in cancer evolution. *Nature* 2013; **501**: 338-345 [PMID: 24048066 DOI: 10.1038/nature12625]

15 **Chung KY**, Shia J, Kemeny NE, Shah M, Schwartz GK, Tse A, Hamilton A, Pan D, Schrag D, Schwartz L, Klimstra DS, Fridman D, Kelsen DP, Saltz LB. Cetuximab shows activity in colorectal cancer patients with tumors that do not express the epidermal growth factor receptor by immunohistochemistry. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 1803-1810 [PMID: 15677699 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.08.037]

16 **Sorich MJ**, Wiese MD, Rowland A, Kichenadasse G, McKinnon RA, Karapetis CS. Extended RAS mutations and anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody survival benefit in metastatic colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. *Ann Oncol* 2015; **26**: 13-21 [PMID: 25115304 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu378]

17 **De Roock W**, Claes B, Bernasconi D, De Schutter J, Biesmans B, Fountzilas G, Kalogeras KT, Kotoula V, Papamichael D, Laurent-Puig P, Penault-Llorca F, Rougier P, Vincenzi B, Santini D, Tonini G, Cappuzzo F, Frattini M, Molinari F, Saletti P, De Dosso S, Martini M, Bardelli A, Siena S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Tabernero J, Macarulla T, Di Fiore F, Gangloff AO, Ciardiello F, Pfeiffer P, Qvortrup C, Hansen TP, Van Cutsem E, Piessevaux H, Lambrechts D, Delorenzi M, Tejpar S. Effects of KRAS, BRAF, NRAS, and PIK3CA mutations on the efficacy of cetuximab plus chemotherapy in chemotherapy-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer: a retrospective consortium analysis. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 753-762 [PMID: 20619739 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70130-3]

18 **Bardelli A**, Corso S, Bertotti A, Hobor S, Valtorta E, Siravegna G, Sartore-Bianchi A, Scala E, Cassingena A, Zecchin D, Apicella M, Migliardi G, Galimi F, Lauricella C, Zanon C, Perera T, Veronese S, Corti G, Amatu A, Gambacorta M, Diaz LA, Sausen M, Velculescu VE, Comoglio P, Trusolino L, Di Nicolantonio F, Giordano S, Siena S. Amplification of the MET receptor drives resistance to anti-EGFR therapies in colorectal cancer. *Cancer Discov* 2013; **3**: 658-673 [PMID: 23729478 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0558]

19 **Bertotti A**, Migliardi G, Galimi F, Sassi F, Torti D, Isella C, Corà D, Di Nicolantonio F, Buscarino M, Petti C, Ribero D, Russolillo N, Muratore A, Massucco P, Pisacane A, Molinaro L, Valtorta E, Sartore-Bianchi A, Risio M, Capussotti L, Gambacorta M, Siena S, Medico E, Sapino A, Marsoni S, Comoglio PM, Bardelli A, Trusolino L. A molecularly annotated platform of patient-derived xenografts ("xenopatients") identifies HER2 as an effective therapeutic target in cetuximab-resistant colorectal cancer. *Cancer Discov* 2011;**1**: 508-523 [PMID: 22586653 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-11-0109]

20 **Montagut C**, Dalmases A, Bellosillo B, Crespo M, Pairet S, Iglesias M, Salido M, Gallen M, Marsters S, Tsai SP, Minoche A, Seshagiri S, Serrano S, Himmelbauer H, Bellmunt J, Rovira A, Settleman J, Bosch F, Albanell J. Identification of a mutation in the extracellular domain of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor conferring cetuximab resistance in colorectal cancer. *Nat Med* 2012; **18**: 221-223 [PMID: 22270724 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2609]

21 **Arena S**, Bellosillo B, Siravegna G, Martínez A, Cañadas I, Lazzari L, Ferruz N, Russo M, Misale S, González I, Iglesias M, Gavilan E, Corti G, Hobor S, Crisafulli G, Salido M, Sánchez J, Dalmases A, Bellmunt J, De Fabritiis G, Rovira A, Di Nicolantonio F, Albanell J, Bardelli A, Montagut C. Emergence of Multiple EGFR Extracellular Mutations during Cetuximab Treatment in Colorectal Cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 2157-2166 [PMID: 25623215]

22 **Bettegowda C**, Sausen M, Leary RJ, Kinde I, Wang Y, Agrawal N, Bartlett BR, Wang H, Luber B, Alani RM, Antonarakis ES, Azad NS, Bardelli A, Brem H, Cameron JL, Lee CC, Fecher LA, Gallia GL, Gibbs P, Le D, Giuntoli RL, Goggins M, Hogarty MD, Holdhoff M, Hong SM, Jiao Y, Juhl HH, Kim JJ, Siravegna G, Laheru DA, Lauricella C, Lim M, Lipson EJ, Marie SK, Netto GJ, Oliner KS, Olivi A, Olsson L, Riggins GJ, Sartore-Bianchi A, Schmidt K, Shih lM, Oba-Shinjo SM, Siena S, Theodorescu D, Tie J, Harkins TT, Veronese S, Wang TL, Weingart JD, Wolfgang CL, Wood LD, Xing D, Hruban RH, Wu J, Allen PJ, Schmidt CM, Choti MA, Velculescu VE, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Papadopoulos N, Diaz LA. Detection of circulating tumor DNA in early- and late-stage human malignancies. *Sci Transl Med* 2014; **6**: 224ra24 [PMID: 24553385 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007094]

23 **Bos JL**. ras oncogenes in human cancer: a review. *Cancer Res* 1989; **49**: 4682-4689 [PMID: 2547513]

24 **Santini D**, Loupakis F, Vincenzi B, Floriani I, Stasi I, Canestrari E, Rulli E, Maltese PE, Andreoni F, Masi G, Graziano F, Baldi GG, Salvatore L, Russo A, Perrone G, Tommasino MR, Magnani M, Falcone A, Tonini G, Ruzzo A. High concordance of KRAS status between primary colorectal tumors and related metastatic sites: implications for clinical practice. *Oncologist* 2008; **13**: 1270-1275 [PMID: 19056857 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2008-0181]

25 **Lièvre A**, Bachet JB, Le Corre D, Boige V, Landi B, Emile JF, Côté JF, Tomasic G, Penna C, Ducreux M, Rougier P, Penault-Llorca F, Laurent-Puig P. KRAS mutation status is predictive of response to cetuximab therapy in colorectal cancer. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 3992-3995 [PMID: 16618717 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-0191]

26 **Karapetis CS**, Khambata-Ford S, Jonker DJ, O'Callaghan CJ, Tu D, Tebbutt NC, Simes RJ, Chalchal H, Shapiro JD, Robitaille S, Price TJ, Shepherd L, Au HJ, Langer C, Moore MJ, Zalcberg JR. K-ras mutations and benefit from cetuximab in advanced colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 1757-1765 [PMID: 18946061 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0804385]

27 **Amado RG**, Wolf M, Peeters M, Van Cutsem E, Siena S, Freeman DJ, Juan T, Sikorski R, Suggs S, Radinsky R, Patterson SD, Chang DD. Wild-type KRAS is required for panitumumab efficacy in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 1626-1634 [PMID: 18316791 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.7116]

28 **European Medicines Agency**. Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use. May 2008 Plenary Meeting Monthly Report. Available from: URL: http://www.emea.europa.eu/pdfs/human/press/pr/27923508en.pdf

29 **Douillard JY**, Siena S, Cassidy J, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, Humblet Y, Bodoky G, Cunningham D, Jassem J, Rivera F, Kocákova I, Ruff P, Błasińska-Morawiec M, Šmakal M, Canon JL, Rother M, Oliner KS, Wolf M, Gansert J. Randomized, phase III trial of panitumumab with infusional fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX4) versus FOLFOX4 alone as first-line

treatment in patients with previously untreated metastatic colorectal cancer: the PRIME study. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 4697-4705 [PMID: 20921465 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.27.4860]

30 **Peeters M**, Price TJ, Cervantes A, Sobrero AF, Ducreux M, Hotko Y, André T, Chan E, Lordick F, Punt CJ, Strickland AH, Wilson G, Ciuleanu TE, Roman L, Van Cutsem E, Tzekova V, Collins S, Oliner KS, Rong A, Gansert J. Randomized phase III study of panitumumab with fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan (FOLFIRI) compared with FOLFIRI alone as second-line treatment in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 4706-4713 [PMID: 20921462 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.27.6055]

31 **Van Cutsem E**, Köhne CH, Láng I, Folprecht G, Nowacki MP, Cascinu S, Shchepotin I, Maurel J, Cunningham D, Tejpar S, Schlichting M, Zubel A, Celik I, Rougier P, Ciardiello F. Cetuximab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: updated analysis of overall survival according to tumor KRAS and BRAF mutation status. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 2011-2019 [PMID: 21502544 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.5091]

32 **Douillard JY**, Oliner KS, Siena S, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, Humblet Y, Bodoky G, Cunningham D, Jassem J, Rivera F, Kocákova I, Ruff P, Błasińska-Morawiec M, Šmakal M, Canon JL, Rother M, Williams R, Rong A, Wiezorek J, Sidhu R, Patterson SD. Panitumumab-FOLFOX4 treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 1023-1034 [PMID: 24024839 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1305275]

33 **Schwartzberg LS**, Rivera F, Karthaus M, Fasola G, Canon JL, Hecht JR, Yu H, Oliner KS, Go WY. PEAK: a randomized, multicenter phase II study of panitumumab plus modified fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin (mFOLFOX6) or bevacizumab plus mFOLFOX6 in patients with previously untreated, unresectable, wild-type KRAS exon 2 metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 2240-2247 [PMID: 24687833 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.53.2473]

34 **Heinemann V**, von Weikersthal LF, Decker T, Kiani A, Vehling-Kaiser U, Al-Batran SE, Heintges T, Lerchenmüller C, Kahl C, Seipelt G, Kullmann F, Stauch M, Scheithauer W, Hielscher J, Scholz M, Müller S, Link H, Niederle N, Rost A, Höffkes HG, Moehler M, Lindig RU, Modest DP, Rossius L, Kirchner T, Jung A, Stintzing S. FOLFIRI plus cetuximab versus FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab as first-line treatment for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (FIRE-3): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 1065-1075 [PMID: 25088940 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70330-4]

35 **Van Cutsem E**, Lenz HJ, Köhne CH, Heinemann V, Tejpar S, Melezínek I, Beier F, Stroh C, Rougier P, van Krieken JH, Ciardiello F. Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 692-700 [PMID: 25605843 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.59.4812]

36 **Bokemeyer C**, Köhne CH, Ciardiello F, Lenz HJ, Heinemann V, Klinkhardt U, Beier F, Duecker K, van Krieken JH, Tejpar S. FOLFOX4 plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *Eur J Cancer* 2015; **51**: 1243-1252 [PMID: 25937522 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2015.04.007]

37 **Ciardiello F**, Normanno N, Maiello E, Martinelli E, Troiani T, Pisconti S, Giuliani F, Barone C, Cartenì G, Rachiglio AM, Montesarchio V, Tonini G, Rizzi D, Cinieri S, Bordonaro R, Febbraro A, De Vita F, Orditura M, Fenizia F, Lambiase M, Rinaldi A, Tatangelo F, Botti G, Colucci G. Clinical activity of FOLFIRI plus cetuximab according to extended gene mutation status by next-generation sequencing: findings from the CAPRI-GOIM trial. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25**: 1756-1761 [PMID: 24942275 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu230]

38 **European Medicines Agency**. Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use. Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Assessment_Report_-_Variation/human/000558/WC500160158.pdf

39 **European Medicines Agency**. Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use. Available from: URL http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Assessment_Report_-_Variation/human/000741/WC500148667.pdf

40 **Diaz LA**, Williams RT, Wu J, Kinde I, Hecht JR, Berlin J, Allen B, Bozic I, Reiter JG, Nowak MA, Kinzler KW, Oliner KS, Vogelstein B. The molecular evolution of acquired resistance to targeted EGFR blockade in colorectal cancers. *Nature* 2012; **486**: 537-540 [PMID: 22722843 DOI: 10.1038/nature11219]

41 **Misale S**, Yaeger R, Hobor S, Scala E, Janakiraman M, Liska D, Valtorta E, Schiavo R, Buscarino M, Siravegna G, Bencardino K, Cercek A, Chen CT, Veronese S, Zanon C, Sartore-Bianchi A, Gambacorta M, Gallicchio M, Vakiani E, Boscaro V, Medico E, Weiser M, Siena S, Di Nicolantonio F, Solit D, Bardelli A. Emergence of KRAS mutations and acquired resistance to anti-EGFR therapy in colorectal cancer. *Nature* 2012; **486**: 532-536 [PMID: 22722830 DOI: 10.1038/nature11156]

42 **Misale S**, Arena S, Lamba S, Siravegna G, Lallo A, Hobor S, Russo M, Buscarino M, Lazzari L, Sartore-Bianchi A, Bencardino K, Amatu A, Lauricella C, Valtorta E, Siena S, Di Nicolantonio F, Bardelli A. Blockade of EGFR and MEK intercepts heterogeneous mechanisms of acquired resistance to anti-EGFR therapies in colorectal cancer. *Sci Transl Med* 2014; **6**: 224ra26 [PMID: 24553387 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007947]

43 **Valtorta E**, Misale S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Nagtegaal ID, Paraf F, Lauricella C, Dimartino V, Hobor S, Jacobs B, Ercolani C, Lamba S, Scala E, Veronese S, Laurent-Puig P, Siena S, Tejpar S, Mottolese M, Punt CJ, Gambacorta M, Bardelli A, Di Nicolantonio F. KRAS gene amplification in colorectal cancer and impact on response to EGFR-targeted therapy. *Int J Cancer* 2013; **133**: 1259-1265 [PMID: 23404247 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28106]

44 **De Roock W**, Jonker DJ, Di Nicolantonio F, Sartore-Bianchi A, Tu D, Siena S, Lamba S, Arena S, Frattini M, Piessevaux H, Van Cutsem E, O'Callaghan CJ, Khambata-Ford S, Zalcberg JR, Simes J, Karapetis CS, Bardelli A, Tejpar S. Association of KRAS p.G13D mutation with outcome in patients with chemotherapy-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer treated with cetuximab. *JAMA* 2010; **304**: 1812-1820 [PMID: 20978259 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2010.1535]

45 **Tejpar S**, Celik I, Schlichting M, Sartorius U, Bokemeyer C, Van Cutsem E. Association of KRAS G13D tumor mutations with outcome in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer treated with first-line chemotherapy with or without cetuximab. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 3570-3577 [PMID: 22734028 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.42.2592]

46 **Rowland A**, Dias MM, Wiese MD, Kichenadasse G, McKinnon RA, Karapetis CS, Sorich MJ. Meta-analysis comparing the efficacy of anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody therapy between KRAS G13D and other KRAS mutant metastatic colorectal cancer tumours. *Eur J Cancer* 2016; **55**: 122-130 [PMID: 26812186 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2015.11.025]

47 **Schirripa M**, Loupakis F, Lonardi S, Cremolini C, Bergamo F, Zagonel V, Falcone A. Phase II study of single-agent cetuximab in KRAS G13D mutant metastatic colorectal cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2015; **26**: 2503 [PMID: 26371285 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdv385]

48 **Segelov E**, Thavaneswaran S, Waring PM, Desai J, Robledo KP, Gebski VJ, Elez E, Nott LM, Karapetis CS, Lunke S, Chantrill LA, Pavlakis N, Khasraw M, Underhill C, Ciardiello F, Jefford M, Wasan H, Haydon A, Price TJ, van Hazel G, Wilson K, Simes J, Shapiro JD. Response to Cetuximab With or Without Irinotecan in Patients With Refractory Metastatic Colorectal Cancer Harboring the KRAS G13D Mutation: Australasian Gastro-Intestinal Trials Group ICECREAM Study. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34**: 2258-2264 [PMID: 27114605 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2015.65.6843]

49 **Normanno N**, Rachiglio AM, Lambiase M, Martinelli E, Fenizia F, Esposito C, Roma C, Troiani T, Rizzi D, Tatangelo F, Botti G, Maiello E, Colucci G, Ciardiello F. Heterogeneity of KRAS, NRAS, BRAF and PIK3CA mutations in metastatic colorectal cancer and potential effects on therapy in the CAPRI GOIM trial. *Ann Oncol* 2015; **26**: 1710-1714 [PMID: 25851630 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdv176]

50 **Kohl NE**, Omer CA, Conner MW, Anthony NJ, Davide JP, deSolms SJ, Giuliani EA, Gomez RP, Graham SL, Hamilton K.

Inhibition of farnesyltransferase induces regression of mammary and salivary carcinomas in ras transgenic mice. *Nat Med* 1995; **1**: 792-797 [PMID: 7585182 DOI: 10.1038/nm0895-792]

51 **Macdonald JS**, McCoy S, Whitehead RP, Iqbal S, Wade JL, Giguere JK, Abbruzzese JL. A phase II study of farnesyl transferase inhibitor R115777 in pancreatic cancer: a Southwest oncology group (SWOG 9924) study. *Invest New Drugs* 2005; **23**: 485-487 [PMID: 16133800 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-005-2908-y]

52 **Migliardi G**, Sassi F, Torti D, Galimi F, Zanella ER, Buscarino M, Ribero D, Muratore A, Massucco P, Pisacane A, Risio M, Capussotti L, Marsoni S, Di Nicolantonio F, Bardelli A, Comoglio PM, Trusolino L, Bertotti A. Inhibition of MEK and PI3K/mTOR suppresses tumor growth but does not cause tumor regression in patient-derived xenografts of RAS-mutant colorectal carcinomas. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 2515-2525 [PMID: 22392911]

53 **Costa-Cabral S**, Brough R, Konde A, Aarts M, Campbell J, Marinari E, Riffell J, Bardelli A, Torrance C, Lord CJ, Ashworth A. Correction: CDK1 Is a Synthetic Lethal Target for KRAS Mutant Tumours. *PLoS One* 2016; **11**: e0154007 [PMID: 27088596 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0154007]

54 **Ostrem JM**, Peters U, Sos ML, Wells JA, Shokat KM. K-Ras(G12C) inhibitors allosterically control GTP affinity and effector interactions. *Nature* 2013; **503**: 548-551 [PMID: 24256730 DOI: 10.1038/nature12796]

55 **Ziemke EK**, Dosch JS, Maust JD, Shettigar A, Sen A, Welling TH, Hardiman KM, Sebolt-Leopold JS. Sensitivity of KRAS-Mutant Colorectal Cancers to Combination Therapy That Cotargets MEK and CDK4/6. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 405-414 [PMID: 26369631]

56 **Ciombor KK**, Wu C, Goldberg RM. Recent therapeutic advances in the treatment of colorectal cancer. *Annu Rev Med* 2015; **66**: 83-95 [PMID: 25341011 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-med-051513-102539]

57 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT01274624. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/

58 **Sridhar SS**, Hedley D, Siu LL. Raf kinase as a target for anticancer therapeutics. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2005; **4**: 677-685 [PMID: 15827342 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-04-0297]

59 **Davies H**, Bignell GR, Cox C, Stephens P, Edkins S, Clegg S, Teague J, Woffendin H, Garnett MJ, Bottomley W, Davis N, Dicks E, Ewing R, Floyd Y, Gray K, Hall S, Hawes R, Hughes J, Kosmidou V, Menzies A, Mould C, Parker A, Stevens C, Watt S, Hooper S, Wilson R, Jayatilake H, Gusterson BA, Cooper C, Shipley J, Hargrave D, Pritchard-Jones K, Maitland N, Chenevix-Trench G, Riggins GJ, Bigner DD, Palmieri G, Cossu A, Flanagan A, Nicholson A, Ho JW, Leung SY, Yuen ST, Weber BL, Seigler HF, Darrow TL, Paterson H, Marais R, Marshall CJ, Wooster R, Stratton MR, Futreal PA. Mutations of the BRAF gene in human cancer. *Nature* 2002; **417**: 949-954 [PMID: 12068308 DOI: 10.1038/nature00766]

60 **Rajagopalan H**, Bardelli A, Lengauer C, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Velculescu VE. Tumorigenesis: RAF/RAS oncogenes and mismatch-repair status. *Nature* 2002; **418**: 934 [PMID: 12198537 DOI: 10.1038/418934a]

61 **Bokemeyer C**, Van Cutsem E, Rougier P, Ciardiello F, Heeger S, Schlichting M, Celik I, Köhne CH. Addition of cetuximab to chemotherapy as first-line treatment for KRAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer: pooled analysis of the CRYSTAL and OPUS randomised clinical trials. *Eur J Cancer* 2012; **48**: 1466-1475 [PMID: 22446022 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2012.02.057]

62 **Di Nicolantonio F**, Martini M, Molinari F, Sartore-Bianchi A, Arena S, Saletti P, De Dosso S, Mazzucchelli L, Frattini M, Siena S, Bardelli A. Wild-type BRAF is required for response to panitumumab or cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 5705-5712 [PMID: 19001320 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.18.0786]

63 **Laurent-Puig P**, Cayre A, Manceau G, Buc E, Bachet JB, Lecomte T, Rougier P, Lievre A, Landi B, Boige V, Ducreux M, Ychou M, Bibeau F, Bouché O, Reid J, Stone S, Penault-Llorca F. Analysis of PTEN, BRAF, and EGFR status in determining benefit from cetuximab therapy in wild-type KRAS metastatic colon cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 5924-5930 [PMID: 19884556 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.21.6796]

64 **Seymour MT**, Brown SR, Middleton G, Maughan T, Richman S, Gwyther S, Lowe C, Seligmann JF, Wadsley J, Maisey N, Chau I, Hill M, Dawson L, Falk S, O'Callaghan A, Benstead K, Chambers P, Oliver A, Marshall H, Napp V, Quirke P. Panitumumab and irinotecan versus irinotecan alone for patients with KRAS wild-type, fluorouracil-resistant advanced colorectal cancer (PICCOLO): a prospectively stratified randomised trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 749-759 [PMID: 23725851 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70163-3]

65 **Bokemeyer C**, Bondarenko I, Hartmann JT, de Braud F, Schuch G, Zubel A, Celik I, Schlichting M, Koralewski P. Efficacy according to biomarker status of cetuximab plus FOLFOX-4 as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: the OPUS study. *Ann Oncol* 2011; **22**: 1535-1546 [PMID: 21228335 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdq632]

66 **Pietrantonio F**, Petrelli F, Coinu A, Di Bartolomeo M, Borgonovo K, Maggi C, Cabiddu M, Iacovelli R, Bossi I, Lonati V, Ghilardi M, de Braud F, Barni S. Predictive role of BRAF mutations in patients with advanced colorectal cancer receiving cetuximab and panitumumab: a meta-analysis. *Eur J Cancer* 2015; **51**: 587-594 [PMID: 25673558 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2015.01.054]

67 **Kopetz S**, Desai J, Chan E, Hecht JR, O'Dwyer PJ, Maru D, Morris V, Janku F, Dasari A, Chung W, Issa JP, Gibbs P, James B, Powis G, Nolop KB, Bhattacharya S, Saltz L. Phase II Pilot Study of Vemurafenib in Patients With Metastatic BRAF-Mutated Colorectal Cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 4032-4038 [PMID: 26460303 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2015.63.2497]

68 **Prahallad A**, Sun C, Huang S, Di Nicolantonio F, Salazar R, Zecchin D, Beijersbergen RL, Bardelli A, Bernards R. Unresponsiveness of colon cancer to BRAF(V600E) inhibition through feedback activation of EGFR. *Nature* 2012; **483**: 100-103 [PMID: 22281684 DOI: 10.1038/nature10868]

69 **Mao M**, Tian F, Mariadason JM, Tsao CC, Lemos R, Dayyani F, Gopal YN, Jiang ZQ, Wistuba II, Tang XM, Bornman WG, Bollag G, Mills GB, Powis G, Desai J, Gallick GE, Davies MA, Kopetz S. Resistance to BRAF inhibition in BRAF-mutant colon cancer can be overcome with PI3K inhibition or demethylating agents. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 657-667 [PMID: 23251002 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-1446]

70 **Corcoran RB**, Atreya CE, Falchook GS, Kwak EL, Ryan DP, Bendell JC, Hamid O, Messersmith WA, Daud A, Kurzrock R, Pierobon M, Sun P, Cunningham E, Little S, Orford K, Motwani M, Bai Y, Patel K, Venook AP, Kopetz S. Combined BRAF and MEK Inhibition With Dabrafenib and Trametinib in BRAF V600-Mutant Colorectal Cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 4023-4031 [PMID: 26392102 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2015.63.2471]

71 **Yaeger R**, Cercek A, O'Reilly EM, Reidy DL, Kemeny N, Wolinsky T, Capanu M, Gollub MJ, Rosen N, Berger MF, Lacouture ME, Vakiani E, Saltz LB. Pilot trial of combined BRAF and EGFR inhibition in BRAF-mutant metastatic colorectal cancer patients. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 1313-1320 [PMID: 25589621 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-2779]

72 **Kelway B**, Simpson KH, Smith RJ, Halsall PJ. Effects of atropine and glycopyrrolate on cognitive function following anaesthesia and electroconvulsive therapy (ECT). *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 1986; **1**: 296-302 [PMID: 3549875 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432]

73 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT01750918; NCT01719380. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/

74 **Ahronian LG**, Sennott EM, Van Allen EM, Wagle N, Kwak EL, Faris JE, Godfrey JT, Nishimura K, Lynch KD, Mermel CH, Lockerman EL, Kalsy A, Gurski JM, Bahl S, Anderka K, Green LM, Lennon NJ, Huynh TG, Mino-Kenudson M, Getz G, Dias-Santagata D, Iafrate AJ, Engelman JA, Garraway LA, Corcoran RB. Clinical Acquired Resistance to RAF Inhibitor Combinations in BRAF-Mutant Colorectal Cancer through MAPK Pathway Alterations. *Cancer Discov* 2015; **5**: 358-367 [PMID: 25673644 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-1518]

75 **Cremolini C**, Loupakis F, Lonardi S, Tomasello G, Ronzoni M,

Zaniboni A, Tonini G, Valsuani C, Chiara S, Boni C, Marcucci L, Negri FV, Barone C, Vitello S, D'Amico M, Granetto C, Antoniotti C, Salvatore L, Fontanini G, Tomcikova D, Boni L, Falcone A. Subgroup analyses in RAS mutant, BRAF mutant and "all-wt" metastatic colorectal cancer patients treated with FOLFOXIRI plus bevacizumab (bev) or FOLFIRI plus bev in the TRIBE study. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25**: ii107-ii108 [DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu193.7]

76 **De Roock W**, De Vriendt V, Normanno N, Ciardiello F, Tejpar S. KRAS, BRAF, PIK3CA, and PTEN mutations: implications for targeted therapies in metastatic colorectal cancer. *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 594-603 [PMID: 21163703 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70209-6]

77 **Huang CH**, Mandelker D, Schmidt-Kittler O, Samuels Y, Velculescu VE, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Gabelli SB, Amzel LM. The structure of a human p110alpha/p85alpha complex elucidates the effects of oncogenic PI3Kalpha mutations. *Science* 2007; **318**: 1744-1748 [PMID: 18079394 DOI: 10.1126/science.1150799]

78 **Karakas B**, Bachman KE, Park BH. Mutation of the PIK3CA oncogene in human cancers. *Br J Cancer* 2006; **94**: 455-459 [PMID: 16449998 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6602970]

79 **Jhawer M**, Goel S, Wilson AJ, Montagna C, Ling YH, Byun DS, Nasser S, Arango D, Shin J, Klampfer L, Augenlicht LH, Perez-Soler R, Mariadason JM. PIK3CA mutation/PTEN expression status predicts response of colon cancer cells to the epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitor cetuximab. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 1953-1961 [PMID: 18339877 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-07-5659]

80 **Sartore-Bianchi A**, Martini M, Molinari F, Veronese S, Nichelatti M, Artale S, Di Nicolantonio F, Saletti P, De Dosso S, Mazzucchelli L, Frattini M, Siena S, Bardelli A. PIK3CA mutations in colorectal cancer are associated with clinical resistance to EGFR-targeted monoclonal antibodies. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 1851-1857 [PMID: 19223544 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-2466]

81 **Mao C**, Yang ZY, Hu XF, Chen Q, Tang JL. PIK3CA exon 20 mutations as a potential biomarker for resistance to anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies in KRAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 1518-1525 [PMID: 22039088 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdr464]

82 **Huang L**, Liu Z, Deng D, Tan A, Liao M, Mo Z, Yang X. Anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibody-based therapy for metastatic colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis of the effect of PIK3CA mutations in KRAS wild-type patients. *Arch Med Sci* 2014; **10**: 1-9 [PMID: 24701207 DOI: 10.5114/aoms.2014.40728]

83 **Liao X**, Morikawa T, Lochhead P, Imamura Y, Kuchiba A, Yamauchi M, Nosho K, Qian ZR, Nishihara R, Meyerhardt JA, Fuchs CS, Ogino S. Prognostic role of PIK3CA mutation in colorectal cancer: cohort study and literature review. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 2257-2268 [PMID: 22357840 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-2410]

84 **Ogino S**, Nosho K, Kirkner GJ, Shima K, Irahara N, Kure S, Chan AT, Engelman JA, Kraft P, Cantley LC, Giovannucci EL, Fuchs CS. PIK3CA mutation is associated with poor prognosis among patients with curatively resected colon cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 1477-1484 [PMID: 19237633 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.18.6544]

85 **Sansal I**, Sellers WR. The biology and clinical relevance of the PTEN tumor suppressor pathway. *J Clin Oncol* 2004; **22**: 2954-2963 [PMID: 15254063 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2004.02.141]

86 **Frattini M**, Saletti P, Romagnani E, Martin V, Molinari F, Ghisletta M, Camponovo A, Etienne LL, Cavalli F, Mazzucchelli L. PTEN loss of expression predicts cetuximab efficacy in metastatic colorectal cancer patients. *Br J Cancer* 2007; **97**: 1139-1145 [PMID: 17940504 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604009]

87 **Loupakis F**, Pollina L, Stasi I, Ruzzo A, Scartozzi M, Santini D, Masi G, Graziano F, Cremolini C, Rulli E, Canestrari E, Funel N, Schiavon G, Petrini I, Magnani M, Tonini G, Campani D, Floriani I, Cascinu S, Falcone A. PTEN expression and KRAS mutations on primary tumors and metastases in the prediction of benefit from cetuximab plus irinotecan for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 2622-2629 [PMID: 19398573 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.20.2796]

88 **Karapetis CS**, Jonker D, Daneshmand M, Hanson JE, O' Callaghan CJ, Marginean C, Zalcberg JR, Simes J, Moore MJ, Tebbutt NC, Price TJ, Shapiro JD, Pavlakis N, Gibbs P, Van Hazel GA, Lee U, Haq R, Virk S, Tu D, Lorimer IA. PIK3CA, BRAF, and PTEN status and benefit from cetuximab in the treatment of advanced colorectal cancer--results from NCIC CTG/AGITG CO.17. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 744-753 [PMID: 24218517 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-0606]

89 **Cancer Genome Atlas Network**. Comprehensive molecular characterization of human colon and rectal cancer. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 330-337 [PMID: 22810696 DOI: 10.1038/nature11252]

90 **Di Nicolantonio F**, Arena S, Tabernero J, Grosso S, Molinari F, Macarulla T, Russo M, Cancelliere C, Zecchin D, Mazzucchelli L, Sasazuki T, Shirasawa S, Geuna M, Frattini M, Baselga J, Gallicchio M, Biffo S, Bardelli A. Deregulation of the PI3K and KRAS signaling pathways in human cancer cells determines their response to everolimus. *J Clin Invest* 2010; **120**: 2858-2866 [PMID: 20664172 DOI: 10.1172/JCI37539]

91 **Fruman DA**, Rommel C. PI3K and cancer: lessons, challenges and opportunities. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2014; **13**: 140-156 [PMID: 24481312 DOI: 10.1038/nrd4204]

92 **Bendell JC**, Jones SF, Hart L, Spigel DR, Lane CM, Earwood C, Infante JR, Barton J, Burris HA. A phase Ib study of linsitinib (OSI-906), a dual inhibitor of IGF-1R and IR tyrosine kinase, in combination with everolimus as treatment for patients with refractory metastatic colorectal cancer. *Invest New Drugs* 2015; **33**: 187-193 [PMID: 25335932 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-014-0177-3]

93 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT01139138

94 **Zhang YJ**, Tian XQ, Sun DF, Zhao SL, Xiong H, Fang JY. Combined inhibition of MEK and mTOR signaling inhibits initiation and progression of colorectal cancer. *Cancer Invest* 2009; **27**: 273-285 [PMID: 19194827 DOI: 10.1080/07357900802314893]

95 **Temraz S**, Mukherji D, Shamseddine A. Dual Inhibition of MEK and PI3K Pathway in KRAS and BRAF Mutated Colorectal Cancers. *Int J Mol Sci* 2015; **16**: 22976-22988 [PMID: 26404261 DOI: 10.3390/ijms160922976]

96 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT01363232; NCT01449058. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/

97 **Liao X**, Lochhead P, Nishihara R, Morikawa T, Kuchiba A, Yamauchi M, Imamura Y, Qian ZR, Baba Y, Shima K, Sun R, Nosho K, Meyerhardt JA, Giovannucci E, Fuchs CS, Chan AT, Ogino S. Aspirin use, tumor PIK3CA mutation, and colorectal-cancer survival. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **367**: 1596-1606 [PMID: 23094721 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1207756]

98 **Holbro T**, Beerli RR, Maurer F, Koziczak M, Barbas CF, Hynes NE. The ErbB2/ErbB3 heterodimer functions as an oncogenic unit: ErbB2 requires ErbB3 to drive breast tumor cell proliferation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 8933-8938 [PMID: 12853564 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1537685100]

99 **Yonesaka K**, Zejnullahu K, Okamoto I, Satoh T, Cappuzzo F, Souglakos J, Ercan D, Rogers A, Roncalli M, Takeda M, Fujisaka Y, Philips J, Shimizu T, Maenishi O, Cho Y, Sun J, Destro A, Taira K, Takeda K, Okabe T, Swanson J, Itoh H, Takada M, Lifshits E, Okuno K, Engelman JA, Shivdasani RA, Nishio K, Fukuoka M, Varella-Garcia M, Nakagawa K, Jänne PA. Activation of ERBB2 signaling causes resistance to the EGFR-directed therapeutic antibody cetuximab. *Sci Transl Med* 2011; **3**: 99ra86 [PMID: 21900593 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3002442]

100 **Sartore-Bianchi A**, Trusolino L, Martino C, Bencardino K, Lonardi S, Bergamo F, Zagonel V, Leone F, Depetris I, Martinelli E, Troiani T, Ciardiello F, Racca P, Bertotti A, Siravegna G, Torri V, Amatu A, Ghezzi S, Marrapese G, Palmeri L, Valtorta E, Cassingena A, Lauricella C, Vanzulli A, Regge D, Veronese S, Comoglio PM, Bardelli A, Marsoni S, Siena S. Dual-targeted therapy with trastuzumab and lapatinib in treatment-refractory, KRAS codon 12/13 wild-type, HER2-positive metastatic colorectal cancer (HERACLES): a proof-of-concept, multicentre, open-label, phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2016; **17**: 738-746 [PMID: 27108243

DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(16)00150-9]

101 **Scartozzi M**, Mandolesi A, Giampieri R, Bittoni A, Pierantoni C, Zaniboni A, Galizia E, Giustini L, Silva RR, Bisonni R, Berardi R, Biscotti T, Biagetti S, Bearzi I, Cascinu S. The role of HER-3 expression in the prediction of clinical outcome for advanced colorectal cancer patients receiving irinotecan and cetuximab. *Oncologist* 2011; **16**: 53-60 [PMID: 21212430 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2010-0119]

102 **Jaiswal BS**, Kljavin NM, Stawiski EW, Chan E, Parikh C, Durinck S, Chaudhuri S, Pujara K, Guillory J, Edgar KA, Janakiraman V, Scholz RP, Bowman KK, Lorenzo M, Li H, Wu J, Yuan W, Peters BA, Kan Z, Stinson J, Mak M, Modrusan Z, Eigenbrot C, Firestein R, Stern HM, Rajalingam K, Schaefer G, Merchant MA, Sliwkowski MX, de Sauvage FJ, Seshagiri S. Oncogenic ERBB3 mutations in human cancers. *Cancer Cell* 2013; **23**: 603-617 [PMID: 23680147 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2013.04.012]

103 **Schaefer G**, Haber L, Crocker LM, Shia S, Shao L, Dowbenko D, Totpal K, Wong A, Lee CV, Stawicki S, Clark R, Fields C, Lewis Phillips GD, Prell RA, Danilenko DM, Franke Y, Stephan JP, Hwang J, Wu Y, Bostrom J, Sliwkowski MX, Fuh G, Eigenbrot C. A two-in-one antibody against HER3 and EGFR has superior inhibitory activity compared with monospecific antibodies. *Cancer Cell* 2011; **20**: 472-486 [PMID: 22014573 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2011.09.003]

104 **Cervantes-Ruiperez A**, Juric D, Hidalgo M, Messersmith WA, Blumenschein GR, Baselga J, Perez DR, Dienstmann R, Calles A, Jimeno A, Sanabria S, Littman C, Amler LC, Pirzkall A, Tabernero J. A phase I study of MEHD7945A (MEHD), a first-in-class HER3/EGFR dual-action antibody, in patients (pts) with refractory/recurrent epithelial tumors: expansion cohorts. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30** Suppl: abstract 2568

105 Presented at AACR Annual Meeting, April 18-21, 2015, Philadelphia, PA. Available from: URL: http://qfuse.com/client_downloads/AACR2015_DARECK_poster_15Apr15.pdf

106 **Price TJ**, Newhall J, Peeters M. Prevalence and outcomes of patients (pts) with EGFR S492R ectodomain mutations in ASPECCT: Panitumumab (pmab) vs. cetuximab (cmab) in pts with chemorefractory wild-type KRAS exon 2 metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33** Suppl 3: abstract 740

107 **Pedersen MW**, Jacobsen HJ, Koefoed K, Hey A, Pyke C, Haurum JS, Kragh M. Sym004: a novel synergistic anti-epidermal growth factor receptor antibody mixture with superior anticancer efficacy. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 588-597 [PMID: 20068188 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-1417]

108 **Dienstmann R**, Patnaik A, Garcia-Carbonero R, Cervantes A, Benavent M, Roselló S, Tops BB, van der Post RS, Argilés G, Skartved NJ, Hansen UH, Hald R, Pedersen MW, Kragh M, Horak ID, Braun S, Van Cutsem E, Tolcher AW, Tabernero J. Safety and Activity of the First-in-Class Sym004 Anti-EGFR Antibody Mixture in Patients with Refractory Colorectal Cancer. *Cancer Discov* 2015; **5**: 598-609 [PMID: 25962717 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-1432]

109 **Kearns JD**, Bukhalid R, Sevecka M, Tan G, Gerami-Moayed N, Werner SL, Kohli N, Burenkova O, Sloss CM, King AM, Fitzgerald JB, Nielsen UB, Wolf BB. Enhanced Targeting of the EGFR Network with MM-151, an Oligoclonal Anti-EGFR Antibody Therapeutic. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2015; **14**: 1625-1636 [PMID: 25911688 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-14-0772]

110 **Comoglio PM**, Giordano S, Trusolino L. Drug development of MET inhibitors: targeting oncogene addiction and expedience. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2008; **7**: 504-516 [PMID: 18511928 DOI: 10.1038/nrd2530]

111 **Di Renzo MF**, Olivero M, Giacomini A, Porte H, Chastre E, Mirossay L, Nordlinger B, Bretti S, Bottardi S, Giordano S. Overexpression and amplification of the met/HGF receptor gene during the progression of colorectal cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 1995; **1**: 147-154 [PMID: 9815967]

112 **Liu Y**, Yu XF, Zou J, Luo ZH. Prognostic value of c-Met in colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 3706-3710 [PMID: 25834339 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i12.3706]

113 **Cappuzzo F**, Varella-Garcia M, Finocchiaro G, Skokan M, Gajapathy S, Carnaghi C, Rimassa L, Rossi E, Ligorio C, Di Tommaso L, Holmes AJ, Toschi L, Tallini G, Destro A, Roncalli M, Santoro A, Jänne PA. Primary resistance to cetuximab therapy in EGFR FISH-positive colorectal cancer patients. *Br J Cancer* 2008; **99**: 83-89 [PMID: 18577988 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604439]

114 **Troiani T**, Martinelli E, Napolitano S, Vitagliano D, Ciuffreda LP, Costantino S, Morgillo F, Capasso A, Sforza V, Nappi A, De Palma R, D'Aiuto E, Berrino L, Bianco R, Ciardiello F. Increased TGF-α as a mechanism of acquired resistance to the anti-EGFR inhibitor cetuximab through EGFR-MET interaction and activation of MET signaling in colon cancer cells. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 6751-6765 [PMID: 24122793 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-0423]

115 **Van Cutsem E**, Eng C, Nowara E, Swieboda-Sadlej A, Tebbutt NC, Mitchell E, Davidenko I, Stephenson J, Elez E, Prenen H, Deng H, Tang R, McCaffery I, Oliner KS, Chen L, Gansert J, Loh E, Smethurst D, Tabernero J. Randomized phase Ib/II trial of rilotumumab or ganitumab with panitumumab versus panitumumab alone in patients with wild-type KRAS metastatic colorectal cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 4240-4250 [PMID: 24919569 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2752]

116 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT02008383. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/

117 **Tol J**, Koopman M, Cats A, Rodenburg CJ, Creemers GJ, Schrama JG, Erdkamp FL, Vos AH, van Groeningen CJ, Sinnige HA, Richel DJ, Voest EE, Dijkstra JR, Vink-Börger ME, Antonini NF, Mol L, van Krieken JH, Dalesio O, Punt CJ. Chemotherapy, bevacizumab, and cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 563-572 [PMID: 19196673 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808268]

118 **Hecht JR**, Mitchell E, Chidiac T, Scroggin C, Hagenstad C, Spigel D, Marshall J, Cohn A, McCollum D, Stella P, Deeter R, Shahin S, Amado RG. A randomized phase IIIB trial of chemotherapy, bevacizumab, and panitumumab compared with chemotherapy and bevacizumab alone for metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 672-680 [PMID: 19114685 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.19.8135]

119 **Siu LL**, Shapiro JD, Jonker DJ, Karapetis CS, Zalcberg JR, Simes J, Couture F, Moore MJ, Price TJ, Siddiqui J, Nott LM, Charpentier D, Liauw W, Sawyer MB, Jefford M, Magoski NM, Haydon A, Walters I, Ringash J, Tu D, O'Callaghan CJ. Phase III randomized, placebo-controlled study of cetuximab plus brivanib alaninate versus cetuximab plus placebo in patients with metastatic, chemotherapy-refractory, wild-type K-RAS colorectal carcinoma: the NCIC Clinical Trials Group and AGITG CO.20 Trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 2477-2484 [PMID: 23690424 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.46.0543]

120 **Yoon J**, Koo KH, Choi KY. MEK1/2 inhibitors AS703026 and AZD6244 may be potential therapies for KRAS mutated colorectal cancer that is resistant to EGFR monoclonal antibody therapy. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 445-453 [PMID: 21118963 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-3058]

121 **Mirzoeva OK**, Das D, Heiser LM, Bhattacharya S, Siwak D, Gendelman R, Bayani N, Wang NJ, Neve RM, Guan Y, Hu Z, Knight Z, Feiler HS, Gascard P, Parvin B, Spellman PT, Shokat KM, Wyrobek AJ, Bissell MJ, McCormick F, Kuo WL, Mills GB, Gray JW, Korn WM. Basal subtype and MAPK/ERK kinase (MEK)-phosphoinositide 3-kinase feedback signaling determine susceptibility of breast cancer cells to MEK inhibition. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 565-572 [PMID: 19147570 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-3389]

122 **Wee S**, Jagani Z, Xiang KX, Loo A, Dorsch M, Yao YM, Sellers WR, Lengauer C, Stegmeier F. PI3K pathway activation mediates resistance to MEK inhibitors in KRAS mutant cancers. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 4286-4293 [PMID: 19401449 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-4765]

123 **Troiani T**, Napolitano S, Vitagliano D, Morgillo F, Capasso A, Sforza V, Nappi A, Ciardiello D, Ciardiello F, Martinelli E. Primary and acquired resistance of colorectal cancer cells to anti-EGFR antibodies converge on MEK/ERK pathway activation and can be

overcome by combined MEK/EGFR inhibition. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 3775-3786 [PMID: 24812410 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2181]

124 **Napolitano S**, Martini G, Rinaldi B, Martinelli E, Donniacuo M, Berrino L, Vitagliano D, Morgillo F, Barra G, De Palma R, Merolla F, Ciardiello F, Troiani T. Primary and Acquired Resistance of Colorectal Cancer to Anti-EGFR Monoclonal Antibody Can Be Overcome by Combined Treatment of Regorafenib with Cetuximab. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 2975-2983 [PMID: 25838391 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-0020]

125 **Wadlow RC**, Hezel AF, Abrams TA, Blaszkowsky LS, Fuchs CS, Kulke MH, Kwak EL, Meyerhardt JA, Ryan DP, Szymonifka J, Wolpin BM, Zhu AX, Clark JW. Panitumumab in patients with KRAS wild-type colorectal cancer after progression on cetuximab. *Oncologist* 2012; **17**: 14 [PMID: 22210091 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2011-0452]

126 **Saif MW**, Kaley K, Chu E, Copur MS. Safety and efficacy of panitumumab therapy after progression with cetuximab: experience at two institutions. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2010; **9**: 315-318 [PMID: 21208847 DOI: 10.3816/CCC.2010.n.046]

127 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT02296203; NCT02316496. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/

128 **Ciardiello F**, Normanno N, Martinelli E, Troiani T, Pisconti S, Cardone C, Nappi A, Bordonaro AR, Rachiglio M, Lambiase M, Latiano TP, Modoni G, Cordio S, Giuliani F, Biglietto M, Montesarchio V, Barone C, Tonini G, Cinieri S, Febbraro A, Rizzi D, De Vita F, Orditura M, Colucci G, Maiello E. Cetuximab continuation after first progression in metastatic colorectal cancer (CAPRI-GOIM): a randomized phase II trial of FOLFOX plus cetuximab versus FOLFOX. *Ann Oncol* 2016; **27**: 1055-1061 [PMID: 27002107 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdw136]

129 **Paz-Ares LG**, Gomez-Roca C, Delord JP, Cervantes A, Markman B, Corral J, Soria JC, Bergé Y, Roda D, Russell-Yarde F, Hollingsworth S, Baselga J, Umana P, Manenti L, Tabernero J. Phase I pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic dose-escalation study of RG7160 (GA201), the first glycoengineered monoclonal antibody against the epidermal growth factor receptor, in patients with advanced solid tumors. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 3783-3790 [PMID: 21900113 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.34.8888]

130 **Bridgewater JA**, Cervantes A, Markman B, Siena S, Cubillo A, Carbonero RG, Sigal D, Aprile G, Cunningham D, Nadal C, Pericay C, Samuel LM, Hochhauser D, Perez-Fidalgo JA, Strickland A, Guizani C, Golding S, Valverde VL, Ott MG, Tabernero J. GAIN-(C): Efficacy and safety analysis of imgatuzumab (GA201), a novel dual-acting monoclonal antibody (mAb) designed to enhance antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), in combination with FOLFIRI compared to cetuximab plus FOLFIRI in second-line KRAS exon 2 wild type (e2WT) or with FOLFIRI alone in mutated (e2MT) metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33** Suppl: abstr 669

131 **Le DT**, Uram JN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Kemberling H, Eyring AD, Skora AD, Luber BS, Azad NS, Laheru D, Biedrzycki B, Donehower RC, Zaheer A, Fisher GA, Crocenzi TS, Lee JJ, Duffy SM, Goldberg RM, de la Chapelle A, Koshiji M, Bhaijee F, Huebner T, Hruban RH, Wood LD, Cuka N, Pardoll DM, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Zhou S, Cornish TC, Taube JM, Anders RA, Eshleman JR, Vogelstein B, Diaz LA. PD-1 Blockade in Tumors with Mismatch-Repair Deficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 2509-2520 [PMID: 26028255 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1500596]

132 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT02298946; NCT01375842; NCT02335918; NCT01633970; NCT01772004; NCT02227667. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/

133 **Perez EA**, Thompson EA, Ballman KV, Anderson SK, Asmann YW, Kalari KR, Eckel-Passow JE, Dueck AC, Tenner KS, Jen J, Fan JB, Geiger XJ, McCullough AE, Chen B, Jenkins RB, Sledge GW, Winer EP, Gralow JR, Reinholz MM. Genomic analysis reveals that immune function genes are strongly linked to clinical outcome in the North Central Cancer Treatment Group n9831 Adjuvant Trastuzumab Trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 701-708 [PMID: 25605861]

134 ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT01309126; NCT02318901. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/

135 **Murtaza M**, Dawson SJ, Tsui DW, Gale D, Forshew T, Piskorz AM, Parkinson C, Chin SF, Kingsbury Z, Wong AS, Marass F, Humphray S, Hadfield J, Bentley D, Chin TM, Brenton JD, Caldas C, Rosenfeld N. Non-invasive analysis of acquired resistance to cancer therapy by sequencing of plasma DNA. *Nature* 2013; **497**: 108-112 [PMID: 23563269 DOI: 10.1038/nature12065]

P- Reviewer: Hu FL, Sinagra E, Valladares-Ayerbes M
S- Editor: Yu J **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6362

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6362-6372
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Colorectal Cancer: Global view

Immunotherapy in human colorectal cancer: Challenges and prospective

Xuan Sun, Jian Suo, Jun Yan

Xuan Sun, Jian Suo, Department of Gastrointestinal Surgery, The First Hospital, Jilin University, Changchun 130021, Jilin Province, China

Jun Yan, James Graham Brown Cancer Center, Department of Medicine, University of Louisville School of Medicine, Louisville, KY 40202, United States

Author contributions: Sun X, Suo J and Yan J analyzed literature and wrote the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interests to report.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Jun Yan, MD, PhD, James Graham Brown Cancer Center, Department of Medicine, Clinical & Translational Research Building, Rm 319, University of Louisville School of Medicine, 505 South Hancock Street, Louisville, KY 40202, United States. jun.yan@louisville.edu
Telephone: +1-502-8523628
Fax: +1-502-8522123

Received: March 25, 2016
Peer-review started: March 25, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: June 2, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Human colorectal cancer (CRC) is the third most commonly diagnosed malignancies and the prognosis for patients with recurrent or metastatic disease is extremely poor. Although new chemotherapeutic regimen improves survival rates, therapy with better efficacy and less adverse effects is drastically needed. Immunotherapy has been investigated in human CRC for decades with limited success. However, recent developments of immunotherapy, particularly immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy, have achieved promising clinical benefits in many types of cancer and revived the hope for utilizing such therapy in human CRC. In this review, we will discuss important immunological landscape within the CRC microenvironment and introduce immunoscore system to better describe immunophenotyping in CRC. We will also discuss different immunotherapeutic approaches currently utilized in different phases of clinical trials. Some of those completed or ongoing trials are summarized. Finally, we provide a brief prospective on the future human CRC immunotherapy.

Key words: Immunotherapy; Human colorectal cancer; Adoptive cell therapy; Immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy; Immunosuppression

Core tip: Immunotherapy has recently achieved great clinical objective response in multiple cancer types. However, immunotherapy in human colorectal cancer (CRC) is still in its infancy. Identifying CRC patients who are responding to different forms of immunotherapy is drastically needed. In this review, we will discuss important immunological landscape within the CRC microenvironment and introduce immunoscore system

to better describe immunophenotyping in CRC. Knowledge gained from these studies may provide rational design for immunotherapy in human CRC patients.

Sun X, Suo J, Yan J. Immunotherapy in human colorectal cancer: Challenges and prospective. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6362-6372 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6362.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6362

INTRODUCTION

Human colorectal cancer (CRC) is the third most commonly diagnosed malignancy and is the leading cause of death worldwide[1]. The projected global burden of CRC is expected to increase by 60% to more than 2.2 million new cases and 1.1 million deaths by 2030[2]. The combined use of irinotecan, oxaliplatin and oral form of 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) has shown significant therapeutic efficacy in human CRC. In addition, the neoadjuvant treatment of radiotherapy with/without chemotherapy and radical surgery with complete mesorectal excision has become the standard treatment for locally advanced rectal cancer. However, the toxicity of radiotherapy and chemotherapy such as actinic colitis is substantial and is associated with considerable morbidity and mortality. Adverse effects including chronic diarrhea and potential intestinal obstructions seriously impair the quality of life of the patients with CRC[3].

Tumor immunotherapy has gained momentum in recent years and shown significant clinical benefits for many types of cancer. For example, Ipilimumab, a specific antibody (Ab) for cytotoxic T lymphocyte associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) has been used as the first or second line of immunotherapy for advanced melanoma patients[4]. In addition, anti-program death-1 (PD-1) Ab (nivolumab and pembrolizumab) was approved by the FDA in 2015 to treat patients with advanced non-small cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC) including squamous and non-squamous NSCLC[5]. Combined anti-CTLA-1 and anti-PD-1 mAbs to treat metastatic melanoma have shown remarkable clinical benefits[6,7]. The overall response rate reached over 60%. Therefore, tumor immunotherapy was proclaimed recently as "the Advance of the Year" by the American Society of Clinical Oncology (http://www.asco.org/press-center/asco-names-advance-year-cancer-immunotherapy). Despite great successes achieved in other cancer types, immunotherapy in human CRC is still in its infancy. This may be due to many factors such as lack of good ways to study CRC in humans and colorectal animal models are inadequate. In this review, we will examine an immunological landscape within the CRC microenvironment and summarize current major immunotherapies in human CRC. In addition, we will discuss potential challenges for CRC immunotherapies and offer our own prospective on this issue.

IMMUNOLOGICAL LANDSCAPE IN HUMAN CRC

The prognostic value of tumor infiltrating immune cells within the tumor microenvironment has been extensively studied and appreciated[8,9]. A molecular classification of human CRC has characterized the group of patients with microsatellite-instable (MSI) and microsatellite-stable (MSS) tumors. In CRC, MSI is due to a DNA mismatch repair deficiency leading to accumulation of insertions and deletions in DNA repeat sequence. Consequently, this defect results in many mutations that may generate potential immunogenic neoantigens which can be recognized by the immune system[10]. Studies analyzing patients with MSS tumors have shown associations of T cell subpopulations with prognosis. In addition, MSI CRC which comprises approximately 15% of sporadic CRC shows high levels of tumor-infiltrating T cells[11]. This is correlated with high mutational load in MSI tumors, typically 10-50 times more than those of MSS tumors. The high gene mutational load may lead to more tumor-specific neoantigens which may provoke potent anti-tumor T cell responses despite their inability to eradicate cancer naturally. Indeed, recent studies have shown that cancers with high gene mutational load have better therapeutic outcomes in response to immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy[12-14]. MSI tumors display more infiltrations of $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) as well as activated Th1 cells with more IFN-γ production and the Th1 transcription factor T-bet. In contrast, MSI tumors have less Th17 or Th2 cells. Therefore, in general, patients with MSI tumors have better survival than patients with MSS CRC. On the other hand, MSI CRC has high expression levels of immune checkpoint molecules including PD-1, PD-L1, CTLA-4, LAG-3, and IDO leading to an immunosuppressive microenvironment. This is also a good candidate for immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy[15]. In addition to DNA mismatch repair status, recent studies show that immunoscore is a better predictor for patient survival than microsatellite instability in human CRC[16,17]. Immunoscore is a scoring system based on the quantitated numbers of cytotoxic and memory T cells infiltrating in the core of the tumor and in the invasive margins of the tumor[8,18]. Previous studies have shown that immunoscore is the strongest survival prognostic factor in CRC[19]. More importantly, immunoscore may be used as a criteria parameter to choose patients with CRC for immunotherapy since a pre-existing anti-tumor T cells in the tumor is critical for tumor immunotherapy such as anti-PD-1 immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy. Indeed, it appears that patients with MSI CRC could be more responsiveness to such therapy than MSS patients[15]. However, a recent study using integrative

Table 1 Gene mutations in human colorectal cancer

Pathways	Cell cycle	WNT	MAPK	TGF	P53	PI3K-Akt	Apoptosis
Genes	MLH1[71] MSH2[71] MSH6[81] RAD54B[85] CCND1[88] BUB1B[90] AURKA[91] EP300[92]	APC[71] CTNNB1[77] MCC[82] AXIN2[86] ARID1A SOX9	KRAS[72] PLA2G2A[78] PTPN12[83]	SMAD4[73]	P53[74]	PTEN[75] NRAS[79] PIK3CA[84] FGFR3[87] AKT1[89]	DCC[76] BAX[80]

MLH1: MutL homolog 1; MSH2: MutS homolog 2; MSH6: MutS homolog 6; RAD54B: RAD54 homolog B (S. Cerevisiae); CCND1: Cyclin D1; BUB1B: BUB1 mitotic checkpoint serine/threonine kinase B; AURKA: Aurora kinase A; EP300: E1A binding protein P300; PC: Adenomatous polyposis coli; CTNNB1: Catenin (cadherin-associated protein), Beta 1, 88 kDa; MCC: Mutated in colorectal cancers; AXIN2: Axin 2; ARID1A: AT rich interactive domain 1A (SWI-Like); SOX9: SRY (sex determining region Y)-Box 9; KRAS: Kirsten rat sarcoma viral oncogene homolog; PLA2G2A: Phospholipase A2, group IIA (platelets, synovial fluid); PTPN12: Protein tyrosine phosphatase, non-receptor type 12; SMAD4: SMAD family member 4; P53: Tumor protein P53; PTEN: Phosphatase and tensin homolog; NRAS: Neuroblastoma RAS viral (V-Ras) oncogene homolog; PIK3CA: Phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate 3-kinase, catalytic subunit alpha; FGFR3: Fibroblast growth factor receptor 3; AKT1: V-Akt murine thymoma viral oncogene homolog 1; DCC: DCC netrin 1 receptor; BAX: BCL2-associated X protein.

analyses in CRC found that patients with MSI CRC and a subgroup of MSS have high intratumoral immune gene expression which correlates with prolonged survival, suggesting that immunoscore may be a better indicator to predict patient survival[16].

GENETIC MUTATIONS IN HUMAN CRC

Genetic mutational loads have been linked to immune checkpoint inhibitors therapeutic efficacy[14,20]. In human NSCLC patients, anti-PD-1 therapeutic efficacy is associated with a higher number of mutational alterations in the tumors[12]. As described above, the MSI CRC microenvironment displays highly infiltrated activated $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T cells. In human CRC, it also shows that mismatch repair-deficient tumors are more responsive to PD-1 blockade treatment than mismatch repair-proficient tumors. This is correlated with mutational loads in the tumors as mismatch repair-deficient tumors have a mean of 1782 somatic mutations while 73 mutations in mismatch repair-proficient tumors[21]. Table 1 summarizes different gene mutations through different pathways in human CRC.

IMMUNOTHERAPY IN HUMAN CRC

Currently, there are many immunotherapies under clinical investigation in human CRC. Immunotherapy in CRC contains different approaches, including monoclonal antibody (mAb) therapy, cancer vaccines, chemoimmunotherapy, immune checkpoint inhibitors therapy, adoptive cell therapy, immune modulators, oncolytic virus therapy, adjuvant immunotherapy and cytokines treatment. Most immunotherapies are still in early-stage clinical development (phase Ⅰ and Ⅱ) for CRC treatment and some of these trials showed promising results. Until now, more than 15 immunotherapy clinical trials for human CRC have been completed and more than 20 clinical trials are recruiting or about to recruit patients (https://www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/results?term=colorectal+cancer+and+immunotherapy&no_unk=Y&pg=3). Some of those completed trials are summarized in Table 2 and ongoing trials are listed in Table 3. We will also briefly discuss five major immunotherapeutic approaches in CRC.

mAb therapy

Cetuximab and Panitumumab which target the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) are humanized Ab and have been approved to treat metastatic CRC either alone or in combination with chemotherapeutic drugs[22]. However, approximately 4 out of 10 CRC patients have *KRAS* or *NRAS* mutations which make these Ab therapy ineffective. Therefore, testing for these gene mutations before treatment is necessary[23]. The mechanism of action for Cetuximab is mainly *via* blockade of EGFR signaling which is vital for tumor cell growth. In addition, Centuximab also engages immune mechanisms such as antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity and/or complement-dependent cytotoxicity for tumor killing[24,25]. Vascular endothelial growth factor Ab (Bevacizumab) was also approved initially for the first-line treatment of patients with metastatic CRC in combination with 5-FU-based chemotherapy[26]. However, the overall response rate is limited and adverse effects are substantial including increased risk for cardiac ischemic events. There are more humanized Abs currently in different phases of clinical trials such as adecatumumab against EpCAM, labetuzumab against carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), and pemtumomab against Mucins.

IMMUNE CHECKPOINT INHIBITORS THERAPY

CTLA-4 is an immune checkpoint molecule that down-regulates T cell activation by binding to CD80/CD86

Table 2 Completed clinical trials of immunotherapy in human colorectal cancer

Ref.	Clinical phase	No. patients	Clinical setting	Immunotherapy	Comments
Morse *et al*[93]	Ⅱ	74	Liver or lung metastases from CRC removed by surgery	PANVAC-V + PANVAC-F + DC/ PANVAC-V + PANVAC-F + GM-CSF	Good safety record
Vermorken *et al*[44]	Ⅱ and Ⅲ	254	Colon cancer	Active specific immunotherapy (ASI) with an autologous tumor cell- bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine with surgical resection/ resection alone	ASI gave significant clinical benefit in surgically resected patients in stage II colon cancer
	Dukes' stage B2-C3	80	Colon or rectal cancer	ASI with an autologous tumor cell-BCG vaccine	ASI may be beneficial to patients with colon cancer
Hanna *et al*[94]	Stage Ⅱ and Stage Ⅲ		Colon cancer	ASI consisting of autologous tumor cells mixed with BCG (OncoVAX™)	Increase 5-yr survival rate and 5-yr disease-free survival rate, reduce recurrence rate
Marshall *et al*[95]	Stage Ⅳ		Colon cancer	ALVAC-CEA	Safe and can elicit CEA-specific CTL responses
Harris *et al*[96]	Stage Ⅱ and stage Ⅲ	412	Colon cancer	Adjuvant active specific immunotherapy with an autologous tumor cell-BCG vaccine	More beneficial than resection alone

Table 3 Ongoing immunotherapy clinical trials in human colorectal cancer

Type	Cancer	Phase	Name	Identifier	Start time
Monoclonal antibodies	Untreated metastatic colorectal cancer	Ⅱ	RO5520985 (a bispecific anti-ANG-2/anti-VEGF-A	NCT02141295	5/15/2014
	Colorectal cancer	Ⅰ / Ⅱ	IMMU-132 (an Ab-drug conjugate targeting Trop-2)	NCT01631552	6/26/2012
	Metastatic colorectal cancer	Ⅰ / Ⅱ	IMMU-130 (an Ab-drug conjugate targeting CEACAM5)	NCT01605318	5/22/2012
	Metastatic colorectal carcinoma	Ⅰ	MGD007 (a dual-affinity re-targeting DART protein designed to target the glycoprotein A33)	NCT02248805	9/18/2014
	Metastatic colorectal cancer	Ⅰ	OMP-131R10 (an anti-RSPO3 Ab)	NCT02482441	6/19/2015
Immune checkpoint inhibitors	MSI positive/negative colorectal cancer	Ⅱ	MK-3475 (an Ab that blocks negative signals on T cells)	NCT01876511	6/10/2013
	MSI positive colorectal cancer	Ⅰ	Ipilimumab	NCT02060188	12/18/2013
	MSI negative colorectal cancer	Ⅱ	Nivolumab	NCT02060188	12/18/2013
	Colorectal cancer	Ⅰ	MED14736	NCT01975831	10/29/2013
	Colon cancer	Ⅰ / Ⅱ	Anti-CD27 (Varlilumab) and Nivolumab	NCT02335918	12/18/2014
Cancer vaccines	Metastatic colorectal cancer	Ⅱ	DC vaccine	NCT02615574	11/24/2015
	Colorectal cancer	Ⅰ	AVX701 (targets CEA)	NCT01890213	6/26/2013
	Metastatic colorectal carcinoma	Ⅰ	SGI-110 in combination with an allogeneic colon cancer cell vaccine (GVAX) and cyclophosphamide (CY)	NCT01966289	10/10/2013
	Colorectal cancer	Ⅰ	HER-2 vaccine	NCT01376505	6/9/2011
Adoptive cell therapy	Metastatic colorectal cancer	Ⅱ	TIL (tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes)	NCT01174121	7/31/2010
	Colorectal cancer	Ⅰ / Ⅱ	Anti-MAGE-A3-DP4 TCR	NCT02111850	4/9/2014
	Colorectal carcinoma	Ⅰ / Ⅱ	CAR T cells	NCT02617134	11/26/2015
	Colorectal cancer	Ⅰ	NK cells + CliniMACs CD3 and CD56 systems	NCT00720785	7/22/2008
Oncolytic virus therapies	KRAS mutant metastatic Colorectal cancer	Ⅰ	REOLYSIN in combination with FOLFIRI and Bevacizumab	NCT01274624	1/7/2011
Adjuvant immunotherapies	Recurrent colorectal cancer	Ⅰ / Ⅱ	Chemokine modulatory regimen	NCT01545141	2/29/2012
Cytokines	Colorectal carcinoma	Ⅰ	AM0010 (a recombinant human IL-10)	NCT02009449	12/2/2013
	Colorectal carcinoma	Ⅰ	Rh IL-15	NCT01572493	4/5/2012

molecules on antigen-presenting cells (APC). Programmed death receptor ligand 1/2 (PD-L1/L2) also negatively regulates effector T cell function by binding to PD-1 receptor on T cells. Generally induced by their respective ligands that are expressed on either tumor cells (*e.g.*, PDL1/ L2→PD-1) or APCs (*e.g.*, CD80/86→CTLA-4; PD-L1/L2→PD-1), activated CTLA-4 and PD-1 immune checkpoint pathways are potent inhibitors of tumor-reactive T cell activation, clonal expansion and subsequent tumor rejection[27,28]. Anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 mAbs effectively block these pathways resulting in the re-activation and clonal expansion of

tumor-reactive lymphocytes. Until recently, clinical trials with immune checkpoint inhibitors showed remarkable success in patients with different cancers, including metastatic melanoma and NSCLC patients[5,29]. Anti-CTLA mAb Yervoy (ipilimumab) was originally approved to treat non-resectable, late stage melanoma in 2011. Anti-PD-1 Ab (nivolumab and pembrolizumab) was approved by the FDA in 2015 to treat patients with advanced NSCLC including squamous and non-squamous NSCLC. Intriguingly, a new Phase 1/2 study (CheckMate 069) evaluating concurrent ipilimumab/nivolumab *vs* ipilimuab alone in chemotherapy naïve advanced melanoma patients reported a remarkable 61% objective response rate (34). Thus, combined ipilimumab and nivolumab was approved by the FDA for the frontline treatment of advanced melanoma in 2015.

In human CRC, a phase Ⅱ clinical trial was conducted to use pembrolizumab for the treatment of mismatch repair-deficient CRC and mismatch repair-proficient CRC[21]. Pembrolizumab was administered intravenously at a dose of 10 mg/kg every 14 d. A total of 32 patients with CRC were enrolled in this trial. Among them, 10 patients had mismatch repair-deficient tumors and 18 had mismatch repair-proficient tumors. In the patients with mismatch repair-deficient CRC, the immune-related objective response rate was 40% and the immune-related progression-free survival rate at 30 wk was 78%. In a sharp contrast, patients with mismatch repair-proficient tumors had 0% immune-related objective response rate and the immune-related progression free survival rate was 11%. More importantly, in the patients with mismatch repair-deficient CRC, the median progression-free survival and medial media overall survival were not reached while among the patients with mismatch repair-proficient tumors, the median progression-free survival was only 2.2 mo and the median overall survival was 5.0 mo. Although this trial has a relative small cohort of CRC patients, the findings are significant and further support the idea that mutation-associated neoantigen recognition is a critical component of the endogenous antitumor immune response. Thus patients with mismatch repair-deficient tumors may benefit greatly with anti-PD-1 immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy. In this trial, the investigators also analyzed the number of somatic mutations in tumors using whole-exome sequencing. They suggested that patients with mismatch repair-deficient tumors that have more than 20 times higher of mutation-associated neoantigens than in tumors without this deficiency should be the basis for the anti-PD-1 therapy. However, more studies need to be done to further support this conclusion.

Tremelimumab, another CTLA-4 inhibitor, is presently under clinical investigation in patients with advanced melanoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, non-small cell lung cancer and metastatic CRC[30-33]. However, the results of one study did not show clinical benefit from the single-agent administration to the patients with treatment-refractory CRC[33]. Previous studies also indicate that administrate anti-CTLA-4 Ab combined with other agents significantly improve the treatment effect in colon cancer[34-37]. However, CTLA-4 Ab treatment has reported previously that 43% of patients suffered from grades 3 to 4 autoimmune responses, such as enterocolitis, hypophysitis, dermatitis and hepatitis[38]. A phase Ⅱ clinical trial of Nivolumab and Nivolumab plus Ipilimumab in recurrent and metastatic microsatellite high colon cancer is underway (ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT02060188).

CANCER VACCINES

Cancer vaccines are designed to stimulate antigen-specific T-cell or B-cell response against cancer by providing antigens to professional APC such as dendritic cells (DCs). In addition, vaccines also include components intended to activate DCs pulsed with antigens and program them to migrate to a local lymph node.

DC vaccine

DC-based cancer vaccine has been previously approved by the FDA for the treatment of metastatic castrate-resistant prostate cancer[39]. Since most of CRCs express CEA which is a tumor-associated antigen (TAA), DCs can be pulsed with CEA mRNA[40] or CEA peptides[41]. In these early clinical trials, CEA-specific T cell immune responses were elicited in most of DC vaccinated CRC patients. The vaccines were well-tolerated and safe administration. Despite induced T cell responses, these clinical trials did not show significant objective tumor regression[42]. It may be rationale to combine DC-based vaccine with immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy to boost both endogenous and TAA-specific antitumor T cell response. In addition, some limitations of DC vaccines need to overcome, such as DC vaccine quality control, migration after vaccine injection, the specificity of tumor targets, and the expenses of clinical utilization[43].

OncoVAX

OncoVAX is designed to utilize patients' own cancer cells with an immunostimulating adjuvant to elicit antitumor immune responses against the recurrence of colon cancer after surgery. This patient-specific vaccine is composed of metabolically-active, sterile, irradiated, and non-tumorigenic autologous cancer cells, with or without fresh frozen Bacillus Calmette-Guerin (BCG) bacteria as an adjuvant. In this phase Ⅲ study, 254 patients were enrolled and randomized into two groups: active specific immunotherapy (ASI) with autologous tumor cell-BCG vaccine with tumor resection and resection alone. ASI was given three weekly vaccinations starting 4 wk after surgery. Patients were boosted at 6 mo with irradiated autologous tumor cells. It appears that OncoVAX has the major impact on stage Ⅱ disease with a significantly

longer recurrence-free period and 61% risk reduction for recurrences. Recurrence-free survival was also significantly longer with ASI. However, the overall survival was not significantly improved[44]. Longer follow-up studies reveal that a beneficial effect of OncoVAX is statistically significant for all endpoints including recurrence-free interval, overall survival, and recurrence-free survival but only in Stage Ⅱ colon cancer but not in Stage Ⅲ patients[45]. A recent meta-analysis also suggests that combined ASI therapy with surgery showed a significantly survival benefit[46]. However, it is unclear whether this benefit is associated with CRC patients with different stages.

ADOPTIVE T CELL THERAPY

Adoptive T cell therapy has the potential to enhance antitumor immunity and augment vaccine efficacy. Indeed adoptive cell immunotherapy based on the transfusion of genetically re-directed autologous T cells has demonstrated clinical promise for the treatment of both hematologic malignancies and solid tumors. Particularly, recent developments have been focused on gain-of-function strategy to endow effector T cells with desired antigen receptors, such as chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T cells[47]. Interestingly, recent studies showed that modulating T cell metabolic pathways significantly augments effect T cell antitumor responses[48] and synergizes with immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy in cancer[49].

In a phase I clinical trial in CRC patients, genetically engineered T cells were adoptively transferred into three patients with metastatic CRC refractory to standard treatment. Those autologous T cells were genetically engineered to express murine TCR against human CEA[50]. Serum CEA levels dramatically decreased after treatment in all three patients (74%-99%) and one patient had an objective regression of tumor metastatic to the lung and liver. However, severe transient inflammatory colitis developed in all three patients. More clinical studies need to be done to demonstrate true benefit of CAR T cells in human CRC.

In addition to adaptive αβ T cell therapy in cancer, innate γδ T cells have also been shown to elicit potent antitumor immunity[51,52]. Innate γδ T cells have two major subsets with one predominately producing IFN-γ and another one secreting large amounts of IL-17. Although IL-17-producing γδ T cells play critical roles in cancer progression and metastasis[53-56], IFN-γ-producing γδ T cells have potent antitumor effect. Indeed, adoptive transfer of Vγ4 γδ T cells into tumor-bearing mice has shown a therapeutic effect[57]. In addition, we showed recently that *ex vivo* expanded human Vδ1 γδ T cells exhibited therapeutic effect in human colon cancer xenografted mouse model[58]. These expanded γδ T cells predominately express granzyme B, perforin, and IFN-γ. Adoptive transfer of γδ T cell therapy has been done in many types of cancer with varying efficacy[59].

CHEMOIMMUNOTHERAPY

Chemoimmunotherapy is chemotherapy combined with immunotherapy. Although chemotherapy and immunotherapy appear to be antagonistic as chemotherapeutic drugs not only kill tumor cells leading to dying tumor cells but also impact on immune cells, chemotherapy also depletes immune suppressive cells such as regulatory T cells, potentially enhancing antitumor immune response. In addition, lymphodepletion stimulates homeostatic T cell proliferation thus providing a unique opportunity for tumor immunotherapy. Chemoimmunotherapy has been widely used for hematological malignancy treatment[60]. The first chemoimmunotherapy clinical trial conducted in human colon cancer patients was reported in 2008[61]. Total 46 CRC patients with advanced disease were enrolled and received chemodrugs gemcitabine, oxaliplatin, levofolinic acid, and 5-FU followed by granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and IL-2 (GOLFIG-1 trial). In this trial, six patients showed a prolonged time to progression and survival. In addition, these patients had decreased Treg cells but increased central memory T cells as well as colon cancer-specific cytotoxic T cells. Interestingly, it appears that tumor-infiltrating Treg cells were associated with a better prognosis in patients received chemoimmunotherapy[62]. Recently, a multicenter open label phase Ⅲ trial was conducted as a frontline treatment of metastatic CRC[63]. Patients receiving chemoimmunotherapy (GOLFIG-2 trial) showed prolonged progression-free survival and increased overall response rate. However, this study was discontinued due to poor recruitment in the control arm. Thus it is too early to make any recommendation whether chemoimmunotherapy has any therapeutic efficacy for advanced CRC treatment. Nevertheless, these clinical studies provide "proof-of-principle" suggesting that GOLFIG chemoimmunotherapy may be used as a novel regimen for the first-line treatment of advanced CRC.

CONCLUSION

Immunotherapies have been investigated in human CRC for decades[64] although there is no approved immunotherapy for human CRC up to date. As described above, different immune-directed approaches have been developed such as DC-based vaccines and genetically engineered CAR T cells. However, these developments are still in the early stages. One promising approach for CRC immunotherapy may lie in immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy given the encouraging phase Ⅱ clinical trial data[21]. This is particularly important for patients harboring MSI tumors since more mutational loads lead to more neoantigens that can be recognized by effector T cells. Therefore, identifying proper criteria to choose eligible patients thus getting maximum therapeutic benefits is essential. It may be critical to assess immunological

profiles of human CRC. In this context, immunoscore system seems critical, which should be included in the eligibility criteria for patients receiving such therapy. In addition, more research needs to be done to identify more Ag targets that can be used for cancer vaccine development and/or CAR T cells. Increasing studies have identified new immune components which maybe the potential targets for CRC immunotherapy, such as GUCY2C, HHLA2, OR7C1, and MAGE-D4[53,65-70]. Furthermore, combined immunotherapies such as combined anti-CTLA-4 with anti-PD-1 or combined cancer vaccines with immune checkpoint inhibitor therapy may yield better therapeutic efficacy. Certainly, cautions are needed to avoid severe adverse effects that could be elicited by such combination therapy. Nevertheless, this is an exciting time for immunotherapy in human CRC.

REFERENCES

1 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2015. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2015; **65**: 5-29 [PMID: 25559415 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21254]

2 **Arnold M**, Sierra MS, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global patterns and trends in colorectal cancer incidence and mortality. *Gut* 2016; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26818619 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310912]

3 **Pérez-Ruiz E**, Berraondo P. Immunological Landscape and Clinical Management of Rectal Cancer. *Front Immunol* 2016; **7**: 61 [PMID: 26941741 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00061]

4 **Robert C**, Thomas L, Bondarenko I, O'Day S, Weber J, Garbe C, Lebbe C, Baurain JF, Testori A, Grob JJ, Davidson N, Richards J, Maio M, Hauschild A, Miller WH, Gascon P, Lotem M, Harmankaya K, Ibrahim R, Francis S, Chen TT, Humphrey R, Hoos A, Wolchok JD. Ipilimumab plus dacarbazine for previously untreated metastatic melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2517-2526 [PMID: 21639810 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1104621]

5 **Garon EB**, Rizvi NA, Hui R, Leighl N, Balmanoukian AS, Eder JP, Patnaik A, Aggarwal C, Gubens M, Horn L, Carcereny E, Ahn MJ, Felip E, Lee JS, Hellmann MD, Hamid O, Goldman JW, Soria JC, Dolled-Filhart M, Rutledge RZ, Zhang J, Lunceford JK, Rangwala R, Lubiniecki GM, Roach C, Emancipator K, Gandhi L. Pembrolizumab for the treatment of non-small-cell lung cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 2018-2028 [PMID: 25891174 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1501824]

6 **Larkin J**, Chiarion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R, Grob JJ, Cowey CL, Lao CD, Schadendorf D, Dummer R, Smylie M, Rutkowski P, Ferrucci PF, Hill A, Wagstaff J, Carlino MS, Haanen JB, Maio M, Marquez-Rodas I, McArthur GA, Ascierto PA, Long GV, Callahan MK, Postow MA, Grossmann K, Sznol M, Dreno B, Bastholt L, Yang A, Rollin LM, Horak C, Hodi FS, Wolchok JD. Combined Nivolumab and Ipilimumab or Monotherapy in Untreated Melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 23-34 [PMID: 26027431 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1504030]

7 **Postow MA**, Chesney J, Pavlick AC, Robert C, Grossmann K, McDermott D, Linette GP, Meyer N, Giguere JK, Agarwala SS, Shaheen M, Ernstoff MS, Minor D, Salama AK, Taylor M, Ott PA, Rollin LM, Horak C, Gagnier P, Wolchok JD, Hodi FS. Nivolumab and ipilimumab versus ipilimumab in untreated melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 2006-2017 [PMID: 25891304 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1414428]

8 **Galon J**, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pagès C, Tosolini M, Camus M, Berger A, Wind P, Zinzindohoué F, Bruneval P, Cugnenc PH, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Pagès F. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. *Science* 2006; **313**: 1960-1964 [PMID: 17008531]

9 **Bindea G**, Mlecnik B, Tosolini M, Kirilovsky A, Waldner M, Obenauf AC, Angell H, Fredriksen T, Lafontaine L, Berger A, Bruneval P, Fridman WH, Becker C, Pagès F, Speicher MR, Trajanoski Z, Galon J. Spatiotemporal dynamics of intratumoral immune cells reveal the immune landscape in human cancer. *Immunity* 2013; **39**: 782-795 [PMID: 24138885 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2013.10.003]

10 **Williams DS**, Bird MJ, Jorissen RN, Yu YL, Walker F, Zhang HH, Nice EC, Burgess AW. Nonsense mediated decay resistant mutations are a source of expressed mutant proteins in colon cancer cell lines with microsatellite instability. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e16012 [PMID: 21209843 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0016012]

11 **Smyrk TC**, Watson P, Kaul K, Lynch HT. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes are a marker for microsatellite instability in colorectal carcinoma. *Cancer* 2001; **91**: 2417-2422 [PMID: 11413533]

12 **McGranahan N**, Furness AJ, Rosenthal R, Ramskov S, Lyngaa R, Saini SK, Jamal-Hanjani M, Wilson GA, Birkbak NJ, Hiley CT, Watkins TB, Shafi S, Murugaesu N, Mitter R, Akarca AU, Linares J, Marafioti T, Henry JY, Van Allen EM, Miao D, Schilling B, Schadendorf D, Garraway LA, Makarov V, Rizvi NA, Snyder A, Hellmann MD, Merghoub T, Wolchok JD, Shukla SA, Wu CJ, Peggs KS, Chan TA, Hadrup SR, Quezada SA, Swanton C. Clonal neoantigens elicit T cell immunoreactivity and sensitivity to immune checkpoint blockade. *Science* 2016; **351**: 1463-1469 [PMID: 26940869 DOI: 10.1126/science.aaf1490]

13 **Alexandrov LB**, Nik-Zainal S, Wedge DC, Aparicio SA, Behjati S, Biankin AV, Bignell GR, Bolli N, Borg A, Børresen-Dale AL, Boyault S, Burkhardt B, Butler AP, Caldas C, Davies HR, Desmedt C, Eils R, Eyfjörd JE, Foekens JA, Greaves M, Hosoda F, Hutter B, Ilicic T, Imbeaud S, Imielinski M, Jäger N, Jones DT, Jones D, Knappskog S, Kool M, Lakhani SR, López-Otín C, Martin S, Munshi NC, Nakamura H, Northcott PA, Pajic M, Papaemmanuil E, Paradiso A, Pearson JV, Puente XS, Raine K, Ramakrishna M, Richardson AL, Richter J, Rosenstiel P, Schlesner M, Schumacher TN, Span PN, Teague JW, Totoki Y, Tutt AN, Valdés-Mas R, van Buuren MM, van 't Veer L, Vincent-Salomon A, Waddell N, Yates LR, Zucman-Rossi J, Futreal PA, McDermott U, Lichter P, Meyerson M, Grimmond SM, Siebert R, Campo E, Shibata T, Pfister SM, Campbell PJ, Stratton MR. Signatures of mutational processes in human cancer. *Nature* 2013; **500**: 415-421 [PMID: 23945592 DOI: 10.1038/nature12477]

14 **Van Allen EM**, Miao D, Schilling B, Shukla SA, Blank C, Zimmer L, Sucker A, Hillen U, Geukes Foppen MH, Goldinger SM, Utikal J, Hassel JC, Weide B, Kaehler KC, Loquai C, Mohr P, Gutzmer R, Dummer R, Gabriel S, Wu CJ, Schadendorf D, Garraway LA. Genomic correlates of response to CTLA-4 blockade in metastatic melanoma. *Science* 2015; **350**: 207-211 [PMID: 26359337 DOI: 10.1126/science.aad0095]

15 **Xiao Y**, Freeman GJ. The microsatellite instable subset of colorectal cancer is a particularly good candidate for checkpoint blockade immunotherapy. *Cancer Discov* 2015; **5**: 16-18 [PMID: 25583798 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-1397]

16 **Mlecnik B**, Bindea G, Angell HK, Maby P, Angelova M, Tougeron D, Church SE, Lafontaine L, Fischer M, Fredriksen T, Sasso M, Bilocq AM, Kirilovsky A, Obenauf AC, Hamieh M, Berger A, Bruneval P, Tuech JJ, Sabourin JC, Le Pessot F, Mauillon J, Rafii A, Laurent-Puig P, Speicher MR, Trajanoski Z, Michel P, Sesboüe R, Frebourg T, Pagès F, Valge-Archer V, Latouche JB, Galon J. Integrative Analyses of Colorectal Cancer Show Immunoscore Is a Stronger Predictor of Patient Survival Than Microsatellite Instability. *Immunity* 2016;**44**: 698-711 [PMID: 26982367 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.02.025]

17 **Mlecnik B**, Bindea G, Kirilovsky A, Angell HK, Obenauf AC, Tosolini M, Church SE, Maby P, Vasaturo A, Angelova M, Fredriksen T, Mauger S, Waldner M, Berger A, Speicher MR, Pagès F, Valge-Archer V, Galon J. The tumor microenvironment and Immunoscore are critical determinants of dissemination to distant metastasis. *Sci Transl Med* 2016; **8**: 327ra26 [PMID: 26912905 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aad6352]

18 **Galon J**, Pagès F, Marincola FM, Thurin M, Trinchieri G, Fox BA, Gajewski TF, Ascierto PA. The immune score as a new possible approach for the classification of cancer. *J Transl Med* 2012; **10**: 1 [PMID: 22214470 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-10-1]

19 **Galon J**, Angell HK, Bedognetti D, Marincola FM. The continuum of cancer immunosurveillance: prognostic, predictive, and mechanistic signatures. *Immunity* 2013; **39**: 11-26 [PMID: 23890060 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2013.07.008]

20 **Skoulidis F**, Byers LA, Diao L, Papadimitrakopoulou VA, Tong P, Izzo J, Behrens C, Kadara H, Parra ER, Canales JR, Zhang J, Giri U, Gudikote J, Cortez MA, Yang C, Fan Y, Peyton M, Girard L, Coombes KR, Toniatti C, Heffernan TP, Choi M, Frampton GM, Miller V, Weinstein JN, Herbst RS, Wong KK, Zhang J, Sharma P, Mills GB, Hong WK, Minna JD, Allison JP, Futreal A, Wang J, Wistuba II, Heymach JV. Co-occurring genomic alterations define major subsets of KRAS-mutant lung adenocarcinoma with distinct biology, immune profiles, and therapeutic vulnerabilities. *Cancer Discov* 2015; **5**: 860-877 [PMID: 26069186 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-1236]

21 **Le DT**, Uram JN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Kemberling H, Eyring AD, Skora AD, Luber BS, Azad NS, Laheru D, Biedrzycki B, Donehower RC, Zaheer A, Fisher GA, Crocenzi TS, Lee JJ, Duffy SM, Goldberg RM, de la Chapelle A, Koshiji M, Bhaijee F, Huebner T, Hruban RH, Wood LD, Cuka N, Pardoll DM, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Zhou S, Cornish TC, Taube JM, Anders RA, Eshleman JR, Vogelstein B, Diaz LA. PD-1 Blockade in Tumors with Mismatch-Repair Deficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 2509-2520 [PMID: 26028255 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1500596]

22 **Cunningham D**, Humblet Y, Siena S, Khayat D, Bleiberg H, Santoro A, Bets D, Mueser M, Harstrick A, Verslype C, Chau I, Van Cutsem E. Cetuximab monotherapy and cetuximab plus irinotecan in irinotecan-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 337-345 [PMID: 15269313 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa033025]

23 **Sorich MJ**, Wiese MD, Rowland A, Kichenadasse G, McKinnon RA, Karapetis CS. Extended RAS mutations and anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody survival benefit in metastatic colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. *Ann Oncol* 2015; **26**: 13-21 [PMID: 25115304 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu378]

24 **Trotta AM**, Ottaiano A, Romano C, Nasti G, Nappi A, De Divitiis C, Napolitano M, Zanotta S, Casaretti R, D'Alterio C, Avallone A, Califano D, Iaffaioli RV, Scala S. Prospective Evaluation of Cetuximab-Mediated Antibody-Dependent Cell Cytotoxicity in Metastatic Colorectal Cancer Patients Predicts Treatment Efficacy. *Cancer Immunol Res* 2016; **4**: 366-374 [PMID: 26817995 DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-15-0184]

25 **Hsu YF**, Ajona D, Corrales L, Lopez-Picazo JM, Gurpide A, Montuenga LM, Pio R. Complement activation mediates cetuximab inhibition of non-small cell lung cancer tumor growth in vivo. *Mol Cancer* 2010; **9**: 139 [PMID: 20529262 DOI: 10.1186/1476-4598-9-139]

26 **Kabbinavar F**, Hurwitz HI, Fehrenbacher L, Meropol NJ, Novotny WF, Lieberman G, Griffing S, Bergsland E. Phase II, randomized trial comparing bevacizumab plus fluorouracil (FU)/leucovorin (LV) with FU/LV alone in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2003; **21**: 60-65 [PMID: 12506171]

27 **Sharma P**, Allison JP. Immune checkpoint targeting in cancer therapy: toward combination strategies with curative potential. *Cell* 2015; **161**: 205-214 [PMID: 25860605 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.03.030]

28 **Sharma P**, Allison JP. The future of immune checkpoint therapy. *Science* 2015; **348**: 56-61 [PMID: 25838373 DOI: 10.1126/science.aaa8172]

29 **Gettinger SN**, Horn L, Gandhi L, Spigel DR, Antonia SJ, Rizvi NA, Powderly JD, Heist RS, Carvajal RD, Jackman DM, Sequist LV, Smith DC, Leming P, Carbone DP, Pinder-Schenck MC, Topalian SL, Hodi FS, Sosman JA, Sznol M, McDermott DF, Pardoll DM, Sankar V, Ahlers CM, Salvati M, Wigginton JM, Hellmann MD, Kollia GD, Gupta AK, Brahmer JR. Overall Survival and Long-Term Safety of Nivolumab (Anti-Programmed Death 1 Antibody, BMS-936558, ONO-4538) in Patients With Previously Treated Advanced Non-Small-Cell Lung Cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 2004-2012 [PMID: 25897158 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.58.3708]

30 **Ribas A**, Kefford R, Marshall MA, Punt CJ, Haanen JB, Marmol M, Garbe C, Gogas H, Schachter J, Linette G, Lorigan P, Kendra KL, Maio M, Trefzer U, Smylie M, McArthur GA, Dreno B, Nathan PD, Mackiewicz J, Kirkwood JM, Gomez-Navarro J, Huang B, Pavlov D, Hauschild A. Phase III randomized clinical trial comparing tremelimumab with standard-of-care chemotherapy in patients with advanced melanoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 616-622 [PMID: 23295794 DOI: 10.1200/jco.2012.44.6112]

31 **Sangro B**, Gomez-Martin C, de la Mata M, Iñarrairaegui M, Garralda E, Barrera P, Riezu-Boj JI, Larrea E, Alfaro C, Sarobe P, Lasarte JJ, Pérez-Gracia JL, Melero I, Prieto J. A clinical trial of CTLA-4 blockade with tremelimumab in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 2013; **59**: 81-88 [PMID: 23466307 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.02.022]

32 **Zatloukal P**, Heo D, Park K, Kang J, Butts C, Bradford D, Graziano S, Huang B, Healey D. Randomized phase II clinical trial comparing tremelimumab (CP-675,206) with best supportive care (BSC) following first-line platinum-based therapy in patients (pts) with advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Proceedings of the ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings, 2009: 8071

33 **Chung KY**, Gore I, Fong L, Venook A, Beck SB, Dorazio P, Criscitiello PJ, Healey DI, Huang B, Gomez-Navarro J, Saltz LB. Phase II study of the anti-cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 monoclonal antibody, tremelimumab, in patients with refractory metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 3485-3490 [PMID: 20498386 DOI: 10.1200/jco.2010.28.3994]

34 **Lute KD**, May KF, Lu P, Zhang H, Kocak E, Mosinger B, Wolford C, Phillips G, Caligiuri MA, Zheng P, Liu Y. Human CTLA4 knock-in mice unravel the quantitative link between tumor immunity and autoimmunity induced by anti-CTLA-4 antibodies. *Blood* 2005; **106**: 3127-3133 [PMID: 16037385 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2005-06-2298]

35 **Pedersen AE**, Buus S, Claesson MH. Treatment of transplanted CT26 tumour with dendritic cell vaccine in combination with blockade of vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 2 and CTLA-4. *Cancer Lett* 2006; **235**: 229-238 [PMID: 15927356 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2005.04.012]

36 **Jure-Kunkel MN**, Masters G, Girit E, Dito G, Lee FY. Antitumor activity of anti-CTLA-4 monoclonal antibody (mAb) in combination with ixabepilone in preclinical tumor models. *J Clin Oncol* (Meeting Abstracts) 2008; **26**: 3048

37 **Kocak E**, Lute K, Chang X, May KF, Exten KR, Zhang H, Abdessalam SF, Lehman AM, Jarjoura D, Zheng P, Liu Y. Combination therapy with anti-CTL antigen-4 and anti-4-1BB antibodies enhances cancer immunity and reduces autoimmunity. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 7276-7284 [PMID: 16849577 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.can-05-2128]

38 **Phan GQ**, Yang JC, Sherry RM, Hwu P, Topalian SL, Schwartzentruber DJ, Restifo NP, Haworth LR, Seipp CA, Freezer LJ, Morton KE, Mavroukakis SA, Duray PH, Steinberg SM, Allison JP, Davis TA, Rosenberg SA. Cancer regression and autoimmunity induced by cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 blockade in patients with metastatic melanoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 8372-8377 [PMID: 12826605 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1533209100]

39 **Fishman M**. A changing world for DCvax: a PSMA loaded autologous dendritic cell vaccine for prostate cancer. *Expert Opin Biol Ther* 2009; **9**: 1565-1575 [PMID: 19916735 DOI: 10.1517/14712590903446921]

40 **Nair SK**, Hull S, Coleman D, Gilboa E, Lyerly HK, Morse MA. Induction of carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)-specific cytotoxic T-lymphocyte responses in vitro using autologous dendritic cells loaded with CEA peptide or CEA RNA in patients with metastatic malignancies expressing CEA. *Int J Cancer* 1999; **82**: 121-124 [PMID: 10360830]

41 **Fong L**, Hou Y, Rivas A, Benike C, Yuen A, Fisher GA, Davis

MM, Engleman EG. Altered peptide ligand vaccination with Flt3 ligand expanded dendritic cells for tumor immunotherapy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 8809-8814 [PMID: 11427731 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.141226398]

42 **O'Rourke MG**, Johnson M, Lanagan C, See J, Yang J, Bell JR, Slater GJ, Kerr BM, Crowe B, Purdie DM, Elliott SL, Ellem KA, Schmidt CW. Durable complete clinical responses in a phase I/II trial using an autologous melanoma cell/dendritic cell vaccine. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2003; **52**: 387-395 [PMID: 12682787 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-003-0375-x]

43 **De Vries IJ**, Krooshoop DJ, Scharenborg NM, Lesterhuis WJ, Diepstra JH, Van Muijen GN, Strijk SP, Ruers TJ, Boerman OC, Oyen WJ, Adema GJ, Punt CJ, Figdor CG. Effective migration of antigen-pulsed dendritic cells to lymph nodes in melanoma patients is determined by their maturation state. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 12-17 [PMID: 12517769]

44 **Vermorken JB**, Claessen AM, van Tinteren H, Gall HE, Ezinga R, Meijer S, Scheper RJ, Meijer CJ, Bloemena E, Ransom JH, Hanna MG, Pinedo HM. Active specific immunotherapy for stage II and stage III human colon cancer: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 1999; **353**: 345-350 [PMID: 9950438 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(98)07186-4]

45 **Uyl-de Groot CA**, Vermorken JB, Hanna MG, Verboom P, Groot MT, Bonsel GJ, Meijer CJ, Pinedo HM. Immunotherapy with autologous tumor cell-BCG vaccine in patients with colon cancer: a prospective study of medical and economic benefits. *Vaccine* 2005; **23**: 2379-2387 [PMID: 15755632 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2005.01.015]

46 **Cao JX**, Zhang XY, Liu JL, Li JL, Liu YS, Wang M, Xu BL, Wang ZX. Validity of combination active specific immunotherapy for colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis of 2993 patients. *Cytotherapy* 2015; **17**: 1746-1762 [PMID: 26455275 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcyt.2015.08.009]

47 **June CH**, Riddell SR, Schumacher TN. Adoptive cellular therapy: a race to the finish line. *Sci Transl Med* 2015; **7**: 280ps7 [PMID: 25810311 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aaa3643]

48 **Kawalekar OU**, O'Connor RS, Fraietta JA, Guo L, McGettigan SE, Posey AD, Patel PR, Guedan S, Scholler J, Keith B, Snyder N, Blair I, Milone MC, June CH. Distinct Signaling of Coreceptors Regulates Specific Metabolism Pathways and Impacts Memory Development in CAR T Cells. *Immunity* 2016; **44**: 380-390 [PMID: 26885860 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.01.021]

49 **Yang W**, Bai Y, Xiong Y, Zhang J, Chen S, Zheng X, Meng X, Li L, Wang J, Xu C, Yan C, Wang L, Chang CC, Chang TY, Zhang T, Zhou P, Song BL, Liu W, Sun SC, Liu X, Li BL, Xu C. Potentiating the antitumour response of CD8(+) T cells by modulating cholesterol metabolism. *Nature* 2016; **531**: 651-655 [PMID: 26982734 DOI: 10.1038/nature17412]

50 **Parkhurst MR**, Yang JC, Langan RC, Dudley ME, Nathan DA, Feldman SA, Davis JL, Morgan RA, Merino MJ, Sherry RM, Hughes MS, Kammula US, Phan GQ, Lim RM, Wank SA, Restifo NP, Robbins PF, Laurencot CM, Rosenberg SA. T cells targeting carcinoembryonic antigen can mediate regression of metastatic colorectal cancer but induce severe transient colitis. *Mol Ther* 2011; **19**: 620-626 [PMID: 21157437 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2010.272]

51 **Van Acker HH**, Anguille S, Van Tendeloo VF, Lion E. Empowering gamma delta T cells with antitumor immunity by dendritic cell-based immunotherapy. *Oncoimmunology* 2015; **4**: e1021538 [PMID: 26405575 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2015.1021538]

52 **Chien YH**, Meyer C, Bonneville M. γδ T cells: first line of defense and beyond. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2014; **32**: 121-155 [PMID: 24387714 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-032713-120216]

53 **Wu P**, Wu D, Ni C, Ye J, Chen W, Hu G, Wang Z, Wang C, Zhang Z, Xia W, Chen Z, Wang K, Zhang T, Xu J, Han Y, Zhang T, Wu X, Wang J, Gong W, Zheng S, Qiu F, Yan J, Huang J. γδT17 cells promote the accumulation and expansion of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in human colorectal cancer. *Immunity* 2014; **40**: 785-800 [PMID: 24816404 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.03.013]

54 **Yan J**, Huang J. Innate γδT17 cells convert cancer-elicited inflammation into immunosuppression through myeloid-derived suppressor cells. *Oncoimmunology* 2014; **3**: e953423 [PMID: 25610744 DOI: 10.4161/21624011.2014.953423]

55 **Ma S**, Cheng Q, Cai Y, Gong H, Wu Y, Yu X, Shi L, Wu D, Dong C, Liu H. IL-17A produced by γδ T cells promotes tumor growth in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2014; **74**: 1969-1982 [PMID: 24525743 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.can-13-2534]

56 **Coffelt SB**, Kersten K, Doornebal CW, Weiden J, Vrijland K, Hau CS, Verstegen NJ, Ciampricotti M, Hawinkels LJ, Jonkers J, de Visser KE. IL-17-producing γδ T cells and neutrophils conspire to promote breast cancer metastasis. *Nature* 2015; **522**: 345-348 [PMID: 25822788 DOI: 10.1038/nature14282]

57 **He W**, Hao J, Dong S, Gao Y, Tao J, Chi H, Flavell R, O'Brien RL, Born WK, Craft J, Han J, Wang P, Zhao L, Wu J, Yin Z. Naturally activated V gamma 4 gamma delta T cells play a protective role in tumor immunity through expression of eomesodermin. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 126-133 [PMID: 20525896 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0903767]

58 **Wu D**, Wu P, Wu X, Ye J, Wang Z, Zhao S, Ni C, Hu G, Xu J, Han Y, Zhang T, Qiu F, Yan J, Huang J. Ex vivo expanded human circulating Vδ1 γδT cells exhibit favorable therapeutic potential for colon cancer. *Oncoimmunology* 2015; **4**: e992749 [PMID: 25949914 DOI: 10.4161/2162402X.2014.992749]

59 **Fisher JP**, Heuijerjans J, Yan M, Gustafsson K, Anderson J. γδ T cells for cancer immunotherapy: A systematic review of clinical trials. *Oncoimmunology* 2014; **3**: e27572 [PMID: 24734216 DOI: 10.4161/onci.27572]

60 **Ferreri AJ**, Cwynarski K, Pulczynski E, Ponzoni M, Deckert M, Politi LS, Torri V, Fox CP, Rosée PL, Schorb E, Ambrosetti A, Roth A, Hemmaway C, Ferrari A, Linton KM, Rudà R, Binder M, Pukrop T, Balzarotti M, Fabbri A, Johnson P, Gørløv JS, Hess G, Panse J, Pisani F, Tucci A, Stilgenbauer S, Hertenstein B, Keller U, Krause SW, Levis A, Schmoll HJ, Cavalli F, Finke J, Reni M, Zucca E, Illerhaus G. Chemoimmunotherapy with methotrexate, cytarabine, thiotepa, and rituximab (MATRix regimen) in patients with primary CNS lymphoma: results of the first randomisation of the International Extranodal Lymphoma Study Group-32 (IELSG32) phase 2 trial. *Lancet Haematol* 2016; **3**: e217-e227 [PMID: 27132696 DOI: 10.1016/S2352-3026(16)00036-3]

61 **Correale P**, Tagliaferri P, Fioravanti A, Del Vecchio MT, Remondo C, Montagnani F, Rotundo MS, Ginanneschi C, Martellucci I, Francini E, Cusi MG, Tassone P, Francini G. Immunity feedback and clinical outcome in colon cancer patients undergoing chemoimmunotherapy with gemcitabine + FOLFOX followed by subcutaneous granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor and aldesleukin (GOLFIG-1 Trial). *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 4192-4199 [PMID: 18593999 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-5278]

62 **Correale P**, Rotundo MS, Del Vecchio MT, Remondo C, Migali C, Ginanneschi C, Tsang KY, Licchetta A, Mannucci S, Loiacono L, Tassone P, Francini G, Tagliaferri P. Regulatory (FoxP3+) T-cell tumor infiltration is a favorable prognostic factor in advanced colon cancer patients undergoing chemo or chemoimmunotherapy. *J Immunother* 2010; **33**: 435-441 [PMID: 20386463 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e3181d32f01]

63 **Correale P**, Botta C, Rotundo MS, Guglielmo A, Conca R, Licchetta A, Pastina P, Bestoso E, Ciliberto D, Cusi MG, Fioravanti A, Guidelli GM, Bianco MT, Misso G, Martino E, Caraglia M, Tassone P, Mini E, Mantovani G, Ridolfi R, Pirtoli L, Tagliaferri P. Gemcitabine, oxaliplatin, levofolinate, 5-fluorouracil, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, and interleukin-2 (GOLFIG) versus FOLFOX chemotherapy in metastatic colorectal cancer patients: the GOLFIG-2 multicentric open-label randomized phase III trial. *J Immunother* 2014; **37**: 26-35 [PMID: 24316553 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0000000000000004]

64 **Evans JT**. Letter: Immunotherapy for colorectal cancer. *Lancet* 1976; **1**: 1248 [PMID: 58300]

65 **Xiao Y**, Freeman GJ. A New B7: CD28 Family Checkpoint Target for Cancer Immunotherapy: HHLA2. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 2201-2203 [PMID: 25869386 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-14-2658]

66 **Morita R**, Hirohashi Y, Torigoe T, Ito-Inoda S, Takahashi A, Mariya T, Asanuma H, Tamura Y, Tsukahara T, Kanaseki T, Kubo

T, Kutomi G, Mizuguchi T, Terui T, Ishitani K, Hashino S, Kondo T, Minagawa N, Takahashi N, Taketomi A, Todo S, Asaka M, Sato N. Olfactory Receptor Family 7 Subfamily C Member 1 Is a Novel Marker of Colon Cancer-Initiating Cells and Is a Potent Target of Immunotherapy. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 3298-3309 [PMID: 26861454 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-15-1709]

67 **Zhang QM**, He SJ, Shen N, Luo B, Fan R, Fu J, Luo GR, Zhou SF, Xiao SW, Xie XX. Overexpression of MAGE-D4 in colorectal cancer is a potentially prognostic biomarker and immunotherapy target. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2014; **7**: 3918-3927 [PMID: 25120768]

68 **Sawada Y**, Komori H, Tsunoda Y, Shimomura M, Takahashi M, Baba H, Ito M, Saito N, Kuwano H, Endo I, Nishimura Y, Nakatsura T. Identification of HLA-A2 or HLA-A24-restricted CTL epitopes for potential HSP105-targeted immunotherapy in colorectal cancer. *Oncol Rep* 2014; **31**: 1051-1058 [PMID: 24366042 DOI: 10.3892/or.2013.2941]

69 **Itoh T**, Ueda Y, Kawashima I, Nukaya I, Fujiwara H, Fuji N, Yamashita T, Yoshimura T, Okugawa K, Iwasaki T, Ideno M, Takesako K, Mitsuhashi M, Orita K, Yamagishi H. Immunotherapy of solid cancer using dendritic cells pulsed with the HLA-A24-restricted peptide of carcinoembryonic antigen. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2002; **51**: 99-106 [PMID: 11904734 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-001-0257-z]

70 **Snook AE**, Magee MS, Waldman SA. GUCY2C-targeted cancer immunotherapy: past, present and future. *Immunol Res* 2011; **51**: 161-169 [PMID: 22038530 DOI: 10.1007/s12026-011-8253-7]

71 **Fearon ER**. Human cancer syndromes: clues to the origin and nature of cancer. *Science* 1997; **278**: 1043-1050 [PMID: 9353177]

72 **Samowitz WS**, Holden JA, Curtin K, Edwards SL, Walker AR, Lin HA, Robertson MA, Nichols MF, Gruenthal KM, Lynch BJ, Leppert MF, Slattery ML. Inverse relationship between microsatellite instability and K-ras and p53 gene alterations in colon cancer. *Am J Pathol* 2001; **158**: 1517-1524 [PMID: 11290569 DOI: 10.1016/s0002-9440(10)64102-8]

73 **Miyaki M**, Iijima T, Konishi M, Sakai K, Ishii A, Yasuno M, Hishima T, Koike M, Shitara N, Iwama T, Utsunomiya J, Kuroki T, Mori T. Higher frequency of Smad4 gene mutation in human colorectal cancer with distant metastasis. *Oncogene* 1999; **18**: 3098-3103 [PMID: 10340381 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1202642]

74 **Baker SJ**, Fearon ER, Nigro JM, Hamilton SR, Preisinger AC, Jessup JM, vanTuinen P, Ledbetter DH, Barker DF, Nakamura Y, White R, Vogelstein B. Chromosome 17 deletions and p53 gene mutations in colorectal carcinomas. *Science* 1989; **244**: 217-221 [PMID: 2649981]

75 **Goel A**, Arnold CN, Niedzwiecki D, Carethers JM, Dowell JM, Wasserman L, Compton C, Mayer RJ, Bertagnolli MM, Boland CR. Frequent inactivation of PTEN by promoter hypermethylation in microsatellite instability-high sporadic colorectal cancers. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 3014-3021 [PMID: 15126336]

76 **Cho KR**, Oliner JD, Simons JW, Hedrick L, Fearon ER, Preisinger AC, Hedge P, Silverman GA, Vogelstein B. The DCC gene: structural analysis and mutations in colorectal carcinomas. *Genomics* 1994; **19**: 525-531 [PMID: 8188295 DOI: 10.1006/geno.1994.1102]

77 **Morin PJ**, Sparks AB, Korinek V, Barker N, Clevers H, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW. Activation of beta-catenin-Tcf signaling in colon cancer by mutations in beta-catenin or APC. *Science* 1997; **275**: 1787-1790 [PMID: 9065402]

78 **Nimmrich I**, Friedl W, Kruse R, Pietsch S, Hentsch S, Deuter R, Winde G, Müller O. Loss of the PLA2G2A gene in a sporadic colorectal tumor of a patient with a PLA2G2A germline mutation and absence of PLA2G2A germline alterations in patients with FAP. *Hum Genet* 1997; **100**: 345-349 [PMID: 9272153]

79 **Haigis KM**, Kendall KR, Wang Y, Cheung A, Haigis MC, Glickman JN, Niwa-Kawakita M, Sweet-Cordero A, Sebolt-Leopold J, Shannon KM, Settleman J, Giovannini M, Jacks T. Differential effects of oncogenic K-Ras and N-Ras on proliferation, differentiation and tumor progression in the colon. *Nat Genet* 2008; **40**: 600-608 [PMID: 18372904 DOI: 10.1038/ng.115]

80 **Rampino N**, Yamamoto H, Ionov Y, Li Y, Sawai H, Reed JC, Perucho M. Somatic frameshift mutations in the BAX gene in colon cancers of the microsatellite mutator phenotype. *Science* 1997; **275**: 967-969 [PMID: 9020077]

81 **Hendriks YM**, Wagner A, Morreau H, Menko F, Stormorken A, Quehenberger F, Sandkuijl L, Møller P, Genuardi M, Van Houwelingen H, Tops C, Van Puijenbroek M, Verkuijlen P, Kenter G, Van Mil A, Meijers-Heijboer H, Tan GB, Breuning MH, Fodde R, Wijnen JT, Bröcker-Vriends AH, Vasen H. Cancer risk in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer due to MSH6 mutations: impact on counseling and surveillance. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 17-25 [PMID: 15236168]

82 **Starr TK**, Allaei R, Silverstein KA, Staggs RA, Sarver AL, Bergemann TL, Gupta M, O'Sullivan MG, Matise I, Dupuy AJ, Collier LS, Powers S, Oberg AL, Asmann YW, Thibodeau SN, Tessarollo L, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Cormier RT, Largaespada DA. A transposon-based genetic screen in mice identifies genes altered in colorectal cancer. *Science* 2009; **323**: 1747-1750 [PMID: 19251594 DOI: 10.1126/science.1163040]

83 **Espejo R**, Rengifo-Cam W, Schaller MD, Evers BM, Sastry SK. PTP-PEST controls motility, adherens junction assembly, and Rho GTPase activity in colon cancer cells. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2010; **299**: C454-C463 [PMID: 20519451 DOI: 10.1152/ajpcell.00148.2010]

84 **Samuels Y**, Diaz LA, Schmidt-Kittler O, Cummins JM, Delong L, Cheong I, Rago C, Huso DL, Lengauer C, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Velculescu VE. Mutant PIK3CA promotes cell growth and invasion of human cancer cells. *Cancer Cell* 2005; **7**: 561-573 [PMID: 15950905 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2005.05.014]

85 **Hiramoto T**, Nakanishi T, Sumiyoshi T, Fukuda T, Matsuura S, Tauchi H, Komatsu K, Shibasaki Y, Inui H, Watatani M, Yasutomi M, Sumii K, Kajiyama G, Kamada N, Miyagawa K, Kamiya K. Mutations of a novel human RAD54 homologue, RAD54B, in primary cancer. *Oncogene* 1999; **18**: 3422-3426 [PMID: 10362364 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1202691]

86 **Liu W**, Dong X, Mai M, Seelan RS, Taniguchi K, Krishnadath KK, Halling KC, Cunningham JM, Boardman LA, Qian C, Christensen E, Schmidt SS, Roche PC, Smith DI, Thibodeau SN. Mutations in AXIN2 cause colorectal cancer with defective mismatch repair by activating beta-catenin/TCF signalling. *Nat Genet* 2000; **26**: 146-147 [PMID: 11017067 DOI: 10.1038/79859]

87 **Jang JH**, Shin KH, Park JG. Mutations in fibroblast growth factor receptor 2 and fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 genes associated with human gastric and colorectal cancers. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 3541-3543 [PMID: 11325814]

88 **Jirawatnotai S**, Hu Y, Michowski W, Elias JE, Becks L, Bienvenu F, Zagozdzon A, Goswami T, Wang YE, Clark AB, Kunkel TA, van Harn T, Xia B, Correll M, Quackenbush J, Livingston DM, Gygi SP, Sicinski P. A function for cyclin D1 in DNA repair uncovered by protein interactome analyses in human cancers. *Nature* 2011; **474**: 230-234 [PMID: 21654808 DOI: 10.1038/nature10155]

89 **Carpten JD**, Faber AL, Horn C, Donoho GP, Briggs SL, Robbins CM, Hostetter G, Boguslawski S, Moses TY, Savage S, Uhlik M, Lin A, Du J, Qian YW, Zeckner DJ, Tucker-Kellogg G, Touchman J, Patel K, Mousses S, Bittner M, Schevitz R, Lai MH, Blanchard KL, Thomas JE. A transforming mutation in the pleckstrin homology domain of AKT1 in cancer. *Nature* 2007; **448**: 439-444 [PMID: 17611497 DOI: 10.1038/nature05933]

90 **Cahill DP**, Lengauer C, Yu J, Riggins GJ, Willson JK, Markowitz SD, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B. Mutations of mitotic checkpoint genes in human cancers. *Nature* 1998; **392**: 300-303 [PMID: 9521327 DOI: 10.1038/32688]

91 **Pino MS**, Chung DC. The chromosomal instability pathway in colon cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 2059-2072 [PMID: 20420946 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.12.065]

92 **Gayther SA**, Batley SJ, Linger L, Bannister A, Thorpe K, Chin SF, Daigo Y, Russell P, Wilson A, Sowter HM, Delhanty JD, Ponder BA, Kouzarides T, Caldas C. Mutations truncating the EP300 acetylase in human cancers. *Nat Genet* 2000; **24**: 300-303 [PMID: 10700188 DOI: 10.1038/73536]

93 **Morse MA**, Niedzwiecki D, Marshall JL, Garrett C, Chang

DZ, Aklilu M, Crocenzi TS, Cole DJ, Dessureault S, Hobeika AC, Osada T, Onaitis M, Clary BM, Hsu D, Devi GR, Bulusu A, Annechiarico RP, Chadaram V, Clay TM, Lyerly HK. A randomized phase II study of immunization with dendritic cells modified with poxvectors encoding CEA and MUC1 compared with the same poxvectors plus GM-CSF for resected metastatic colorectal cancer. *Ann Surg* 2013; **258**: 879-886 [PMID: 23657083 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e318292919e]

94 **Hanna MG**, Hoover HC, Vermorken JB, Harris JE, Pinedo HM. Adjuvant active specific immunotherapy of stage II and stage III colon cancer with an autologous tumor cell vaccine: first randomized phase III trials show promise. *Vaccine* 2001; **19**: 2576-2582 [PMID: 11257395]

95 **Marshall JL**, Hawkins MJ, Tsang KY, Richmond E, Pedicano JE, Zhu MZ, Schlom J. Phase I study in cancer patients of a replication-defective avipox recombinant vaccine that expresses human carcinoembryonic antigen. *J Clin Oncol* 1999; **17**: 332-337 [PMID: 10458251]

96 **Harris JE**, Ryan L, Hoover HC, Stuart RK, Oken MM, Benson AB, Mansour E, Haller DG, Manola J, Hanna MG. Adjuvant active specific immunotherapy for stage II and III colon cancer with an autologous tumor cell vaccine: Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Study E5283. *J Clin Oncol* 2000; **18**: 148-157 [PMID: 10623705]

P- Reviewer: Botta C, Cienfuegos JA, Kato T, Kayaalp C
S- Editor: Ma YJ **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6373

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6373-6384
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Gastric Cancer: Global view

Immunological battlefield in gastric cancer and role of immunotherapies

Minyu Wang, Rita A Busuttil, Sharon Pattison, Paul J Neeson, Alex Boussioutas

Minyu Wang, Rita A Busuttil, Alex Boussioutas, Cancer Genetics and Genomics Laboratory, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, East Melbourne 3002, Victoria, Australia

Minyu Wang, Rita A Busuttil, Paul J Neeson, Alex Boussioutas, Sir Peter MacCallum Department of Oncology, The University of Melbourne, Parkville 3050, Victoria, Australia

Minyu Wang, Rita A Busuttil, Alex Boussioutas, Department of Medicine, The University of Melbourne, Royal Melbourne Hospital, Parkville 3050, Victoria, Australia

Sharon Pattison, Department of Medicine, Dunedin School of Medicine, University of Otago, Dunedin 9016, New Zealand

Sharon Pattison, Southern Blood and Cancer Service, Southern District Health Board, Dunedin 9054, New Zealand

Paul J Neeson, Cancer Immunology Research, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, East Melbourne 3002, Victoria, Australia

Paul J Neeson, Pathology Department, University of Melbourne, Parkville 3050, Victoria, Australia

Author contributions: Wang M, Busuttil RA, Pattison S, Neeson PJ and Boussioutas A reviewed the literature and wrote the paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest to report.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dr. Alex Boussioutas, Associate Professor, Department of Medicine, The University of Melbourne, Royal Melbourne Hospital, Grattan Street, Parkville 3050, Victoria, Australia. alex.boussioutas@petermac.org
Telephone: +61-383446252
Fax: +61-3471863

Received: March 28, 2016
Peer-review started: April 1, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 25, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Like the wars predating the First World War where human foot soldiers were deemed tools in the battlefield against an enemy, so too are the host immune cells of a patient battling a malignant gastric cancer. Indeed, the tumour microenvironment resembles a battlefield, where the patient's immune cells are the defence against invading tumour cells. However, the relationship between different immune components of the host response to cancer is more complex than an "us against them" model. Components of the immune system inadvertently work against the interests of the host and become pro-tumourigenic while other components soldier on against the common enemy – the tumour cell.

Key words: Immune; Gastric cancer; Immune therapy; Immunology; Tumour microenvironment

Core tip: Many solid tumours are now being treated with immunotherapies and gastric cancer is no exception. Here we review the literature on molecular

subtypes of gastric cancer and how they each have different immunological responses and hence may be differentially responsive to these immunotherapies. We emphasise that while treatment of gastric cancer may be benefited by immunotherapy we should try to target this based on molecular and immunological signatures of the individual patient. This will match the ideal therapy to the specific patient and is a step forward on the pathos precision medicine.

Wang M, Busuttil RA, Pattison S, Neeson PJ, Boussioutas A. Immunological battlefield in gastric cancer and role of immunotherapies. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6373-6384 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6373.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6373

"Advances in medicine and agriculture have saved vastly more lives than have been lost in all the wars in history."

Carl Sagan

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer (GC) continues to be a significant cause of mortality globally, being the third leading cause of cancer-related death[1]. While there have been advances in the outcomes of many solid tumours[2-4], gastric adenocarcinoma, the predominant form of GC, has not shown the same degree of improvements in survival[5], despite aggressive multi-modality treatment[6]. Potent new immunotherapies induce host immune-mediated destruction of malignant cells and offer new hope in the battle against GC. Here we explore some of the positive and negative characteristics of the host immune response to the presence of a malignant cell.

It is incumbent on us to be aware that all cancers are not equal. The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) Network has produced a landmark study using integrative genomics to molecularly phenotype four subtypes of GC[7] that are to some extent related to histological features of the disease. Previous studies suggest the histology of the tumour according to Lauren classification may explain some of the molecular heterogeneity of GC[8] but the host immune response to the cancer may also account for some of the differences. The TCGA study describes two particular subtypes both of which consist of predominantly intestinal type tumours that had a significant immunological association: the Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) subtype accounted for about 9%[7] of the GCs profiled and were characterised by a strong immune signature and; the MSI (Microsatellite Instability) subtype (22% of cancers in this study[7]), which had a high mutational load, also had a significant immune signature. While the other two GC subtypes [GS (Genomically Stable and predominantly diffuse) subtype and CIN (Chromosomal Instability subtype which are primarily intestinal in histology)] may have a host immunological response, this differed to the two immunogenic subtypes[7]. Here we explore some of the features of the immune response to GC to try and reconcile some of the clinical observations, such as differences in survival and also to explore the utility of immunotherapies for this particular cancer.

Currently, the immune context of GC comprises both anti- and pro-tumoural immune responses. The immune system includes inter-linked innate and adaptive arms, both have cellular and soluble effectors. The innate immune system cells respond to foreign antigens that are recognised *via* pathogen recognition receptors (PRR) for pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) or danger associated molecular patterns (DAMPs)[9]. The PRR can recognise PAMPs or DAMPs derived from a diverse array of viruses, bacteria or tumour cells. The innate immune system is evolutionarily conserved and performs an immune surveillance role *via* cells [macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs), neutrophils and natural killer (NK) cells] and soluble factors such as, the complement system. There is considerable cross-talk between cells within the innate immune system as well as cross-talk with cells of the adaptive arm, for example, tissue resident DCs induce an adaptive immune response through antigen presentation[10]. The adaptive immune system recognizes and eliminates antigens; conventional T cells recognise antigen as peptide-major histocompatibility complex (MHC) on virus infected cells or tumour cells, whereas B cells recognise conformational antigen. Priming of naïve T and B cells to antigens occurs in the tissue draining lymph node of a particular organ. Effective antigen recognition and co-stimulation activates the antigen-specific T or B cell driving their proliferation and generation of effector and memory cells. Effector T cells traffic to the site of priming and participate in resolution of the threat/pathogen. Memory T cells reside in secondary lymphoid tissue (central memory), or the peripheral tissue (tissue resident memory cells) and can respond quickly to any future pathogen threat, termed "long term protective immunity". In healthy individuals the immune system is remarkably effective at responding to and eradicating a diverse array of pathogen threats; however the immune system can be a double-edged sword in cancer, which has the ability to shape the immune response to facilitate tumour cell growth and survival rather than eliminating the tumour[11].

THE IMMUNE SYSTEM AND CANCER

The immune system detects and eliminates tumour cells. This usually prevents cancer development through a process termed immune-surveillance[12,13]. Tumour-specific antigens (TSA) are antigens present only on tumour cells, while tumour-associated antigens (TAA) are antigens present on tumour cells as well as normal

cells. Expression of TSA and TAA generally results from tumour-associated genetic mutations. Tumour-resident DCs constantly sample the microenvironment *via* endocytosis, they process the TSA or TAA as peptides and assemble them on MHC, either in the endoplasmic reticulum for MHC class Ⅰ, or endosomes for MHC class Ⅱ. The DC requires an activation signal, such as a DAMP or PAMP, in order to mature and subsequently increase peptide MHC expression levels. Activated DCs change chemokine receptor and adhesion molecule expression making them responsive to chemokines emanating from the tumour draining lymph node (TDLN). Having migrated to the TDLN, the mature DC presents TSA/TAA on MHC class Ⅰ to $CD8^+$ T cell, or on MHC class Ⅱ to $CD4^+$ T cells, priming an antigen-specific T cell response[14]. For successful activation, Cytotoxic T cells (CTLs) require two signals from antigen processing cells (APCs); (1) antigen presentation, T-cell receptor (TCR) binding to peptide-MHC class Ⅰ molecules; and (2) co-stimulation, CD28 molecule on T cells binding to co-stimulatory molecules CD80 (B7-1) or CD86 (B7-2) on APCs. In the absence of signal 2, signal 1 induces immune tolerance to TAA/TSA. Signal 2 is only provided by mature DCs, as they express CD80/CD86 at higher levels. At this point, activated tumour-specific naïve T cells proliferate and form effector and memory T cells, as described for the pathogen response above. Tumour-specific $CD8^+$ effector T cells, also termed CTLs, traffic from the TDLN to the tumour and attack tumour cells presenting cognate antigen, with the help of $CD4^+$ helper T cells (Th cells), mainly Th1 cells. During the effector phase, T cells infiltrate the tumour (referred to as tumour infiltrating T lymphocytes or TILs) in response to chemokines, such as CX3CL1, CXCL9, CXCL10 and CCL5[15]. These TILs kill tumour cells by direct and indirect mechanisms. The direct mechanism utilises perforin and granzymes. Figure 1A outlines some of the aspects of antigen recognition, presentation and the effector immune cells (T cell and NK cell) killing of tumour cells. Tumour-specific CTL recognition of cognate antigen induces their activation and formation of an immune synapse (IS, a specialised molecular structure formed between a cytotoxic lymphocyte and a target cell) at the site of antigen recognition. Simultaneously, the CTL moves cytotoxic granules (containing perforin and granzymes) to the IS, these granules fuse with the CTL cell membrane and release their contents. Perforin polymerises and inserts into the tumour cell membrane forming a pore, this enables entry of granzyme B into the cytoplasm, which induces tumour cell apoptosis. Indirect mechanisms include secretion of cytokines including type Ⅰ IFN, IFN-γ and TNF[16,17]. After clearance, surviving $CD8^+$ T cells differentiate into T memory cells[18], which can retain anti-cancer properties and can enact faster and stronger anti-cancer immune response when they next encounter tumour cells.

Another cell type important in an early response to cancer is the NK cell. NK cells are part of the innate immune system that act non-specifically against tumour cells and can directly kill these cells. This type of anti-cancer immunity is reported in hematopoietic malignancies and solid tumours[19].

HOW CANCER ESCAPES FROM IMMUNE SYSTEM

The "immune-editing" paradigm was proposed to explain how tumour cells influence the behaviour of innate and adaptive immune cells through an immunosuppression process to finally present as a clinical tumour[20]. The immune-editing mechanism, which is the most important process during immunosuppression, consists of three sequential phases: elimination, equilibrium, and escape[20-22]. During the elimination phase, the immune system destroys developing tumour cells. In the equilibrium phase, sufficient tumour cells survive the immune attack to maintain tumour size, but there is no obvious tumour progression. During this phase, the immune system sculpts the immunogenicity of genetically unstable tumour clones. Finally, in the escape phase immune resistant tumour clones emerge, proliferate and spread either locally or to distant sites.

Precisely how tumour cells evade the immune system (in the escape phase), as summarised in Figure 1B, is an area of active research, and can be broadly grouped into three main mechanisms including:

Immune recognition/ignorance: where tumour cells can control immune recognition *via* down-regulation of antigens and MHC molecules on the cell surface[23-25].

Immune suppression/tolerance: Where tumour-derived suppression mechanisms are driven *via* tumour-derived cytokines and influence the differentiation of immune effectors driving their functional polarization to suppressors. Immune suppressors include tumour associate macrophages (TAMs), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) and regulatory $CD4^+$ T cells. Macrophages within the tumour microenvironment have been described as pro-tumourigenic as they support cancer initiation and progression, or anti-tumourigenic based on differentiation patterns into M1 or M2 subtypes[26,27]. M1 macrophages have a tumouricidal activity by producing pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1, IL-6, IL-23 and TNF. M2 macrophages possess a tumour-promoting capacity by producing IL-10 and TGF-β. TAMs frequently have a spectrum of differentiation and, through the balance of M1 and M2 macrophage subtypes in the tumour microenvironment, may influence aggressiveness of the tumour and prognosis of patients. There is generally a poor outcome if M2 macrophages predominate in the tumour microenvironment[28,29]. Tumour cells may

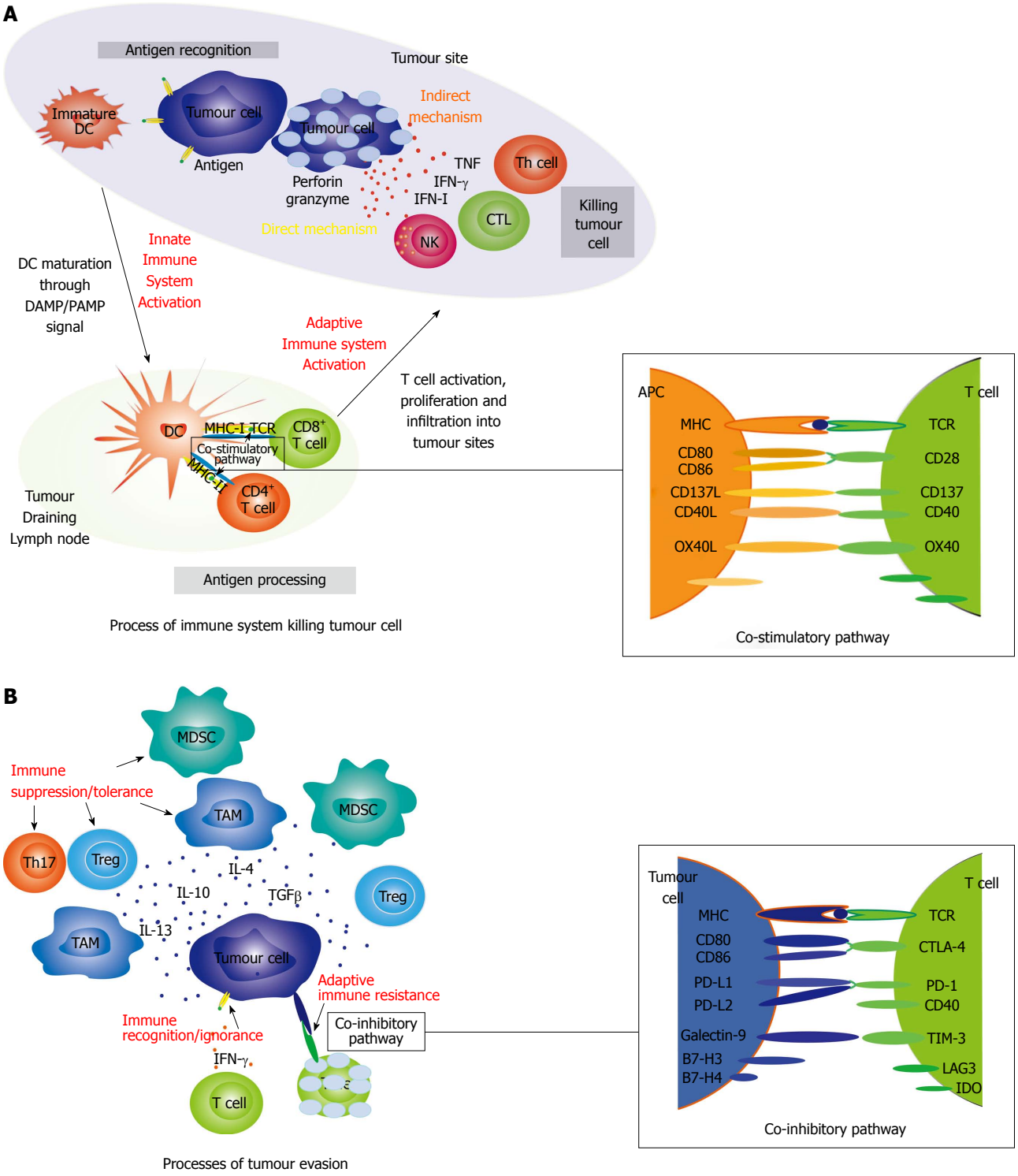


Figure 1 Process of immune system killing tumour and processes of tumour evasion. A: Outlines the process of immune system killing tumour cell. First, antigens (including neo-antigens) expressed by the tumour, are recognized by immature DC then the innate immune system is activated and the antigen is presented by APC to the T cell. The T cell becomes activated, then proliferates and infiltrates into tumour sites. The adaptive immune system is then responsible for activation of the effector immune cells (*e.g.*, CTL, Th cell or NK cell) that secrete cytokines to kill the tumour cell; B: Describes part of the processes of immune evasion. This is the mechanism by which the tumour cell evades the immune system (escape phase) through the processes of immune recognition/ignorance; immune suppression/tolerance and; adaptive immune resistance. DC: Dendritic cell; CTL: Cytotoxic T lymphocytes; Th cell: T helper cell; NK: Natural killer cell; APC: Antigen processing cell; MHC: Major histocompatibility complex; TCR: T-cell receptor.

also induce an M1 to M2 switch, mediated by TGF-β[30]. Several studies have identified an association with the density of TAMs in the microenvironment of GC and a poor outcome[31,32]. MDSCs are a group of activated but immature myeloid cells with strong immunosuppressive capacity that have been shown to support tumour cell growth, differentiation, and metastasis[33,34]. $CD4^+$ T cell response to tumour-derived antigen in the context

of TGF-β induces up-regulation of the key transcription factor (FoxP3) and regulatory T cells (Tregs) functional polarization. Tregs are powerful suppressors of the tumour-specific T cell responses (both CTL and effector $CD4^+$ T cells) and can be found at increased numbers in patient TILs, both at the tumour margin and inside the tumour itself[35].

Adaptive immune resistance: where tumour cells can induce T cell inactivation through a process described as "adaptive immune resistance"[36]. When CTL's recognise cognate antigens on tumour cells their effector mechanisms include secretion of IFN-γ, IFN-γ binding to tumour cell IFN-γR induces JAK-STAT signalling and up-regulation of tumour cell programmed death ligand-1 (PD-L1) expression. CTL recognition of antigen induces programmed death-1 (PD-1) expression. Binding of PD-L1 to its receptor PD-1 on T cells, delivers an inhibitory signal to the T cell IS and results in T cell paralysis. The over-arching result is tumour cell resistance to killing by T cells[36,37]. The molecules involved in the immune co-inhibitory pathways are called immune checkpoints. These molecules have an important normal physiological role, and are important in turning off the immune system once effective T cell effector function has been achieved (*i.e.*, once antigen has been cleared). The checkpoint inhibitors include: PD-1 (also known as CD279) and its ligands PD-L1 (B7-H1; also known as CD274) and PD-L2 (B7-DC; also known as CD273); Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA-4, also known as CD152) and its ligands CD80 and CD86; T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin-domain containing-3 (TIM-3) and its ligand galectin-9; lymphocyte-activation gene 3 (LAG3, also known as CD223) and Indoleamine-pyrrole 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO). These pathways are discussed later as they have been transformed into successful immunotherapies in the war against cancer. Other components of the adaptive immune response are two subcategories of T cells, the Treg and Th17 cell. Tumour cells can induce Tregs, which in turn promote tumour progression by secreting TGF-β, as well as Th17 cells, which accelerate tumour progression by producing IL-17[38].

These are some of the physiological mechanisms that a tumour cell can exploit to survive, perpetuate and invade a host organism resulting in poor outcomes seen in many malignancies.

IMMUNOGENIC SUBTYPES OF GC

Integrated genomic analysis of GC showed that molecular subtypes have distinct signatures. The EBV and MSI subtypes have significant immune signatures (Figure 2A) compared to the CIN and GS subtypes (Figure 2B). It is recognised that MSI cancers result in increased tumour cell mutational load[39] and presentation of neo-antigens[40] resulting in an augmented host immune response with increased TILs[41-43], DCs and macrophages[44]. EBV-associated GC also has an increased density of TILs[41,45-47]. Despite a significant host immune response these tumours persist, likely due to immune escape mediated by over-expression of immune checkpoints, such as PD-L1 and PD-L2[7]. Llosa *et al*[48] found similar changes to the tumour microenvironment of MSI colorectal cancer. These MSI cancers showed up-regulation of immune checkpoints, such as PD-1, PD-L1, LAG-3, CTLA-4 and IDO. In colorectal cancer MSI-high specimens are often associated with high infiltration of $CD3^+$, $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells and show more frequent infiltration by PD-1 positive intraepithelial lymphocytes compared to microsatellite stability samples[49]. Indeed, colorectal cancer is a good example of how the immunological reaction to the tumour has been used as a prognostic marker and may identify a group of cancers that can be targeted with specific immunotherapies[50,51]. The mechanisms for the robust immune response in the EBV subtype remain unclear, but are likely due to long term inflammation induced by the infection in the stomach[52].

An association between lymphocytic infiltration and survival in GC was first proposed over 100 years ago[53]. Since then numerous studies have shown an increased density of TILs is associated with favourable clinical outcomes in a variety of solid tumours[54-57], including GC[58]. This holds true for intratumoural B cells[42] and NK cells[59] in GC. However, GC expression of the checkpoint inhibitor PD-L1 is associated with poor clinical outcomes[60-66]. Tumour expression of PD-L1 is not universally a negative predictor as patients with ovarian cancer expressing high PD-1 (generally thought to be expressed by the immune cells) and PD-L1 levels in tumour cells as well as TILs having favourable prognosis[67]. These contrasting results are partially explained by methodological differences in the studies where most investigators report on the intra-tumoural immune component only and ignore the peri-tumoural context of the cancer or focus on particular components of the immune response in isolation and ignore the dynamic environment that is the tumour microenvironment. Importantly, another variable that is not factored in the GC literature is the molecular characteristics of the tumour cell itself. As described in the Asian Cancer Research Group study from Cristescu *et al*[68], tumours of the MSI subtype (similar to TCGA) have the best prognosis of the subtypes described in their study. Marrelli *et al*[69] confirm the favourable prognosis of MSI in non-cardia intestinal gastric tumours. Kim *et al*[70] investigated the type and density of TILs and macrophages in the MSI-high subgroup of GC and found that increased density of intra-tumoural $CD8^+$ and $FoxP3^+$ TILs was associated with a good prognosis. It was further shown that the balance of TILs and TAMs (M2-polarized macrophages) also showed favourable prognostic significance[71].

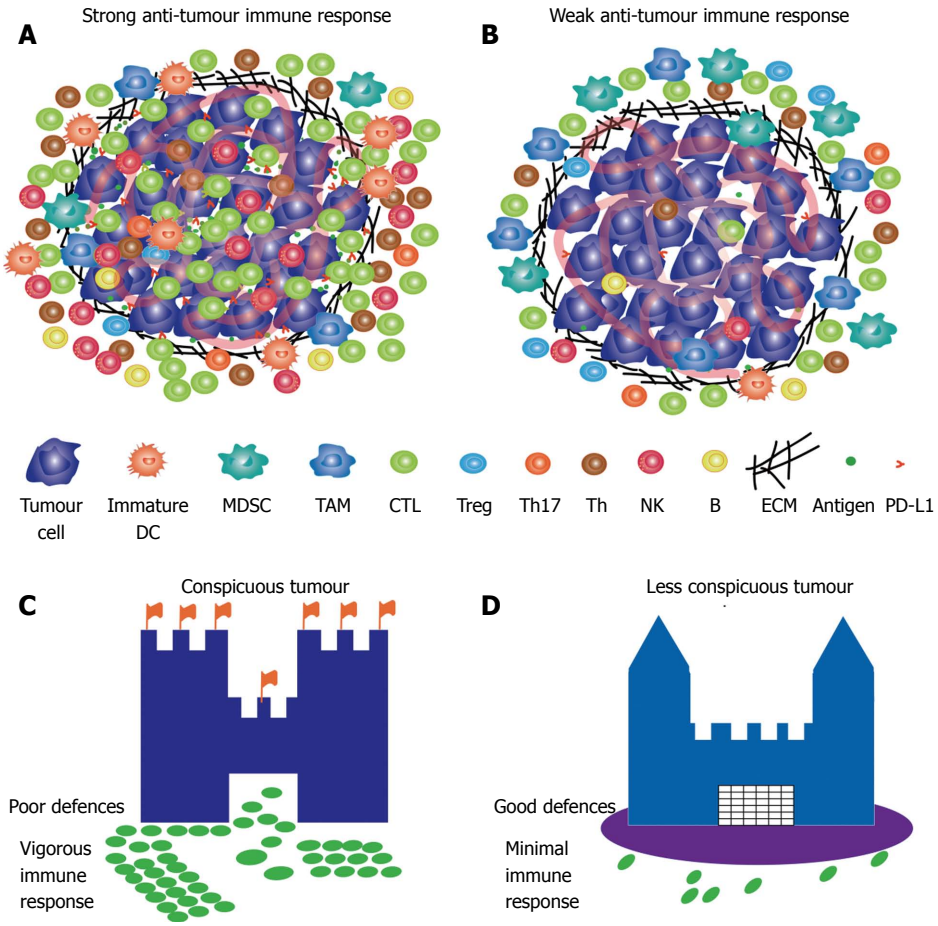


Figure 2 Two different tumour microenvironments of different molecular subgroups of gastric cancer. A: Example of a strong immunogenic tumour with increased antigen presentation and immune checkpoints expression, more TILs and other effector immune cells infiltration into the tumour; B: Example of a weak anti-tumour immune response with less antigen expression, less TILs and other effector immune cell infiltration into tumour and increased numbers of immunosuppressive cells; C: Schematic diagram representing poor defences from a conspicuous tumour with vigorous immune response; D: Schematic diagram representing good defences from a less conspicuous tumour with minimal immune response. MDSC: Myeloid-derived suppressor cell; TAM: Tumour associate macrophages; Treg: T regulatory cell; Th17: T helper cell-17; ECM: Extracellular matrix; MHC: Major histocompatibility complex; TCR: T-cell receptor.

IMMUNOTHERAPY OF CANCER

The immune system is an integral part of the tumour microenvironment and immune cell evasion by tumour cells has recently been highlighted as one of the hallmarks of cancer[11]. Promotion, or activation, of the immune system, referred to as "immunotherapy", has also been proposed as an option for targeted treatment. Unlike chemotherapy, which uses potent drugs to eliminate tumour cells or control their growth, cancer immunotherapy involves boosting the immune system of a patient to eliminate or control a malignancy. Using the immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs), T-cells can be re-activated or maintained in an active state allowing them to recognize and eliminate tumour cells. Documented clinical responses of ICIs in a number of cancer types, especially in solid tumours, including melanoma, non-small cell lung cancer, renal cell carcinoma[2-4] have been reported and provide us with new anti-cancer strategies. The use of immunotherapy, especially the ICIs, for treating GC is still in its infancy with several clinical trials underway.

CTLA-4, one of the immune checkpoints, is expressed on the surface of T cells following recognition of antigen. T cell CTLA-4 has a higher affinity than CD28 for APC CD80/CD86. This transduces an inhibitory signal to T cells serving as a "brake" on T cell activation. Ipilimumab, an IgG1 antibody which blocks CTLA-4 activity, allows ongoing APC priming of antigen-specific T cells in the TDLN (*i.e.*, brake removed). An additional proposed mechanism of ipilimumab action includes targeting of CTLA-4^{hi} intra-tumoural Tregs tipping the balance of effector T cells: Treg in favour of an anti-tumour response. Ipilimumab was the first approved immune checkpoint therapy and has shown a survival benefit in advanced stage melanoma patients[72,73]. The repercussions of meddling with the physiologic processes governing immunity is an increase in a variety of immune related side effects, including skin lesions (rash, pruritus, and vitiligo), colitis, thyroiditis, hypophysitis, and hepatitis[74]. A clinical trial in GC patients with unresectable, locally advanced or metastatic cancer following first line standard chemotherapy with a fluoropyrimidine/platinum combination (NCT01585987)

has recently been completed however initial results are not promising with poorer PFS (secondary endpoint) in the ipilimumab treated group[75]. Tremelimumab, another anti-CTLA-4 monoclonal antibody, was investigated as a second-line treatment for patients with unselected metastatic gastric and oesophageal adenocarcinomas. The results were disappointing and among 18 recruited patients only one patient achieved a partial response[76].

A second immune checkpoint target is the PD-1/PD-L1 axis. PD-1 is present on the surface of activated T-cells, B-cells and monocytes whilst PD-L1 is found on the surface of tumour cells and antigen presenting cells (macrophages and DCs)[2]. Similarly PD-L2, expressed exclusively on DCs, is also a ligand for PD-1 and has been shown to inhibit T-cell activation, proliferation and cytokine production[77]. Checkpoint inhibitor antibodies directed to the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway are thought to largely rescue function of pre-existing tumour-specific TILs.

Anti-PD-1 (nivolumab, pembrolizumab) or anti-PD-L1 (MSB0010718C, BMS936559, MPDL3280A, Medi4736) agents are humanized monoclonal antibodies, which inhibit binding of PD-1 to PD-L1 and restore T cell activity. Due to promising results from initial clinical trials utilising these antibodies in melanoma and in other cancer types, they are currently being explored in GC. A phase I clinical trial (NCT01928394) using nivolumab in GC patients has been completed and initial results showed objective responses occurred in patients irrespective of PD-L1 status[78].

Pembrolizumab has been tested in GC patients selected based on immunohistochemical staining of PD-L1 (NCT01848834)[79,80] and initial results reported at ESMO 2014[79] with updated results presented at ASCO 2015[80]. Eligible patients had PD-L1 positive staining in stromal or $\geqslant$ 1% tumour nest cells. Based on these criteria this study observed a 40% rate of PD-L1 positive cancers and demonstrated manageable toxicity and promising antitumour activity in advanced GC[80]. When used in melanoma patients, a positive response was associated with expression of four specific immune signatures (presented as an abstract)[81]. These findings were recapitulated in the GC[82] patients suggesting that screening for expression of these signatures could be used as a method to best select patients who might benefit from this treatment. A large number of clinical trials testing these drugs in combination with standard chemotherapies are currently underway and have been reviewed in detail elsewhere[83].

Several anti-PD-L1 monoclonal antibodies, including Avelumab (MSB0010718C), Durvalumab (Medi4736) and Atezolizumab (MPDL3280A) and BMS936559, are under evaluation in digestive cancers, including GC[84]. GCs comprise only a small minority of the patients recruited to the early phase clinical trials currently underway and as such only limited data on their efficacy is currently available[85]. It is worth noting that therapeutic strategies should be carefully considered. Whilst targeting the PD-1/PD-L1 + PD-L2 checkpoint pathways should increase anti-tumour efficacy, this may come at the cost of increased "off tumour target" toxicity. Therapies targeting only PD-L1 whilst maintaining PD-L2 activity may result in decreased anti-tumour effects coupled with decreased toxicity. There are currently no PD-L2 specific inhibitors available.

Therapeutic strategies targeting both CTLA-4 and PD-1 in combination are currently being tested in GC in the hope of identifying synergistic effects. The CheckMate032 (NCT01928394) trial testing the effects of nivolumab as a sole agent, or in combination with ipilimumab in a variety of solid cancers, including GC, and in a refractory setting is currently recruiting. This combination has previously showed successful tumour regression in the setting of melanoma[86].

The molecular, genetic and immunological heterogeneity described by the TCGA highlights a need to stratify patients based on their likelihood of responding to different treatment options including immunotherapy. Despite this, many of the clinical trials described above recruited GC patients of all subtypes which, unfortunately may dilute out the potential positive effects of these therapies. EBV and MSI subtypes of GC are associated with a vigorous immunological reaction, as well as over-expression of immune checkpoints, highlighting these two subtypes of GC as particularly attractive candidates for immune checkpoint blockade, and indeed trials in these particular GC subtypes are underway.

The EBV subtype described by the TCGA[7] is characterised by a high prevalence of mutations in the *PIK3CA* suggesting a possible therapeutic role for PI3K inhibitors. This subtype is also associated with a high prevalence of DNA hypermethylation and amplifications in the genes *CD274* and *PDCD1LG2* which encode the immunosuppressive proteins PD-L1 and PDL-2, which highlights this subtype as an ideal candidate for immunotherapy[7,83]. A clinical phase Ⅱ/Ⅲ trial (NCT02488759, CheckMate358) plans to test the efficacy of nivolumab in subjects with virus- associated tumours including EBV-positive GC. This trial is currently in the recruitment phase. Given that most of these patients have concurrent immune infiltrate and harbour mutations in targetable genes, an adjuvant approach including a targeted therapy in conjunction with a PD-1 inhibitor such as pembrolizumab may be warranted. Such a treatment combination would need to be evaluated to ensure that the targeted therapy doesn't directly inhibit immune effector cell signalling pathways.

The MSI TCGA GC subtype was characterised by high levels of microsatellite instability and elevated mutation rates[7]. Unsurprisingly gastrointestinal tumours that are MSI-H or mismatch repair deficiency, when compared to microsatellite stable tumours, have

shown promising immune-related objective response rates (ORR; 40% *vs* 0%) and progression-free survival (PFS; 78% *vs* 11%) when treated with PD-1 inhibitor, pembrolizumab[87]. This emphasizes this subtype as a potential candidate for immunotherapy.

Genomic amplifications in receptor tyrosine kinases were a distinguishing feature of the CIN subtype as defined by TCGA[7]. Many of these are candidates for treatment with molecular targeted therapies. A phase I clinical trial testing the effects of Pembrolizumab in combination with ramucirumab (NCT02443324) is currently recruiting and may be particularly effective in this subgroup. This group was also enriched for *TP53* mutations.

The GS TCGA subtype[7] (20% of all cases) comprised predominantly of tumours classified as diffuse GC, with poorer survival compared to the intestinal type GC, by the Lauren classification and was associated with mutations in *CDH1* and *RHOA* genes as well as aneuploidy. At this stage it is unclear whether this subtype would benefit from existing immunotherapies and warrants specific investigation.

With the significant clinical benefits from immune checkpoint blockade drugs, novel opportunities are emerging for GC treatment. To improve effectiveness of GC immunotherapy, novel criteria based on different molecular and immunological subtypes to predict potential response and prognosis are needed. Galon *et al*[88,89] have established an "immunoscore" in colorectal cancer based on the number and location of $CD3^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells[90]. This type of classification could be useful in GC. While we have focused on the immune component of the tumour microenvironment we must not lose sight that GC remains heterogeneous and while we may co-opt the immune system in destroying some cancers others may have mechanisms of resistance to avoid this form of killing. Therefore combination therapies may be the way of the future and we will need to be cognizant of the ensuing toxicities these therapies may invoke. It is important to also recognize the microenvironmental and immunological impact of the more traditional chemotherapeutics[91]. Examples include oxaliplatin, a platinum drug used often in GC chemotherapy which induces immunogenic cell death and provides a release of tumour antigens[92].

CONCLUSION

In most communities GC is diagnosed late and subsequently has poor prognosis. There are now exciting new therapies that utilise the host's immune system to fight back. However, data to date suggests we need to use these therapies judiciously to derive maximum benefit. GC is molecularly and immunologically heterogeneous, and this heterogeneity influences the tumour microenvironment in different ways. Returning to the battlefield analogy, the immunogenic or immune activating GC subtypes, EBV and MSI, are likely to be more conspicuous to the immune system by the expression of larger numbers of neo-antigens and other foreign epitopes that stimulate a vigorous immunological response that can be augmented by current therapies (Figure 2C), whereas the less immunogenic GCs, the CIN and GS subtypes, are more stealthy, with less antigen presentation providing a stronger defensive system against the host immune attack (Figure 2D). Like the battles in the wars of old, you need to choose your battlefield carefully and one of the key strategies, as enunciated by Sun Tzu, is to "know thy enemy", which translates to understanding the molecular nature of the cancer you are treating.

REFERENCES

1 **Torre LA**, Bray F, Siegel RL, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics, 2012. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2015; **65**: 87-108 [PMID: 25651787 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21262]

2 **Topalian SL**, Hodi FS, Brahmer JR, Gettinger SN, Smith DC, McDermott DF, Powderly JD, Carvajal RD, Sosman JA, Atkins MB, Leming PD, Spigel DR, Antonia SJ, Horn L, Drake CG, Pardoll DM, Chen L, Sharfman WH, Anders RA, Taube JM, McMiller TL, Xu H, Korman AJ, Jure-Kunkel M, Agrawal S, McDonald D, Kollia GD, Gupta A, Wigginton JM, Sznol M. Safety, activity, and immune correlates of anti-PD-1 antibody in cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 2443-2454 [PMID: 22658127 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1200690]

3 **Brahmer JR**, Tykodi SS, Chow LQ, Hwu WJ, Topalian SL, Hwu P, Drake CG, Camacho LH, Kauh J, Odunsi K, Pitot HC, Hamid O, Bhatia S, Martins R, Eaton K, Chen S, Salay TM, Alaparthy S, Grosso JF, Korman AJ, Parker SM, Agrawal S, Goldberg SM, Pardoll DM, Gupta A, Wigginton JM. Safety and activity of anti-PD-L1 antibody in patients with advanced cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 2455-2465 [PMID: 22658128 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1200694]

4 **Page DB**, Postow MA, Callahan MK, Allison JP, Wolchok JD. Immune modulation in cancer with antibodies. *Annu Rev Med* 2014; **65**: 185-202 [PMID: 24188664 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-med-092012-112807]

5 **Allemani C**, Weir HK, Carreira H, Harewood R, Spika D, Wang XS, Bannon F, Ahn JV, Johnson CJ, Bonaventure A, Marcos-Gragera R, Stiller C, Azevedo e Silva G, Chen WQ, Ogunbiyi OJ, Rachet B, Soeberg MJ, You H, Matsuda T, Bielska-Lasota M, Storm H, Tucker TC, Coleman MP. Global surveillance of cancer survival 1995-2009: analysis of individual data for 25,676,887 patients from 279 population-based registries in 67 countries (CONCORD-2). *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 977-1010 [PMID: 25467588 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)62038-9]

6 **Waddell T**, Verheij M, Allum W, Cunningham D, Cervantes A, Arnold D. Gastric cancer: ESMO-ESSO-ESTRO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2013; **24** Suppl 6: vi57-vi63 [PMID: 24078663 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdt344]

7 **Cancer Genome Atlas Research Network**. Comprehensive molecular characterization of gastric adenocarcinoma. *Nature* 2014; **513**: 202-209 [PMID: 25079317 DOI: 10.1038/nature13480]

8 **Boussioutas A**, Li H, Liu J, Waring P, Lade S, Holloway AJ, Taupin D, Gorringe K, Haviv I, Desmond PV, Bowtell DD. Distinctive patterns of gene expression in premalignant gastric mucosa and gastric cancer. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 2569-2577 [PMID: 12750281]

9 **Palm NW**, Medzhitov R. Pattern recognition receptors and control of adaptive immunity. *Immunol Rev* 2009; **227**: 221-233 [PMID: 19120487 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2008.00731.x]

10 **Akira S**, Uematsu S, Takeuchi O. Pathogen recognition and innate

immunity. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 783-801 [PMID: 16497588 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.02.015]
11 **Hanahan D**, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. *Cell* 2011; **144**: 646-674 [PMID: 21376230 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2011.02.013]
12 **Matsueda S**, Graham DY. Immunotherapy in gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 1657-1666 [PMID: 24587645 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i7.1657]
13 **Burnet FM**. The concept of immunological surveillance. *Prog Exp Tumor Res* 1970; **13**: 1-27 [PMID: 4921480]
14 **Banchereau J**, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature* 1998; **392**: 245-252 [PMID: 9521319 DOI: 10.1038/32588]
15 **Bindea G**, Mlecnik B, Fridman WH, Pagès F, Galon J. Natural immunity to cancer in humans. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2010; **22**: 215-222 [PMID: 20207124 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2010.02.006]
16 **Thiery J**, Keefe D, Boulant S, Boucrot E, Walch M, Martinvalet D, Goping IS, Bleackley RC, Kirchhausen T, Lieberman J. Perforin pores in the endosomal membrane trigger the release of endocytosed granzyme B into the cytosol of target cells. *Nat Immunol* 2011; **12**: 770-777 [PMID: 21685908 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2050]
17 **Zhang L**, Conejo-Garcia JR, Katsaros D, Gimotty PA, Massobrio M, Regnani G, Makrigiannakis A, Gray H, Schlienger K, Liebman MN, Rubin SC, Coukos G. Intratumoral T cells, recurrence, and survival in epithelial ovarian cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 203-213 [PMID: 12529460 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa020177]
18 **Radziewicz H**, Uebelhoer L, Bengsch B, Grakoui A. Memory CD8+ T cell differentiation in viral infection: a cell for all seasons. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 4848-4857 [PMID: 17828816]
19 **Deng W**, Gowen BG, Zhang L, Wang L, Lau S, Iannello A, Xu J, Rovis TL, Xiong N, Raulet DH. Antitumor immunity. A shed NKG2D ligand that promotes natural killer cell activation and tumor rejection. *Science* 2015; **348**: 136-139 [PMID: 25745066 DOI: 10.1126/science.1258867]
20 **Schreiber RD**, Old LJ, Smyth MJ. Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. *Science* 2011; **331**: 1565-1570 [PMID: 21436444 DOI: 10.1126/science.1203486]
21 **Vesely MD**, Kershaw MH, Schreiber RD, Smyth MJ. Natural innate and adaptive immunity to cancer. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2011; **29**: 235-271 [PMID: 21219185 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-031210-101324]
22 **Mittal D**, Gubin MM, Schreiber RD, Smyth MJ. New insights into cancer immunoediting and its three component phases--elimination, equilibrium and escape. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2014; **27**: 16-25 [PMID: 24531241 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2014.01.004]
23 **Bhatia A**, Kumar Y. Cancer-immune equilibrium: questions unanswered. *Cancer Microenviron* 2011; **4**: 209-217 [PMID: 21607751 DOI: 10.1007/s12307-011-0065-8]
24 **Campoli M**, Ferrone S. HLA antigen changes in malignant cells: epigenetic mechanisms and biologic significance. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 5869-5885 [PMID: 18836468 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2008.273]
25 **Ferrone S**, Whiteside TL. Tumor microenvironment and immune escape. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am* 2007; **16**: 755-774, viii [PMID: 18022543 DOI: 10.1016/j.soc.2007.08.004]
26 **Qian BZ**, Pollard JW. Macrophage diversity enhances tumor progression and metastasis. *Cell* 2010; **141**: 39-51 [PMID: 20371344 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2010.03.014]
27 **Murray PJ**, Allen JE, Biswas SK, Fisher EA, Gilroy DW, Goerdt S, Gordon S, Hamilton JA, Ivashkiv LB, Lawrence T, Locati M, Mantovani A, Martinez FO, Mege JL, Mosser DM, Natoli G, Saeij JP, Schultze JL, Shirey KA, Sica A, Suttles J, Udalova I, van Ginderachter JA, Vogel SN, Wynn TA. Macrophage activation and polarization: nomenclature and experimental guidelines. *Immunity* 2014; **41**: 14-20 [PMID: 25035950 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.06.008]
28 **Busuttil RA**, George J, Tothill RW, Ioculano K, Kowalczyk A, Mitchell C, Lade S, Tan P, Haviv I, Boussioutas A. A signature predicting poor prognosis in gastric and ovarian cancer represents a coordinated macrophage and stromal response. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 2761-2772 [PMID: 24658156 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-3049]
29 **Ramanathan S**, Jagannathan N. Tumor associated macrophage: a review on the phenotypes, traits and functions. *Iran J Cancer Prev* 2014; **7**: 1-8 [PMID: 25250141]
30 **Su S**, Liu Q, Chen J, Chen J, Chen F, He C, Huang D, Wu W, Lin L, Huang W, Zhang J, Cui X, Zheng F, Li H, Yao H, Su F, Song E. A positive feedback loop between mesenchymal-like cancer cells and macrophages is essential to breast cancer metastasis. *Cancer Cell* 2014; **25**: 605-620 [PMID: 24823638 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2014.03.021]
31 **Park JY**, Sung JY, Lee J, Park YK, Kim YW, Kim GY, Won KY, Lim SJ. Polarized CD163+ tumor-associated macrophages are associated with increased angiogenesis and CXCL12 expression in gastric cancer. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2016; **40**: 357-365 [PMID: 26508473 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2015.09.005]
32 **Wu MH**, Lee WJ, Hua KT, Kuo ML, Lin MT. Macrophage Infiltration Induces Gastric Cancer Invasiveness by Activating the β-Catenin Pathway. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0134122 [PMID: 26226629 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0134122]
33 **Marvel D**, Gabrilovich DI. Myeloid-derived suppressor cells in the tumor microenvironment: expect the unexpected. *J Clin Invest* 2015; **125**: 3356-3364 [PMID: 26168215 DOI: 10.1172/JCI80005]
34 **Ugel S**, De Sanctis F, Mandruzzato S, Bronte V. Tumor-induced myeloid deviation: when myeloid-derived suppressor cells meet tumor-associated macrophages. *J Clin Invest* 2015; **125**: 3365-3376 [PMID: 26325033 DOI: 10.1172/JCI80006]
35 **Savage PA**, Malchow S, Leventhal DS. Basic principles of tumor-associated regulatory T cell biology. *Trends Immunol* 2013; **34**: 33-40 [PMID: 22999714 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2012.08.005]
36 **Chen L**, Han X. Anti-PD-1/PD-L1 therapy of human cancer: past, present, and future. *J Clin Invest* 2015; **125**: 3384-3391 [PMID: 26325035 DOI: 10.1172/JCI80011]
37 **Park JJ**, Omiya R, Matsumura Y, Sakoda Y, Kuramasu A, Augustine MM, Yao S, Tsushima F, Narazaki H, Anand S, Liu Y, Strome SE, Chen L, Tamada K. B7-H1/CD80 interaction is required for the induction and maintenance of peripheral T-cell tolerance. *Blood* 2010; **116**: 1291-1298 [PMID: 20472828 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-01-265975]
38 **Grivennikov SI**, Wang K, Mucida D, Stewart CA, Schnabl B, Jauch D, Taniguchi K, Yu GY, Osterreicher CH, Hung KE, Datz C, Feng Y, Fearon ER, Oukka M, Tessarollo L, Coppola V, Yarovinsky F, Cheroutre H, Eckmann L, Trinchieri G, Karin M. Adenoma-linked barrier defects and microbial products drive IL-23/IL-17-mediated tumour growth. *Nature* 2012; **491**: 254-258 [PMID: 23034650 DOI: 10.1038/nature11465]
39 **Alexandrov LB**, Nik-Zainal S, Wedge DC, Aparicio SA, Behjati S, Biankin AV, Bignell GR, Bolli N, Borg A, Børresen-Dale AL, Boyault S, Burkhardt B, Butler AP, Caldas C, Davies HR, Desmedt C, Eils R, Eyfjörd JE, Foekens JA, Greaves M, Hosoda F, Hutter B, Ilicic T, Imbeaud S, Imielinski M, Jäger N, Jones DT, Jones D, Knappskog S, Kool M, Lakhani SR, López-Otín C, Martin S, Munshi NC, Nakamura H, Northcott PA, Pajic M, Papaemmanuil E, Paradiso A, Pearson JV, Puente XS, Raine K, Ramakrishna M, Richardson AL, Richter J, Rosenstiel P, Schlesner M, Schumacher TN, Span PN, Teague JW, Totoki Y, Tutt AN, Valdés-Mas R, van Buuren MM, van 't Veer L, Vincent-Salomon A, Waddell N, Yates LR, Zucman-Rossi J, Futreal PA, McDermott U, Lichter P, Meyerson M, Grimmond SM, Siebert R, Campo E, Shibata T, Pfister SM, Campbell PJ, Stratton MR. Signatures of mutational processes in human cancer. *Nature* 2013; **500**: 415-421 [PMID: 23945592 DOI: 10.1038/nature12477]
40 **Rooney MS**, Shukla SA, Wu CJ, Getz G, Hacohen N. Molecular and genetic properties of tumors associated with local immune cytolytic activity. *Cell* 2015; **160**: 48-61 [PMID: 25594174 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.12.033]
41 **Chiaravalli AM**, Feltri M, Bertolini V, Bagnoli E, Furlan D,

Cerutti R, Novario R, Capella C. Intratumour T cells, their activation status and survival in gastric carcinomas characterised for microsatellite instability and Epstein-Barr virus infection. *Virchows Arch* 2006; **448**: 344-353 [PMID: 16261379 DOI: 10.1007/s00428-005-0066-4]

42 **Nosho K**, Baba Y, Tanaka N, Shima K, Hayashi M, Meyerhardt JA, Giovannucci E, Dranoff G, Fuchs CS, Ogino S. Tumour-infiltrating T-cell subsets, molecular changes in colorectal cancer, and prognosis: cohort study and literature review. *J Pathol* 2010; **222**: 350-366 [PMID: 20927778 DOI: 10.1002/path.2774]

43 **Phillips SM**, Banerjea A, Feakins R, Li SR, Bustin SA, Dorudi S. Tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes in colorectal cancer with microsatellite instability are activated and cytotoxic. *Br J Surg* 2004; **91**: 469-475 [PMID: 15048750 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.4472]

44 **Bauer K**, Michel S, Reuschenbach M, Nelius N, von Knebel Doeberitz M, Kloor M. Dendritic cell and macrophage infiltration in microsatellite-unstable and microsatellite-stable colorectal cancer. *Fam Cancer* 2011; **10**: 557-565 [PMID: 21598004 DOI: 10.1007/s10689-011-9449-7]

45 **Haas M**, Büttner M, Rau TT, Fietkau R, Grabenbauer GG, Distel LV. Inflammation in gastric adenocarcinoma of the cardia: how do EBV infection, Her2 amplification and cancer progression influence tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes? *Virchows Arch* 2011; **458**: 403-411 [PMID: 21359545 DOI: 10.1007/s00428-011-1058-1]

46 **Kuzushima K**, Nakamura S, Nakamura T, Yamamura Y, Yokoyama N, Fujita M, Kiyono T, Tsurumi T. Increased frequency of antigen-specific CD8(+) cytotoxic T lymphocytes infiltrating an Epstein-Barr virus-associated gastric carcinoma. *J Clin Invest* 1999; **104**: 163-171 [PMID: 10411545 DOI: 10.1172/JCI6062]

47 **Akiba S**, Koriyama C, Herrera-Goepfert R, Eizuru Y. Epstein-Barr virus associated gastric carcinoma: epidemiological and clinicopathological features. *Cancer Sci* 2008; **99**: 195-201 [PMID: 18271915 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2007.00674.x]

48 **Llosa NJ**, Cruise M, Tam A, Wicks EC, Hechenbleikner EM, Taube JM, Blosser RL, Fan H, Wang H, Luber BS, Zhang M, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Sears CL, Anders RA, Pardoll DM, Housseau F. The vigorous immune microenvironment of microsatellite instable colon cancer is balanced by multiple counter-inhibitory checkpoints. *Cancer Discov* 2015; **5**: 43-51 [PMID: 25358689 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-0863]

49 **Gatalica Z**, Snyder C, Maney T, Ghazalpour A, Holterman DA, Xiao N, Overberg P, Rose I, Basu GD, Vranic S, Lynch HT, Von Hoff DD, Hamid O. Programmed cell death 1 (PD-1) and its ligand (PD-L1) in common cancers and their correlation with molecular cancer type. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2014; **23**: 2965-2970 [PMID: 25392179 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-14-0654]

50 **Church SE**, Galon J. Tumor Microenvironment and Immunotherapy: The Whole Picture Is Better Than a Glimpse. *Immunity* 2015; **43**: 631-633 [PMID: 26488814 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2015.10.004]

51 **Mlecnik B**, Bindea G, Angell HK, Maby P, Angelova M, Tougeron D, Church SE, Lafontaine L, Fischer M, Fredriksen T, Sasso M, Bilocq AM, Kirilovsky A, Obenauf AC, Hamieh M, Berger A, Bruneval P, Tuech JJ, Sabourin JC, Le Pessot F, Mauillon J, Rafii A, Laurent-Puig P, Speicher MR, Trajanoski Z, Michel P, Sesboüe R, Frebourg T, Pagès F, Valge-Archer V, Latouche JB, Galon J. Integrative Analyses of Colorectal Cancer Show Immunoscore Is a Stronger Predictor of Patient Survival Than Microsatellite Instability. *Immunity* 2016;**44**: 698-711 [PMID: 26982367 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.02.025]

52 **Raab-Traub N**. Novel mechanisms of EBV-induced oncogenesis. *Curr Opin Virol* 2012; **2**: 453-458 [PMID: 22858118 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2012.07.001]

53 **MacCarty WC**, Mahle AE. Relation of differentiation and lymphocytic infiltration to postoperative longevity in gastric carcinoma. *J Lab Clin Med* 1921; **VI**: 473-480

54 **Savas P**, Salgado R, Denkert C, Sotiriou C, Darcy PK, Smyth MJ, Loi S. Clinical relevance of host immunity in breast cancer: from TILs to the clinic. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2016; **13**: 228-241 [PMID: 26667975 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2015.215]

55 **Baldan V**, Griffiths R, Hawkins RE, Gilham DE. Efficient and reproducible generation of tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes for renal cell carcinoma. *Br J Cancer* 2015; **112**: 1510-1518 [PMID: 25867267 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2015.96]

56 **Wouters MC**, Komdeur FL, Workel HH, Klip HG, Plat A, Kooi NM, Wisman GB, Mourits MJ, Arts HJ, Oonk MH, Yigit R, de Jong S, Melief CJ, Hollema H, Duiker EW, Daemen T, de Bruyn M, Nijman HW. Treatment Regimen, Surgical Outcome, and T-cell Differentiation Influence Prognostic Benefit of Tumor-Infiltrating Lymphocytes in High-Grade Serous Ovarian Cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 714-724 [PMID: 26384738 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-1617]

57 **Fortes C**, Mastroeni S, Mannooranparampil TJ, Passarelli F, Zappalà A, Annessi G, Marino C, Caggiati A, Russo N, Michelozzi P. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes predict cutaneous melanoma survival. *Melanoma Res* 2015; **25**: 306-311 [PMID: 25933208 DOI: 10.1097/CMR.0000000000000164]

58 **Lee HE**, Chae SW, Lee YJ, Kim MA, Lee HS, Lee BL, Kim WH. Prognostic implications of type and density of tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes in gastric cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2008; **99**: 1704-1711 [PMID: 18941457 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604738]

59 **Ishigami S**, Natsugoe S, Tokuda K, Nakajo A, Che X, Iwashige H, Aridome K, Hokita S, Aikou T. Prognostic value of intratumoral natural killer cells in gastric carcinoma. *Cancer* 2000; **88**: 577-583 [PMID: 10649250]

60 **Huang B**, Chen L, Bao C, Sun C, Li J, Wang L, Zhang X. The expression status and prognostic significance of programmed cell death 1 ligand 1 in gastrointestinal tract cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Onco Targets Ther* 2015; **8**: 2617-2625 [PMID: 26451118 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S91025]

61 **Zhang L**, Qiu M, Jin Y, Ji J, Li B, Wang X, Yan S, Xu R, Yang D. Programmed cell death ligand 1 (PD-L1) expression on gastric cancer and its relationship with clinicopathologic factors. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2015; **8**: 11084-11091 [PMID: 26617827]

62 **Wu C**, Zhu Y, Jiang J, Zhao J, Zhang XG, Xu N. Immunohistochemical localization of programmed death-1 ligand-1 (PD-L1) in gastric carcinoma and its clinical significance. *Acta Histochem* 2006; **108**: 19-24 [PMID: 16530813 DOI: 10.1016/j.acthis.2006.01.003]

63 **Taube JM**, Klein A, Brahmer JR, Xu H, Pan X, Kim JH, Chen L, Pardoll DM, Topalian SL, Anders RA. Association of PD-1, PD-1 ligands, and other features of the tumor immune microenvironment with response to anti-PD-1 therapy. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 5064-5074 [PMID: 24714771 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-3271]

64 **Thompson RH**, Kuntz SM, Leibovich BC, Dong H, Lohse CM, Webster WS, Sengupta S, Frank I, Parker AS, Zincke H, Blute ML, Sebo TJ, Cheville JC, Kwon ED. Tumor B7-H1 is associated with poor prognosis in renal cell carcinoma patients with long-term follow-up. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 3381-3385 [PMID: 16585157 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-4303]

65 **Thompson ED**, Zahurak M, Murphy A, Cornish T, Cuka N, Abdelfatah E, Yang S, Duncan M, Ahuja N, Taube JM, Anders RA, Kelly RJ. Patterns of PD-L1 expression and CD8 T cell infiltration in gastric adenocarcinomas and associated immune stroma. *Gut* 2016; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26801886 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310839]

66 **Tamura T**, Ohira M, Tanaka H, Muguruma K, Toyokawa T, Kubo N, Sakurai K, Amano R, Kimura K, Shibutani M, Maeda K, Hirakawa K. Programmed Death-1 Ligand-1 (PDL1) Expression Is Associated with the Prognosis of Patients with Stage II/III Gastric Cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2015; **35**: 5369-5376 [PMID: 26408698]

67 **Darb-Esfahani S**, Kunze CA, Kulbe H, Sehouli J, Wienert S, Lindner J, Budczies J, Bockmayr M, Dietel M, Denkert C, Braicu I, Jöhrens K. Prognostic impact of programmed cell death-1 (PD-1) and PD-ligand 1 (PD-L1) expression in cancer cells and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in ovarian high grade serous carcinoma. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 1486-1499 [PMID: 26625204 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.6429]

68 **Cristescu R**, Lee J, Nebozhyn M, Kim KM, Ting JC, Wong SS, Liu J, Yue YG, Wang J, Yu K, Ye XS, Do IG, Liu S, Gong L, Fu J, Jin JG, Choi MG, Sohn TS, Lee JH, Bae JM, Kim ST, Park SH, Sohn I, Jung SH, Tan P, Chen R, Hardwick J, Kang WK, Ayers M, Hongyue D, Reinhard C, Loboda A, Kim S, Aggarwal A. Molecular analysis of gastric cancer identifies subtypes associated with distinct clinical outcomes. *Nat Med* 2015; **21**: 449-456 [PMID: 25894828 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3850]

69 **Marrelli D**, Polom K, Pascale V, Vindigni C, Piagnerelli R, De Franco L, Ferrara F, Roviello G, Garosi L, Petrioli R, Roviello F. Strong Prognostic Value of Microsatellite Instability in Intestinal Type Non-cardia Gastric Cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2016; **23**: 943-950 [PMID: 26530444 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-015-4931-3]

70 **Kim KJ**, Lee KS, Cho HJ, Kim YH, Yang HK, Kim WH, Kang GH. Prognostic implications of tumor-infiltrating FoxP3+ regulatory T cells and CD8+ cytotoxic T cells in microsatellite-unstable gastric cancers. *Hum Pathol* 2014; **45**: 285-293 [PMID: 24331841 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2013.09.004]

71 **Kim KJ**, Wen XY, Yang HK, Kim WH, Kang GH. Prognostic Implication of M2 Macrophages Are Determined by the Proportional Balance of Tumor Associated Macrophages and Tumor Infiltrating Lymphocytes in Microsatellite-Unstable Gastric Carcinoma. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0144192 [PMID: 26714314 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0144192]

72 **Hodi FS**, O'Day SJ, McDermott DF, Weber RW, Sosman JA, Haanen JB, Gonzalez R, Robert C, Schadendorf D, Hassel JC, Akerley W, van den Eertwegh AJ, Lutzky J, Lorigan P, Vaubel JM, Linette GP, Hogg D, Ottensmeier CH, Lebbé C, Peschel C, Quirt I, Clark JI, Wolchok JD, Weber JS, Tian J, Yellin MJ, Nichol GM, Hoos A, Urba WJ. Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 711-723 [PMID: 20525992 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1003466]

73 **Robert C**, Thomas L, Bondarenko I, O'Day S, Weber J, Garbe C, Lebbe C, Baurain JF, Testori A, Grob JJ, Davidson N, Richards J, Maio M, Hauschild A, Miller WH, Gascon P, Lotem M, Harmankaya K, Ibrahim R, Francis S, Chen TT, Humphrey R, Hoos A, Wolchok JD. Ipilimumab plus dacarbazine for previously untreated metastatic melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2517-2526 [PMID: 21639810 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1104621]

74 **Postow MA**. Managing immune checkpoint-blocking antibody side effects. *Am Soc Clin Oncol Educ Book* 2015: 76-83 [PMID: 25993145 DOI: 10.14694/EdBook_AM.2015.35.76]

75 **Moehler MH**, Kim YH, Tan IB, Balogh A, Sanchez TK, Bang YJ. Sequential ipilimumab (Ipi) versus best supportive care (BSC) following first-line chemotherapy (Ctx) in patients (pts) with unresectable locally advanced or metastatic gastric or gastro-esophageal junction (GEJ) cancer: A randomized, open-label, two-arm, phase II trial (CA184-162) of immunotherapy as a maintenance concept. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**suppl: abstr TPS4151

76 **Ralph C**, Elkord E, Burt DJ, O'Dwyer JF, Austin EB, Stern PL, Hawkins RE, Thistlethwaite FC. Modulation of lymphocyte regulation for cancer therapy: a phase II trial of tremelimumab in advanced gastric and esophageal adenocarcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 1662-1672 [PMID: 20179239 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-2870]

77 **Pardoll DM**. The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2012; **12**: 252-264 [PMID: 22437870 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3239]

78 **Le DT**, Bendell JC, Calvo E, Kim JW, Ascierto PA, Sharma P, Ott PA, Bono P, Jaeger D, Jeffry Evans TR, De Braud FG, Chau I, Christensen O, Harbison C, Lin CS, Janjigian YY. Safety and activity of nivolumab monotherapy in advanced and metastatic (A/M) gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer (GC/GEC): Results from the CheckMate-032 study. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34** Suppl 4: abstr 6

79 **Muro K**, Bang Y, Shankaran V, Geva R, Catenacci DV, Gupta S, Eder JP, Berger R, Gonzalez EJ, Pulini J, Ray AB, Dolled-Filhart M, Emancipator K, Pathiraja K, Shu X, Koshiji MR, Cheng JD, Chung HC. A phase 1b study of pembrolizumab (Pembro; MK-3475) in patients (Pts) with advanced gastric cancer. *Annals of Oncology* 2014; **25**: 1-41 [DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu438]

80 **Muro K**, Bang YJ, Shankaran V, Geva R, Catenacci DV, Gupta S, Eder JP, Berger R, Gonzalez EJ, Ray A, Dolled-Filhart M, Emancipator K, Pathiraja K, Lunceford JK, Cheng JD, Koshiji M, Chung HC. Relationship between PD-L1 expression and clinical outcomes in patients (Pts) with advanced gastric cancer treated with the anti-PD-1 monoclonal antibody pembrolizumab (Pembro; MK-3475) in KEYNOTE-012. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33** Suppl 3: abstr 3

81 **Ribas A**, Robert C, Hodi FS, Wolchok JD, Joshua AM, Hwu WJ, Weber JS, Zarour HM, Kefford R, Loboda A, Albright A, Kang SP, Ebbinghaus S, Yearley J, Murphy E, Nebozhyn M, Lunceford JK, McClanahan T, Ayers M, Daud A. Association of response to programmed death receptor 1 (PD-1) blockade with pembrolizumab (MK-3475) with an interferon-inflammatory immune gene signature. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33** Suppl: abstr 3001

82 **Shankaran V**, Muro K, Bang YJ, Geva R, Catenacci DV, Gupta S, Eder JP, Berger R, Loboda A, Albright A, Cristescu R, Murphy E, McClanahan T, Ayers M, Nebozhyn M, Lunceford JK, Koshiji M, Heath K, Cheng JD, Chung HC. Correlation of gene expression signatures and clinical outcomes in patients with advanced gastric cancer treated with pembrolizumab (MK-3475). *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33** Suppl; abstr 3026

83 **Alsina M**, Moehler M, Hierro C, Guardeño R, Tabernero J. Immunotherapy for Gastric Cancer: A Focus on Immune Checkpoints. *Target Oncol* 2016; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26880697 DOI: 10.1007/s11523-016-0421-1]

84 **de Guillebon E**, Roussille P, Frouin E, Tougeron D. Anti program death-1/anti program death-ligand 1 in digestive cancers. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2015; **7**: 95-101 [PMID: 26306141 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v7.i8.95]

85 **Raufi AG**, Klempner SJ. Immunotherapy for advanced gastric and esophageal cancer: preclinical rationale and ongoing clinical investigations. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2015; **6**: 561-569 [PMID: 26487950 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2078-6891.2015.037]

86 **Wolchok JD**, Kluger H, Callahan MK, Postow MA, Rizvi NA, Lesokhin AM, Segal NH, Ariyan CE, Gordon RA, Reed K, Burke MM, Caldwell A, Kronenberg SA, Agunwamba BU, Zhang X, Lowy I, Inzunza HD, Feely W, Horak CE, Hong Q, Korman AJ, Wigginton JM, Gupta A, Sznol M. Nivolumab plus ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 122-133 [PMID: 23724867 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1302369]

87 **Le DT**, Uram JN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Kemberling H, Eyring AD, Skora AD, Luber BS, Azad NS, Laheru D, Biedrzycki B, Donehower RC, Zaheer A, Fisher GA, Crocenzi TS, Lee JJ, Duffy SM, Goldberg RM, de la Chapelle A, Koshiji M, Bhaijee F, Huebner T, Hruban RH, Wood LD, Cuka N, Pardoll DM, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Zhou S, Cornish TC, Taube JM, Anders RA, Eshleman JR, Vogelstein B, Diaz LA. PD-1 Blockade in Tumors with Mismatch-Repair Deficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 2509-2520 [PMID: 26028255 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1500596]

88 **Galon J**, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pagès C, Tosolini M, Camus M, Berger A, Wind P, Zinzindohoué F, Bruneval P, Cugnenc PH, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Pagès F. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. *Science* 2006; **313**: 1960-1964 [PMID: 17008531 DOI: 10.1126/science.1129139]

89 **Galon J**, Pagès F, Marincola FM, Thurin M, Trinchieri G, Fox BA, Gajewski TF, Ascierto PA. The immune score as a new possible approach for the classification of cancer. *J Transl Med* 2012; **10**: 1 [PMID: 22214470 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-10-1]

90 **Anitei MG**, Zeitoun G, Mlecnik B, Marliot F, Haicheur N, Todosi AM, Kirilovsky A, Lagorce C, Bindea G, Ferariu D, Danciu M, Bruneval P, Scripcariu V, Chevallier JM, Zinzindohoué F, Berger A, Galon J, Pagès F. Prognostic and predictive values of the immunoscore in patients with rectal cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 1891-1899 [PMID: 24691640 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.

CCR-13-2830]
91 **Kershaw MH**, Devaud C, John LB, Westwood JA, Darcy PK. Enhancing immunotherapy using chemotherapy and radiation to modify the tumor microenvironment. *Oncoimmunology* 2013; **2**: e25962 [PMID: 24327938 DOI: 10.4161/onci.25962]
92 **Kroemer G**, Galluzzi L, Kepp O, Zitvogel L. Immunogenic cell death in cancer therapy. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2013; **31**: 51-72 [PMID: 23157435 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-032712-100008]

P- Reviewer: Ciesielski M, Watari J **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6385

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6385-6392
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Gastric Cancer: Global view

Benefits and harms of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer

Chisato Hamashima

Chisato Hamashima, Division of Cancer Screening Assessment and Management, Center for Public Health Science, National Cancer Center, Tokyo 104-0045, Japan

Author contributions: Hamashima C designed and performed the recently published research studies cited in this review, and wrote this article.

Supported by the National Cancer Center, Tokyo, Japan, No. 26-A-30.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The author have no conflict of interest to report; the funder had no role in the conceptualization of the study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of the manuscript.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Chisato Hamashima, MD, Division of Cancer Screening Assessment and Management, Center for Public Health Science, National Cancer Center, 5-1-1 Tsukiji Chuo-ku, Tokyo 104-0045, Japan. chamashi@ncc.go.jp
Telephone: +81-3-3547-5305
Fax: +81-3-3547-8587

Received: March 28, 2016
Peer-review started: April 1, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 18, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016
Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Gastric cancer has remained a serious burden worldwide, particularly in East Asian countries. However, nationwide prevention and screening programs for gastric cancer have not yet been established in most countries except in South Korea and Japan. Although evidence regarding the effectiveness of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer has been increasingly accumulated, such evidence remains weak because it is based on results from studies other than randomized controlled trials. Specifically, evidence was mostly based on the results of cohort and case-control studies mainly conducted in South Korea and Japan. However, the consistent positive results from these studies suggest promising evidence of mortality reduction from gastric cancer by endoscopic screening. The major harms of endoscopic screening include infection, adverse effects, false-positive results, and overdiagnosis. Despite the possible harms of endoscopic screening, information regarding these harms remains insufficient. To provide appropriate cancer screening, a balance of benefits and harms should always be considered when cancer screening is introduced as a public policy. Quality assurance is very important for the implementation of cancer screening to provide high-quality and safe screening and minimize harms. Endoscopic screening for gastric cancer has shown promising results, and thus deserves further evaluation to reliably establish its effectiveness and optimal use.

Key words: Gastric cancer; Cancer screening; Upper gastrointestinal endoscopy; Mortality reduction; Cohort study; Case-control study; Harms

Core tip: Although evidence regarding the effectiveness

of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer has been increasingly accumulated based on consistent results, such evidence remains weak because it is based on the results of cohort and case-control studies mainly from South Korea and Japan. However, the consistent positive results suggest promising evidence of mortality reduction from gastric cancer by endoscopic screening. Despite the major harms of endoscopic screening, namely infection, adverse effects, false-positive results, and overdiagnosis, information regarding these harms remains insufficient. To provide appropriate cancer screening, a balance of benefits and harms should always be considered.

Hamashima C. Benefits and harms of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6385-6392 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6385.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6385

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer has remained a serious burden worldwide, particularly in East Asian countries. In 2012, there was an estimated 1 million new cases of gastric cancer, with half of the world total occurring in Eastern Asia[1]. The highest mortality rates are observed in Eastern Asia, occurring at 24.0 per 100000 men and 9.8 per 100000 women. However, prevention and screening programs for gastric cancer particularly at the national level have not yet been established in most countries. The exceptions are South Korea and Japan where gastric cancer screening programs have already been introduced[2]. In Japan, gastric cancer screening using upper gastrointestinal series (radiographic screening) has been conducted as a national program since 1983, and it has been attributed to the decrease in gastric cancer mortality[3]. After the introduction of radiographic screening for gastric cancer, supporting evidence has been obtained from case-control and cohort studies mainly conducted in Japan[4].

Upper gastrointestinal endoscopy has been performed in clinical practice and is often introduced in opportunistic screening for gastric cancer in Asian countries[5]. Therefore, endoscopic screening has been anticipated to be introduced as a screening method in communities. Although South Korea was the first country to introduce endoscopic screening for gastric cancer, there was insufficient evidence of mortality reduction from gastric cancer when it was adopted as a national program[6]. Over the last decade, evidence regarding the effectiveness of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer has been increasingly accumulated. Recently in South Korea and Japan, cancer screening guidelines have been revised based on the new research results of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer[7,8]. In both guidelines, endoscopic screening takes an important position in gastric cancer screening. However, evidence regarding the effectiveness of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer remains controversial, and quality assurance needs to be established. Discussion related to its benefits and harms is needed to promote the establishment of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer based on current and reliable evidence.

EFFECTIVENESS OF ENDOSCOPIC SCREENING FOR GASTRIC CANCER

Evidence regarding the effectiveness of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer has been obtained from cohort and case-control studies mainly conducted in South Korea and Japan. Since these countries have already introduced endoscopic screening for gastric cancer, the study design is limited to observational studies. However, the consistent positive results from these studies suggest promising evidence of mortality reduction from gastric cancer by endoscopic screening.

Cohort studies

The results from 5 published cohort studies of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer conducted in China and Japan are shown in Table 1. The target population of these studies was limited to asymptomatic individuals in communities. For the first cohort study concluded in China, mortality reduction could not be shown[9]. In the area with a high incidence of gastric cancer, endoscopic screening was offered twice with a 5-year screening interval. The standard mortality ratio of participation in endoscopic screening was 1.01 (95%CI: 0.72-1.37) for men and 0.65 (95%CI: 0.26-1.32) for women.

Earlier studies conducted in Japan had several problems in that they included individuals aged over 70 years and ignored the screening history before the defined first screening[10,11]. Although the study by Hosokawa *et al*[11] had the largest sample size, the sample selection period was different between the radiographic screening group and the endoscopic screening: the radiographic screening group was selected from communities in 1995 whereas the endoscopic screening group was selected from screening center from 1986 to 1999. Therefore, the age distributions and backgrounds of individuals in both groups were different[11].

In Japan, although radiographic screening has been established as the standard method for the national gastric cancer screening program, some municipalities have now individually introduced endoscopic screening for gastric cancer. As an example, Niigata City has provided 3 types of gastric cancer screening since 2005: endoscopy, regular radiography, and photofluorography. After a 5-year follow-up period, standard mortality ratios (SMRs) were calculated and were

Table 1 Comparison of results from cohort studies of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer

Author	Riecken *et al*[9]	Matsumoto *et al*[10]	Hosokawa *et al*[11]	Hamashima *et al*[12]	Hamashima *et al*[13]
Publication	2002	2007	2011	2015	2015
Country	China	Japan	Japan	Japan	Japan
Target age, yr	35-64	⩾ 40	Average: 50.0	40-79	40-79
Follow-up, yr		9	5	5	6
Number of subjects	4364	7178	18011	16373	9950
Comparators	-	-	Radiographic screening	-	Radiographic screening
Number of comparators	-	-	36870	-	4324
Outcome indicators	SMR	SMR	Hazard ratio (HR)	SMR	Relative risk
Main results	1.01 (95%CI: 0.72-1.37)	Male: 0.71 (95%CI: 0.33-1.10) Female: 0.62 (95%CI: 0.19-1.05)	HR = 0.15 (95%CI: 0.05-0.50) Adjusted HR[1] = 0.23 (95%CI: 0.07-0.76)	0.43 (95%CI: 0.30-0.57)	Adjusted RR[2] 0.327 (95%CI: 0.118-0.908)

[1]Adjusted HR by sex and age; [2]Adjusted RR by sex, age group, and resident city. SMR: Standard mortality ratio; CI: Confidence interval; HR: Hazard ratio; RR: Relative risk.

Table 2 Comparison of results from case-control studies of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer

Author	Matsumoto *et al*[14]	Hamashima *et al*[15]	Cho[17]
Publication	2014	2013	2013
Country	Japan	Japan	South Korea
Target age, yr	54-91	40-79	⩾ 40
Number of cases	13	410	35457
Number of control	130	2292	141828
Comparator	Never-screened	Never-screened	Never-screened
Main results	0.206 (95%CI: 0.044-0.965)	0.695 (95%CI: 0.489-0.986)	0.430 (95%CI: 0.40-0.46)

referred to as cancer mortality rate of the population of Niigata City[12]. The SMRs of gastric cancer death were 0.43 (95%CI: 0.30-0.57) for the endoscopic screening group, 0.68 (95%CI: 0.55-0.79) for the regular radiographic screening group, and 0.85 (95%CI: 0.71-0.94) for the photofluorography screening group. The mortality reduction from gastric cancer was higher in the endoscopic screening group than in the regular radiographic screening group despite the nearly equal mortality rates of all cancers except gastric cancer. Tottori City and Yonago City have more than 10 years of history of conducting endoscopic screening for gastric cancer. Theses cities have also provided both endoscopic screening and radiographic screening. After 6 years of follow-up, the subjects screened by endoscopy showed a 67% reduction of gastric cancer compared with the subjects screened by radiography (adjusted relative risk by sex, age group, and resident city: 0.327, 95%CI: 0.118-0.908)[13].

Case-control studies

The results from case-control studies of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer conducted in South Korea and Japan are shown in Table 2. In previous Japanese guidelines, evidence regarding the effectiveness of radiographic screening for gastric cancer was based on the results of case-control studies[4]. Although these results suggest that gastric cancer mortality could be reduced by endoscopic screening, prudence must be observed in interpreting positive results because these case-control studies may have self-selection bias.

The results of community-based case-control studies of endoscopic screening in Japan have recently been reported by Matsumoto *et al*[14] and Hamashima *et al*[15]. Results of the larger case-control study of Hamashima *et al*[15] conducted in Tottori and Niigata prefectures showed a 30% reduction in gastric cancer mortality by participation in endoscopic screening at least once within 36 mo before the date of diagnosis of gastric cancer compared with never-screened individuals. Although the sample size was small in their Nagasaki study, Matusmoto *et al*[14] reported a higher mortality reduction from gastric cancer by 80%.

In South Korea, endoscopic screening has been performed together with radiographic screening, and the recent participation rate has exceeded that of radiographic screening[16]. Based on the national database, a nested case-control study from South Korea reported a 57% mortality reduction from gastric cancer by endoscopic screening[17]. Mortality reduction from gastric cancer by endoscopic screening was observed in the 40- to 79-year age group when participating in endoscopic screening within 1 year to 3 years before the date of gastric cancer diagnosis.

INDIRECT EVIDENCE REGARDING THE EFFCTIVENESS OF ENDOSCOPIC SCREENING

Mortality reduction from the target cancer should be evaluated as the most reliable evidence regarding the effectiveness of cancer screening. Sensitivity of the screening test, stage shift, and survival rate of detected cancers by screening are also occasionally considered as possible indicators showing indirect evidence regarding the effectiveness of endoscopic screening for

Table 3 Sensitivities and specificities of endoscopy and radiography for gastric cancer screening

Screening round	Method	Sensitivity by the detection method	Specificity by the detection method	Sensitivity by the incidence method
Prevalence screening	Endoscopic screening	0.955 (95%CI: 0.875-0.991)	0.851 (95%CI: 0.843-0.859)	0.886 (95%CI: 0.698-0.976)
	Radiographic screening	0.893 (95%CI: 0.718-0.977)	0.856 (95%CI: 0.846-0.865)	0.831 (95%CI: 0.586-0.964)
Incidence screening	Endoscopic screening	0.977 (95%CI: 0.919-0.997)	0.888 (95%CI: 0.883-0.892)	0.954 (95%CI: 0.842-0.994)
	Radiographic screening	0.885 (95%CI: 0.664-0.972)	0.891 (95%CI: 0.885-0.896)	0.855 (95%CI: 0.637-0.970)

Adapted from Hamashima *et al*[19].

gastric cancer. However, these three indicators are not valid for revealing evidence regarding the effectiveness of cancer screening because they include biases and require prudent interpretation.

Sensitivity of endoscopic screening

The sensitivity of endoscopic screening has recently been compared with that of radiographic screenings[18,19]. However, since the screening interval and sensitivity calculation method were different between the screening methods, a direct comparison of the results is not suitable. Although the definition of interval cancer was different between South Korea and Japan, the sensitivity of endoscopic screening was always higher than that of radiographic screening. However, there may be an increases frequency of overdiaganosis by endoscopic screening because it can detect cancer earlier and more than radiographic screening.

In a study conducted in South Korea, the sensitivity of endoscopic screening calculated by the detection method was 69.4% (95%CI: 66.4%-72.4%) for the first round of screening and 66.9% (95%CI: 59.8%-74.0%) for the subsequent round[18]. On the other hand, the sensitivity of radiographic screening was 38.2% (95%CI: 35.9%-40.5%) for the first round of screening and 27.3% (95%CI: 22.6%-32.0%) for the subsequent round[18]. In a study conducted in Japan, the sensitivity of prevalence screening for the first round was 0.955 (95%CI: 0.875-0.991) for endoscopic screening and 0.893 (95%CI: 0.718-0.977) for radiographic screening (Table 3)[19]. On the other hand, the sensitivity of incidence screening on the subsequent round was 0.977 (95%CI: 0.919-0.997) for endoscopic screening and 0.885 (95%CI: 0.664-0.972) for radiographic screening.

Stage shifts and survival rates of detected cancer by endoscopic screening

In South Korea, both endoscopic screening and radiographic screening have been provided in the national screening programs[6]. Among cancers detected from 2002 to 2007 based on the national cancer registry, localized gastric cancers were more frequently recorded in endoscopic ever-screened patients than in radiographic ever-screened patients and never-screened patients[20]. Compared with never-screened patients, the odds ratio for being diagnosed with localized gastric cancer in endoscopic-screened patients was 2.10 (95%CI: 1.90-2.33). Stage shifts by endoscopic screening could lead to improvement of the survival rate of the detected cancer by endoscopic screening. In a study conducted in Japan, the 5-year survival rates were 91.2% ± 1.5% (95%CI: 87.5%-93.8%) for the endoscopic screening group, 84.3% ± 2.9% (95%CI: 87.5%-93.8%) for the radiographic screening group, and 66.0% ± 1.6% (95%CI: 62.8%-68.9%) for the outpatient group[21].

HARMS OF ENDOSCOPIC SCREENING

The major harms of endoscopic screening include infection, adverse effects, false-positive results, and overdiagnosis. Infection and adverse effects are original risks of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer, but false-positive results and overdiagnosis are characteristics common in cancer screening.

As everyone is a potential source of infection, all endoscopy procedures can be contaminated[22]. Hepatitis B infection caused by endoscopy was reported in the 1980s in Japan[23,24]. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection was reportedly caused by upper intestinal endoscopy and induced acute gastric mucosal lesions[25,26]. The Japan Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Society has published guidelines and manuals for the proper cleaning and disinfection of endoscopes, and had also promoted appropriate methods of cleaning and disinfection of endoscopes according to the standard guidelines set by the World Gastroenterology Organization[27].

Over the last 3 years, the Japanese Association of Gastroenterological Cancer Screening has recorded the number of adverse effects of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer during latest 3 years[28-30]. Of the 740245 endoscopic examinations conducted, the rate of adverse effects was 78 per 100000 participants in endoscopic screening for gastric cancer. The most common adverse effects were nasal bleeding and gastric mucosal laceration. The number of bleeding cases after biopsy was 21, with 4 cases requiring admission. However, the association between bleeding and anticoagulant use was unclear. Although endo-

scopic examination is often performed after the temporary stoppage of anticoagulants, there are risks of thrombosis during drug holidays[31-33] and bleeding after retaking anticoagulants[34,35]. However, regardless of taking anticoagulants, there is always a possibility of bleeding to occur[36,37]. Although serious adverse effects including anaphylactic shock and respiratory depression have been reported, there was no case leading to death in any of the reports of the Japanese Association of Gastroenterological Cancer Screening. In a survey conducted by the Japanese Gastrointestinal Endoscopy Society, cases of death caused by sedation for endoscopic examination have been reported[38].

A false-positive result is a common harm in cancer screening and requires further examination to definitively diagnose gastric cancer. In breast cancer screening, it has been suggested that a false-positive result induces psychological anxiety[39]. Although the rate of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer has been reported to be 14.9% for prevalence screening and 11.2% for subsequent screening[19], there have been no reports related to psychological burden from endoscopic screening of gastric cancer.

Overdiagnosis is the most serious harm of cancer screening[40]. Apparently, there is still no study estimating the number of overdiagnosis of gastric cancer by endoscopic screening. Based on the results of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer, the observed number of detected cancer was twice compared with the expected number in the target group of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer[41]. The excess cancers included not only overdiagnosis cases but also early cancers which have the actual possibility of progressing into advanced cancers that lead to death.

Sensitivity is affected by overdiagnosis and it is often overestimated. The detection method is the most common and simplest procedure of calculating sensitivity wherein the number of detected cancers is used as the numerator and the sum of detected cancers and interval cancers is used as the denominator. Although the detection method is commonly used for measuring the sensitivity of the screening method, it cannot exclude cases of overdiagnosis. Notably, the incidence method was developed to avoid cases of overdiaganosis during sensitivity calculations[42]. Breast, lung, and colorectal cancer screenings have been evaluated using the incidence method[43-45]. In prevalence screening, the sensitivity was reportedly 0.955 (95%CI: 0.875-0.991) by the detection method and 0.886 (95%CI: 0.698-0.976) by the incidence method (Table 3)[19]. In incidence screening, the sensitivity was reportedly 0.977 (95%CI: 0.919-0.997) by the detection method and 0.954 (95%CI: 0.842-0.994) by the incidence method[19]. The discrepancy between the results calculated by the detection method and the incident method was small, suggesting the negligible effect of overdiagnosis on endoscopic screening for gastric cancer.

DISCUSSION

To effectively introduce a new cancer screening method, mortality reduction from the target cancers must be carefully evaluated based on appropriate and reliable studies. However, since randomized controlled trials related to gastric cancer screening are lacking, observational studies have played as a central role in providing evidence regarding mortality reduction from gastric cancer. Importantly, evidence obtained from observational studies has limitations because such evidence cannot exclude serious biases, particularly selection bias. On the other hand, the results of observational studies can show the actual effectiveness in real settings. As South Korea and Japan have already introduced gastric cancer screening, planning a new randomized controlled trial of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer is difficult. Although lines of evidence regarding the effectiveness of endoscopic screening have been accumulated, information on harms remains insufficient. This becomes a barrier for estimating the net benefits of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer.

The adverse effects of endoscopic screening cannot be ignored because the participants of gastric cancer screening are asymptomatic and healthy people who have not yet experienced adverse effects following their participation in cancer screening. However, as upper gastrointestinal endoscopy is an invasive technology, adverse effects cannot be avoided. Bleeding is a common adverse effect and it can occur regardless of whether a patient is taking anticoagulants or not[36,37]. Moreover, respiration depression can lead to death when sedation is used in endoscopic examination[38]. On the other hand, endoscopy-induced infection becomes a serious problem with the widespread use of endoscopic examinations. Also, there is a risk of transmitting any infection *via* endoscopy if endoscope is not property cleaned and disinfected. These adverse effects and infection can be reduced by appropriate management. This is the basic requirement of quality assurance of cancer screening. In European countries, quality assurance guidelines for cervical, breast, and colorectal cancers have been published and they have become standards for the management of these programs[46-48]. Since 2000, South Korea has introduced endoscopic screening for gastric cancer as one of its national cancer screening programs and has developed quality assurance guidelines[6,49]. In Japan, an academic society has developed a quality assurance manual for endoscopic screening of gastric cancer and has recommended the appropriate management[50-52].

False-positive result and overdiagnosis are common harms of all cancer screenings. Both harms lead to unnecessary further examinations and additional burden for participants in cancer screenings. When cancer screening starts, these harms cannot be avoided[53]. Recently, a value framework has been suggested as a new concept of cancer screening[53,54]. In this concept,

providing the appropriate number of cancer screening is recommended to minimize the harms and maximize the screening value. The Korean guidelines for gastric cancer screening defined the target age group from 40 to 69 years[8]. The Japanese guidelines for gastric cancer screening set the starting age from 50 years with no upper age limit[7]. Both guidelines have recommended a 2-year screening interval. Based on a comparison of the stage distribution of detected cancers by endoscopic screening, a 2-year screening interval was suggested in a Korean study[55]. However, in a Korean case-control study, mortality reduction was shown even if the screening interval was extended until 3 years[17]. To minimize harms, additional studies are needed to determine the appropriate target age group and screening interval.

Although the burden of gastric cancer has not been ignored worldwide, gastric cancer screening programs using endoscopy are currently limited to South Korea and Japan. *H. pylori* is one of the main causes of gastric cancer, and 78% of all gastric cancer cases are estimated to be attributed to chronic *H. pylori* infection[56]. IARC has recommended *H. pylori* screening and treatment strategies considering the disease burden and local context[56]. Although risk stratification can be carried out using *H. pylori* antibody and serum pepsinogen tests[57], it is difficult to predict individuals who will not have gastric cancer in the future because of low predictive specificity of these tests. On the other hand, it is possible to diagnose *H. pylori* infection by endoscopy based on a specific feature in the gastric mucosa[58]. Although the discrimination ability to predict the development of gastric cancer by biomarkers and endoscopy is insufficient, considerations should be given on how to use biomarkers in combination with endoscopic screening, for example, adaptation to expand the screening interval. Further study is needed regarding the combination of endoscopic screening with these biomarkers.

CONCLUSION

Lines of evidence regarding the effectiveness of endoscopic screening have been steadily accumulated showing consistent results. However, these lines of evidence remain weak because they are based on the results of studies other than randomized controlled trials. Moreover, even if possible harms of endoscopic screening can be ascertained, specific information regarding these harms is still insufficient. To provide appropriate cancer screening, a balance of benefits and harms should always be considered when cancer screening is introduced as a public policy. Quality assurance is very important for the implementation of cancer screening to provide high-quality and safe screening and minimize harms. Endoscopic screening for gastric cancer has clearly shown promising results, and thus warrants confirmatory evaluation to reliably establish its effectiveness and optimal use.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I am also indebted to Dr. Edward F Barroga, Associate Professor and Senior Medical Editor of Tokyo Medical University for editing the English manuscript. I also thank Ms. Kanoko Matsushima and Ms. Junko Asai for research assistance.

REFERENCES

1 **International Agency for Research on Cancer**. GLOBOCAN 2012. Estimated Cancer Incidence, Mortality and Prevalence Worldwide in 2012. Available from: URL: http://globocan.iarc.fr/
2 **Hamashima C**. Current issues and future perspectives of gastric cancer screening. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 13767-13774 [PMID: 25320514 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i38.13767]
3 **Oshima A**. A critical review of cancer screening programs in Japan. *Int J Technol Assess Health Care* 1994; **10**: 346-358 [PMID: 8070998 DOI: 10.1017/S0266462300006590]
4 **Hamashima C**, Shibuya D, Yamazaki H, Inoue K, Fukao A, Saito H, Sobue T. The Japanese guidelines for gastric cancer screening. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2008; **38**: 259-267 [PMID: 18344316 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyn017]
5 **Kawano J**, Ide S, Oinuma T, Suganuma T. A protein-specific monoclonal antibody to rat liver beta 1-->4 galactosyltransferase and its application to immunohistochemistry. *J Histochem Cytochem* 1994; **42**: 363-369 [PMID: 8308253 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(08)70072-X]
6 **Leahy MG**, Pitfield D, Popert S, Gallagher CJ, Oliver RT. Phase I study comparing continuous infusion of recombinant interleukin-2 by subcutaneous or intravenous administration. *Eur J Cancer* 1992; **28A**: 1049-1051 [PMID: 1627372]
7 Promotion of evidence based cancer screening. National Cancer Center. Japan. The Japanese guidelines for gastric cancer screening 2015, cited 2016-02-15. Available from: URL: http://canscreen.ncc.go.jp/
8 **Park HA**, Nam SY, Lee SK. The Korean guideline for gastric cancer screening. *J Korean Med Assoc* 2015; **58**: 373-384 [DOI: 10.5124/jkma.2015.58.5.373]
9 **Riecken B**, Pfeiffer R, Ma JL, Jin ML, Li JY, Liu WD, Zhang L, Chang YS, Gail MH, You WC. No impact of repeated endoscopic screens on gastric cancer mortality in a prospectively followed Chinese population at high risk. *Prev Med* 2002; **34**: 22-28 [PMID: 11749093]
10 **Matsumoto S**, Yamasaki K, Tsuji K, Shirahama S. Results of mass endoscopic examination for gastric cancer in Kamigoto Hospital, Nagasaki Prefecture. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 4316-4320 [PMID: 17708603]
11 **Hosokawa O**, Shinbo T, Matsuda K, Miyakawa T. Impact of opportunistic endoscopic screening on the decrease of mortality from gastric cancer. *J Gastrointestinal Cancer Screen* 2011; **49**: 401-407 [DOI: 10.11404/jsgcs.49.401]
12 **Hamashima C**, Ogoshi K, Narisawa R, Kishi T, Kato T, Fujita K, Sano M, Tsukioka S. Impact of endoscopic screening on mortality reduction from gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 2460-2466 [PMID: 25741155 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i8.2460]
13 **Hamashima C**, Shabana M, Okada K, Okamoto M, Osaki Y. Mortality reduction from gastric cancer by endoscopic and radiographic screening. *Cancer Sci* 2015; **106**: 1744-1749 [PMID: 26432528 DOI: 10.1111/cas.12829]
14 **Matsumoto S**, Yoshida Y. Efficacy of endoscopic screening in an isolated island: a case-control study. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2014; **33**: 46-49 [PMID: 23996741 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-013-0378-2]
15 **Hamashima C**, Ogoshi K, Okamoto M, Shabana M, Kishimoto T, Fukao A. A community-based, case-control study evaluating

mortality reduction from gastric cancer by endoscopic screening in Japan. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e79088 [PMID: 24236091 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0079088]
16 **Suh M**, Choi KS, Park B, Lee YY, Jun JK, Lee DH, Kim Y. Trends in Cancer Screening Rates among Korean Men and Women: Results of the Korean National Cancer Screening Survey, 2004-2013. *Cancer Res Treat* 2016; **48**: 1-10 [PMID: 25943324 DOI: 10.4143/crt.2014.204]
17 **Cho B**. Evaluation of the validity of current national health screening programs and plans to improve the system. Seoul: Seoul University, 2013: 741-758
18 **Choi KS**, Jun JK, Park EC, Park S, Jung KW, Han MA, Choi IJ, Lee HY. Performance of different gastric cancer screening methods in Korea: a population-based study. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e50041 [PMID: 23209638 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0050041]
19 **Hamashima C**, Okamoto M, Shabana M, Osaki Y, Kishimoto T. Sensitivity of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer by the incidence method. *Int J Cancer* 2013; **133**: 653-659 [PMID: 23364866 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28065]
20 **Ravid S**, Spudich JA. Myosin heavy chain kinase from developed Dictyostelium cells. Purification and characterization. *J Biol Chem* 1989; **264**: 15144-15150 [PMID: 2549052 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2014.608]
21 **Hamashima C**, Shabana M, Okamoto M, Osaki Y, Kishimoto T. Survival analysis of patients with interval cancer undergoing gastric cancer screening by endoscopy. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0126796 [PMID: 26023768 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0126796]
22 **World Gastroenterology Organization/World Endoscopy Organization**. Global Guidelines: Endoscope disinfection: a resource-sensitive approach (2011 Feb). Milwaukee: World Gastroenterology Organization. Available from: URL: http://www.worldgastroenterology.org/guidelines/global-guidelines/endoscope-disinfection/endoscope-disinfection-english
23 **Cleaning and Disinfection Committee for Endoscope of the Japanese Gastroenterological Endoscopy Society**. Digestive endoscopy and HBV infection (The 1st report). *Gastroenterol Endsc* 1985; **27**: 2727-2733 [DOI: 10.11280/gee1973b.27.2727]
24 **Cleaning and Disinfection Committee for Endoscope of the Japanese Gastroenterological Endoscopy Society**. Digestive endoscopy and HBV infection (The 2nd report). *Gastroenterol Endosc* 1985; **27**: 2734-2738 [DOI: 10.11280/gee1973b.27.2734]
25 **Sugiyama T**, Naka H, Yabana T, Awakawa T, Furuyama S, Kawauchi H, Yamaguchi O, Uchizawa M, Yachi A. Is Helicobacter pylori infection responsible for postendoscopic acute gastric mucosal lesions? *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1992; **4** Suppl 1: S93-96
26 **Sato T**, Fujino MA, Iida R. Is postendoscopic acute gastritis a primary infection of Helicobacter pylori? *Endosc Forum Digest Dis* 1933; **9**: 7-11
27 **Akamatsu T**, Ishihara R, Sato T, Oie S, Okubo T, Fushimi R, Satou K, Tamura K, Fujita K. Multisociety practical guide on infection control of gastrointestinal endoscopy. *Gastroenterol Endosc* 2014; **56**: 89-107 [DOI: 10.11280/gee.56.89]
28 **Shibuya D**, Ishikawa T, Ichinose M, Iriguchi Y, Kitagawa S, Tobori F, Nagahama R, Haruma K, Hosokawa O, Masuda H, Mizuguchi M, Yamazaki H. Reports on adverse effect of cancer screening, FY2010. *J Gastrointestinal Cancer Screen* 2013; **51**: 250-255 [DOI: 10.11404/jsgcs.51.250]
29 **Shibuya D**, Ishikawa T, Ichinose M, Iriguchi Y, Kitagawa S, Tobori F, Nagahama R, Haruma K, Hosokawa O, Mizuguchi M, Yamazaki H. Reports on adverse effect of cancer screening, FY2011. *J Gastrointestinal Cancer Screen* 2014; **52**: 253-258 [DOI: 10.11404/jsgcs.52.253]
30 **Shibuya D**, Ishikawa T, Ichinose M, Iriguchi Y, Kitagawa S, Tobori F, Nagahama R, Haruma K, Hosokawa O, Mizuguchi M, Yamazaki H. Reports on adverse effect of cancer screening, FY2012. *J Gastrointestinal Cancer Screen* 2015; **53**: 233-238 [DOI: 10.11404/jsgcs.53.233]
31 **Sibon I**, Orgogozo JM. Antiplatelet drug discontinuation is a risk factor for ischemic stroke. *Neurology* 2004; **62**: 1187-1189 [PMID: 15079022 DOI: 10.1212/01.WNL.0000118288.04483.02]
32 **Maulaz AB**, Bezerra DC, Michel P, Bogousslavsky J. Effect of discontinuing aspirin therapy on the risk of brain ischemic stroke. *Arch Neurol* 2005; **62**: 1217-1220 [PMID: 16087761 DOI: 10.1001/archneur.62.8.1217]
33 **Wahl MJ**. Dental surgery in anticoagulated patients. *Arch Intern Med* 1998; **158**: 1610-1616 [PMID: 9701094 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.158.15.1610]
34 **Blacker DJ**, Wijdicks EF, McClelland RL. Stroke risk in anticoagulated patients with atrial fibrillation undergoing endoscopy. *Neurology* 2003; **61**: 964-968 [PMID: 14557569 DOI: 10.1212/01.WNL.0000086817.54076.EB]
35 **Palareti G**, Legnani C, Guazzaloca G, Frascaro M, Grauso F, De Rosa F, Fortunato G, Coccheri S. Activation of blood coagulation after abrupt or stepwise withdrawal of oral anticoagulants--a prospective study. *Thromb Haemost* 1994; **72**: 222-226 [PMID: 7831656]
36 **Sieg A**, Hachmoeller-Eisenbach U, Eisenbach T. Prospective evaluation of complications in outpatient GI endoscopy: a survey among German gastroenterologists. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2001; **53**: 620-627 [PMID: 11323588 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2001.114422]
37 **Ono S**, Fujishiro M, Kodashima S, Takahashi Y, Minatsuki C, Mikami-Matsuda R, Asada-Hirayama I, Konno-Shimizu M, Tsuji Y, Mochizuki S, Niimi K, Yamamichi N, Kaneko M, Yatomi Y, Koike K. Evaluation of safety of endoscopic biopsy without cessation of antithrombotic agents in Japan. *J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 770-774 [PMID: 22350697 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-012-0538-7]
38 **Yoshino J**, Igarashi Y, Ohara H, Komura N, Katoh M, Shimizu S, Suzuki T, Tsuruta O, Hiyama T, Yoshida T, Uenishi N. 5th report of endoscopic complications: results of the Japan Gastroenterological Endoscopy Society survey from 2003 to 2007. *Gastroenterol Endosc* 2010; **52**: 95-103 [DOI: 10.11280/gee.52.95]
39 **Nelson HD**, O'Meara ES, Kerlikowske K, Balch S, Miglioretti D. Factors Associated With Rates of False-Positive and False-Negative Results From Digital Mammography Screening: An Analysis of Registry Data. *Ann Intern Med* 2016; **164**: 226-235 [PMID: 26756902 DOI: 10.7326/M15-0971]
40 **Vainio H**, Bianchini F, editors. IARC Handbooks of Cancer Presentation. Volume 7. Breast Cancer Screening. Lyon: IARC Press, 2002: 144-147
41 **Hamashima C**, Sobue T, Muramatsu Y, Saito H, Moriyama N, Kakizoe T. Comparison of observed and expected numbers of detected cancers in the research center for cancer prevention and screening program. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2006; **36**: 301-308 [PMID: 16735372 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyl022]
42 **Day NE**. Estimating the sensitivity of a screening test. *J Epidemiol Community Health* 1985; **39**: 364-366 [PMID: 4086970 DOI: 10.1136/jech.39.4.364]
43 **Fletcher SW**, Black W, Harris R, Rimer BK, Shapiro S. Report of the International Workshop on Screening for Breast Cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1993; **85**: 1644-1656 [PMID: 8105098 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/85.20.1644]
44 **Zappa M**, Castiglione G, Paci E, Grazzini G, Rubeca T, Turco P, Crocetti E, Ciatto S. Measuring interval cancers in population-based screening using different assays of fecal occult blood testing: the District of Florence experience. *Int J Cancer* 2001; **92**: 151-154 [PMID: 11279619 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0215(200102)9999:9999<::AID-IJC1149>3.0.CO;2-6]
45 **Toyoda Y**, Nakayama T, Kusunoki Y, Iso H, Suzuki T. Sensitivity and specificity of lung cancer screening using chest low-dose computed tomography. *Br J Cancer* 2008; **98**: 1602-1607 [PMID: 18475292 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604351]
46 **Perry N**, Broeders M, de Wolf C, editors. European guidelines for quality assurance in breast cancer screening and diagnosis. Fourth Edition. Luxembourg: European Commission, Office for Official Publications of the European Union, 2006
47 **Arbyn M**, Anttila A, Jordan J, editors. European guidelines for quality assurance in cervical cancer screening. Second Edition. Luxembourg: European Commission, Office for Official Publications of the European Union, 2008

48 **Segnan N**, Patnick J, von Karsa L, editors. European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis. 1st edition. Luxembourg: European Commission, Office for Official Publications of the European Union, 2010

49 **National Cancer Center**. Quality guidelines of gastric cancer. Seoul: Ministry of Health and Welfare, 2014

50 **Research group of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer**. Manual of gastric cancer screening for gastric cancer. Japanese Association of Gastroenterological Cancer screening, 2010

51 **Research group of endoscopic screening for gastric cancer**. Manual of gastric cancer screening for gastric cancer using nasal endoscopy. Japanese Association of Gastroenterological Cancer screening, 2014

52 **Hamashima C**; Japanese Research Group for the Development of Breast Cancer Screening Guidelines, Hamashima C C, Hattori M, Honjo S, Kasahara Y, Katayama T, Nakai M, Nakayama T, Morita T, Ohta K, Ohnuki K, Sagawa M, Saito H, Sasaki S, Shimada T, Sobue T, Suto A; Japanese Research Group for the Development of Breast Cancer Screening Guidelines. The Japanese Guidelines for Breast Cancer Screening. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2016; **46**: 482-492 [PMID: 27207993]

53 **Harris RP**, Wilt TJ, Qaseem A. A value framework for cancer screening: advice for high-value care from the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med* 2015; **162**: 712-717 [PMID: 25984846 DOI: 10.7326/M14-2327]

54 **Wilt TJ**, Harris RP, Qaseem A. Screening for cancer: advice for high-value care from the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med* 2015; **162**: 718-725 [PMID: 25984847 DOI: 10.7326/M14-2326]

55 **Nam JH**, Choi IJ, Cho SJ, Kim CG, Jun JK, Choi KS, Nam BH, Lee JH, Ryu KW, Kim YW. Association of the interval between endoscopies with gastric cancer stage at diagnosis in a region of high prevalence. *Cancer* 2012; **118**: 4953-4960 [PMID: 22806878 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.27495]

56 **IARC Helicobacter pylori Working Group**. Helicobacter pylori eradication as a strategy for preventing gastric cancer. IARC Working Group Reports, Vol. 8. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer, 2014

57 **Terasawa T**, Nishida H, Kato K, Miyashiro I, Yoshikawa T, Takaku R, Hamashima C. Prediction of gastric cancer development by serum pepsinogen test and Helicobacter pylori seropositivity in Eastern Asians: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e109783 [PMID: 25314140 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0109783]

58 **Haruma K**, editor. Kyoto classification of gastritis. Tokyo: Nihon Medical Center, 2014

P- Reviewer: Kurtoglu E, Maldonado-Bernal C **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6393

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6393-6401
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Hepatitis C virus: Global view

Hepatitis C virus: Promising discoveries and new treatments

Juliana Cristina Santiago Bastos, Marina Aiello Padilla, Leonardo Cardia Caserta, Noelle Miotto, Aline Gonzalez Vigani, Clarice Weis Arns

Juliana Cristina Santiago Bastos, Marina Aiello Padilla, Leonardo Cardia Caserta, Clarice Weis Arns, Laboratory of Virology, Institute of Biology, State University of Campinas - UNICAMP, Campinas, SP 13083-970, Brazil

Noelle Miotto, Aline Gonzalez Vigani, Internal Medicine Department, Infectious Diseases division, FCM-UNICAMP, Campinas, SP 13083-970, Brazil

Author contributions: Bastos JCS, Padilla MA, Caserta LC, Miotto N, Vigani AG and Arns CW analyzed the literature and wrote the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interest to report.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Juliana Cristina Santiago Bastos, MsC, Laboratory of Virology, Institute of Biology, State University of Campinas - UNICAMP, P.O. Box: 6109, Campinas, SP 13083-970, Brazil. jusantiago_farmacia@yahoo.com.br
Telephone: +55-19-35216258
Fax: +55-19-35216185

Received: March 25, 2016
Peer-review started: March 27, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: June 7, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Despite advances in therapy, hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection remains an important global health issue. It is estimated that a significant part of the world population is chronically infected with the virus, and many of those affected may develop cirrhosis or liver cancer. The virus shows considerable variability, a characteristic that directly interferes with disease treatment. The response to treatment varies according to HCV genotype and subtype. The continuous generation of variants (quasispecies) allows the virus to escape control by antivirals. Historically, the combination of ribavirin and interferon therapy has represented the only treatment option for the disease. Currently, several new treatment options are emerging and are available to a large part of the affected population. In addition, the search for new substances with antiviral activity against HCV continues, promising future improvements in treatment. Researchers should consider the mutation capacity of the virus and the other variables that affect treatment success.

Key words: Hepatitis C infection; Hepatitis C virus; Treatments; Antiviral research

Core tip: In recent years, new treatments for hepatitis C have been approved and represent a major advancement in this field. However, there are limitations that should be considered, and research for new treatments must continue. The objective of this review is to demonstrate the breakthroughs that have occurred and to discuss future developments.

CW. Hepatitis C virus: Promising discoveries and new treatments. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6393-6401 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6393.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6393

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is an important cause of cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma worldwide[1-3]. It is very dangerous due to the breakthrough of long-term asymptomatic HCV[4].

HCV is transmitted through exposure to infected blood and blood products. HCV infection can be spread through blood transfusion, injection drug use, sexual intercourse, surgery, and tattooing[2,5]. HCV infection is defined as the presence of HCV RNA and anti-HCV antibodies in the serum or plasma; a positive HCV antibody test indicates exposure to HCV and could represent a current or past infection. A positive HCV RNA test indicates a current HCV infection[2].

It is estimated that 130-150 million people globally have chronic hepatitis C infection, and a significant number of those who are chronically infected will develop liver cirrhosis or liver cancer. According to the World Health Organization, 350000 to 500000 people die each year from hepatitis C-related liver diseases. The most affected regions are Central and East Asia and North Africa, although the virus is found worldwide[6].

The natural history of HCV is influenced by a wide variety of factors. Host factors include age at infection, gender, race, obesity, steatosis, insulin resistance/diabetes, genetics, alanine aminotransferase levels and exercise. Viral factors include HCV RNA level, quasispecies/genotype, coinfection with hepatitis B virus and coinfection with human immunodeficiency virus. Environmental factors include alcohol use, cigarette use, cannabis use, caffeine consumption and herbal product use[1].

Approximately 15%-45% of infected persons spontaneously clear the virus within 6 mo of infection without any treatment, and the remaining 55%-85% of persons may progress to persistent chronic infection. It is estimated that the risk of developing cirrhosis of the liver within 20 years is 15%-30% in those with chronic HCV infection[6], and the risk of developing hepatocellular carcinoma is 1%-4% per year[1].

Acute HCV hepatitis in immunocompetent individuals is generally asymptomatic, but immunocompromised hosts (HIV infection) experience lymphoplasmatic portal inflammation, interface hepatitis, necroinflammatory lobular changes, moderately advanced fibrosis or rapid progression to fibrosis over a period of time[7].

Chronic hepatitis is defined as the persistence of infection for at least 6 mo after the onset of infection and is characterized by necroinflammation accompanied by a variable degree of fibrosis[7], end-stage liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma[1].

The main extrahepatic manifestations in patients with HCV infection are immune- and inflammatory-related. Immune-related extrahepatic manifestations include mixed cryoglobulinemia, cryoglobulinemic vasculitis, B-cell NHL, Sicca syndrome, arthralgia/myalgia, autoantibody production (*i.e.*, cryoglobulins, rheumatoid factor, and antinuclear, anticardiolipin, antithyroid and anti-smooth muscle antibodies), polyarthritis nodosa, monoclonal gammopathies, and immune thrombocytopenia. Inflammatory-related extrahepatic manifestations consist of type 2 diabetes mellitus, insulin resistance, glomerulonephritis, renal insufficiency, fatigue, cognitive impairment, depression, impaired quality of life, polyarthritis/fibromyalgia, and cardiovascular disorders (*i.e.*, stroke and ischemic heart disease)[8]. Recent studies have suggested that HCV infection leads to increased risk of developing cardiovascular diseases and has been linked to increased risk of mortality caused by these diseases[9].

Several studies have considered the existence of occult HCV infection (viral RNA identified in hepatocytes but absent in serum). Although occult HCV infection is challenged by some researchers and is characterized by others as a milder condition than chronic hepatitis C, it is necessary to consider its existence because some studies have shown links between occult HCV infection and liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. In addition, due to the emergence of new treatment options, all possibilities should be considered, and special attention should be given to transfusion centers and patient risk groups[10,11].

HCV

HCV, classified in the family *Flaviviridae*, is an enveloped, single stranded positive sense RNA virus with a genome approximately 9600 nucleotides in length[12], encoding approximately 3000 amino acids[13]. Most of the genome is composed of a single open reading frame that encodes ten proteins: three structural proteins (core, E1, E2) and seven non-structural proteins (p7, NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, NS5B)[13]. Most recently, an HCV protein named F was reported[14,15].

The most variable region of the genome is the region that codes the membrane glycoproteins E1 and E2[16]. Within the E2 gene, two hypervariable regions (HVR1 and HVR2) are described that show less sequence homology between isolates, with 50% identity[17]. Non-structural protein genes, such as the core gene, are some of the most conserved on the genome[12]. Within the 5'-NCR region, the most distant related isolates present 90% sequence identity[18,19].

The host immune system, large population sizes, short generation times and high replication rates are the factors that lead to the genetic variability

of HCV[20]. Seven genetic lineages (genotypes 1 to 7) are recognized. These genotypes are subdivided into closely related sub-types differing from each other by 15% in nucleotide sequences[21]. Differences between the complete genomes occur at 31%-33% of nucleotide sites[22]. In Western countries, subtypes 1a, 1b and 3a are believed to cause the majority of HCV infections and are widely distributed[12].

For example, only 10%-20% of patients chronically infected with HCV genotype 1 show complete and permanent disappearance of the virus when treated with IFN-α alone, and 40%-50% experience successful treatment when treated with a combined therapy (INF-α/RBV). When patients infected with genotypes 2 or 3 are treated with monotherapy or combined therapy, higher successful treatment rates are observed (50% and 70%-80%, respectively)[23,24].

The mutation rate of HCV is estimated to be 2.5×10^{-5} mutations per nucleotide per genome replication[25], which is one of the highest rates for RNA viruses, including retroviruses[26]. Recombination also increases the genetic variability of HCV. Inter and intra genotypic recombinations have already been reported in various geographic locations, and the existence of intergenotypic recombination forms has also been reported[27,28]. Genotype 2 is considered to be present in most of the cases of recombinant forms, but other genotypes, except for genotype 4 and 7, also exhibit recombinant forms[29]. At the same time, the mutation rate may negatively affect the viability of viral populations. In a situation called lethal mutagenesis, a nucleotide sequence loses its information when the error rate transcends a tolerable limit[30].

Due to the high replication rate of HCV, an extensive number of variants are continuously produced during infection. These variants are closely related to each other but differ in nucleotide sequence, circulating as a complex population known as quasispecies. This population is able to rapidly adapt to a constantly changing environment[31,32]. This adaptation could lead to the coexistence of diverse variants in infected patients, creating an environment for intra and inter quasispecies interactions[33]. As a result of the continuous generation of variants, some of the variants may adapt to this changing environment and escape control by antiviral drugs[34]. Predominant and minor quasispecies can be transmitted in humans[35,36] and experimentally infected chimpanzees[37,38]. It is important to highlight that the HCV population fluctuates in patients during therapy, suggesting that HCV quasispecies may follow different evolution paths in different patients[39].

Host genetics are also indicated as a factor that could influence HCV evolution and treatment response[40]. For example, single nucleotide polymorphisms near the IL-28B gene appear to be associated with a low genetic variability in the NS3 coding region of the HCV genome[41].

EVOLUTION OF HCV TREATMENT

Since HCV treatment began in the early 1990s, treatment options have improved. Interferon alpha (IFN-α) was the first pan-genotypic option, with sustained virologic response (SVR) rates of 8%-21%[42]. Subsequently, the guanosine analogue ribavirin (RBV) was combined with IFN-α, which enhanced SVR rates to 40%. Then, pegylated IFN-α (PEG-IFN-α) associated with RBV improved SVR rates from 42% to 52%[43-45]. In 2011, the first wave of direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs), NS3/4A protease inhibitors telaprevir (TVR) and boceprevir (BOC), became available. The association of these protease inhibitors with PEG-IFN-α/RBV improved SVR rates among patients with HCV genotype 1 infection. In treatment-naïve patients, the addition of TVR or BOC to PEG/RBV leads to an SVR increase of approximately 30%. Despite this improvement in SVR, these drugs were associated with serious adverse events (AEs) and low tolerance. More recently, a second wave of new DAAs allowed IFN-free, highly effective regimens. SVR can be achieved in more than 90% of treated patients *via* IFN-free regimens, with minimal AEs and high tolerability[46-49]. Unlike the nonspecific IFN-α-based and PEG-IFN-α-based therapies, DAAs target various proteins involved in HCV replication. In addition, most of these agents are specific to one or more genotypes. The classes of DAAs include NS3/4A protease inhibitors, NS5A inhibitors (nucleotides and non-nucleotide analogues), and NS5B polymerase inhibitors. During HCV replication, NS3/4A serine protease is required for self-cleavage, the NS5A region plays an important role in viral replication and assembly, and the NS5B region encodes RNA polymerase. Some of these drugs were initially combined with PEG-IFN-α and RBV, including the protease inhibitors TVR, BOC and simeprevir (SMV) and the NS5B polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir (SOF). However, these regimens were still associated with PEG-IFN-α and RBV AEs and low tolerability[50-52].

All-oral treatment options followed this development, some associated with RBV and some not, including the combinations of SMV and SOF and SOF and NS5A inhibitor daclatasvir, the 3D regimen (paritaprevir/ritonavir/ombitasvir, co-administered with dasabuvir), and SOF plus ledipasvir. In recent years, more drugs have been designed, including grazoprevir, elbasvir, asunaprevir, beclabuvir, faldaprevir, and deleobuvir[52,53]. Drug options and their respective mechanisms and genotype sensitivity are shown in Table 1. The combined therapies increased SVR rates and tolerability and shortened treatment duration[52]. Treatment options for HCV infection, ranging from IFN-based regimens to new all-oral combinations, are presented in Table 2.

Although HCV treatment has clearly improved since the introduction of DAAs, some challenges remain. Some populations remain difficult to treat, such as cirrhotic patients, prior non-responders, genotype 3-infected patients and patients with renal

Table 1 Drugs for hepatitis C virus treatment

Mechanism of action	Drug	Genotype
Protease inhibitor	Telaprevir	1
	Boceprevir	1
	Simeprevir	1
	Paritaprevir	1, 4
	Grazoprevir	1, 4
	Asunaprevir[1]	1
	ABT-450[1]	1
	Faldaprevir[1]	1
NS5A inhibitors	Daclatasvir	1, 3
	Ombitasvir	1, 4
	Ledipasvir	1, 4, 5, 6
	Elbasvir	1, 4
	Velpatasvir[1]	4
NS5B inhibitors		
Nucleotide-analogue	Sofosbuvir	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Non-nucleoside analogue	Dasabuvir	1
	Beclabuvir[1]	1

[1]Non-FDA approved drugs.

impairment[52,60]. In this group, the combination of grazoprevir and elbasvir appears to result in high SVR rates in the short-term[72]. Most of the DAAs have drug-to-drug interactions, requiring the substitution or suspension of some medications during HCV treatment[9]. The development of viral drug-induced resistance may compromise actual and future treatment options. Finally, some DAA regimens have significant cost barriers and are not fully available worldwide[52,73].

DAAs are currently too expensive for governments worldwide, especially in some low- and middle-income countries. Nevertheless, price decreases have already been announced for some of these drugs. As patents expire, high drug costs will be reduced, although this process will take several decades. This prospect offers some hope that universal access to the treatment might be possible and that DAAs will be optimally used to reduce HCV-related mortality and incidence in low- and middle-income countries[74,75].

ANTIVIRAL RESEARCH

Despite the progress of current DAAs in terms of SVR and treatment tolerability, difficult to treat populations and the emergence of resistant virus species indicate the continued need for research into new treatment options.

Some studies indicate that caffeine has the potential to improve liver function in patients chronically infected with HCV. Through *in vitro* research, it was possible to verify that caffeine may be an important new agent for anti-HCV therapies due to its efficient inhibition of HCV replication at non-toxic concentrations[76].

Many researchers use the bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV), another *Flavivirus* member, as a surrogate model in HCV studies because propagation *in vitro* is difficult, and HCV and BVDV share similarities with respect to replication cycle, biology, and genetic organization[77]. Many studies have sought new compounds with antiviral activity from natural products. For example, a study performed in Brazil[78] investigated the antiviral activity of several marine invertebrates and the microorganisms isolated from them. This study showed that an extract produced from the *Bacillus* genus, isolated from the sponge *Petromica citrina*, has potential antiviral activity and demonstrated an inhibition of 98% and a high selectivity index during viral adsorption. Another study performed in Brazil[79] described the antiviral activity, with 99% of inhibition and a selectivity index greater than 200 μmol/L, of compounds produced from *Streptomyces chartreusis*, a termite-associated bacterium.

Extracts from plants have also been investigated as potential producers of novel compounds that could be used to treat HCV. For example, one study[80] that screened Brazilian plant species described four compounds-a natural alkaloid isolated from *Maytrenus ilicifolia* and three other compounds from *Peperomia blanda*-that could drastically reduce RNA levels and viral protein levels during HCV replication.

In addition to the importance of screening, and due to the number of extracts that could be evaluated, others research studies have already identified molecules from natural sources belonging to different chemical families that have antiviral activity that affects different stages of the HCV life cycle[81]. Some active molecules cited in this review[81] include naringenin, extracted from grapefruit, quercetin, extracted from *Embelia ribes*, honokiol, extracted from *Magnolia grandiflora*; and others.

The polyphenols excoecariphenol D and corilagin, both isolated from the Chinese mangrove plant (*Excoecaria agallocha*), were shown to potentially inhibit HCV RNA replication in cells[82]. The monoterpene camphor, isolated from *Ocimun basilicum*, was identified as a potential virucidal, suggesting that the mechanism of action of this compound acts directly on the viral particle[83].

Another compound known as silymarin, a flavonoid extract from the milk thistle of *Silybum marianum*, showed promising antiviral activity, both *in vitro* and *in vivo* at different stages of HCV replication: entry of the HCV into the cell hosts, RNA and protein expression and in the secretion of infectious viral particles[84]. This compound has also been reported[85] to potently reduce HCV RNA levels *in vivo* when administered intravenously, and to dose-dependently inhibit the HCV 3a core gene[86].

CONCLUSION

In recent years, treatment for hepatitis C has made considerable advances, represented by an increase in SVR rates, reduction of treatment duration and reduction of AEs. However, despite these advances, the

Table 2 Treatments for hepatitis C virus infection

Ref.	Treatment, wk	Genotype	SVR (total, cirrhotic, non-cirrhotic)	Previously treated Patients included
Davis *et al*[53]	IFN, 24	1	3; NA; NA	Yes
	IFN + RBV, 24		30; NA; NA	
IDEAL Study Team[54]	PEG-IFN/RBV, 48	1	39.8-40.9; 42.1-43.6; 20.7-23.6	No
ADVANCE Study Team[48]	TVR + PEG-IFN/RBV	1	75; 62-81; 62	No
REALIZE Study Team[49]	TVR + PEG-IFN/RBV, 48	1	63-64; 28-84; NA	Yes
SPRINT-2 Investigators[47]	BOC + PEG-IFN/RBV, 28	1	67; 70; 50	No
	BOC + PEG-IFN/RBV, 48		68; 70; 50	
RESPOND-2 Investigators[46]	BOC + PEG-IFN/RBV, 36	1	59; 35; 64	Yes
	BOC + PEG-IFN/RBV, 48		66; 77; 66	
PILLAR[55]	SMP + PEG-IFN/RBV, 12	1	80.5; NA; 80.5	No
	SMP + PEG-IFN/RBV, 24		86.1; NA; 86.1	
Gane *et al*[56]	SOF + RBV, 12	2 or 3	100; NA; 100	No
	SOF + PEG-IFN/RBV, 8		100; NA; 100	
COSMOS[57]	SMP + SOF + RBV, 24	1	NA; 93; 79	Yes
	SMP + SOF, 24		NA; 93; 100	
	SMP + SOF + RBV, 12		NA; 93; 93	
	SMP + SOF, 12		NA; 90; 94	
OPTIMIST-1[58]	SMP + SOF, 8	1	83; NA; 83	Yes
	SMP + SOF, 12		97; NA; 97	
OPTIMIST-2[59]	SMP + SOF, 12	1	83; 83; NA	Yes
AI444040 Study group[60]	DCV + SOF, 24	2 or 3	100; NA; NA	No
	DCV + SOF + RBV, 24		86; NA; NA	No
	DCV + SOF, 24	1	100; NA; NA	Yes
	DCV + SOF + RBV, 24		95-100; NA; NA	
ALLY-3 Study Team[61]	DCV + SOF, 12	3	86-91; 63; 96	Yes
ION-2 Investigators[62]	LDV + SOF, 12	1	94; 86; 97	Yes
	LDV + SOF, 24		99; 100; 99	
	LDV + SOF + RBV, 12		96; 87; 100	
	LDV + SOF + RBV, 24		99; 100; 99	
ION-3 Investigators[63]	LDV + SOF, 8	1	94; NA; 94	No
	LDV + SOF + RBV, 8		93; NA; 93	
	LDV + SOF, 12		95; NA; 95	
MALACHITE- Ⅰ / Ⅱ[64]	OBV + PTV/r + DSV + RBV, 12	1	97-99; NA; 97-99	Yes
PEARL- Ⅰ[65]	OBV + PTV/r	4	91; NA; 91	No
	OBV + PTV/r + RBV		100; NA; 100	Yes
SAPPHIRE- Ⅱ[66]	ABT-450/r + OBV + DSV + RBV, 12	1	96.3; NA; 93.6	Yes
TURQUOISE- Ⅱ[67]	ABT-450/r + OBV + DSV + RBV, 12	1	91.8; 91.8; NA	Yes
	ABT-450/r + OBV + DSV + RBV, 24		95.9; 95.9; NA	
ASTRAL-2 and ASTRAL-3[68]	SOF + VEL, 12	2	99; 100; 99	Yes
		3	95; 93; 98	
C-WORTHY[69]	GZR + EBR, 12	1	91-97; 91-97; NA	Yes
	GZR + EBR + RBV, 12		90-94; 90-94; NA	
	GZR + EBR, 18		94-97; NA; NA	
	GZR + EBR + RBV, 18		97-100; NA; NA	
Everson *et al*[70]	DCV + ASV + BCV, 12	1	88.8-89.5; 71.4-100; 87.5-91.1	No
	DCV + ASV + BCV + RBV, 12		85.7; 100; 85	
SOUND-2[71]	FDV + deleobuvir + RBV, 16	1	59; NA; NA	No
	FDV + deleobuvir + RBV, 28		59-69; NA; NA	
	FDV + deleobuvir + RBV, 40		52; NA; NA	
	FDV + deleobuvir, 28		39; NA; NA	

SVR: Sustained virological response; IFN: Interferon alfa; RBV: Ribavirin; PEG-IFN: Peginterferon alfa; TPV: Telaprevir; BOC: Boceprevir; SMP: Simeprevir; SOF: Sofosbuvir; DCV: Daclatasvir; LDV: Ledipasvir; OBV: Ombitasvir; PTV/r: Paritaprevir/ritonavir; DSV: Dasabuvir; VEL: Veltapasvir; GZR: Grazobuvir; EBR: Elbasvir; ASV: Asunaprevir; BCV: Beclabuvir; FDV: Faldaprevir.

limitations of available treatments must be addressed. The difficult to treat populations and the emergence of resistant virus species indicate the continued need for research into new treatment options. Therefore, research must continue so that new substances with potential antiviral activity against this virus are identified and the limitations of existing treatments can be overcome. In addition to treatment, we must always consider the importance of prevention and the need for global pacts that will allow these treatments to be made available throughout the world.

REFERENCES

1 **Lingala S**, Ghany MG. Natural History of Hepatitis C. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2015; **44**: 717-734 [PMID: 26600216 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2015.07.003]

2 **Taherkhani R**, Farshadpour F. Epidemiology of hepatitis C virus in Iran. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 10790-10810 [PMID:

26478671 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i38.10790]
3 **Bertino G**, Ardiri A, Proiti M, Rigano G, Frazzetto E, Demma S, Ruggeri MI, Scuderi L, Malaguarnera G, Bertino N, Rapisarda V, Di Carlo I, Toro A, Salomone F, Malaguarnera M, Bertino E, Malaguarnera M. Chronic hepatitis C: This and the new era of treatment. *World J Hepatol* 2016; **8**: 92-106 [PMID: 26807205 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v8.i2.92]
4 **Madaliński K**, Zakrzewska K, Kołakowska A, Godzik P. Epidemiology of HCV infection in Central and Eastern Europe. *Przegl Epidemiol* 2015; **69**: 459-464, 581-584 [PMID: 26519840]
5 **Lavanchy D**. The global burden of hepatitis C. *Liver Int* 2009; **29** Suppl 1: 74-81 [PMID: 19207969 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2008.01934.x]
6 **World Health Organization**. Hepatitis C, WHO fact sheet No. 164, updated July 2015. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs164_apr2014/en/
7 **Dhingra S**, Ward SC, Thung SN. Liver pathology of hepatitis C, beyond grading and staging of the disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 1357-1366 [PMID: 26819505 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i4.1357]
8 **Cacoub P**, Comarmond C, Domont F, Savey L, Desbois AC, Saadoun D. Extrahepatic manifestations of chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Ther Adv Infect Dis* 2016; **3**: 3-14 [PMID: 26862398 DOI: 10.1177/2049936115585942]
9 **Petta S**, Maida M, Macaluso FS, Barbara M, Licata A, Craxì A, Cammà C. Hepatitis C Virus Infection Is Associated With Increased Cardiovascular Mortality: A Meta-Analysis of Observational Studies. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 145-155.e4; quiz e15-16 [PMID: 26386298 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.09.007]
10 **Rezaee-Zavareh MS**, Hadi R, Karimi-Sari H, Hossein Khosravi M, Ajudani R, Dolatimehr F, Ramezani-Binabaj M, Miri SM, Alavian SM. Occult HCV Infection: The Current State of Knowledge. *Iran Red Crescent Med J* 2015; **17**: e34181 [PMID: 26734487 DOI: 10.5812/ircmj.34181]
11 **Rezaee Zavareh MS**, Alavian SM. Occult Hepatitis C Infection Should Be More Noticed With New Treatment Strategies. *Hepat Mon* 2015; **15**: e33462 [PMID: 26834794 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.33462]
12 **Simmonds P**. Genetic diversity and evolution of hepatitis C virus--15 years on. *J Gen Virol* 2004; **85**: 3173-3188 [PMID: 15483230 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80401-0]
13 **Bartenschlager R**, Penin F, Lohmann V, André P. Assembly of infectious hepatitis C virus particles. *Trends Microbiol* 2011; **19**: 95-103 [PMID: 21146993 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2010.11.005]
14 **Varaklioti A**, Vassilaki N, Georgopoulou U, Mavromara P. Alternate translation occurs within the core coding region of the hepatitis C viral genome. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 17713-17721 [PMID: 11884417 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M201722200]
15 **Xu Z**, Choi J, Lu W, Ou JH. Hepatitis C virus f protein is a short-lived protein associated with the endoplasmic reticulum. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 1578-1583 [PMID: 12502871]
16 **Argentini C**, Genovese D, Dettori S, Rapicetta M. HCV genetic variability: from quasispecies evolution to genotype classification. *Future Microbiol* 2009; **4**: 359-373 [PMID: 19327119 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.09.8]
17 **Le Guillou-Guillemette H**, Vallet S, Gaudy-Graffin C, Payan C, Pivert A, Goudeau A, Lunel-Fabiani F. Genetic diversity of the hepatitis C virus: impact and issues in the antiviral therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 2416-2426 [PMID: 17552024 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v13.i17.2416]
18 **Bukh J**, Purcell RH, Miller RH. Sequence analysis of the 5' noncoding region of hepatitis C virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 4942-4946 [PMID: 1317578]
19 **Piñeiro D**, Martinez-Salas E. RNA structural elements of hepatitis C virus controlling viral RNA translation and the implications for viral pathogenesis. *Viruses* 2012; **4**: 2233-2250 [PMID: 23202462 DOI: 10.3390/v4102233]
20 **Domingo E**, Holland JJ. RNA virus mutations and fitness for survival. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 1997; **51**: 151-178 [PMID: 9343347 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.micro.51.1.151]
21 **Smith DB**, Bukh J, Kuiken C, Muerhoff AS, Rice CM, Stapleton JT, Simmonds P. Expanded classification of hepatitis C virus into 7 genotypes and 67 subtypes: updated criteria and genotype assignment web resource. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 318-327 [PMID: 24115039 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26744]
22 **Simmonds P**, Bukh J, Combet C, Deléage G, Enomoto N, Feinstone S, Halfon P, Inchauspé G, Kuiken C, Maertens G, Mizokami M, Murphy DG, Okamoto H, Pawlotsky JM, Penin F, Sablon E, Shin-I T, Stuyver LJ, Thiel HJ, Viazov S, Weiner AJ, Widell A. Consensus proposals for a unified system of nomenclature of hepatitis C virus genotypes. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 962-973 [PMID: 16149085 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20819]
23 **Pawlotsky JM**. The nature of interferon-alpha resistance in hepatitis C virus infection. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2003; **16**: 587-592 [PMID: 14624110 DOI: 10.1097/01.qco.0000104300.87920.03]
24 **Zeuzem S**. Heterogeneous virologic response rates to interferon-based therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C: who responds less well? *Ann Intern Med* 2004; **140**: 370-381 [PMID: 14996679]
25 **Ribeiro RM**, Li H, Wang S, Stoddard MB, Learn GH, Korber BT, Bhattacharya T, Guedj J, Parrish EH, Hahn BH, Shaw GM, Perelson AS. Quantifying the diversification of hepatitis C virus (HCV) during primary infection: estimates of the in vivo mutation rate. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002881 [PMID: 22927817 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002881]
26 **Kim T**, Mudry RA, Rexrode CA, Pathak VK. Retroviral mutation rates and A-to-G hypermutations during different stages of retroviral replication. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 7594-7602 [PMID: 8892879]
27 **Yun Z**, Lara C, Johansson B, Lorenzana de Rivera I, Sönnerborg A. Discrepancy of hepatitis C virus genotypes as determined by phylogenetic analysis of partial NS5 and core sequences. *J Med Virol* 1996; **49**: 155-160 [PMID: 8818959 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)109]
28 **Kalinina O**, Norder H, Mukomolov S, Magnius LO. A natural intergenotypic recombinant of hepatitis C virus identified in St. Petersburg. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 4034-4043 [PMID: 11907242]
29 **Morel V**, Fournier C, François C, Brochot E, Helle F, Duverlie G, Castelain S. Genetic recombination of the hepatitis C virus: clinical implications. *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18**: 77-83 [PMID: 21235686 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2010.01367.x]
30 **Domingo E**, Gomez J. Quasispecies and its impact on viral hepatitis. *Virus Res* 2007; **127**: 131-150 [PMID: 17349710 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2007.02.001]
31 **Biebricher CK**, Eigen M. The error threshold. *Virus Res* 2005; **107**: 117-127 [PMID: 15649558 DOI: 10.1016/j.viruses.2004.11.002]
32 **Chambers TJ**, Fan X, Droll DA, Hembrador E, Slater T, Nickells MW, Dustin LB, Dibisceglie AM. Quasispecies heterogeneity within the E1/E2 region as a pretreatment variable during pegylated interferon therapy of chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 3071-3083 [PMID: 15709027]
33 **Echeverría N**, Moratorio G, Cristina J, Moreno P. Hepatitis C virus genetic variability and evolution. *World J Hepatol* 2015; **7**: 831-845 [PMID: 25937861 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v7.i6.831]
34 **Pawlotsky JM**. Hepatitis C virus population dynamics during infection. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2006; **299**: 261-284 [PMID: 16568902]
35 **Cody SH**, Nainan OV, Garfein RS, Meyers H, Bell BP, Shapiro CN, Meeks EL, Pitt H, Mouzin E, Alter MJ, Margolis HS, Vugia DJ. Hepatitis C virus transmission from an anesthesiologist to a patient. *Arch Intern Med* 2002; **162**: 345-350 [PMID: 11822928]
36 **Lin HJ**, Seeff LB, Barbosa L, Hollinger FB. Occurrence of identical hypervariable region 1 sequences of hepatitis C virus in transfusion recipients and their respective blood donors: divergence over time. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 424-429 [PMID: 11481629 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.26635]
37 **Hijikata M**, Mizuno K, Rikihisa T, Shimizu YK, Iwamoto A, Nakajima N, Yoshikura H. Selective transmission of hepatitis C virus in vivo and in vitro. *Arch Virol* 1995; **140**: 1623-1628 [PMID: 7487493]
38 **Kojima M**, Osuga T, Tsuda F, Tanaka T, Okamoto H. Influence of antibodies to the hypervariable region of E2/NS1 glycoprotein on

the selective replication of hepatitis C virus in chimpanzees. *Virology* 1994; **204**: 665-672 [PMID: 7941335 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1994.1582]

39 **Cristina J**, del Pilar Moreno M, Moratorio G. Hepatitis C virus genetic variability in patients undergoing antiviral therapy. *Virus Res* 2007; **127**: 185-194 [PMID: 17449128 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2007.02.023]

40 **Valenti L**, Pulixi E, La Spina S. IL28B, HCV core mutations, and hepatocellular carcinoma: does host genetic make-up shape viral evolution in response to immunity? *Hepatol Int* 2012; **6**: 356-359 [PMID: 26201341 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-011-9327-2]

41 **Aparicio E**, Franco S, Parera M, Andrés C, Tural C, Clotet B, Martínez MA. Complexity and catalytic efficiency of hepatitis C virus (HCV) NS3 and NS4A protease quasispecies influence responsiveness to treatment with pegylated interferon plus ribavirin in HCV/HIV-coinfected patients. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 5961-5969 [PMID: 21471227 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00308-11]

42 **Lindsay KL**. Therapy of hepatitis C: overview. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 71S-77S [PMID: 9305668]

43 **Brillanti S**, Garson J, Foli M, Whitby K, Deaville R, Masci C, Miglioli M, Barbara L. A pilot study of combination therapy with ribavirin plus interferon alfa for interferon alfa-resistant chronic hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 812-817 [PMID: 7521308]

44 **Manns MP**, McHutchison JG, Gordon SC, Rustgi VK, Shiffman M, Reindollar R, Goodman ZD, Koury K, Ling M, Albrecht JK. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin compared with interferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for initial treatment of chronic hepatitis C: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2001; **358**: 958-965 [PMID: 11583749]

45 **Fried MW**, Shiffman ML, Reddy KR, Smith C, Marinos G, Gonçales FL, Häussinger D, Diago M, Carosi G, Dhumeaux D, Craxi A, Lin A, Hoffman J, Yu J. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 975-982 [PMID: 12324553 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa020047]

46 **Bacon BR**, Gordon SC, Lawitz E, Marcellin P, Vierling JM, Zeuzem S, Poordad F, Goodman ZD, Sings HL, Boparai N, Burroughs M, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Esteban R. Boceprevir for previously treated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1207-1217 [PMID: 21449784 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1009482]

47 **Poordad F**, McCone J, Bacon BR, Bruno S, Manns MP, Sulkowski MS, Jacobson IM, Reddy KR, Goodman ZD, Boparai N, DiNubile MJ, Sniukiene V, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Bronowicki JP. Boceprevir for untreated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1195-1206 [PMID: 21449783 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1010494]

48 **Jacobson IM**, McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, Di Bisceglie AM, Reddy KR, Bzowej NH, Marcellin P, Muir AJ, Ferenci P, Flisiak R, George J, Rizzetto M, Shouval D, Sola R, Terg RA, Yoshida EM, Adda N, Bengtsson L, Sankoh AJ, Kieffer TL, George S, Kauffman RS, Zeuzem S. Telaprevir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2405-2416 [PMID: 21696307 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1012912]

49 **Zeuzem S**, Andreone P, Pol S, Lawitz E, Diago M, Roberts S, Focaccia R, Younossi Z, Foster GR, Horban A, Ferenci P, Nevens F, Müllhaupt B, Pockros P, Terg R, Shouval D, van Hoek B, Weiland O, Van Heeswijk R, De Meyer S, Luo D, Boogaerts G, Polo R, Picchio G, Beumont M. Telaprevir for retreatment of HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2417-2428 [PMID: 21696308 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1013086]

50 **Banerjee D**, Reddy KR. Review article: safety and tolerability of direct-acting anti-viral agents in the new era of hepatitis C therapy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **43**: 674-696 [PMID: 26787287 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13514]

51 **Tamori A**, Enomoto M, Kawada N. Recent Advances in Antiviral Therapy for Chronic Hepatitis C. *Mediators Inflamm* 2016; **2016**: 6841628 [PMID: 27022210 DOI: 10.1155/2016/6841628]

52 **Gutierrez JA**, Lawitz EJ, Poordad F. Interferon-free, direct-acting antiviral therapy for chronic hepatitis C. *J Viral Hepat* 2015; **22**: 861-870 [PMID: 26083155 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12422]

53 **Davis GL**, Esteban-Mur R, Rustgi V, Hoefs J, Gordon SC, Trepo C, Shiffman ML, Zeuzem S, Craxi A, Ling MH, Albrecht J. Interferon alfa-2b alone or in combination with ribavirin for the treatment of relapse of chronic hepatitis C. International Hepatitis Interventional Therapy Group. *N Engl J Med* 1998; **339**: 1493-1499 [PMID: 9819447]

54 **McHutchison JG**, Lawitz EJ, Shiffman ML, Muir AJ, Galler GW, McCone J, Nyberg LM, Lee WM, Ghalib RH, Schiff ER, Galati JS, Bacon BR, Davis MN, Mukhopadhyay P, Koury K, Noviello S, Pedicone LD, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Sulkowski MS. Peginterferon alfa-2b or alfa-2a with ribavirin for treatment of hepatitis C infection. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 580-593 [PMID: 19625712 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808010]

55 **Fried MW**, Buti M, Dore GJ, Flisiak R, Ferenci P, Jacobson I, Marcellin P, Manns M, Nikitin I, Poordad F, Sherman M, Zeuzem S, Scott J, Gilles L, Lenz O, Peeters M, Sekar V, De Smedt G, Beumont-Mauviel M. Once-daily simeprevir (TMC435) with pegylated interferon and ribavirin in treatment-naïve genotype 1 hepatitis C: the randomized PILLAR study. *Hepatology* 2013; **58**: 1918-1929 [PMID: 23907700 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26641]

56 **Gane EJ**, Stedman CA, Hyland RH, Ding X, Svarovskaia E, Symonds WT, Hindes RG, Berrey MM. Nucleotide polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir plus ribavirin for hepatitis C. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **368**: 34-44 [PMID: 23281974 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1208953]

57 **Lawitz E**, Sulkowski MS, Ghalib R, Rodriguez-Torres M, Younossi ZM, Corregidor A, DeJesus E, Pearlman B, Rabinovitz M, Gitlin N, Lim JK, Pockros PJ, Scott JD, Fevery B, Lambrecht T, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, Callewaert K, Symonds WT, Picchio G, Lindsay KL, Beumont M, Jacobson IM. Simeprevir plus sofosbuvir, with or without ribavirin, to treat chronic infection with hepatitis C virus genotype 1 in non-responders to pegylated interferon and ribavirin and treatment-naive patients: the COSMOS randomised study. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 1756-1765 [PMID: 25078309 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)61036-9]

58 **Kwo P**, Gitlin N, Nahass R, Bernstein D, Rojter S, Schiff E, Davis M, Ruane PJ, Younes Z, Kalmeijer R, Peeters M, Lenz O, Fevery B, De La Rosa G, Scott J, Sinha R, Witek J. A phase 3, randomized, open-label study to evaluate the efficacy and safety of 8 and 12 weeks of simeprevir plus sofosbuvir in treatment- naïve and treatment-experienced patients with chronic HCV genotype 1 infection without cirrhosis: OPTMIST-1 [abstract]. Vienna: Presented at the 50th Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver, April 22-26, 2015: Abstract LP14

59 **Lawitz E**, Matusow G, DeJesus E, Yoshida E, Felizarta F, Ghalib R, Godofsky E, Herring R, Poleynard G, Sheikh A, Tobias H, Kugelmas M, Kalmeijer R, Peeters M, Lenz O, Fevery B, De La Rosa G, Scott J, Sinha R, Witek J. A phase 3, open-lable, single-arm study to evaluate the efficacy and safety of 12 weeks of simeprevir and sofosbuvironn treatment-naive or-experienced patients with chronic HCV genotype 1 infection and cirrhosis: OPTMIST-2 [abstract]. Vienna: Presented at the 50th Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver, April 22-26, 2015: Abstract LP04

60 **Sulkowski MS**, Gardiner DF, Rodriguez-Torres M, Reddy KR, Hassanein T, Jacobson I, Lawitz E, Lok AS, Hinestrosa F, Thuluvath PJ, Schwartz H, Nelson DR, Everson GT, Eley T, Wind-Rotolo M, Huang SP, Gao M, Hernandez D, McPhee F, Sherman D, Hindes R, Symonds W, Pasquinelli C, Grasela DM. Daclatasvir plus sofosbuvir for previously treated or untreated chronic HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 211-221 [PMID: 24428467 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1306218DR]

61 **Nelson DR**, Cooper JN, Lalezari JP, Lawitz E, Pockros PJ, Gitlin N, Freilich BF, Younes ZH, Harlan W, Ghalib R, Oguchi G, Thuluvath PJ, Ortiz-Lasanta G, Rabinovitz M, Bernstein D, Bennett M, Hawkins T, Ravendhran N, Sheikh AM, Varunok P, Kowdley KV, Hennicken D, McPhee F, Rana K, Hughes EA. All-oral 12-week treatment with daclatasvir plus sofosbuvir in patients with hepatitis C virus genotype 3 infection: ALLY-3 phase III study. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 1127-1135 [PMID: 25614962 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27726]

62 **Afdhal N**, Reddy KR, Nelson DR, Lawitz E, Gordon SC, Schiff E, Nahass R, Ghalib R, Gitlin N, Herring R, Lalezari J, Younes ZH,

Pockros PJ, Di Bisceglie AM, Arora S, Subramanian GM, Zhu Y, Dvory-Sobol H, Yang JC, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Sulkowski M, Kwo P. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for previously treated HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1483-1493 [PMID: 24725238 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1316366]

63 **Kowdley KV**, Gordon SC, Reddy KR, Rossaro L, Bernstein DE, Lawitz E, Shiffman ML, ESchiff E, Ghalib R, Ryan M, Rustgi V, Chojkier M, Herring R, Di Bisceglie AD, Pockros PJ, Subramanian MG, An D, Svarovskaia E, Hyland RH, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Pound D, Fried MW. Ledipasvir and Sofosbuvir for 8 or 12 Weeks for Chronic HCV without Cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 179-188 [DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402355]

64 **Dore GJ**, Conway B, Luo Y, Janczewska E, Knysz B, Liu Y, Streinu-Cercel A, Caruntu FA, Curescu M, Skoien R, Ghesquiere W, Mazur W, Soza A, Fuster F, Greenbloom S, Motoc A, Arama V, Shaw D, Tornai I, Sasadeusz J, Dalgard O, Sullivan D, Liu X, Kapoor M, Campbell A, Podsadecki T. Efficacy and safety of ombitasvir/paritaprevir/r and dasabuvir compared to IFN-containing regimens in genotype 1 HCV patients: The MALACHITE-I/II trials. *J Hepatol* 2016; **64**: 19-28 [PMID: 26321288 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.08.015]

65 **Hézode C**, Asselah T, Reddy KR, Hassanein T, Berenguer M, Fleischer-Stepniewska K, Marcellin P, Hall C, Schnell G, Pilot-Matias T, Mobashery N, Redman R, Vilchez RA, Pol S. Ombitasvir plus paritaprevir plus ritonavir with or without ribavirin in treatment-naive and treatment-experienced patients with genotype 4 chronic hepatitis C virus infection (PEARL-I): a randomised, open-label trial. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 2502-2509 [PMID: 25837829 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)60159-3]

66 **Zeuzem S**, Jacobson IM, Baykal T, Marinho RT, Poordad F, Bourlière M, Sulkowski MS, Wedemeyer H, Tam E, Desmond P, Jensen DM, Di Bisceglie AM, Varunok P, Hassanein T, Xiong J, Pilot-Matias T, DaSilva-Tillmann B, Larsen L, Podsadecki T, Bernstein B. Retreatment of HCV with ABT-450/r-ombitasvir and dasabuvir with ribavirin. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1604-1614 [PMID: 24720679 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1401561]

67 **Poordad F**, Hezode C, Trinh R, Kowdley KV, Zeuzem S, Agarwal K, Shiffman ML, Wedemeyer H, Berg T, Yoshida EM, Forns X, Lovell SS, Da Silva-Tillmann B, Collins CA, Campbell AL, Podsadecki T, Bernstein B. ABT-450/r-ombitasvir and dasabuvir with ribavirin for hepatitis C with cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1973-1982 [PMID: 24725237 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402869]

68 **Foster GR**, Afdhal N, Roberts SK, Bräu N, Gane EJ, Pianko S, Lawitz E, Thompson A, Shiffman ML, Cooper C, Towner WJ, Conway B, Ruane P, Bourlière M, Asselah T, Berg T, Zeuzem S, Rosenberg W, Agarwal K, Stedman CA, Mo H, Dvory-Sobol H, Han L, Wang J, McNally J, Osinusi A, Brainard DM, McHutchison JG, Mazzotta F, Tran TT, Gordon SC, Patel K, Reau N, Mangia A, Sulkowski M. Sofosbuvir and Velpatasvir for HCV Genotype 2 and 3 Infection. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 2608-2617 [PMID: 26575258 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1512612]

69 **Lawitz E**, Gane E, Pearlman B, Tam E, Ghesquiere W, Guyader D, Alric L, Bronowicki JP, Lester L, Sievert W, Ghalib R, Balart L, Sund F, Lagging M, Dutko F, Shaughnessy M, Hwang P, Howe AY, Wahl J, Robertson M, Barr E, Haber B. Efficacy and safety of 12 weeks versus 18 weeks of treatment with grazoprevir (MK-5172) and elbasvir (MK-8742) with or without ribavirin for hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection in previously untreated patients with cirrhosis and patients with previous null response with or without cirrhosis (C-WORTHY): a randomised, open-label phase 2 trial. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 1075-1086 [PMID: 25467591]

70 **Everson GT**, Sims KD, Thuluvath PJ, Lawitz E, Hassanein T, Rodriguez-Torres M, Desta T, Hawkins T, Levin JM, Hinestrosa F, Rustgi V, Schwartz H, Younossi Z, Webster L, Gitlin N, Eley T, Huang SP, McPhee F, Grasela DM, Gardiner DF. Daclatasvir + asunaprevir + beclabuvir ± ribavirin for chronic HCV genotype 1-infected treatment-naive patients. *Liver Int* 2016; **36**: 189-197 [PMID: 26473667 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12964]

71 **Zeuzem S**, Soriano V, Asselah T, Gane EJ, Bronowicki JP, Angus P, Lohse AW, Stickel F, Müllhaupt B, Roberts S, Schuchmann M, Manns M, Bourlière M, Buti M, Stern JO, Gallivan JP, Voss F, Sabo JP, Böcher W, Mensa FJ. Efficacy and safety of faldaprevir, deleobuvir, and ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection and advanced liver fibrosis or cirrhosis. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2015; **59**: 1282-1291 [PMID: 25512403 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.04383-14]

72 **Sorbera MA**, Friedman ML, Cope R. New and Emerging Evidence on the Use of Second-Generation Direct Acting Antivirals for the Treatment of Hepatitis C Virus in Renal Impairment. *J Pharm Pract* 2016; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26902648 DOI: 10.1177/0897190016632128]

73 **Asselah T**, Marcellin P. Optimal IFN-free therapy in treatment-naïve patients with HCV genotype 1 infection. *Liver Int* 2015; **35** Suppl 1: 56-64 [PMID: 25529088 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12745]

74 **Craxì L**, Sacchini D, Refolo P, Minacori R, Daloiso V, Ricci G, Bruno R, Cammà C, Cicchetti A, Gasbarrini A, Spagnolo AG. Prioritization of high-cost new drugs for HCV: making sustainability ethical. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2016; **20**: 1044-1051 [PMID: 27049255]

75 **Woode ME**, Abu-Zaineh M, Perriëns J, Renaud F, Wiktor S, Moatti JP. Potential market size and impact of hepatitis C treatment in low- and middle-income countries. *J Viral Hepat* 2016; **23**: 522-534 [PMID: 26924428 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12516]

76 **Batista MN**, Carneiro BM, Braga AC, Rahal P. Caffeine inhibits hepatitis C virus replication in vitro. *Arch Virol* 2015; **160**: 399-407 [PMID: 25491197 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-014-2302-1]

77 **Finkielsztein LM**, Moltrasio GY, Caputto ME, Castro EF, Cavallaro LV, Moglioni AG. What is known about the antiviral agents active against bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV)? *Curr Med Chem* 2010; **17**: 2933-2955 [PMID: 20858174]

78 **Bastos JC**, Kohn LK, Fantinatti-Garboggini F, Padilla MA, Flores EF, da Silva BP, de Menezes CB, Arns CW. Antiviral activity of Bacillus sp. isolated from the marine sponge Petromica citrina against bovine viral diarrhea virus, a surrogate model of the hepatitis C virus. *Viruses* 2013; **5**: 1219-1230 [PMID: 23628828 DOI: 10.3390/v5051219]

79 **Padilla MA**, Rodrigues RA, Bastos JC, Martini MC, Barnabé AC, Kohn LK, Uetanabaro AP, Bomfim GF, Afonso RS, Fantinatti-Garboggini F, Arns CW. Actinobacteria from Termite Mounds Show Antiviral Activity against Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus, a Surrogate Model for Hepatitis C Virus. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2015; **2015**: 745754 [PMID: 26579205 DOI: 10.1155/2015/745754]

80 **Jardim AC**, Igloi Z, Shimizu JF, Santos VA, Felippe LG, Mazzeu BF, Amako Y, Furlan M, Harris M, Rahal P. Natural compounds isolated from Brazilian plants are potent inhibitors of hepatitis C virus replication in vitro. *Antiviral Res* 2015; **115**: 39-47 [PMID: 25557602 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2014.12.018]

81 **Calland N**, Dubuisson J, Rouillé Y, Séron K. Hepatitis C virus and natural compounds: a new antiviral approach? *Viruses* 2012; **4**: 2197-2217 [PMID: 23202460 DOI: 10.3390/v4102197]

82 **Li Y**, Yu S, Liu D, Proksch P, Lin W. Inhibitory effects of polyphenols toward HCV from the mangrove plant Excoecaria agallocha L. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2012; **22**: 1099-1102 [PMID: 22196120 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2011.11.109]

83 **Kubiça TF**, Alves SH, Weiblen R, Lovato LT. In vitro inhibition of the bovine viral diarrhoea virus by the essential oil of Ocimum basilicum (basil) and monoterpenes. *Braz J Microbiol* 2014; **45**: 209-214 [PMID: 24948933 DOI: 10.1590/S1517-83822014005000030]

84 **Wagoner J**, Negash A, Kane OJ, Martinez LE, Nahmias Y, Bourne N, Owen DM, Grove J, Brimacombe C, McKeating JA, Pécheur EI, Graf TN, Oberlies NH, Lohmann V, Cao F, Tavis JE, Polyak SJ. Multiple effects of silymarin on the hepatitis C virus lifecycle. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 1912-1921 [PMID: 20512985 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23587]

85 **Wagoner J**, Morishima C, Graf TN, Oberlies NH, Teissier E, Pécheur EI, Tavis JE, Polyak SJ. Differential in vitro effects of intravenous versus oral formulations of silibinin on the HCV life cycle and inflammation. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e16464 [PMID:

21297992 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0016464]
86 **Ashfaq UA**, Javed T, Rehman S, Nawaz Z, Riazuddin S. Inhibition of HCV 3a core gene through Silymarin and its fractions. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 153 [PMID: 21453551 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-153]

P- Reviewer: Bare P, Lee SW, Rezaee-Zavareh MS **S- Editor**: Ma YJ
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Wang CH

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6402

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6402-6415
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Irritable Bowel Syndrome: Global view

Personality traits and emotional patterns in irritable bowel syndrome

Maria Rosaria A Muscatello, Antonio Bruno, Carmela Mento, Gianluca Pandolfo, Rocco A Zoccali

Maria Rosaria A Muscatello, Antonio Bruno, Carmela Mento, Gianluca Pandolfo, Rocco A Zoccali, Psychiatry Unit, Department of Biomedical and Dental Sciences and Morphofunctional Imaging, University of Messina, 98125 Messina, Italy

Author contributions: Muscatello MRA contributed to the literature search, manuscript writing, and final revision; Bruno A suggested topics to be included and contributed to the writing of the manuscript; Mento C managed the literature search and contributed to the writing; Pandolfo G contributed to the literature search and to the writing of manuscript; and Zoccali RA contributed to the study idea, manuscript writing and the final revision of the article.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The Authors declare that they have no conflicts of interest.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dr. Rocco A Zoccali, Professor, Department of Biomedical and Dental Sciences and Morphofunctional Imaging, University of Messina, Via Consolare Valeria, 98125 Messina, Italy. rocco.zoccali@unime.it
Telephone: +39-90-2212092
Fax: +39-90-695136

Received: March 26, 2016
Peer-review started: March 27, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 26, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

The review focuses on those personality traits (neuroticism, extraversion, openness to experience, agreeableness, and conscientiousness), constructs (alexithymia and distressed - Type D personality) and emotional patterns (negative and positive) that are of particular concern in health psychology, with the aim to highlight their potential role on the pathogenesis, onset, symptom clusters, clinical course, and outcome of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). Personality traits and emotional patterns play key roles in affecting autonomic, immune, inflammatory, and endocrine functions, thus contributing not only to IBS clinical expression and symptomatic burden, but also to disease physiopathology. In this sense, psychological treatments should address those personality traits and emotional features that are constitutive of, and integral to IBS. The biopsychosocial model of illness applied to IBS acknowledges the interaction between biological, psychological, environmental, and social factors in relation to pain and functional disability. A holistic approach to IBS should take into account the heterogeneous nature of the disorder, and differentiate treatments for different types of IBS, also considering the marked individual differences in prevalent personality traits and emotional patterns. Beyond medications, and lifestyle/dietary interventions, psychological and educational treatments may provide the optimal chance of addressing clinical symptoms, comorbid conditions, and quality of life in IBS patients.

Key words: Alexithymia; Depression; Anxiety; Anger; Conscientiousness; Irritable bowel syndrome; Emotions; Personality; Neuroticism; Extraversion

Core tip: The complex nature of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) requires a multidisciplinary approach

from different fields of scientific knowledge. This review examines the contribution of personality traits and emotional patterns to pathophysiology, clinical expression, and outcome of IBS. Several personality traits and constructs, such as neuroticism, conscientiousness, and alexithymia, are closely associated with IBS. Negative emotions, which are probably more entangled with neurobiological substrates, seem to have a key role in the brain-gut axis dysfunction which characterizes IBS. Based on the reviewed evidence, effective treatments for IBS should also address personality traits and emotions to improve outcomes in IBS patients.

Muscatello MRA, Bruno A, Mento C, Pandolfo G, Zoccali RA. Personality traits and emotional patterns in irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6402-6415 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6402.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6402

INTRODUCTION

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a functional disorder of the lower gastrointestinal (GI) tract characterized by abdominal pain or discomfort, alterations in bowel habits (constipation and/or diarrhoea), and changes in stool frequency and/or form[1].

IBS has a great impact on socio-relational and work functioning, and patients usually report significant reduction of health-related quality of life, work productivity, and general distress in everyday life activities including diet, travel, physical appearance, family, education, and physical and sexual relationships[2]. In addition, IBS presents a primary healthcare burden accounting for the majority of the total health costs associated with general practitioners andgastroenterologists consultations, hospital admissions, and pharmacotherapy prescriptions.

The pathogenesis of IBS is heterogeneous and complex, probably resulting from interactions of several factors. Traditionally, pathophysiological explanations of IBS have focused on host-related factors such as abnormal motility, visceral hypersensitivity, and enhanced pain perception[3,4], although none of these factors can account for symptoms burden in the majority of IBS patients. Research has also focused on dietary intolerance[5], low grade inflammation and altered gut immune activation[6], intestinal permeability and alteration of microbiota[7], abnormalities in the autonomic nervous system[8], and stress[9].

More recently, the relationship among central nervous system (CNS), autonomic nervous system (ANS), and enteric nervous system (ENS), and the bi-directional communication between the neural and immunological networks within the gut, related to as the brain-gut axis, has provided a major contribution to the understanding of IBS pathogenesis[10]. The dysregulation and/or the hyperreactivity of the brain-gut axis involves neural, immune and endocrine pathways that are affected by environmental, biological and psychosocial stressors[11,12].

Basic and applied research across a range of clinical areas has established the importance of the biopsychosocial model of illness[13] that has provided a valid framework for understanding the bi-directional relationships between mind and body. Differently from prior paradigms which have offered purely biological or entirely psychosocial explanations, such perspective, integrating biological and clinical sciences with individual features, has postulated how heterogeneous factors and environmental processes interact together to affect physical health and illness onset, course, and outcome[14]. It has been suggested that psychosocial factors may modify the course of illness, and that their relative weight is quite variable, depending on individual differences, on illness typology, and also, in the same individual, that their contribution may even vary between different episodes of the same illness[13].

Actually, although the dominant model of disease still remains biomedical, a large amount of research have highlighted the role of psychological factors, stressful life events, and environmental demands in modulating individual vulnerability to diseases, whereas psychological well-being seems to be a protective factor in the dynamic interplay between health and illness[14]. Thus, taking into account general factors such as quality of life, daily functioning, productivity and social performances, cognitive abilities and emotional stability should be an essential part of diagnostic and clinical processes and patient care[15].

Within a holistic, person-centred perspective, there is a growing need to include patients related outcomes (PROs), such as self-reported symptoms, psychological well-being, patients' satisfaction with treatments, and functional status in the context of clinical care and in treatment decision making, with the aim to provide subjective indicators of the impact of disease and of treatment efficacy, and a more extensive knowledge of clinical outcomes[16].

Within the biopsychosocial framework, IBS pathophysiology can be viewed as resulting from multiple interactions between biological mechanisms and psychosocial factors: external stressors, including life events, may affect and disrupt the regulation and activity of the brain-gut axis, therefore contributing to IBS onset, symptoms recrudescence, treatment response, and outcome[17]. Beyond psychosocial stressors, also genetic predisposition and early-life stress, both physiologic or psychological, may affect the bidirectional pathways between gut and brain, thus influencing individual vulnerability to develop IBS later in life, with each successive exposure to stressors possibly triggering or exacerbating IBS symptoms[18].

The role of negative effects, autonomic nervous system, stress-hormone and immune systems, along

with psychiatric comorbidity and subclinical variations in depression, anxiety, and anger in relation to pathophysiology and clinical expression of IBS have been highlighted in our previous review on these issues[19].

The present review was aimed to examine the role of personality traits and prevalent emotional patterns on the pathogenesis, onset, symptom clusters, clinical course, and outcome of IBS within the biopsychosocial model of illness and disease.

PERSONALITY: CONCEPTUAL ISSUES AND TAXONOMY

The term personality refers to regularities and consistencies in behavior and forms of experience, including relatively consistent pattern of thoughts, feelings, and perceptions[20].

Although personality is actually an all-encompassing concept making other terms almost unnecessary, constructs as "temperament" and "character" are still used, and they offer a main contribute for a deep understanding of personality formation.

From a developmental perspective, individual differences appear early in life as simple, stylistic features of personality grounded on a biological substratum of relatively heritable differences in emotional reactivity and regulation, and in withdrawal/approach behaviors towards environmental stimuli; these early individual differences are encompassed under the term temperament[21]. Character refers to those aspects of personality that are shaped by learning and interaction with the environment; however, the distinction between temperament and character traits is not so clear cut, considering that each personality trait is virtually heritable, and its full expression will be ultimately determined by environmental influences, also mediated by epigenetic mechanisms altering genome function under exogenous stimuli[22].

One of the most interesting developments in personality research has been the emergence of the five-factor model accounting for the trait structure of personality[23]. The model identifies five broad personality dimensions that are assumed to have a biological origin, and that have demonstrated remarkable stability across cultures and, in the same individuals, for up to 45-year intervals[24].

The identified dimensions are neuroticism, extraversion, openness to experience, agreeableness, and conscientiousness. Neuroticism refers to a tendency toward negative emotions (anxiety, hostility, depression) with high reactivity to physiological changes, emotional instability, vulnerability to stress, and an inclination toward impulsive behaviors. Extraversion refers to the attitude to experience positive emotions, warmth, excitement seeking, and activity. Openness to experience describes tendencies toward imagination and fantasy, aesthetics, creativity, ideas and values, and thought flexibility. Agreeableness involves a pro-social, altruistic orientation towards others, trust, straightforwardness, and tender-mindedness. Finally, Conscientiousness includes competence, order, self-discipline, and achievement striving.

There is a general agreement that the trait remains the best construct for conceptualizing individual differences; further consensus lies upon the hierarchical organization of traits, with a larger number of lower-ord er traits combined to form fewer higher-order traits. However, the nature of some of the putative traits is still a matter of debate within different frameworks; neuroticism and extraversion are clearly associated to the response to negative and positive emotions, respectively.

Thus, emotionality may be considered as a relatively stable individual trait, so that subjects characterized as highly emotional will strongly react to emotional stimuli, particularly negative ones.

Beyond the five-factor model, other personality constructs seem relevant in health research: alexithymia and the distressed (Type D) personality.

Alexithymia, one of the personality traits that has received higher attention in the psychosomatic literature, involves a reduced ability to identify, describe and discern subjective emotions and feelings, poor imaginative thought and introspection, and a cognitive style that is concrete and externally oriented[25].

Type D personality consists of two stable general traits: Negative affectivity, and social inhibition, and it is characterized by the tendency to experience negative emotions across a wide range of daily situations, and to suppress and inhibit emotional expression[26,27]. Table 1 highlights main personality models.

PERSONALITY AND HEALTH

The old-fashioned assumption which has dominated earliest psychosomatic research was that specific personality profiles were associated with specific somatic illnesses; however, no evidence has been reached by this line of research. More recently, a large amount of research has examined the relationships between personality traits and health, starting from the hypothesis that personality traits could be distal predictors of health outcomes, influencing health outcomes either directly[28] or *via* a number of mechanisms. Three main mechanisms have been identified: pathogenesis, in which traits may result in various physiological reactions both to external and internal stimuli, leading to susceptibility to illness, health behaviors, and coping with illness[29]. Furthermore, personality traits may also influence health *via* social cognitions and associative processes, whereby environments become associated with symptoms and illness behaviors, acting as triggers to illness presentation[30], and, finally, communication with health professionals. Regarding pathogenesis,

Table 1 Personality models

Model	Features
Biosocial[21]	Temperament: heritable differences in emotional reactivity and regulation, and in withdrawal/approach behaviors towards environmental stimuli. Character: aspects of personality that are shaped by learning and interaction with the environment.
Five factor[23]	Neuroticism: tendency toward negative emotions (anxiety, hostility, depression) with high reactivity to physiological changes, emotional instability, vulnerability to stress, and an inclination toward impulsive behaviors. Extraversion: attitude to experience positive emotions, warmth, excitement seeking, and activity. Openness to experience: tendencies toward imagination and fantasy, aesthetics, creativity, ideas and values, and thought flexibility. Agreeableness: pro-social, altruistic orientation towards others, trust, straightforwardness, and tender-mindedness. Conscientiousness: competence, order, self-discipline, and achievement striving.
Alexithymia[25]	A reduced ability to identify, describe and discern subjective emotions and feelings, poor imaginative thought and introspection, and a cognitive style that is concrete and externally oriented.
Type D[26]	Negative affectivity: stable tendency to experience negative emotions (feelings of dysphoria and tension, negative view of self, somatic symptoms, attention bias towards adverse stimuli). Social inhibition: stable tendency to inhibit the expression of emotions and behaviors in social interaction (feeling to be inhibited, tense and insecure when with others).

consistent individual differences in stress reactivity as documented by changes in the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis, measured by cortisol levels, and in the ANS system, as indexed by cardiovascular activity, may reflect consistent variations in basic personality traits. It is almost convincing that variations in reactivity to stressors are to some extent built on individual differences in personality traits; beyond stress perception and biological reactions to stressors[31], personality traits have an acknowledged influence on stressful life event exposure, a process known as stress generation[32]. Higher neuroticism and impulsivity, along with lower agreeableness, directly predicted the occurrence of dependent stressful life events, those events which are partly attributable to the person's own behavior, and indirect effects linked these personality traits to new health problems, suggesting that personality-related stress generation contributes to the decline of physical health in late mid-life[33].

More directly, neuroticism has been also associated with reduced cellular immune activity[34], increased pro-inflammatory cytokine levels[35], and lower cortisol stress reactivity[36]; a negative constellation of personality traits involving higher neuroticism, lower agreeableness and openness was associated with diminished stress reactions both of the cardiovascular system and the HPA axis[37]. The association between neuroticism and blunted physiological stress responses has not been extensively replicated, since a number of studies reported no association between neuroticism and cortisol changes during exposure to stressors[38,39].

Other personality traits of the five-factor model have received less attention in the context of health studies. Extraversion was related to reduced cytokine levels, increased cortisol levels, and, along with high levels of Openness and Conscientiousness, to slow disease progression[40]; moreover, low conscientiousness was associated with higher cumulative illness burden in later life[41], whereas high conscientiousness was a reliable predictor of longevity[42]. No relationships were found among agreeableness, cortisol levels, and cardiovascular stress reactivity, whereas conflicting results have been reported for openness[43,44].

Moving towards other personality constructs, it has been proposed that alexithymia could affect health through a number of pathways, directly influencing autonomic, immune and endocrine activities leading to tissue damage and to the increased vulnerability to illnesses, or indirectly, by somatosensory amplification that causes low tolerance to painful stimuli[45]. Alexithymic trait resulted associated with increased mortality[46], worse physical health outcomes[47], increased risk taking, internet addiction, and negative health and sexual behaviors[48-50]. High prevalence of alexithymia was found in major diseases, such as cancer[51], type 1 diabetes[52], and systemic lupus erythematosus[53].

Finally, Type D personality seems to confer a specific vulnerability to chronic stress, and it has been associated with increased pro-inflammatory cytokine levels[54], higher risk of morbidity, mortality, low subjective and physician-assessed health ratings, lesser health behaviors[41], and worse illness perceptions in cancer survivors[55].

Overall, findings from health research highlight the potential role of personality, conceived as built up from broad and stable traits, as a unifying structure embracing heterogeneous psychosocial factors which tend to cluster together, and contribute to raise the risk for illness onset, course, and outcome.

PERSONALITY AND IBS

The large amount of findings reporting high rates of psychological symptoms and psychiatric comorbidity in IBS seems to indicate that affective and psychosocial symptoms may be specific and basic to the syndrome; nevertheless, research on personality structure and traits distribution in IBS subjects is still questionable.

Early studies on personality factors in IBS patients were performed by using the Eysenck Personality Inventory (EPI)[56] which measures two pervasive, independent, and opposite dimensions of personality, the polarities extraversion-introversion and neuroticism-stability; these dimensions, according to the

Authors, should account for most of the variance in the personality domain. Neuroticism scores on the EPI resulted significantly higher only in diarrhoea-predominant IBS (IBS-D) subjects when compared with patients affected by ulcerative colitis and general medical patients[57]. Palmer *et al*[58] evidenced that IBS patients were significantly more neurotic and less extroverted than general population (established normative data), but significantly less neurotic and more extroverted than patients affected by psycho-neurotic disorders (neurotic depression, anxiety phobic state, obsessional illness, hysterical disorder, or a combination of these). However, it should be taken into account that the cited studies are characterized by small samples, low statistical power, restricted range, and arbitrary categorization of psychiatric disorders.

The shared agreement reached by the five-factor model[23] as a useful theoretical framework for understanding and describing basic personality dimensions, and the development of reliable questionnaires, such as the NEO Five-Factor Inventory (NEO-FFI)[59] for the assessment of the factor structure of personality descriptors, have led to a renewed interest in exploring personality factors in functional GI disorders (FGIDs).

As reviewed in the previous section, among the five factors neuroticism has been identified as the personality dimension more closely associated to health and illness processes, and this evidence is also supported in IBS research[60]. Neuroticism, which confers a marked vulnerability to negative emotions, is one of the main features of patients with FGIDs also when controlling for psychiatric comorbidity[61], and it has also been identified as a risk factor for the development of IBS[62].

A community study evidenced an association between neuroticism and a past history of sexual, physical, and emotional/verbal abuse in IBS patients, suggesting that neuroticism could predispose to the reporting or development of IBS symptoms by a subset of subjects[63]. The link between neuroticism and abuse has been further supported by a more recent, longitudinal study by the same research group: abuse during childhood was significantly associated with elevated levels of neuroticism which was strongly related with baseline prevalence of depression and anxiety, and with moderately elevated scores on interference with life and activities, but not pain. Based on their findings, the Authors suggested a conceptual model for IBS characterized by a "vicious circle" between mood disorders and bowel symptoms in adulthood, with initial input from early life factors[64].

Regarding the evaluation of the five personality factors in prevalent IBS subtypes IBS-D, constipation-predominant (IBS-C), and alternating diarrhoea and constipation (IBS-A), two studies have reported conflicting results.

A first study in non-psychiatric IBS subjects showed that IBS-C patients were characterized by higher levels of neuroticism and conscientiousness, as documented by higher mean scores on the NEO-FFI[65]. Opposed findings have been reported by a cross-sectional study on a sample of Japanese university students, since IBS-D patients showed higher levels of neuroticism than IBS-C subjects and healthy controls; moreover, neuroticism was positively correlated with the severity of IBS symptoms[66]. Such conflicting results reflect the heterogeneity of findings from research assessing negative emotions and psychological distress in IBS subtypes, with studies reporting more psychological symptoms in IBS-C patients[67,68], and others documenting higher rates of psychiatric comorbidity and psychological distress in IBS-D patients[69]. It is well-known that negative emotionality, a feature of neuroticism, can increase colonic motility, and this effect is more evident in IBS patients[70]; high levels of neuroticism, anxiety sensitivity, trait worry, and increased vigilance toward visceral sensations are common features of IBS patients and reliable predictors of IBS symptoms[71]. However, it seems quite difficult to interpret these findings, and it remains unclear to draw univocal conclusions from research on personality and psychological differences among IBS subtypes, as documented by the mixed results reported in a recent meta-analysis[72].

Beyond neuroticism, another personality dimension, conscientiousness, resulted sporadically related with IBS in previous studies[65]. More recently, complaint severity in IBS patients was found negatively associated with conscientiousness and agreeableness, and positively associated with neuroticism and anxiety; the relationship between complaint severity reports and conscientiousness was modified by genetic variation in catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT) which is involved in mediating sympathetic and dopaminergic tone through catecholamines degradation, thus participating in the complex affective, personality, and cognitive networks also involved in IBS pathophysiology and clinical expression[73].

A quite consistent amount of research has examined the role of alexithymia in IBS. Alexithymia has been found significantly associated with IBS and others FGIDs with variable prevalence rates (up to 66%), probably depending on methodological differences in diagnostic and assessment criteria[74,75]; moreover, alexithymia seems to affect responsiveness to treatment[75,76].

A study aimed at evaluating potential psychosocial predictors of IBS diagnosis and severity has identified six factors that significantly predicted IBS symptom severity, accounting for 61.3% of the variance: two alexithymia features (difficulty in identifying feelings and in describing feelings), gender, maladaptive cognitive schemas (defectiveness/shame and entitlement), and general psychological distress[77]. Similar findings emerged from a recent study that assessed alexithymic

Table 2 Personality and irritable bowel syndrome

-Several personality traits and constructs, such as neuroticism, conscientiousness, and alexithymia, are closely associated with irritable bowel syndrome (IBS).
-Negative emotionality, a feature of neuroticism, can increase colonic motility; high levels of neuroticism, anxiety sensitivity, trait worry, and increased vigilance toward visceral sensations are common features of IBS patients and reliable predictors of IBS symptoms.
-The relationship between complaint severity reports and conscientiousness was modified by genetic variation in catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT) which is involved in mediating sympathetic and dopaminergic tone through catecholamines degradation, thus participating in the complex affective, personality, and cognitive networks also involved in IBS pathophysiology and clinical expression.
-Potential mechanisms by which alexithymia could affect IBS severity include the core features of this personality construct, such as the tendency to focus on, intensify, and misinterpret bodily sensations and somatic sensations triggered by states of emotional arousal; moreover, higher pain intensity to rectal distension in alexithymic IBS patients than in non-alexithymic controls has been documented.

features and gastrointestinal-specific anxiety (GSA), which refers to worry, hypervigilance to, fear, and avoidance of GI sensations and contexts in IBS patients; results showed the association among alexithymia, GSA, and severity of IBS symptoms, with alexithymia explaining much more unique variance in IBS severity as compared with GSA[78]. Potential mechanisms by which alexithymia could affect IBS severity include the core features of this personality construct, such as the tendency to focus on, intensify, and misinterpret bodily sensations and somatic sensations triggered by states of emotional arousal; moreover, higher pain intensity to rectal distension in alexithymic IBS patients than in non-alexithymic controls has been documented[79].

Type D personality, the latest personality construct taken into account for the purposes of the present review, has not received the same attention as other personality factors in IBS research.

One study[80] evidenced that Type D personality, whose prevalence reached 40.6% in the examined sample, significantly decreased health-related quality of life (HRQoL); this finding was congruent with the extensive evidence of impaired HRQoL in several clinical samples affected by diseases other than GI disorders, mainly in coronary heart disease patients[54]. However, regression analyses showed that only the dimension negative affect of Type D personality, along with severity of symptoms and duration of treatment, remained strong independent determinant of HRQoL, whereas no significant associations between social inhibition and HRQoL were found.

Yet, caution is needed in interpreting such findings, since the established association between Type D personality and quality of life exclusively relies on negative affectivity which could affect HRQoL independently from the personality construct. A further study reported significantly higher prevalence rates of Type D personality in IBS patients than in healthy controls (45.4% *vs* 12.8%, respectively); Type D personality was significantly correlated with poor self-reported sleep quality, and it remained an independent predictor of impaired sleep also when controlling for the confounding influence of socio-demographic and clinical variables, including anxiety, and depression symptoms[81].

Taken together, the available findings do not allow drawing firm conclusions on the contribution of personality traits and constructs to IBS patho-physiology, clinical presentation, and severity of symptoms. This may be due to the complex nature of personality dimensions that are formed by higher order-traits comprising simpler, basic dimensions, such as emotional features, which are probably more connected to neurobiological substrates. Table 2 summarizes the association between personality and IBS.

In the following sections we review main emotional patterns and their possible implications in health and IBS.

EMOTIONAL PATTERNS: POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE EMOTIONS

Emotional patterns may be conceived as individual differences in emotional reactivity, processing and regulation; more specifically, they involve detection and appraisal of emotionally salient stimuli, and regulatory processes that can be automatic or controlled, conscious or unconscious, occurring at one or more points in the emotion generative process and final expression.

Two broad dimensions of emotional patterns, accounting for the most part of basic individual differences in affective processes and emotional responses, and involved in psychological well being and distress, have been identified: positive affect (PA), or pleasantness, and negative affect (NA), or unpleasantness[82] (Figure 1). Although PA and NA, for their seemingly opposite nature, could be considered as two basic, separate poles of the same affective continuum, they are rather discrete dimensions describing not only positive *vs* negative valence (*e.g.*, happy *vs* sad), but also involving activation levels (*e.g.*, aroused *vs* unaroused)[83]. This approach is particularly functional to health research for connecting affective activation with physiological arousal, which is thought to be a primary pathway through which emotions may influence health[84].

PA is a dimension reflecting pleasurable engagement with the environment, and characterized by the prevalence of positive feelings and mood states such as interest, enthusiasm, happiness, motivation, high energy levels, mental alertness[85]; high PA levels translate into high energy, activity and concentration, whereas low PA is a state of fatigue and poor energy.

NA is a pervasive disposition to experience aversive

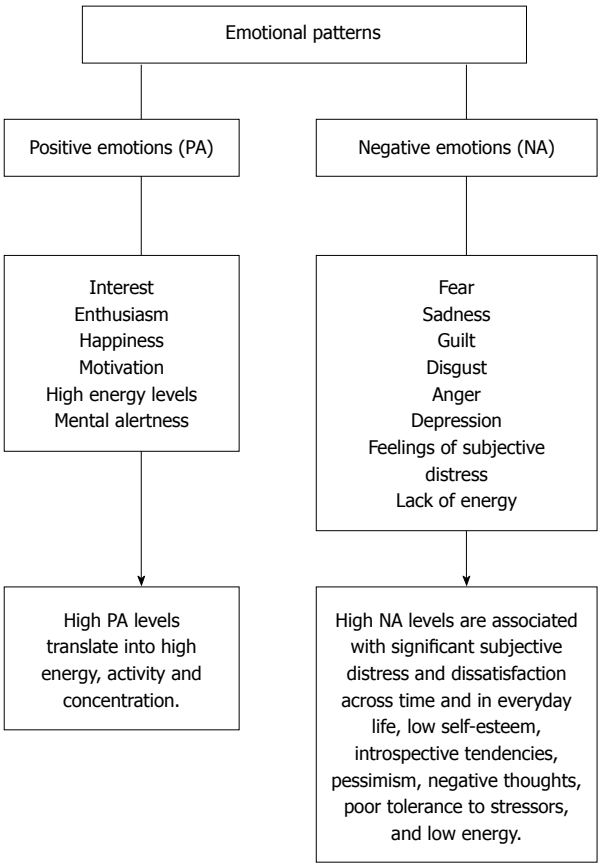


Figure 1 Emotional patterns: Positive and negative emotions.

emotions, such as fear, sadness, guilt, disgust, anger, depression, feelings of subjective distress, and lack of energy; high NA levels are associated with significant subjective distress and dissatisfaction across time and in everyday life, low self-esteem, introspective tendencies, pessimism, negative thoughts, poor tolerance to stressors, and low energy[86].

In an evolutionary sense, quite discordantly from the assumptions of folk psychology that postulate that negative emotions are worse than positive ones, negative emotions are evolved adaptations which served the purpose of surviving in life-threatening situations, and their adaptive value lies in their ability to elicit specific action tendencies[87,88]. Anger and fear, for instance, evoke the "fight or flight" response, the urges to attack, also in defensive terms, or to escape, mobilizing optimal physiological support for the action called forth, and requiring substantial physical energy also through heightened cardiovascular reactivity that redistributes blood flow to relevant motor districts, and through specific neuroendocrine pathways that sustain the stress reactions[89].

On the other hand, positive emotions evoke nonspecific action tendencies (*e.g.*, approach behaviors) and, secondarily, they are characterized by a relative lack of autonomic reactivity[89].

It has also been suggested that, whereas most negative emotions narrow individuals' thought-action repertoires, according to the purpose of generating specific and targeted action tendencies, many positive emotions broaden individuals' behavioral repertoires, prompting them to pursue a broader range of actions such as explore, play, approach, and building vital physical, cognitive, and social resources[90]. Furthermore, positive emotions lead to more prosocial and affiliative behaviors, and facilitate cognitive flexibility by shifting selective attention to reward stimuli in the environment[91].

PA and NA can be brief and transient, longer lasting, or trait-like features; within the research area on the impact of emotions on general health, each of these possibilities has been taken into account[92]; for the purposes of this review, in the next section we summarize research that has evaluated stable emotional patterns as trait attributes of individuals.

EMOTIONAL PATTERNS AND HEALTH

A growing evidence indicates that emotional states are associated with health. Whether the chronic experience of negative emotions can influence the development of illness, or trigger and exacerbate disease episodes, is still a matter of debate. Furthermore, it must also be taken into account that the effects of emotions in a healthy biological system may be rather different from effects in an impaired organism[93]. When exploring the possible influence of emotions on health, both the nature of the emotional experience, including valence (positive *vs* negative), frequency, intensity, and duration, and the type of the disease and course features, such as stage, progression, and severity, must be considered.

From a longitudinal point of view, and within a developmental framework, it has been shown that patterns of emotional functioning that emerge in childhood are almost maintained into adulthood; thus, emotional functioning in childhood may provide an early indicator of adult health risk[94]. High chronic distress in childhood has been associated with a range of adult physical health outcomes such as number of physical illnesses[95], inflammatory diseases[96], and obesity[97].

Positive emotions are generally associated with improved physical and mental health[98], reduced risk of stroke[99], and lower mortality in both older groups and chronically ill samples[100].

However, it has also been shown that high levels of PA may be detrimental to end-stage or high short-term mortality diseases, whereas diseases with longer term expectations for living, in which adherence to medical regimens and diverse behavioral factors (*e.g.*, healthy lifestyles) could play a role, were benefited or unaffected by PA[92].

Most research have focused on the harmful impact of NA on health: to the extent that negative emotions generate cardiovascular reactivity, higher NA has been

mainly related to heart disease[101]; further lines of research have examined NA role in cancer[102], and in chronic illnesses, such as arthritis and diabetes[93].

Two sets of candidate mechanisms by which emotions may influence physical health have been highlighted. The first approach involves the impact of emotional states on thoughts and conducts that may potentially influence health-related behaviors, such as perceptions of risks, decisions to seek medical screenings or treatment, adherence to exercise and dietary regimens[103], strength and quality of social support, and interpersonal relationships driven by the predominant emotional pattern[104]. In a broad sense, positive affectivity and well-being are associated with healthy habits and lifestyles, as documented by the inverse relationships among depression, anxiety, and leisure-time physical activity[105]. On the other hand, negative effects are related to unhealthy patterns of functioning, poorer social networks, higher frequency of stressful events, and negative social interactions[92].

A more intriguing hypothesis that has received support by a growing body of research[106,107] suggests that emotions have the potential to directly influence health through psychobiological processes, defined as the physiological consequences associated with emotional arousal and subsequent changes in multiple systems (*e.g.*, cardiac functioning, blood pressure, inflammation and immune responses, neuroendocrine pathways), thus leading to increased vulnerability to illness, or modifying illness course and progression[108]. It is acknowledged that negative emotions confer increased risk for disorders with an inflammatory and immune aetiology[109]: depression, anxiety, and anger have been linked with higher levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as interleukin IL-6 and other inflammation mediators, including C-reactive protein, and cellular adhesion molecules[110-112].

EMOTIONAL PATTERNS AND IBS

Research that has examined negative emotions in relation to the main pathophysiological and symptomatic correlates of IBS has most commonly considered anger, anxiety, and depression[67,113,114].

Such discrete emotions have been consistently associated to visceral and pain hypersensitivity. In the presence of negative emotions, visceral sensations tend to be more noticeable and labeled as painful[115]. IBS patients, but also subjects with mild GI symptoms, presented attentional biases to GI pain-related symptoms and social threats words[116], a higher tendency to scan the body for symptoms, and a greater burden of abdominal pain[117] than healthy controls.

Also in IBS children and their parents negative emotions and multiple somatic complaints have been consistently reported[118]; furthermore, up to 45% of children with functional abdominal pain (FAP) displayed clinically elevated anxiety[119], whereas adolescents with frequent abdominal pain resulted at increased risk for depression, social isolation, and impairment in school functioning[120]. A study on a small sample of IBS children (n = 10; mean age 10.5 ± 2.2 years) has demonstrated a significant correlation between emotional instability and indexes of visceral hypersensitivity; emotional instability involved negative emotions, impulsiveness and impatience, all features associated with less effective ability to manage stressful life events[121].

In adults, evidence is more controversial: depression and anxiety were positively related with abdominal pain and pain duration[117], anxiety, depression, and the recall of painful memories were associated with a greater perception of visceral pain[122], depression levels were higher in those patients who reported lowered rectal pain threshold, but only in the alternating IBS subtype[123], whereas other studies did not find significant differences in negative emotions and pain thresholds according to IBS subtypes[124].

Regarding intestinal motility patterns, emotional arousal can augment colonic motility and diarrhoea also in healthy subjects, but this effect is mostly pronounced in IBS patients[70]; laboratory studies have provided evidence that anger-provoking conditions significantly increased colon motility in IBS patients, whereas anger suppression was associated with prolonged gastric emptying and delayed gut transit[125-127].

A role for negative emotions in low-grade inflammation and altered immune activity in IBS has garnered support from studies demonstrating alterations on several inflammatory and immune parameters resulting in an imbalance of the proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines: elevated peripheral levels of the proinflammatory cytokines interleukine (IL)-1β and tumor necrosis factor α, and decreased levels of IL-10, an anti-inflammatory cytokine, differentiated IBS patients with anxiety and depression from IBS subjects without negative emotions, and from healthy controls[128,129].

Finally, negative emotional patterns seem to be involved in another clinical feature of IBS: health-care seeking behavior. Anxiety has been identified as one of the main reason of medical consultation among IBS subjects[130]. However, the opposite is also true; the co-occurring experience of life events eliciting emotional arousal can lead individuals to attribute IBS symptoms to the stressful situation[112]. A recent study on a community sample of university students with IBS-like symptoms compared with a non-IBS reference group showed that health care utilization was mainly associated with IBS symptom severity, and not with emotional distress[131]. On the other hand, health care-seeking behavior is a non-specific feature of IBS patients, and it depends on many factors, such as the presence of pain, the severity of bowel symptoms, and duration of illness.

Overall, in interpreting findings from studies of negative emotions and IBS it seems important to bear in mind the utility of a dimensional method based

Table 3 Emotional patterns and irritable bowel syndrome

-Negative emotions, which are probably more entangled with neurobiological substrates, seem to have a key role in the brain-gut axis dysfunction which characterizes irritable bowel syndrome (IBS).
-Anger, anxiety, and depression have been consistently associated to visceral and pain hypersensitivity. In the presence of negative emotions, visceral sensations tend to be more noticeable and labeled as painful.
-Emotional arousal can augment colonic motility and diarrhoea; laboratory studies have provided evidence that anger-provoking conditions significantly increased colon motility in IBS patients, whereas anger suppression was associated with prolonged gastric emptying and delayed gut transit.
-A role for negative emotions in low-grade inflammation and altered immune activity in IBS has garnered support from studies demonstrating alterations on several inflammatory and immune parameters resulting in an imbalance of the proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines.

on the assumption that emotions rarely occur in isolation; thus, considering emotional patterns rather than each emotion in isolation could lead to a more realistic approach to the pathophysiology and clinical expression of IBS.

A recent systematic review and meta-analysis has suggested that neither psychological markers nor symptom-based criteria and/or biomarkers alone performed well in diagnosing IBS, whereas combining symptoms, biomarkers and/or psychological markers seemed to perform better. The Authors suggested that one possible reason for the poor performance of psychological markers was that the reviewed studies predominantly used markers of anxiety and depression to predict the presence of IBS, whereas it would be more useful to include other emotional dimensions beyond anxiety and depression for improving the accuracy of diagnosing IBS[132]. Table 3 shows main findings on emotional patterns and IBS.

TREATMENT IMPLICATIONS: FOCUS ON PERSONALITY AND EMOTIONAL PATTERNS

The biopsychosocial model applied to IBS acknowledges and highlights the interaction between biological, psychological, environmental, and social factors in relation to pain and functional disability. Within this framework, and also considering the bidirectional communications within the brain-gut axis, a holistic approach involving medications, lifestyle changes, dietary interventions, psychopharmacological and psychological treatments, and educational and behavioral strategies should provide the optimal chance of addressing clinical symptoms, comorbid conditions, and quality of life in IBS patients.

Psychological and psychosocial treatments involving interactions between body and mind could be effective treatment strategies in reducing GI symptoms in adults with IBS; psychological interventions were significantly effective at first post-treatment assessment and at both short-term and long-term follow-up[133].

Various models of psychotherapy have been used in IBS with promising results; cognitive behavioral therapy, gut-directed hypnotherapy, interpersonal psychotherapy, mindfulness, body awareness psychotherapy, relaxation/stress management, and meditation have been proven effective on gastrointestinal symptoms and quality of life in IBS patients[134,135].

As reviewed in the previous sections, personality traits and emotional patterns play key roles in affecting autonomic, immune, inflammatory, and endocrine functions, thus contributing not only to IBS clinical expression and symptomatic burden, but also to disease physiopathology. In this sense, psychological treatments should address those personality and emotional features that are constitutive of and integral to IBS.

The choice of a specific psychological model should take into account individual differences in clinical symptoms and personality features, after a careful assessment including a broad evaluation of gastrointestinal and pain symptoms, hyperarousal, emotional patterns, personality traits and profile, psychosocial aspects, and quality of life.

It has been shown that cognitively-focused therapies, such as comprehensive self-management, were less effective in reducing clinical and pain symptoms in IBS patients with higher sympathetic tone[136]. IBS patients characterized by high levels of negative emotions could benefit of treatments aimed at activating inhibitory processes through the utilization of emotion regulation techniques to down-regulate emotional arousal, and to enhance self-regulation of affective reactions to internal and environmental stimuli[137,138]. Beyond negative emotions, the trait of neuroticism is characterized by dysfunctional cognitions, worries, negative appraisals and catastrophizing, defined as the attitude to put emphasis on the threat value of painful stimuli[139]; accordingly, IBS patients with accentuated neuroticism as the prevalent personality trait could ameliorate on cognitive treatments targeting dysfunctional beliefs, automatic thought processes, and cognitive biases.

Impaired body awareness has been reported in IBS-D patients[69] and in alexithymia[140]; particularly when an alexithymic component is present, body awareness techniques and psychoeducational strategies oriented to reduce misinterpretation of bodily sensations could be useful for helping patients to identify and express emotions, and to disentangle somatic symptoms from signs of emotional arousal[141].

Based on the reviewed evidence, multi-symptomatic IBS patients requires a complex, multidisciplinary approach. The process of prescribing pharmacological and non-pharmacological treatments should take into account the heterogeneous nature and clinical presentation of the disorder, attempting to differentiate the treatment for different types of IBS, also considering the profound individual differences in

prevalent personality traits and emotional patterns.

CONCLUSION

A large amount of research has provided evidence that personality traits and emotional patterns influence health, disease, and quality of life through a range of biological and behavioral pathways, including physiological reactions to stimuli, reactivity to stressors, health behaviors, and coping with illness. This evidence also extends to IBS: personality and affective features are central components of the biopsychosocial model of IBS, being involved in functioning and dysregulation of the brain-gut axis, and contributing to the onset, recurrence and recrudescence of IBS. From early developmental stages, both genetic and environmental factors interact to shape emotional arousal and regulation, vulnerability to stressors, effective or maladaptive coping strategies, visceral and pain sensitivity, and thus symptom perception, illness behavior, daily functioning, quality of life and, finally, health outcomes.

Given the relationships above, it is increasingly evident that a complex and heterogeneous disease such as IBS requires a multidisciplinary, integrated approach coming from different, although complementary disciplines. Further insights on vulnerability factors and pathophysiological pathways leading to symptoms clusters and clinical expression of IBS should be addressed in order to promote better health, quality of life, and effective treatments for IBS patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Chey WD**, Kurlander J, Eswaran S. Irritable bowel syndrome: a clinical review. *JAMA* 2015; **313**: 949-958 [PMID: 25734736 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2015.0954]

2 **Spiegel BM**. The burden of IBS: looking at metrics. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2009; **11**: 265-269 [PMID: 19615301]

3 **Mayer EA**, Aziz Q, Coen S, Kern M, Labus JS, Lane R, Kuo B, Naliboff B, Tracey I. Brain imaging approaches to the study of functional GI disorders: a Rome working team report. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2009; **21**: 579-596 [PMID: 19646070 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2009.01304.x]

4 **Elsenbruch S**. Abdominal pain in Irritable Bowel Syndrome: a review of putative psychological, neural and neuro-immune mechanisms. *Brain Behav Immun* 2011; **25**: 386-394 [PMID: 21094682 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbi.2010.11.010]

5 **Atkinson W**, Sheldon TA, Shaath N, Whorwell PJ. Food elimination based on IgG antibodies in irritable bowel syndrome: a randomised controlled trial. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1459-1464 [PMID: 15361495 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.037697]

6 **Philpott H**, Gibson P, Thien F. Irritable bowel syndrome - An inflammatory disease involving mast cells. *Asia Pac Allergy* 2011; **1**: 36-42 [PMID: 22053295 DOI: 10.5415/apallergy.2011.1.1.36]

7 **Ringel Y**, Ringel-Kulka T. The Intestinal Microbiota and Irritable Bowel Syndrome. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2015; **49** Suppl 1: S56-S59 [PMID: 26447966 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000418]

8 **Berman S**, Suyenobu B, Naliboff BD, Bueller J, Stains J, Wong H, Mandelkern M, Fitzgerald L, Ohning G, Gupta A, Labus JS, Tillisch K, Mayer EA. Evidence for alterations in central noradrenergic signaling in irritable bowel syndrome. *Neuroimage* 2012; **63**: 1854-1863 [PMID: 22917679 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroimage.2012.08.028]

9 **Moloney RD**, Johnson AC, O'Mahony SM, Dinan TG, Greenwood-Van Meerveld B, Cryan JF. Stress and the Microbiota-Gut-Brain Axis in Visceral Pain: Relevance to Irritable Bowel Syndrome. *CNS Neurosci Ther* 2016; **22**: 102-117 [PMID: 26662472 DOI: 10.1111/cns.12490]

10 **Fichna J**, Storr MA. Brain-Gut Interactions in IBS. *Front Pharmacol* 2012; **3**: 127 [PMID: 22783191 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2012.00127]

11 **Mayer EA**, Tillisch K. The brain-gut axis in abdominal pain syndromes. *Annu Rev Med* 2011; **62**: 381-396 [PMID: 21090962 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-med-012309-103958]

12 **Tanaka Y**, Kanazawa M, Fukudo S, Drossman DA. Biopsychosocial model of irritable bowel syndrome. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **17**: 131-139 [PMID: 21602989 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2011.17.2.131]

13 **Engel GL**. The clinical application of the biopsychosocial model. *Am J Psychiatry* 1980; **137**: 535-544 [PMID: 7369396]

14 **Cameron DS**, Bertenshaw EJ, Sheeran P. The impact of positive affect on health cognitions and behaviours: a meta-analysis of the experimental evidence. *Health Psychol Rev* 2015; **9**: 345-365 [PMID: 27028049 DOI: 10.1080/17437199.2014.923164]

15 **Fava GA**, Sonino N. The clinical domains of psychosomatic medicine. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2005; **66**: 849-858 [PMID: 16013900]

16 **Acquadro C**, Berzon R, Dubois D, Leidy NK, Marquis P, Revicki D, Rothman M; PRO Harmonization Group. Incorporating the patient's perspective into drug development and communication: an ad hoc task force report of the Patient-Reported Outcomes (PRO) Harmonization Group meeting at the Food and Drug Administration, February 16, 2001. *Value Health* 2003; **6**: 522-531 [PMID: 14627058 DOI: 10.1046/j.1524-4733.2003.65309.x]

17 **McComb H**. Primary repair of the bilateral cleft lip nose: a 15-year review and a new treatment plan. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1990; **86**: 882-899; discussion 889-890 [PMID: 2236313 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i7.616]

18 **Ben-Israel Y**, Shadach E, Levy S, Sperber A, Aizenberg D, Niv Y, Dickman R. Possible Involvement of Avoidant Attachment Style in the Relations Between Adult IBS and Reported Separation Anxiety in Childhood. *Stress Health* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26033751 DOI: 10.1002/smi.2642]

19 **Muscatello MR**, Bruno A, Scimeca G, Pandolfo G, Zoccali RA. Role of negative affects in pathophysiology and clinical expression of irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 7570-7586 [PMID: 24976697 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i24.7570]

20 **Bromley DB**. Personality description in ordinary language. London: Wiley, 1977

21 **Rothbart MK**, Ahadi SA, Evans DE. Temperament and personality: origins and outcomes. *J Pers Soc Psychol* 2000; **78**: 122-135 [PMID: 10653510]

22 **Probst AV**, Dunleavy E, Almouzni G. Epigenetic inheritance during the cell cycle. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2009; **10**: 192-206 [PMID: 19234478 DOI: 10.1038/nrm2640]

23 **Costa PT**, McCrae RR. Stability and change in personality assessment: the revised NEO Personality Inventory in the year 2000. *J Pers Assess* 1997; **68**: 86-94 [PMID: 9018844 DOI: 10.1207/s15327752jpa6801_7]

24 **Terracciano A**, Costa PT, McCrae RR. Personality plasticity after age 30. *Pers Soc Psychol Bull* 2006; **32**: 999-1009 [PMID: 16861305 DOI: 10.1177/0146167206288599]

25 **Taylor GJ**, Bagby RM, Parker JDA. Disorders of affect regulation. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1997

26 **Denollet J**. Type D personality. A potential risk factor refined. *J Psychosom Res* 2000; **49**: 255-266 [PMID: 11119782 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3999(00)00177-X]

27 **Denollet J**. DS14: standard assessment of negative affectivity, social inhibition, and Type D personality. *Psychosom Med* 2005; **67**: 89-97 [PMID: 15673629 DOI: 10.1097/01.psy.0000149256.81953.49]

28 **Chapman BP**, Weiss A, Fiscella K, Muennig P, Kawachi I,

Duberstein P. Mortality Risk Prediction: Can Comorbidity Indices Be Improved With Psychosocial Data? *Med Care* 2015; **53**: 909-915 [PMID: 26421372 DOI: 10.1097/MLR.0000000000000428]
29 **Roberts BW**, Kuncel NR, Shiner R, Caspi A, Goldberg LR. The Power of Personality: The Comparative Validity of Personality Traits, Socioeconomic Status, and Cognitive Ability for Predicting Important Life Outcomes. *Perspect Psychol Sci* 2007; **2**: 313-345 [PMID: 26151971 DOI: 10.1111/j.1745-6916.2007.00047.x]
30 **Conner M**, Abraham C. Conscientiousness and the theory of planned behavior: Toward a more complete model of the antecedents of intentions and behavior. *Pers Soc Psychol Bull* 2001; **27**: 1547-1561 [DOI: 10.1177/01461672012711014]
31 **Carver CS**, Connor-Smith J. Personality and coping. *Annu Rev Psychol* 2010; **61**: 679-704 [PMID: 19572784 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.psych.093008.100352]
32 **Liu RT**, Alloy LB. Stress generation in depression: A systematic review of the empirical literature and recommendations for future study. *Clin Psychol Rev* 2010; **30**: 582-593 [PMID: 20478648 DOI: 10.1016/j.cpr.2010.04.010]
33 **Iacovino JM**, Bogdan R, Oltmanns TF. Personality Predicts Health Declines Through Stressful Life Events During Late Mid-Life. *J Pers* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25929195 DOI: 10.1111/jopy.12179]
34 **Herbert TB**, Cohen S. Stress and immunity in humans: a meta-analytic review. *Psychosom Med* 1993; **55**: 364-379 [PMID: 8416086]
35 **Dowlati Y**, Herrmann N, Swardfager W, Liu H, Sham L, Reim EK, Lanctôt KL. A meta-analysis of cytokines in major depression. *Biol Psychiatry* 2010; **67**: 446-457 [PMID: 20015486 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2009.09.033]
36 **Chida Y**, Hamer M. Chronic psychosocial factors and acute physiological responses to laboratory-induced stress in healthy populations: a quantitative review of 30 years of investigations. *Psychol Bull* 2008; **134**: 829-885 [PMID: 18954159 DOI: 10.1037/a0013342]
37 **Bibbey A**, Carroll D, Roseboom TJ, Phillips AC, de Rooij SR. Personality and physiological reactions to acute psychological stress. *Int J Psychophysiol* 2013; **90**: 28-36 [PMID: 23147393 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpsycho.2012.10.018]
38 **Verschoor E**, Markus CR. Effects of acute psychosocial stress exposure on endocrine and affective reactivity in college students differing in the 5-HTTLPR genotype and trait neuroticism. *Stress* 2011; **14**: 407-419 [PMID: 21438771 DOI: 10.3109/10253890.2010.548886]
39 **Hutchinson JG**, Ruiz JM. Neuroticism and cardiovascular response in women: evidence of effects on blood pressure recovery. *J Pers* 2011; **79**: 277-302 [PMID: 21395589 DOI: 10.1111/j.1467-6494.2010.00679]
40 **Ironson GH**, O'Cleirigh C, Weiss A, Schneiderman N, Costa PT. Personality and HIV disease progression: role of NEO-PI-R openness, extraversion, and profiles of engagement. *Psychosom Med* 2008; **70**: 245-253 [PMID: 18256349 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e31816422fc]
41 **Chapman BP**, Lyness JM, Duberstein P. Personality and medical illness burden among older adults in primary care. *Psychosom Med* 2007; **69**: 277-282 [PMID: 17401059 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e3180313975]
42 **Kern ML**, Friedman HS. Do conscientious individuals live longer? A quantitative review. *Health Psychol* 2008; **27**: 505-512 [PMID: 18823176 DOI: 10.1037/0278-6133.27.5.505]
43 **Oswald LM**, Zandi P, Nestadt G, Potash JB, Kalaydjian AE, Wand GS. Relationship between cortisol responses to stress and personality. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2006; **31**: 1583-1591 [PMID: 16407895 DOI: 10.1038/sj.npp.1301012]
44 **Williams PG**, Rau HK, Cribbet MR, Gunn HE. Openness to experience and stress regulation. *J Res Pers* 2009; **43**: 777-784 [DOI: 10.1016/j.jrp.2009.06.003]
45 **Lumley MA**, Neely LC, Burger AJ. The assessment of alexithymia in medical settings: implications for understanding and treating health problems. *J Pers Assess* 2007; **89**: 230-246 [PMID: 18001224 DOI: 10.1080/00223890701629698]
46 **Tolmunen T**, Lehto SM, Heliste M, Kurl S, Kauhanen J. Alexithymia is associated with increased cardiovascular mortality in middle-aged Finnish men. *Psychosom Med* 2010; **72**: 187-191 [PMID: 19949161 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e3181c65d00]
47 **Grabe HJ**, Schwahn C, Barnow S, Spitzer C, John U, Freyberger HJ, Schminke U, Felix S, Völzke H. Alexithymia, hypertension, and subclinical atherosclerosis in the general population. *J Psychosom Res* 2010; **68**: 139-147 [PMID: 20105696 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpsychores.2009.07.015]
48 **Aïte A**, Barrault S, Cassotti M, Borst G, Bonnaire C, Houdé O, Varescon I, Moutier S. The impact of alexithymia on pathological gamblers' decision making: a preliminary study of gamblers recruited in "sportsbook" casinos. *Cogn Behav Neurol* 2014; **27**: 59-67 [PMID: 24968006 DOI: 10.1097/WNN.0000000000000027]
49 **Scimeca G**, Bruno A, Cava L, Pandolfo G, Muscatello MR, Zoccali R. The relationship between alexithymia, anxiety, depression, and internet addiction severity in a sample of Italian high school students. *ScientificWorldJournal* 2014; **2014**: 504376 [PMID: 25401143 DOI: 10.1155/2014/504376]
50 **Scimeca G**, Bruno A, Pandolfo G, Micò U, Romeo VM, Abenavoli E, Schimmenti A, Zoccali R, Muscatello MR. Alexithymia, negative emotions, and sexual behavior in heterosexual university students from Italy. *Arch Sex Behav* 2013; **42**: 117-127 [PMID: 23007336 DOI: 10.1007/s10508-012-0006-8]
51 **De Vries AM**, Forni V, Voellinger R, Stiefel F. Alexithymia in cancer patients: review of the literature. *Psychother Psychosom* 2012; **81**: 79-86 [PMID: 22261927 DOI: 10.1159/000330888]
52 **Chatzi L**, Bitsios P, Solidaki E, Christou I, Kyrlaki E, Sfakianaki M, Kogevinas M, Kefalogiannis N, Pappas A. Type 1 diabetes is associated with alexithymia in nondepressed, non-mentally ill diabetic patients: a case-control study. *J Psychosom Res* 2009; **67**: 307-313 [PMID: 19773023 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpsychores.2009.04.011]
53 **Barbasio C**, Vagelli R, Marengo D, Querci F, Settanni M, Tani C, Mosca M, Granieri A. Illness perception in systemic lupus erythematosus patients: The roles of alexithymia and depression. *Compr Psychiatry* 2015; **63**: 88-95 [PMID: 26555496 DOI: 10.1016/j.comppsych.2015.09.004]
54 **Denollet J**, Conraads VM, Brutsaert DL, De Clerck LS, Stevens WJ, Vrints CJ. Cytokines and immune activation in systolic heart failure: the role of Type D personality. *Brain Behav Immun* 2003; **17**: 304-309 [PMID: 12831833 DOI: 10.1016/S0889-1591(03)00060-6]
55 **Mols F**, Oerlemans S, Denollet J, Roukema JA, van de Poll-Franse LV. Type D personality is associated with increased comorbidity burden and health care utilization among 3080 cancer survivors. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry* 2012; **34**: 352-359 [PMID: 22459997 DOI: 10.1016/j.genhosppsych.2012.01.014]
56 **Eysenck HJ**, Eysenck SBG. Manual for the Eysenck Personality Inventory. San Diego: Educational and Industrial Testing Service, 1968
57 **Esler MD**, Goulston KJ. Levels of anxiety in colonic disorders. *N Engl J Med* 1973; **288**: 16-20 [PMID: 4681894 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM197301042880104]
58 **Palmer RL**, Stonehill E, Crisp AH, Waller SL, Misiewicz JJ. Psychological characteristics of patients with the irritable bowel syndrome. *Postgrad Med J* 1974; **50**: 416-419 [PMID: 4469032]
59 **Costa PT**, McCrae RR. The NEO Personality Inventory manual. Odessa, FL: Psychological Assessment, 1985
60 **Bennett EJ**, Tennant CC, Piesse C, Badcock CA, Kellow JE. Level of chronic life stress predicts clinical outcome in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1998; **43**: 256-261 [PMID: 10189854 DOI: 10.1136/gut.43.2.256]
61 **Tanum L**, Malt UF. Personality and physical symptoms in nonpsychiatric patients with functional gastrointestinal disorder. *J Psychosom Res* 2001; **50**: 139-146 [PMID: 11316506 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3999(00)00219-1]
62 **Labus JS**, Mayer EA, Chang L, Bolus R, Naliboff BD. The central role of gastrointestinal-specific anxiety in irritable bowel

syndrome: further validation of the visceral sensitivity index. *Psychosom Med* 2007; **69**: 89-98 [PMID: 17244851 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e31802e2f24]
63 **Talley NJ**, Boyce PM, Jones M. Is the association between irritable bowel syndrome and abuse explained by neuroticism? A population based study. *Gut* 1998; **42**: 47-53 [PMID: 9505885 DOI: 10.1136/gut.42.1.47]
64 **Jones MP**, Oudenhove LV, Koloski N, Tack J, Talley NJ. Early life factors initiate a 'vicious circle' of affective and gastrointestinal symptoms: A longitudinal study. *United European Gastroenterol J* 2013; **1**: 394-402 [PMID: 24917988 DOI: 10.1177/2050640613498383]
65 **Farnam A**, Somi MH, Sarami F, Farhang S, Yasrebinia S. Personality factors and profiles in variants of irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6414-6418 [PMID: 18081232 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6414]
66 **Tayama J**, Nakaya N, Hamaguchi T, Tomiie T, Shinozaki M, Saigo T, Shirabe S, Fukudo S. Effects of personality traits on the manifestations of irritable bowel syndrome. *Biopsychosoc Med* 2012; **6**: 20 [PMID: 23110762 DOI: 10.1186/1751-0759-6-20]
67 **Muscatello MR**, Bruno A, Pandolfo G, Micò U, Stilo S, Scaffidi M, Consolo P, Tortora A, Pallio S, Giacobbe G, Familiari L, Zoccali R. Depression, anxiety and anger in subtypes of irritable bowel syndrome patients. *J Clin Psychol Med Settings* 2010; **17**: 64-70 [PMID: 20094761 DOI: 10.1007/s10880-009-9182-7]
68 **Eriksson EM**, Andrén KI, Eriksson HT, Kurlberg GK. Irritable bowel syndrome subtypes differ in body awareness, psychological symptoms and biochemical stress markers. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 4889-4896 [PMID: 18756596 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.4889]
69 **Guthrie E**, Creed F, Fernandes L, Ratcliffe J, Van Der Jagt J, Martin J, Howlett S, Read N, Barlow J, Thompson D, Tomenson B. Cluster analysis of symptoms and health seeking behaviour differentiates subgroups of patients with severe irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1616-1622 [PMID: 14570732 DOI: 10.1136/gut.52.11.1616]
70 **Drossman DA**, Li Z, Andruzzi E, Temple RD, Talley NJ, Thompson WG, Whitehead WE, Janssens J, Funch-Jensen P, Corazziari E. U.S. householder survey of functional gastrointestinal disorders. Prevalence, sociodemography, and health impact. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 1569-1580 [PMID: 8359066 DOI: 10.1007/BF01303162]
71 **Hazlett-Stevens H**, Craske MG, Mayer EA, Chang L, Naliboff BD. Prevalence of irritable bowel syndrome among university students: the roles of worry, neuroticism, anxiety sensitivity and visceral anxiety. *J Psychosom Res* 2003; **55**: 501-505 [PMID: 14642979 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3999(03)00019-9]
72 **Fond G**, Loundou A, Hamdani N, Boukouaci W, Dargel A, Oliveira J, Roger M, Tamouza R, Leboyer M, Boyer L. Anxiety and depression comorbidities in irritable bowel syndrome (IBS): a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci* 2014; **264**: 651-660 [PMID: 24705634 DOI: 10.1007/s00406-014-0502-z]
73 **Hall KT**, Tolkin BR, Chinn GM, Kirsch I, Kelley JM, Lembo AJ, Kaptchuk TJ, Kokkotou E, Davis RB, Conboy LA. Conscientiousness is modified by genetic variation in catechol-O-methyltransferase to reduce symptom complaints in IBS patients. *Brain Behav* 2015; **5**: 39-44 [PMID: 25722948 DOI: 10.1002/brb3.294]
74 **Portincasa P**, Moschetta A, Baldassarre G, Altomare DF, Palasciano G. Pan-enteric dysmotility, impaired quality of life and alexithymia in a large group of patients meeting ROME II criteria for irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 2293-2299 [PMID: 14562396 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v9.i10.2293]
75 **Porcelli P**, Guidi J, Sirri L, Grandi S, Grassi L, Ottolini F, Pasquini P, Picardi A, Rafanelli C, Rigatelli M, Sonino N, Fava GA. Alexithymia in the medically ill. Analysis of 1190 patients in gastroenterology, cardiology, oncology and dermatology. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry* 2013; **35**: 521-527 [PMID: 23664571 DOI: 10.1016/j.genhosppsych.2013.04.005]
76 **Endo Y**, Shoji T, Fukudo S, Machida T, Machida T, Noda S, Hongo M. The features of adolescent irritable bowel syndrome in Japan. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26** Suppl 3: 106-109 [PMID: 21443721 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06637]
77 **Phillips K**, Wright BJ, Kent S. Psychosocial predictors of irritable bowel syndrome diagnosis and symptom severity. *J Psychosom Res* 2013; **75**: 467-474 [PMID: 24182637 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpsychores.2013.08.002]
78 **Porcelli P**, De Carne M, Leandro G. Alexithymia and gastrointestinal-specific anxiety in moderate to severe irritable bowel syndrome. *Compr Psychiatry* 2014; **55**: 1647-1653 [PMID: 25011689 DOI: 10.1016/j.comppsych.2014.05.022]
79 **Kano M**, Hamaguchi T, Itoh M, Yanai K, Fukudo S. Correlation between alexithymia and hypersensitivity to visceral stimulation in human. *Pain* 2007; **132**: 252-263 [PMID: 17360119 DOI: 10.1016/j.pain.2007.01.032]
80 **Sararoudi RB**, Afshar H, Adibi P, Daghaghzadeh H, Fallah J, Abotalebian F. Type D personality and quality of life in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *J Res Med Sci* 2011; **16**: 985-992 [PMID: 22279472]
81 **Yıldırım O**, Alçelik A, Canan F, Aktaş G, Sit M, İşçi A, Yalçin A, Yılmaz EE. Impaired subjective sleep quality in irritable bowel syndrome patients with a Type D personality. *Sleep Biol Rhythms* 2013; **11**: 135-138 [DOI: 10.1111/sbr.12005]
82 **Watson D**, Clark LA. Negative affectivity: the disposition to experience aversive emotional states. *Psychol Bull* 1984; **96**: 465-490 [PMID: 6393179 DOI: 10.1037/0033-2909.96.3.465]
83 **Posner J**, Russell JA, Peterson BS. The circumplex model of affect: an integrative approach to affective neuroscience, cognitive development, and psychopathology. *Dev Psychopathol* 2005; **17**: 715-734 [PMID: 16262989 DOI: 10.1017/S0954579405050340]
84 **Cohen S**, Kessler RC, Underwood Gordon L. Measuring stress: A guide for health and social scientists. London: Oxford University Press, 1997
85 **Clark LA**, Watson D, Leeka J. Diurnal variation in the positive affects. *Motiv Emotion* 1989; **13**: 205-234 [DOI: 10.1007/BF00995536]
86 **Suls J**. Affect, stress and personality. In Forgas JP. Handbook of affect and social cognition. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum, 2001: 392-409
87 **Frijda NH**. The emotions. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986
88 **Lazarus RS**. Emotion and adaptation. New York: Oxford University Press, 1991
89 **Levenson RW**. Human emotion: A functional view. In: Ekman P, Davidson R. The nature of emotion: Fundamental questions. New York: Oxford University Press, 1994: 123-126
90 **Ashby FG**, Isen AM, Turken AU. A neuropsychological theory of positive affect and its influence on cognition. *Psychol Rev* 1999; **106**: 529-550 [PMID: 10467897 DOI: 10.1037/0033-295X.106.3.529]
91 **Tamir M**, Robinson MD. The happy spotlight: positive mood and selective attention to rewarding information. *Pers Soc Psychol Bull* 2007; **33**: 1124-1136 [PMID: 17578934 DOI: 10.1177/0146167207301030]
92 **Pressman SD**, Cohen S. Does positive affect influence health? *Psychol Bull* 2005; **131**: 925-971 [PMID: 16351329 DOI: 10.1037/0033-2909.131.6.925]
93 **Kiecolt-Glaser JK**, McGuire L, Robles TF, Glaser R. Psychoneuroimmunology: psychological influences on immune function and health. *J Consult Clin Psychol* 2002; **70**: 537-547 [PMID: 12090368 DOI: 10.1037/0022-006X.70.3.537]
94 **Repetti RL**, Taylor SE, Seeman TE. Risky families: family social environments and the mental and physical health of offspring. *Psychol Bull* 2002; **128**: 330-366 [PMID: 11931522 DOI: 10.1037/0033-2909.128.2.330]
95 **Kubzansky LD**, Martin LT, Buka SL. Early manifestations of personality and adult health: a life course perspective. *Health Psychol* 2009; **28**: 364-372 [PMID: 19450043 DOI: 10.1037/a0014428]
96 **Appleton AA**, Buka SL, McCormick MC, Koenen KC, Loucks

EB, Gilman SE, Kubzansky LD. Emotional functioning at age 7 years is associated with C-reactive protein in middle adulthood. *Psychosom Med* 2011; **73**: 295-303 [PMID: 21536835 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e31821534f6]
97 **Goodwin RD**, Sourander A, Duarte CS, Niemelä S, Multimäki P, Nikolakaros G, Helenius H, Piha J, Kumpulainen K, Moilanen I, Tamminen T, Almqvist F. Do mental health problems in childhood predict chronic physical conditions among males in early adulthood? Evidence from a community-based prospective study. *Psychol Med* 2009; **39**: 301-311 [PMID: 18507873 DOI: 10.1017/S0033291708003504]
98 **Lyubomirsky S**, King L, Diener E. The benefits of frequent positive affect: does happiness lead to success? *Psychol Bull* 2005; **131**: 803-855 [PMID: 16351326 DOI: 10.1037/0033-2909.131.6.803]
99 **Ostir GV**, Markides KS, Peek MK, Goodwin JS. The association between emotional well-being and the incidence of stroke in older adults. *Psychosom Med* 2001; **63**: 210-215 [PMID: 11292267]
100 **Moskowitz JT**. Positive affect predicts lower risk of AIDS mortality. *Psychosom Med* 2003; **65**: 620-626 [PMID: 12883113 DOI: 10.1097/01.PSY.0000073873.74829.23]
101 **Kent LK**, Shapiro PA. Depression and related psychological factors in heart disease. *Harv Rev Psychiatry* 2009; **17**: 377-388 [PMID: 19968452 DOI: 10.3109/10673220903463333]
102 **Reiche EM**, Morimoto HK, Nunes SM. Stress and depression-induced immune dysfunction: implications for the development and progression of cancer. *Int Rev Psychiatry* 2005; **17**: 515-527 [PMID: 16401550 DOI: 10.1080/02646830500382102]
103 **Rothman AJ**, Salovey P. Shaping perceptions to motivate healthy behavior: the role of message framing. *Psychol Bull* 1997; **121**: 3-19 [PMID: 9000890 DOI: 10.1037/0033-2909.121.1.3]
104 **DeSteno D**, Gross JJ, Kubzansky L. Affective science and health: the importance of emotion and emotion regulation. *Health Psychol* 2013; **32**: 474-486 [PMID: 23646831 DOI: 10.1037/a0030259]
105 **Biddle SJH**. Emotion, Mood and Physical Activity. In: Physical activity and psychological well-being, 63. Routledge: London, 2000
106 **Barrett LF**, Bliss-Moreau E. Affect as a Psychological Primitive. *Adv Exp Soc Psychol* 2009; **41**: 167-218 [PMID: 20552040 DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2601(08)00404-8]
107 **Mauss IB**, Levenson RW, McCarter L, Wilhelm FH, Gross JJ. The tie that binds? Coherence among emotion experience, behavior, and physiology. *Emotion* 2005; **5**: 175-190 [PMID: 15982083 DOI: 10.1037/1528-3542.5.2.175]
108 **Rosmalen JG**, Neeleman J, Gans RO, de Jonge P. The association between neuroticism and self-reported common somatic symptoms in a population cohort. *J Psychosom Res* 2007; **62**: 305-311 [PMID: 17324681 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpsychores.2006.10.014]
109 **Toker S**, Shirom A, Shapira I, Berliner S, Melamed S. The association between burnout, depression, anxiety, and inflammation biomarkers: C-reactive protein and fibrinogen in men and women. *J Occup Health Psychol* 2005; **10**: 344-362 [PMID: 16248685 DOI: 10.1037/1076-8998.10.4.344]
110 **Howren MB**, Lamkin DM, Suls J. Associations of depression with C-reactive protein, IL-1, and IL-6: a meta-analysis. *Psychosom Med* 2009; **71**: 171-186 [PMID: 19188531 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e3181907c1b]
111 **O'Donovan A**, Hughes BM, Slavich GM, Lynch L, Cronin MT, O'Farrelly C, Malone KM. Clinical anxiety, cortisol and interleukin-6: evidence for specificity in emotion-biology relationships. *Brain Behav Immun* 2010; **24**: 1074-1077 [PMID: 20227485 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbi.2010.03.003]
112 **Boylan JM**, Ryff CD. Varieties of anger and the inverse link between education and inflammation: toward an integrative framework. *Psychosom Med* 2013; **75**: 566-574 [PMID: 23766379 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e31829683bd]
113 **Bouchoucha M**, Hejnar M, Devroede G, Babba T, Bon C, Benamouzig R. Anxiety and depression as markers of multiplicity of sites of functional gastrointestinal disorders: a gender issue? *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2013; **37**: 422-430 [PMID: 23270854 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2012.10.011]
114 **Zoccali R**, Muscatello MR, Bruno A, Barillà G, Campolo D, Meduri M, Familiari L, Bonica M, Consolo P, Scaffidi M. Anger and ego-defence mechanisms in non-psychiatric patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Liver Dis* 2006; **38**: 195-200 [PMID: 16500602 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.01.075]
115 **Gros DF**, Antony MM, McCabe RE, Swinson RP. Frequency and severity of the symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome across the anxiety disorders and depression. *J Anxiety Disord* 2009; **23**: 290-296 [PMID: 18819774 DOI: 10.1016/j.janxdis.2008.08.004]
116 **Chapman S**, Martin M. Attention to pain words in irritable bowel syndrome: increased orienting and speeded engagement. *Br J Health Psychol* 2011; **16**: 47-60 [PMID: 21226783 DOI: 10.1348/135910710X505887]
117 **Walter SA**, Jones MP, Talley NJ, Kjellström L, Nyhlin H, Andreasson AN, Agréus L. Abdominal pain is associated with anxiety and depression scores in a sample of the general adult population with no signs of organic gastrointestinal disease. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2013; **25**: 741-e576 [PMID: 23692044 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12155]
118 **van Tilburg MA**, Levy RL, Walker LS, Von Korff M, Feld LD, Garner M, Feld AD, Whitehead WE. Psychosocial mechanisms for the transmission of somatic symptoms from parents to children. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 5532-5541 [PMID: 25987776 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i18.5532]
119 **Simons LE**, Sieberg CB, Claar RL. Anxiety and impairment in a large sample of children and adolescents with chronic pain. *Pain Res Manag* 2012; **17**: 93-97 [PMID: 22518371]
120 **Youssef NN**, Atienza K, Langseder AL, Strauss RS. Chronic abdominal pain and depressive symptoms: analysis of the national longitudinal study of adolescent health. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 329-332 [PMID: 18258491 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.12.019]
121 **Iovino P**, Tremolaterra F, Boccia G, Miele E, Ruju FM, Staiano A. Irritable bowel syndrome in childhood: visceral hypersensitivity and psychosocial aspects. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2009; **21**: 940-e74 [PMID: 19368655 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2009.01303.x]
122 **Mach T**. The brain-gut axis in irritable bowel syndrome--clinical aspects. *Med Sci Monit* 2004; **10**: RA125-RA131 [PMID: 15173682]
123 **de Medeiros MT**, Carvalho AF, de Oliveira Lima JW, Dos Santos AA, de Oliveira RB, Nobre E Souza MA. Impact of depressive symptoms on visceral sensitivity among patients with different subtypes of irritable bowel syndrome. *J Nerv Ment Dis* 2008; **196**: 711-714 [PMID: 18791434 DOI: 10.1097/NMD.0b013e318183f896]
124 **van der Veek PP**, Van Rood YR, Masclee AA. Symptom severity but not psychopathology predicts visceral hypersensitivity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 321-328 [PMID: 18258487 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.12.005]
125 **Welgan P**, Meshkinpour H, Beeler M. Effect of anger on colon motor and myoelectric activity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94**: 1150-1156 [PMID: 3350284]
126 **Welgan P**, Meshkinpour H, Ma L. Role of anger in antral motor activity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 248-251 [PMID: 10711433 DOI: 10.1023/A:1005487821063]
127 **Bennett EJ**, Evans P, Scott AM, Badcock CA, Shuter B, Höschl R, Tennant CC, Kellow JE. Psychological and sex features of delayed gut transit in functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 83-87 [PMID: 10601060 DOI: 10.1136/gut.46.1.83]
128 **Scully P**, McKernan DP, Keohane J, Groeger D, Shanahan F, Dinan TG, Quigley EM. Plasma cytokine profiles in females with irritable bowel syndrome and extra-intestinal co-morbidity. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2235-2243 [PMID: 20407431 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.159]
129 **Gao J**. Correlation between anxiety-depression status and cytokines in diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Exp Ther Med* 2013; **6**: 93-96 [PMID: 23935726 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2013.1101]
130 **Koloski NA**, Talley NJ, Boyce PM. Predictors of health care seeking for irritable bowel syndrome and nonulcer dyspepsia:

a critical review of the literature on symptom and psychosocial factors. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 1340-1349 [PMID: 11374666 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2001.03789.x]

131 **Gulewitsch MD**, Enck P, Schwille-Kiuntke J, Weimer K, Schlarb AA. Mental Strain and Chronic Stress among University Students with Symptoms of Irritable Bowel Syndrome. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2013; **2013**: 206574 [PMID: 23843782 DOI: 10.1155/2013/206574]

132 **Sood R**, Gracie DJ, Law GR, Ford AC. Systematic review with meta-analysis: the accuracy of diagnosing irritable bowel syndrome with symptoms, biomarkers and/or psychological markers. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **42**: 491-503 [PMID: 26076071 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13283]

133 **Laird KT**, Tanner-Smith EE, Russell AC, Hollon SD, Walker LS. Short-term and Long-term Efficacy of Psychological Therapies for Irritable Bowel Syndrome: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **14**: 937-947.e4 [PMID: 26721342 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2015.11.020]

134 **Eriksson EM**, Andrén KI, Kurlberg GK, Eriksson HT. Aspects of the non-pharmacological treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 11439-11449 [PMID: 26523108 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i40.11439]

135 **Altayar O**, Sharma V, Prokop LJ, Sood A, Murad MH. Psychological therapies in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2015; **2015**: 549308 [PMID: 25802514 DOI: 10.1155/2015/549308]

136 **Jarrett ME**, Cain KC, Barney PG, Burr RL, Naliboff BD, Shulman R, Zia J, Heitkemper MM. Balance of Autonomic Nervous System Predicts Who Benefits from a Self-management Intervention Program for Irritable Bowel Syndrome. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2016; **22**: 102-111 [PMID: 26459461 DOI: 10.5056/jnm15067]

137 **Constantinou E**, Bogaerts K, Van Oudenhove L, Tack J, Van Diest I, Van den Bergh O. Healing Words: Using Affect Labeling to Reduce the Effects of Unpleasant Cues on Symptom Reporting in IBS Patients. *Int J Behav Med* 2015; **22**: 512-520 [PMID: 25367624 DOI: 10.1007/s12529-014-9449-8]

138 **Weidner G**, Sieverding M, Chesney MA. The role of self-regulation in health and illness. *Psychol Health Med* 2016; **21**: 135-137 [PMID: 26616362 DOI: 10.1080/13548506.2015.1115528]

139 **McKinnon AC**, Van Oudenhove L, Tack J, Jones M. The association of personality, appraisal, catastrophising and vigilance with gastrointestinal symptom-specific anxiety. *J Health Psychol* 2015; **20**: 456-465 [PMID: 24155193 DOI: 10.1177/1359105313503027]

140 **Gyllensten AL**, Skär L, Miller M, Gard G. Embodied identity--a deeper understanding of body awareness. *Physiother Theory Pract* 2010; **26**: 439-446 [PMID: 20649495 DOI: 10.3109/09593980903422956]

141 **Calsius J**, De Bie J, Hertogen R, Meesen R. Touching the Lived Body in Patients with Medically Unexplained Symptoms. How an Integration of Hands-on Bodywork and Body Awareness in Psychotherapy may Help People with Alexithymia. *Front Psychol* 2016; **7**: 253 [PMID: 26973560 DOI: 10.3389/fpsyg.2016.00253]

P- Reviewer: Farhadi A, March El-Salhy M **S- Editor**: Ma YJ
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6416

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6416-6423
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Liver Transplantation: Global view

Metabolic complications in liver transplant recipients

Miguel Jiménez-Pérez, Rocío González-Grande, Edith Omonte Guzmán, Víctor Amo Trillo, Juan Miguel Rodrigo López

Miguel Jiménez-Pérez, Rocío González-Grande, Edith Omonte Guzmán, Víctor Amo Trillo, Juan Miguel Rodrigo López, UGC de Aparato Digestivo, Unidad de Hepatología-Trasplante Hepático, Hospital Universitario Regional de Málaga, 29010 Málaga, Spain

Author contributions: Jiménez-Pérez M, González-Grande R, Omonte Guzmán E, Amo Trillo V and Rodrigo López JM contributed equally to this work.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interest to report.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Miguel Jiménez-Pérez, MD, UGC de Aparato Digestivo, Unidad de Hepatología-Trasplante Hepático, Hospital Universitario Regional de Málaga, Avenida Carlos Haya, 29010 Malaga, Spain. mjimenezp@commalaga.com
Telephone: +34-61095935
Fax: +34-951291941

Received: April 12, 2016
Peer-review started: April 14, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 25, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016
Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

The metabolic syndrome (MS), which includes obesity, dyslipidaemia, hypertension and hyperglycaemia according to the most widely accepted definitions now used, is one of the most common post-transplant complications, with a prevalence of 44%-58%. The MS, together with the immunosuppression, is considered the main risk factor for the development of cardiovascular disease (CVD) in transplant recipients, which in turn accounts for 19%-42% of all deaths unrelated to the graft. The presence of MS represents a relative risk for the development of CVD and death of 1.78. On the other hand, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), considered as the manifestation of the MS in the liver, is now the second leading reason for liver transplantation in the United States after hepatitis C and alcohol. NAFLD has a high rate of recurrence in the liver graft and a direct relation with the worsening of other metabolic disorders, such as insulin resistance or diabetes mellitus. Consequently, it is vitally important to identify and treat as soon as possible such modifiable factors as hypertension, overweight, hyperlipidaemia or diabetes in transplanted patients to thus minimise the impact on patient survival. Additionally, steroid-free regimens are favoured, with minimal immunosuppression to limit the possible effects on the development of the MS.

Key words: Metabolic syndrome; Liver transplantation; Immunosuppressions; Risk factors; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

Core tip: The metabolic syndrome is a very frequent complication after liver transplantation; indeed, over half transplant patients will eventually develop it. It is also a risk factor for the development of cardiovascular disease, one of the main causes of long-term death after transplantation. The identification and early treatment of such factors as hypertension, dyslipidaemia, obesity and diabetes is crucial to

achieve a positive impact on long-term survival of liver transplant patients.

Jiménez-Pérez M, González-Grande R, Omonte Guzmán E, Amo Trillo V, Rodrigo López JM. Metabolic complications in liver transplant recipients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6416-6423 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6416.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6416

INTRODUCTION

The optimization over recent years of the surgical technique and immunosuppressive therapy has led to excellent survival rates after liver transplantation, reaching 90% at one year and 80% at five years[1-3]. This greater survival has, however, been accompanied by an increase in medical complications derived from the transplant, such as the development of de novo malignancies, recurrence of the underlying disease, metabolic complications and cardiovascular diseases, which today constitute the main causes of death unrelated to the graft[4-6]. The metabolic syndrome (MS), which includes obesity, dyslipidaemia, hypertension and hyperglycaemia according to the most widely accepted definitions now used (Table 1)[7,8], is one of the most common post-transplant complications, with a prevalence ranging from 44%-58% in different studies[9-13]. The MS, together with the immunosuppression, is considered the main risk factor for the development of cardiovascular disease (CVD) in transplant recipients, which in turn accounts for 19%-42% of all deaths unrelated to the graft[10,14]. The presence of the MS represents a relative risk for the development of CVD and death of 1.78[15]. On the other hand, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), considered as the manifestation of the MS in the liver, is now the second leading reason for liver transplantation in the US after hepatitis C and alcohol[16,17]. NAFLD has a high rate of recurrence in the liver graft and a direct relation with the worsening of other metabolic disorders, such as insulin resistance or diabetes mellitus[18]. Consequently, it is vitally important to identify and treat as soon as possible such modifiable factors as hypertension, overweight, hyperlipidaemia or diabetes in transplanted patients to thus minimise the impact on patient survival. Additionally, steroid-free regimens are preferred, with minimal immunosuppression to limit the possible effects on the development of the MS.

Table 1 Definition of the metabolic syndrome by the National Cholesterol Education Program, Adult Treatment Panel Ⅲ adapted by the National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute/American Heart Association, and the International Diabetes Federation

American heart association	International diabetes federation
At least 3 of the following criteria: Waist circumference > 88 cm for women and > 102 cm for men Fasting glucose > 100 mg/dL Systolic blood pressure > 130 mmHg and/or diastolic blood pressure > 85 mmHg HDL < 50 mg/dL for women and < 40 mg/dL for men Triglycerides > 150 mg/dL	Abdominal obesity according to gender and ethnicity specific values (*i.e.*, waist circumference > 80 cm for women and > 90 cm for men if they are American or European) and at least 2 the following criteria: Fasting glucose > 100 mg/dL Systolic blood pressure > 130 mmHg and/or diastolic blood pressure > 85 mmHg HDL < 50 mg/dL for women and < 40 mg/dL for men Triglycerides >150 mg/dL

HDL: High density lipoprotein.

COMPONENTS OF POST-LIVER TRANSPLANT METABOLIC SYNDROME

Obesity

According to the World Health Organisation obesity is determined from the body mass index (BMI) as: overweight BMI: 25-29.9 kg/m^2, class Ⅰ: 30-34.9 kg/m^2, class Ⅱ: 35-39.9 kg/m^2 and class Ⅲ: > 40 kg/m^2. Central obesity seems to confer more risk of developing the MS and CVD than peripheral obesity[19,20].

Two considerations concerning obesity and its impact on the results of liver transplantation should be considered; the presence of obesity at the time of transplantation and the development of obesity after transplantation.

Patients who are overweight or obese before the transplant remain overweight or obese after the transplant[9]. Over 15% of patients who are of normal weight when they receive their liver transplant become obese within one year and over 25% within 3 years[9,21]. This can be explained by the correction of the catabolic state induced by the cirrhosis and which disappears after transplantation, as well as the increased appetite due to the absence of chronic disease and the use of drugs like steroids. Weight gain after a transplant is associated with an increased risk for the MS and its complications, such as CVD, kidney disease or NAFLD/non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) on the liver graft[22,23].

Another point is whether the presence of overweight at the time of transplantation impacts on the short- and long-term results post-transplant. One study found that at 5 years post-transplant there was greater mortality among patients who had a BMI > 35 (class Ⅰ) and BMI > 40 (class Ⅱ) when they received their transplant as compared with non-obese patients, though this study did not consider the possible influence of the presence of ascites[24]. This may, therefore, be a confounding factor, as it could have been the presence of ascites at the time of transplantation that was associated with greater post-transplant mortality and not the greater BMI of the patients. Other studies, however,

that considered obesity but corrected for ascites found no differences in survival between obese and non-obese patients, probably due to the more exhaustive control of cardiovascular risk factors undergone by obese patients during the pre-transplant period. This, therefore, highlights the need to consider the presence of ascites at the time of transplantation and its association with worse results when interpreting the impact of the BMI on post-transplant results[25]. Even in cases of morbid obesity excellent survival rates can be achieved, both for the graft and the patient, provided there is adequate selection[25,26]. A study by the United Network of Organ Sharing found a lower survival rate among patients with a BMI > 40 and a high MELD score[27]. Nevertheless, adoption of vigorous measures to prevent and correct overweight must be taken from before the time of transplant.

Hypertension

Although the incidence of hypertension before transplantation is low it can still reach 40%-85% afterwards[28-30]. The immunosuppressive drugs, either alone or combined with other factors, are the main cause of the onset of hypertension, due mainly to the renal and systemic haemodynamic changes they induce. Steroids can also induce hypertension due to their mineralocorticoid effect as well as the increase in vascular resistance and cardiac contractility. Calcineurin inhibitors, mainly cyclosporine rather than tacrolimus[31,32], produce hypertension due to vasoconstriction of the afferent renal arteriole, which in turn induces reabsorption of sodium and water and volume expansion, with the resulting increase in blood pressure[33]. Mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibitors, when combined with calcineurin inhibitors, can also cause hypertension[34].

Salt-restriction diets and the correction of other associated risk factors accompanied by physical activity are determinant for the prevention and control of hypertension. If drugs are required to control the hypertension, calcium antagonists are considered the first choice as they act directly on the pathophysiological mechanism producing hypertension. In liver transplant patients the recommended drugs are amlodipine/felodipine because they do not interfere with the hepatic metabolism of calcineurin, unlike diltiazem, verapamil or nifedipine, which interfere with the cytochrome P450 and can increase the levels of calcineurin inhibitors and thus their possible toxicity. Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and angiotensin-receptor blockers have a limited effect when used as single therapy during the early post-transplant period because the activity of the plasma renin system is low during this period, so that these drugs are more useful at later stages after the transplant in which plasma renin activity is greater[33]. Specific beta blockers are considered second-line therapy. Although the ideal blood pressure level in transplant patients has not been established, the suggested levels are < 130/80; for which up to 30% of patients would require at least two drugs[35,36].

New-onset diabetes

In cirrhotic patients the prevalence of glucose intolerance is 60%-80% and that of diabetes is 10%-15%. The incidence of new-onset diabetes after liver transplant (NODALT) ranges from 14%-44%, similar to that seen after other solid-organ transplants (kidney, lung, heart)[37-39]. Pre-transplant diabetes and the BMI have been found in one study to be factors predicting the development of NODALT[9]. NODALT is associated with a high risk of developing CVD and post-transplant mortality[38,40].

The predominant role played by the liver in the regulation of carbohydrate, protein, lipid and drug metabolism makes it the main organ responsible for the maintenance of glucose homeostasis. This has led some authors[41,42] to suggest that it is the liver graft itself that causes the metabolic disorders that occur after the transplant. A high incidence of NODALT has been observed in patients who receive a graft with steatosis, which is associated with insulin resistance[37]. Likewise, grafts from donors after circulatory death have a greater incidence of NODALT, probably in relation to the damage derived from the warm ischemia on the development of insulin resistance[43]. However, in comparison to patients who receive a liver transplant from a deceased donor, patients who receive a liver transplant from a living donor (LDLT) have a lower incidence of NODALT, probably because LDLT livers have more favourable characteristics regarding such factors as age, BMI, or liver function state[43].

Certain genotype characteristics of the graft are also considered to be determinant in the metabolic status after liver transplantation[44]. Various gene polymorphisms have been associated with metabolic disorders and a particular response to immunosuppressive drugs. This would explain the inter-individual, and even the intra-individual variability of certain drugs like tacrolimus concerning their pharmacokinetic characteristics or dose individualisation[45-47].

Recurrence of the underlying liver disease can also influence the appearance of NODALT. A strong association has been found between early recurrence of hepatitis C and NODALT[48], probably related with the damage to the beta cells induced by the hepatitis C virus (HCV). The recurrence of steatosis/steatohepatitis, which can reach around 60% in patients who receive their transplants for this reason, has also been strongly associated with the development of the MS, as well as diabetes[49]. The association between insulin resistance and beta-cell dysfunction is well known in cirrhosis caused by such agents as alcohol, HCV, or NASH, which all damage beta cells and alter glucose regulation. This results in over 90% of cirrhotic patients becoming intolerant to glucose during the final stages of the disease, with up to 30% developing diabetes[50,51]. Various studies suggest that liver transplantation can

resolve up to 70% of cases of pre-transplant diabetes as a result of improving insulin resistance, with the other cases that fail to resolve possibly being due to the persistence of beta-cell injury[52-54]. Nevertheless, these patients all remain exposed to factors associated with the development of diabetes after transplantation, such as immunosuppression, the presence of HCV, or age.

The use of immunosuppressive drugs after liver transplantation plays a crucial role in NODALT. Steroids cause increased insulin resistance and reduced beta-cell secretion. Likewise, calcineurin inhibitors, mainly tacrolimus, have been considered the inducers of NODALT, principally *via* reduction of insulin secretion by the beta cells through several pathways[55,56]. The mTORs everolimus and sirolimus have not, however, been found to be more effective than tacrolimus in post-transplant blood glucose control[57]; with one study even finding that mTORs reduce beta-cell mass and increase insulin resistance[58]. This has all led to current immunosuppressive regimens tending to use steroid-free protocols and minimisation of the immunosuppression.

Recent studies have also shown the role of the intestinal microbiota in the regulation of carbohydrate metabolism, as well as its influence on the pathogenesis of glucose metabolism disorders. The intestinal microbiota could be affected by liver transplantation through multiple factors, including immunosuppression. Some authors have found an association between the dysbiosis produced by tacrolimus, insulin levels and the insulin resistance index[44].

Dyslipidaemia

Although the prevalence of dyslipidaemia in cirrhotic patients is low, due to the alteration in hepatic synthesis, it can nevertheless reach 70% in liver transplant recipients[59-62]. As with other components of the MS, immunosuppression also plays a fundamental role in dyslipidaemia. Steroids produce hypercholesterolaemia and hypertriglyceridaemia due to stimulation of the activity of acetyl-CoA carboxylase and fatty acid synthesis[63,64]. Calcineurin inhibitors can also induce dyslipidaemia, more often cyclosporine than tacrolimus[65-67]. Cyclosporine produces a reduction in biliary cholesterol excretion and blocks the LDL-cholesterol receptors, with the resulting increase in blood levels[36]. mTOR inhibitors induce hypertriglyceridaemia by increasing the activity of adipose tissue lipase and reducing lipoprotein lipase, especially if combined with cyclosporine[68,69].

The treatment of dyslipidaemia should be oriented towards dietary measures, steroid withdrawal and minimisation of immunosuppression. The treatment of post-transplant hypercholesterolaemia generally necessitates the use of drugs since dietary measures alone are not usually effective. Statins are the drugs of choice for the treatment of hypercholesterolaemia. Pravastatin is most recommended because it is not metabolised by the P450 cytochrome and does not interact with the immunosuppression, unlike other statins like simvastatin, fluvastatin, atorvastatin or lovastatin, though these are widely used in transplant recipients with no great problems. Special care is required with the use of ion exchange resins given their effect on the enterohepatic circulation and their repercussion on the absorption of calcineurin inhibitors, particularly cyclosporine. Hypertriglyceridaemia with normal cholesterol concentrations is also usual in liver transplant recipients. It responds best to dietary treatment, particularly the use of omega 3 fatty acids. Drug therapy with fibrates (gemfibrozil) is reserved for severe cases, and is generally well tolerated[33,36,70].

PREDICTORS OF POST-LIVER TRANSPLANT METABOLIC SYNDROME

The prevalence of the MS after liver transplantation is around 50%, depending on the criteria used[9]. The factors most consistently related with the risk of developing post-liver transplant MS are a high recipient age at the time of transplant, the presence of diabetes mellitus before transplantation, an increase in BMI after transplantation, smoking and the indication for the transplant (hepatitis C, alcohol or cryptogenic cirrhosis)[9,10,13,71,72]. Some studies have found the use of cyclosporine as an immunosuppressive agent to be a risk factor. In addition, recent studies provide increasing evidence for certain gene polymorphisms as independent risk factors for the development of the MS[39,45,73].

REPERCUSSION OF THE METABOLIC SYNDROME AFTER LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

The MS after a liver transplant can have a significant negative impact on post-transplant morbidity and mortality due to its involvement in the development of different clinical aspects directly related with post-transplant survival.

Cardiovascular risk

All the components of the MS are considered cardiovascular risk factors. The higher prevalence of the MS in liver transplant recipients is associated with a higher incidence of cardiovascular events than in the general population[74], though the risk is lower than in recipients of a kidney or heart transplant. This is because patients with chronic liver disease experience haemodynamic and metabolic changes resulting from peripheral vasodilation, as well as having low blood pressure and cholesterol levels, which all make these patients less liable to develop cardiovascular events, unlike the situation in kidney or heart transplant recipients. In addition, liver transplant recipients require

Table 2 Recommendations and treatment aims in patients with the metabolic syndrome

Maintain a healthy lifestyle
Stop smoking
Perform regular physical exercise
Weight control
Blood pressure
< 140/90 mmHg (if there are no other associated risk factors)
< 130/80 mmHg
(if diabetes, kidney failure or established cardiovascular disease)
Fasting blood glucose levels: 80-130 mg/dL
Post-prandial levels:140-180 mg/dL
Glycated haemoglobin < 6.5%-7.0%
LDL cholesterol level
< 130 mg/dL (if no cardiovascular risk)
< 115 mg/dL (if moderate cardiovascular risk)
< 110 mg/dL (if high cardiovascular risk)

HDL: High density lipoprotein.

lower immunosuppression than patients who receive a kidney or heart transplant[75].

The incidence of cardiovascular events after liver transplantation is around 10% at 3 years[30]. Diabetes mellitus, hypertension and having received the transplant due to NAFLD are the risk factors most associated with cardiovascular events[76]. It is important to note that the risk of experiencing a cardiovascular event is 4 times greater in liver-transplant recipients who have the MS than those who do not have it[75]. Around 20% of non-hepatic causes of death in liver transplant patients are due to CVD, which are one of the main causes of death unrelated with the graft[14,77]. Factors predicting cardiovascular events are an older recipient age (OR = 1.2), male gender (OR = 2), NODALT (OR = 2), post-transplant hypertension (OR = 1.8) and the use of mycophenolate mofetil (OR = 2)[30].

In general, prevention measures and treatment aims in CVD based on studies in the general population are also applicable to liver transplant patients, as no specific studies have yet been undertaken of the impact of these measures in transplant recipients. These recommendations are outlined in Table 2[78].

Kidney failure

The presence of the MS in both the general population and in liver transplant recipients is associated with a higher incidence of kidney failure[78]. The reduction in glomerular filtration and the microalbuminuria associated with hypertension or diabetes and the resulting structural damage in the kidney can be increased by the effect of immunosuppressive drugs, which in turn leads to the higher incidence of chronic kidney disease in transplant patients with the MS[79].

Recurrence of hepatitis C

There is a bidirectional relationship between hepatitis C and insulin resistance and diabetes, these latter two being recognised as risk factors for the progression of the fibrosis in patients with hepatitis C, whether or not they have received a transplant[80,81]. Additionally, the recurrence of hepatitis C is also recognised as a risk factor for the development of NODALT[60,82], which in turn is related with greater progression of the fibrosis.

Hepatitis C also affects lipid metabolism, producing a reduction in serum lipid concentrations. Though this could potentially be beneficial, reducing the cardiovascular risk, it has also been related with alterations in the intracellular lipid balance, which could increase the hepatic steatosis[83].

The use of current direct-action antiviral agents against HCV and their high rate of efficacy has led to the recurrence of HCV becoming much less prevalent, with the resulting lower rate of possible effects on metabolic factors.

NAFLD and NASH

NAFLD and NASH can be considered hepatic events of the MS[23]. Around 20% of patients with NASH can eventually develop cirrhosis and require liver transplantation. Over 60% of the patients who receive a transplant due to NASH experience a recurrence during the first year, with the main risk factor being the presence of the MS[84]. One study found that around 20% of liver transplant patients who did not previously have fatty liver developed NAFLD afterwards and around 10% developed NASH post-transplant[85]. On the other hand, various studies have identified a 10% increase in the BMI as the main risk factor for the development of NAFLD[49,74,86]. Nonetheless, the true impact of the presence of NAFLD and NASH after transplantation still remains unclear.

CONCLUSION

The high prevalence of the MS after a liver transplant and its relation with the development of cardiovascular events, as well as its involvement in other clinical aspects after the transplant that can seriously influence morbidity and mortality, necessitates the early identification of these factors to achieve adequate management of the risks, thereby minimising their impact on patient survival. Other aspects in post-transplant MS, such as the role of gene polymorphisms or the gut microbiota require much greater study.

REFERENCES

1 **Pagadala M**, Dasarathy S, Eghtesad B, McCullough AJ. Posttransplant metabolic syndrome: an epidemic waiting to happen. *Liver Transpl* 2009; **15**: 1662-1670 [PMID: 19938136 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21952]

2 **Belle SH**, Porayko MK, Hoofnagle JH, Lake JR, Zetterman RK. Changes in quality of life after liver transplantation among adults. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) Liver Transplantation Database (LTD). *Liver Transpl Surg* 1997; **3**: 93-104 [PMID: 9346722 DOI: 10.1002/lt.500030201]

3 **Germani G**, Theocharidou E, Adam R, Karam V, Wendon J, O'

Grady J, Burra P, Senzolo M, Mirza D, Castaing D, Klempnauer J, Pollard S, Paul A, Belghiti J, Tsochatzis E, Burroughs AK. Liver transplantation for acute liver failure in Europe: outcomes over 20 years from the ELTR database. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 288-296 [PMID: 22521347 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.03.017]

4 **Watt KD**, Pedersen RA, Kremers WK, Heimbach JK, Charlton MR. Evolution of causes and risk factors for mortality post-liver transplant: results of the NIDDK long-term follow-up study. *Am J Transplant* 2010; **10**: 1420-1427 [PMID: 20486907 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2010.03126.x]

5 **Johnston SD**, Morris JK, Cramb R, Gunson BK, Neuberger J. Cardiovascular morbidity and mortality after orthotopic liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 2002; **73**: 901-906 [PMID: 11923689 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-200203270-00012]

6 **Vogt DP**, Henderson JM, Carey WD, Barnes D. The long-term survival and causes of death in patients who survive at least 1 year after liver transplantation. *Surgery* 2002; **132**: 775-780; discussion 780 [PMID: 12407365 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2002.128343]

7 **National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III)**. Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III) final report. *Circulation* 2002; **106**: 3143-3421 [PMID: 12485966]

8 **Grundy SM**, Cleeman JI, Daniels SR, Donato KA, Eckel RH, Franklin BA, Gordon DJ, Krauss RM, Savage PJ, Smith SC, Spertus JA, Costa F. Diagnosis and management of the metabolic syndrome: an American Heart Association/National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Scientific Statement. *Circulation* 2005; **112**: 2735-2752 [PMID: 16157765 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.105.169404]

9 **Bianchi G**, Marchesini G, Marzocchi R, Pinna AD, Zoli M. Metabolic syndrome in liver transplantation: relation to etiology and immunosuppression. *Liver Transpl* 2008; **14**: 1648-1654 [PMID: 18975273 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21588]

10 **Laryea M**, Watt KD, Molinari M, Walsh MJ, McAlister VC, Marotta PJ, Nashan B, Peltekian KM. Metabolic syndrome in liver transplant recipients: prevalence and association with major vascular events. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: 1109-1114 [PMID: 17663411 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21126]

11 **Ford ES**, Giles WH, Dietz WH. Prevalence of the metabolic syndrome among US adults: findings from the third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. *JAMA* 2002; **287**: 356-359 [PMID: 11790215 DOI: 10.1001/jama.287.3.356]

12 **Francioso S**, Angelico F, Baiocchi I, Tisone G, Lenci I, Carbone M, Angelico M. High prevalence of metabolic syndrome and long-term survival after liver transplantation. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: S82-S82 [DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(08)60198-1]

13 **Anastácio LR**, Ferreira LG, Ribeiro Hde S, Liboredo JC, Lima AS, Correia MI. Metabolic syndrome after liver transplantation: prevalence and predictive factors. *Nutrition* 2011; **27**: 931-937 [PMID: 21621388 DOI: 10.1016/j.nut.2010.12.017]

14 Abstracts of the 59th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases, 2008. October 31-November 4, 2008. San Francisco, California, USA. *Hepatology* 2008; **48** Suppl 1: 309A-1187A [PMID: 18816472]

15 **Gami AS**, Witt BJ, Howard DE, Erwin PJ, Gami LA, Somers VK, Montori VM. Metabolic syndrome and risk of incident cardiovascular events and death: a systematic review and meta-analysis of longitudinal studies. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2007; **49**: 403-414 [PMID: 17258085 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2006.09.032]

16 **Charlton MR**, Burns JM, Pedersen RA, Watt KD, Heimbach JK, Dierkhising RA. Frequency and outcomes of liver transplantation for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in the United States. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1249-1253 [PMID: 21726509 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.06.061]

17 **Wong RJ**, Aguilar M, Cheung R, Perumpail RB, Harrison SA, Younossi ZM, Ahmed A. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis is the second leading etiology of liver disease among adults awaiting liver transplantation in the United States. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 547-555 [PMID: 25461851 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.11.039]

18 **Stepanova M**, Henry L, Garg R, Kalwaney S, Saab S, Younossi Z. Risk of de novo post-transplant type 2 diabetes in patients undergoing liver transplant for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2015; **15**: 175 [PMID: 26666336 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-015-0407-y]

19 **Bays HE**, González-Campoy JM, Bray GA, Kitabchi AE, Bergman DA, Schorr AB, Rodbard HW, Henry RR. Pathogenic potential of adipose tissue and metabolic consequences of adipocyte hypertrophy and increased visceral adiposity. *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther* 2008; **6**: 343-368 [PMID: 18327995 DOI: 10.1586/14779072.6.3.343]

20 **Fox CS**, Massaro JM, Hoffmann U, Pou KM, Maurovich-Horvat P, Liu CY, Vasan RS, Murabito JM, Meigs JB, Cupples LA, D'Agostino RB, O'Donnell CJ. Abdominal visceral and subcutaneous adipose tissue compartments: association with metabolic risk factors in the Framingham Heart Study. *Circulation* 2007; **116**: 39-48 [PMID: 17576866 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.675355]

21 **Richards J**, Gunson B, Johnson J, Neuberger J. Weight gain and obesity after liver transplantation. *Transpl Int* 2005; **18**: 461-466 [PMID: 15773968 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2004.00067.x]

22 **Everhart JE**, Lombardero M, Lake JR, Wiesner RH, Zetterman RK, Hoofnagle JH. Weight change and obesity after liver transplantation: incidence and risk factors. *Liver Transpl Surg* 1998; **4**: 285-296 [PMID: 9649642]

23 **Shaker M**, Tabbaa A, Albeldawi M, Alkhouri N. Liver transplantation for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: new challenges and new opportunities. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 5320-5330 [PMID: 24833862 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i18.5320]

24 **Nair S**, Verma S, Thuluvath PJ. Obesity and its effect on survival in patients undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation in the United States. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 105-109 [PMID: 11786965 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.33160]

25 **Leonard J**, Heimbach JK, Malinchoc M, Watt K, Charlton M. The impact of obesity on long-term outcomes in liver transplant recipients-results of the NIDDK liver transplant database. *Am J Transplant* 2008; **8**: 667-672 [PMID: 18294163]

26 **LaMattina JC**, Foley DP, Fernandez LA, Pirsch JD, Musat AI, D'Alessandro AM, Mezrich JD. Complications associated with liver transplantation in the obese recipient. *Clin Transplant* 2012; **26**: 910-918 [PMID: 22694047]

27 **Dick AA**, Spitzer AL, Seifert CF, Deckert A, Carithers RL, Reyes JD, Perkins JD. Liver transplantation at the extremes of the body mass index. *Liver Transpl* 2009; **15**: 968-977 [PMID: 19642131 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21785]

28 **Martínez-Saldivar B**, Prieto J, Berenguer M, de la Mata M, Pons JA, Serrano T, Rafael-Valdivia L, Aguilera V, Barrera P, Parrilla P, Lorente S, Rubin A, Fraga E, Rimola A. Control of blood pressure in liver transplant recipients. *Transplantation* 2012; **93**: 1031-1037 [PMID: 22411562 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e31824cd5e6]

29 **Parekh J**, Corley DA, Feng S. Diabetes, hypertension and hyperlipidemia: prevalence over time and impact on long-term survival after liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant* 2012; **12**: 2181-2187 [PMID: 22548965 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2012.04077.x]

30 **Albeldawi M**, Aggarwal A, Madhwal S, Cywinski J, Lopez R, Eghtesad B, Zein NN. Cumulative risk of cardiovascular events after orthotopic liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2012; **18**: 370-375 [PMID: 22140067]

31 **Canzanello VJ**, Textor SC, Taler SJ, Schwartz LL, Porayko MK, Wiesner RH, Krom RA. Late hypertension after liver transplantation: a comparison of cyclosporine and tacrolimus (FK 506). *Liver Transpl Surg* 1998; **4**: 328-334 [PMID: 9649648 DOI: 10.1002/lt.500040404]

32 **Textor SC**, Schwartz L, Wilson DJ, Wiesner R, Romero JC, Augustine J, Kos P, Hay E, Gores G, Dickson ER. Systemic and renal effects of nifedipine in cyclosporine-associated hypertension. *Hypertension* 1994; **23**: I220-I224 [PMID: 8282363 DOI: 10.1161/01.HYP.23.1_Suppl.I220]

33 **Luca L**, Westbrook R, Tsochatzis EA. Metabolic and cardio-

vascular complications in the liver transplant recipient. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2015; **28**: 183-192 [PMID: 25830307]
34 **Gonwa T**, Mendez R, Yang HC, Weinstein S, Jensik S, Steinberg S. Randomized trial of tacrolimus in combination with sirolimus or mycophenolate mofetil in kidney transplantation: results at 6 months. *Transplantation* 2003; **75**: 1213-1220 [PMID: 12717205 DOI: 10.1097/01.TP.0000062837.99400.60]
35 **Neal DA**, Tom BD, Luan J, Wareham NJ, Gimson AE, Delriviere LD, Byrne CD, Alexander GJ. Is there disparity between risk and incidence of cardiovascular disease after liver transplant? *Transplantation* 2004; **77**: 93-99 [PMID: 14724441 DOI: 10.1097/01.TP.0000100685.70064.90]
36 **Watt KD**, Charlton MR. Metabolic syndrome and liver transplantation: a review and guide to management. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 199-206 [PMID: 20451282 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.01.040]
37 **Honda M**, Asonuma K, Hayashida S, Suda H, Ohya Y, Lee KJ, Yamamoto H, Takeichi T, Inomata Y. Incidence and risk factors for new-onset diabetes in living-donor liver transplant recipients. *Clin Transplant* 2013; **27**: 426-435 [PMID: 23464510 DOI: 10.1111/ctr.12103]
38 **Lv C**, Zhang Y, Chen X, Huang X, Xue M, Sun Q, Wang T, Liang J, He S, Gao J, Zhou J, Yu M, Fan J, Gao X. New-onset diabetes after liver transplantation and its impact on complications and patient survival. *J Diabetes* 2015; **7**: 881-890 [PMID: 25676209 DOI: 10.1111/1753-0407.12275]
39 **Ling Q**, Xie H, Lu D, Wei X, Gao F, Zhou L, Xu X, Zheng S. Association between donor and recipient TCF7L2 gene polymorphisms and the risk of new-onset diabetes mellitus after liver transplantation in a Han Chinese population. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 271-277 [PMID: 23041303 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.09.025]
40 **Wauters RP**, Cosio FG, Suarez Fernandez ML, Kudva Y, Shah P, Torres VE. Cardiovascular consequences of new-onset hyperglycemia after kidney transplantation. *Transplantation* 2012; **94**: 377-382 [PMID: 22820698 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3182584831]
41 **Stockmann M**, Konrad T, Nolting S, Hünerbein D, Wernecke KD, Döbling H, Steinmüller T, Neuhaus P. Major influence of liver function itself but not of immunosuppression determines glucose tolerance after living-donor liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2006; **12**: 535-543 [PMID: 16496277 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20633]
42 **Gebhardt S**, Jara M, Malinowski M, Seehofer D, Puhl G, Pratschke J, Stockmann M. Risk factors of metabolic disorders after liver transplantation: an analysis of data from fasted patients. *Transplantation* 2015; **99**: 1243-1249 [PMID: 25539465 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0000000000000499]
43 **Yadav AD**, Chang YH, Aqel BA, Byrne TJ, Chakkera HA, Douglas DD, Mulligan DC, Rakela J, Vargas HE, Carey EJ. New Onset Diabetes Mellitus in Living Donor versus Deceased Donor Liver Transplant Recipients: Analysis of the UNOS/OPTN Database. *J Transplant* 2013; **2013**: 269096 [PMID: 24205434]
44 **Ling Q**, Xu X, Wang B, Li L, Zheng S. The Origin of New-Onset Diabetes After Liver Transplantation: Liver, Islets, or Gut? *Transplantation* 2016; **100**: 808-813 [PMID: 26910326 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0000000000001111]
45 **Neve B**, Le Bacquer O, Caron S, Huyvaert M, Leloire A, Poulain-Godefroy O, Lecoeur C, Pattou F, Staels B, Froguel P. Alternative human liver transcripts of TCF7L2 bind to the gluconeogenesis regulator HNF4α at the protein level. *Diabetologia* 2014; **57**: 785-796 [PMID: 24463962 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-013-3154-z]
46 **Ling Q**, Xu X, Wang K, Wang C, Xiang P, Zhang X, Zhuang R, Xie H, Zheng S. Donor PPARα Gene Polymorphisms Influence the Susceptibility to Glucose and Lipid Disorders in Liver Transplant Recipients: A Strobe-Compliant Observational Study. *Medicine* (Baltimore) 2015; **94**: e1421 [PMID: 26334901 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000001421]
47 **Yu S**, Wu L, Jin J, Yan S, Jiang G, Xie H, Zheng S. Influence of CYP3A5 gene polymorphisms of donor rather than recipient to tacrolimus individual dose requirement in liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 2006; **81**: 46-51 [PMID: 16421475 DOI: 10.1097/01.tp.0000188118.34633.bf]
48 **Gelley F**, Zadori G, Firneisz G, Wagner L, Fehervári I, Gerlei Z, Fazakas J, Papai S, Lengyel G, Sarvary E, Nemes B. Relationship between hepatitis C virus recurrence and de novo diabetes after liver transplantation: the Hungarian experience. *Transplant Proc* 2011; **43**: 1281-1282 [PMID: 21620111 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproced.2011.03.065]
49 **Dureja P**, Mellinger J, Agni R, Chang F, Avey G, Lucey M, Said A. NAFLD recurrence in liver transplant recipients. *Transplantation* 2011; **91**: 684-689 [PMID: 21248661 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e31820b6b84]
50 **Grancini V**, Trombetta M, Lunati ME, Zimbalatti D, Boselli ML, Gatti S, Donato MF, Resi V, D'Ambrosio R, Aghemo A, Pugliese G, Bonadonna RC, Orsi E. Contribution of β-cell dysfunction and insulin resistance to cirrhosis-associated diabetes: Role of severity of liver disease. *J Hepatol* 2015; **63**: 1484-1490 [PMID: 26297917 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.08.011]
51 **Hickman IJ**, Macdonald GA. Impact of diabetes on the severity of liver disease. *Am J Med* 2007; **120**: 829-834 [PMID: 17904449 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2007.03.025]
52 **Ling Q**, Xu X, Wei Q, Wei X, Wang Z, Zhou L, Zheng S. Impact of preexisting diabetes mellitus on outcome after liver transplantation in patients with hepatitis B virus-related liver disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 889-893 [PMID: 20703811 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-010-1358-3]
53 **Perseghin G**, Mazzaferro V, Sereni LP, Regalia E, Benedini S, Bazzigaluppi E, Pulvirenti A, Leão AA, Calori G, Romito R, Baratti D, Luzi L. Contribution of reduced insulin sensitivity and secretion to the pathogenesis of hepatogenous diabetes: effect of liver transplantation. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 694-703 [PMID: 10706560 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510310320]
54 **Xu X**, Ling Q, He ZL, Gao F, Zheng SS. Post-transplant diabetes mellitus in liver transplantation: Hangzhou experience. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2008; **7**: 465-470 [PMID: 18842490]
55 **Rostambeigi N**, Lanza IR, Dzeja PP, Deeds MC, Irving BA, Reddi HV, Madde P, Zhang S, Asmann YW, Anderson JM, Schimke JM, Nair KS, Eberhardt NL, Kudva YC. Unique cellular and mitochondrial defects mediate FK506-induced islet β-cell dysfunction. *Transplantation* 2011; **91**: 615-623 [PMID: 21200364 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3182094a33]
56 **Chakkera HA**, Mandarino LJ. Calcineurin inhibition and new-onset diabetes mellitus after transplantation. *Transplantation* 2013; **95**: 647-652 [PMID: 23076551 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e31826e592e]
57 **Klintmalm GB**, Nashan B. The Role of mTOR Inhibitors in Liver Transplantation: Reviewing the Evidence. *J Transplant* 2014; **2014**: 845438 [PMID: 24719752]
58 **Fraenkel M**, Ketzinel-Gilad M, Ariav Y, Pappo O, Karaca M, Castel J, Berthault MF, Magnan C, Cerasi E, Kaiser N, Leibowitz G. mTOR inhibition by rapamycin prevents beta-cell adaptation to hyperglycemia and exacerbates the metabolic state in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes* 2008; **57**: 945-957 [PMID: 18174523 DOI: 10.2337/db07-0922]
59 **Ruiz-Rebollo ML**, Sánchez-Antolín G, García-Pajares F, Fernández-Orcajo P, González-Sagrado M, Cítores-Pascual MA, Velicia-Llames R, Caro-Patón A. Risk of development of the metabolic syndrome after orthotopic liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 2010; **42**: 663-665 [PMID: 20304218 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2010.02.018]
60 **Pérez MJ**, García DM, Taybi BJ, Daga JA, Rey JM, Grande RG, Lombardo JD, López JM. Cardiovascular risk factors after liver transplantation: analysis of related factors. *Transplant Proc* 2011; **43**: 739-741 [PMID: 21486587 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2011.03.004]
61 **Laish I**, Braun M, Mor E, Sulkes J, Harif Y, Ben Ari Z. Metabolic syndrome in liver transplant recipients: prevalence, risk factors, and association with cardiovascular events. *Liver Transpl* 2011; **17**: 15-22 [PMID: 21254340 DOI: 10.1002/lt.22198]
62 **Kallwitz ER**. Metabolic syndrome after liver transplantation: preventable illness or common consequence? *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 3627-3634 [PMID: 22851856 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i28.3627]
63 **Stegall MD**, Everson GT, Schroter G, Karrer F, Bilir B, Sternberg

T, Shrestha R, Wachs M, Kam I. Prednisone withdrawal late after adult liver transplantation reduces diabetes, hypertension, and hypercholesterolemia without causing graft loss. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 173-177 [PMID: 8985286 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510250132]

64 **Boillot O**, Mayer DA, Boudjema K, Salizzoni M, Gridelli B, Filipponi F, Trunecka P, Krawczyk M, Clavien PA, Ducerf C, Margarit C, Margreiter R, Pallardo JM, Hoeckerstedt K, Pageaux GP. Corticosteroid-free immunosuppression with tacrolimus following induction with daclizumab: a large randomized clinical study. *Liver Transpl* 2005; **11**: 61-67 [PMID: 15690537 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20307]

65 **Rabkin JM**, Corless CL, Rosen HR, Olyaei AJ. Immunosuppression impact on long-term cardiovascular complications after liver transplantation. *Am J Surg* 2002; **183**: 595-599 [PMID: 12034401 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(02)00826-7]

66 **Manzarbeitia C**, Reich DJ, Rothstein KD, Braitman LE, Levin S, Munoz SJ. Tacrolimus conversion improves hyperlipidemic states in stable liver transplant recipients. *Liver Transpl* 2001; **7**: 93-99 [PMID: 11172391 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2001.21289]

67 **Roy A**, Kneteman N, Lilly L, Marotta P, Peltekian K, Scudamore C, Tchervenkov J. Tacrolimus as intervention in the treatment of hyperlipidemia after liver transplant. *Transplantation* 2006; **82**: 494-500 [PMID: 16926593 DOI: 10.1097/01.tp.0000231711.82193.41]

68 **Trotter JF**, Wachs ME, Trouillot TE, Bak T, Kugelmas M, Kam I, Everson G. Dyslipidemia during sirolimus therapy in liver transplant recipients occurs with concomitant cyclosporine but not tacrolimus. *Liver Transpl* 2001; **7**: 401-408 [PMID: 11349259 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2001.23916]

69 **Morrisett JD**, Abdel-Fattah G, Kahan BD. Sirolimus changes lipid concentrations and lipoprotein metabolism in kidney transplant recipients. *Transplant Proc* 2003; **35**: 143S-150S [PMID: 12742487 DOI: 10.1016/S0041-1345(03)00233-1]

70 **Zheng J**, Wang WL. Risk factors of metabolic syndrome after liver transplantation. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2015; **14**: 582-587 [PMID: 26663005 DOI: 10.1016/S1499-3872(15)60037-6]

71 **Contos MJ**, Cales W, Sterling RK, Luketic VA, Shiffman ML, Mills AS, Fisher RA, Ham J, Sanyal AJ. Development of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease after orthotopic liver transplantation for cryptogenic cirrhosis. *Liver Transpl* 2001; **7**: 363-373 [PMID: 11303298 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2001.23011]

72 **Bigam DL**, Pennington JJ, Carpentier A, Wanless IR, Hemming AW, Croxford R, Greig PD, Lilly LB, Heathcote JE, Levy GA, Cattral MS. Hepatitis C-related cirrhosis: a predictor of diabetes after liver transplantation. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 87-90 [PMID: 10869293 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2000.8270]

73 **Boj SF**, van Es JH, Huch M, Li VS, José A, Hatzis P, Mokry M, Haegebarth A, van den Born M, Chambon P, Voshol P, Dor Y, Cuppen E, Fillat C, Clevers H. Diabetes risk gene and Wnt effector Tcf7l2/TCF4 controls hepatic response to perinatal and adult metabolic demand. *Cell* 2012; **151**: 1595-1607 [PMID: 23260145 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.10.053]

74 **Madhwal S**, Atreja A, Albeldawi M, Lopez R, Post A, Costa MA. Is liver transplantation a risk factor for cardiovascular disease? A meta-analysis of observational studies. *Liver Transpl* 2012; **18**: 1140-1146 [PMID: 22821899 DOI: 10.1002/lt.23508]

75 **Martin P**, DiMartini A, Feng S, Brown R, Fallon M. Evaluation for liver transplantation in adults: 2013 practice guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and the American Society of Transplantation. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 1144-1165 [PMID: 24716201 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26972]

76 **Vanwagner LB**, Bhave M, Te HS, Feinglass J, Alvarez L, Rinella ME. Patients transplanted for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis are at increased risk for postoperative cardiovascular events. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 1741-1750 [PMID: 22611040 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25855]

77 **Pruthi J**, Medkiff KA, Esrason KT, Donovan JA, Yoshida EM, Erb SR, Steinbrecher UP, Fong TL. Analysis of causes of death in liver transplant recipients who survived more than 3 years. *Liver Transpl* 2001; **7**: 811-815 [PMID: 11552217 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2001.27084]

78 **González Grande R**, Jiménez-Pérez M, Sáez Gómez AB, Rodrigo López JM. Metabolic syndrome after liver transplantation. In: Abdeldayem H, Allam N, editors. Liver Transplantation - Technical Issues and Complications. Croatia: InTech, 2012: 349-360

79 **Morales JM**, Domínguez-Gil B, Gutiérrez MJ. [Impact of immunossuppression in the cardiovascular risk profile after renal transplantation I]. *Nefrologia* 2006; **26**: 181-194 [PMID: 16808256]

80 **Veldt BJ**, Poterucha JJ, Watt KD, Wiesner RH, Hay JE, Rosen CB, Heimbach JK, Janssen HL, Charlton MR. Insulin resistance, serum adipokines and risk of fibrosis progression in patients transplanted for hepatitis C. *Am J Transplant* 2009; **9**: 1406-1413 [PMID: 19459812 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2009.02642.x]

81 **Hanouneh IA**, Feldstein AE, McCullough AJ, Miller C, Aucejo F, Yerian L, Lopez R, Zein NN. The significance of metabolic syndrome in the setting of recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2008; **14**: 1287-1293 [PMID: 18756451 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21524]

82 **Chen T**, Jia H, Li J, Chen X, Zhou H, Tian H. New onset diabetes mellitus after liver transplantation and hepatitis C virus infection: meta-analysis of clinical studies. *Transpl Int* 2009; **22**: 408-415 [PMID: 19207185 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2008.00804.x]

83 **Syed GH**, Amako Y, Siddiqui A. Hepatitis C virus hijacks host lipid metabolism. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **21**: 33-40 [PMID: 19854061 DOI: 10.1016/j.tem.2009.07.005]

84 **El Atrache MM**, Abouljoud MS, Divine G, Yoshida A, Kim DY, Kazimi MM, Moonka D, Huang MA, Brown K. Recurrence of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and cryptogenic cirrhosis following orthotopic liver transplantation in the context of the metabolic syndrome. *Clin Transplant* 2012; **26**: E505-E512 [PMID: 23061759 DOI: 10.1111/ctr.12014]

85 **Seo S**, Maganti K, Khehra M, Ramsamooj R, Tsodikov A, Bowlus C, McVicar J, Zern M, Torok N. De novo nonalcoholic fatty liver disease after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: 844-847 [PMID: 17029282 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20932]

86 **Lim LG**, Cheng CL, Wee A, Lim SG, Lee YM, Sutedja DS, Da Costa M, Prabhakaran K, Wai CT. Prevalence and clinical associations of posttransplant fatty liver disease. *Liver Int* 2007; **27**: 76-80 [PMID: 17241384 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2006.01396.x]

P- Reviewer: Bramhall S, Hoyer DP, Kallwitz ER
S- Editor: Gong ZM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6424

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6424-6433
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2016 Pancreatic Cancer: Global view

Re-evaluation of classical prognostic factors in resectable ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas

Daniel Åkerberg, Daniel Ansari, Roland Andersson

Daniel Åkerberg, Daniel Ansari, Roland Andersson, Department of Surgery, Clinical Sciences Lund, Lund University, and Skåne University Hospital, SE-221 85 Lund, Sweden

Author contributions: Åkerberg D and Ansari D conducted the literature search and drafted the manuscript; Andersson R conceived the study; all authors were involved in manuscript writing and read and approved the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No potential conflicts of interest. No financial support.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Roland Andersson, MD, PhD, Department of Surgery, Clinical Sciences Lund, Lund University, and Skåne University Hospital, SE-221 85 Lund, Sweden. roland.andersson@med.lu.se
Telephone: +46-46-172359

Received: March 24, 2016
Peer-review started: March 25, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 24, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma carries a poor prognosis with annual deaths almost matching the reported incidence rates. Surgical resection offers the only potential cure. Yet, even among patients that undergo tumor resection, recurrence rates are high and long-term survival is scarce. Various tumor-related factors have been identified as predictors of survival after potentially curative resection. These factors include tumor size, lymph node disease, tumor grade, vascular invasion, perineural invasion and surgical resection margin. This article will re-evaluate the importance of these factors based on recent publications on the topic, with potential implications for treatment and outcome in patients with pancreatic cancer.

Key words: Pancreatic cancer; Survival; Prognostic factors

Core tip: Many studies have investigated morphological indicators of survival in patients with resectable pancreatic cancer. This article scrutinizes the recent literature related to these classical prognostic factors and examines whether these factors still are able to influence patients' outcomes in the era of multimodal treatment.

Åkerberg D, Ansari D, Andersson R. Re-evaluation of classical prognostic factors in resectable ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6424-6433 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6424.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6424

INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic cancer has a devastatingly poor prognosis.

The overall survival remains unchanged over a wide period of time with at a 5-year survival of 5%-10%[1]. Furthermore, according to recent data, the incidence of pancreatic cancer is increasing[2-4]. Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma constitutes the most common histopathological subtype of pancreatic cancer originating from the ductal cells of the exocrine pancreas. Surgery remains the only cure for pancreatic cancer, but long-term survival is uncommon despite the addition of oncological treatments.

Over the years, several important prognostic factors for resectable pancreatic cancer have been identified. Among these prognostic factors are tumor size, presence or absence of lymph node metastases (loco-regional and/or distant), vascular tumor involvement (*e.g.*, portal vein, mesenteric vein and/or artery), perineural tumor growth and resection margin status (from tumor to resection line)[5-9].

Many studies have been conducted to elucidate the relative importance of these prognostic factors in terms of recurrence-free survival and long-term cure. Despite this information, limited progress has been made regarding survival aspects. Pancreatic surgery is associated with high morbidity and potentially also immune suppression. Therefore, it is of vital importance to accurately determine which patients that really derive benefit from surgery in order to avoid unnecessary surgical intervention, as well as facilitate treatment planning and guide neo- and adjuvant treatments. The aim of this review was to re-investigate classical morphological prognostic factors in resectable pancreatic cancer by summarizing the recent literature on the topic published since the year 2000.

TUMOR SIZE

Tumor size is a morphological variable that can be determined preoperatively and as such as carries much important information for treatment planning. Being part of the current TNM staging system of pancreatic cancer, tumor size is the only discriminant between T1 and T2 tumors (cut-off 2 cm). However, the size at which point a pancreatic tumor becomes associated with aggressive features remains undetermined. This is why most studies that have evaluated the effects of tumor size on survival have not used uniform definitions (Table 1). In general, larger tumors > 2-3 cm have worse prognosis compared to smaller tumors. Tumor size has also been linked to other adverse prognostic factors. For example, tumors with a diameter above 2 cm have been found to have an increased risk of lymph node metastases[10].

Tumor size may also affect the rates of margin positivity following pancreatic surgery. It has been found that larger tumors increase the risk of tumor deposits being harbored in the resection line[11]. Larger tumors generally have a greater malignant potential, increasing the risk of tumor involvement of peripancreatic structures[12,13].

However, although most studies indicate impaired survival for larger tumors, a small tumor diameter does not exclude poor prognosis[14,15]. Interestingly, it has been found that tumors with a diameter less than 1 cm may also be associated with malignant potential and rapid disease progression[16,17]. Histopathological data obtained from analysis of "early" pancreatic cancer show that small tumor may display the same microvascular invasiveness pattern (*i.e.*, a poor prognostic factor) as larger tumors[18,19].

This, somewhat, unclear relationship between tumor size and prognosis may reflect different tumor biology and invasiveness, independent of tumor size[20], regulating outcome.

LYMPH NODE STATUS

Dissemination into the lymphatic system is a major route for pancreatic cancer metastasis. Lymph node status has been demonstrated to be one of the most potent predictors of survival. Several recent studies (Table 2) have proposed that the ratio of metastatic to examined lymph nodes (LNR) may be more powerful predictors of survival than the mere dichotomization into positive or negative lymph nodes. LNR also seems to have negative impact on the long-term survival ($\geqslant$ 60 mo)[21]. Poor prognosis has been observed with an LNR over 0.3-0.4.

There is a wide time span in terms of median survival between studies evaluating the impact of lymph node status on survival after resection for pancreatic cancer. Patients with N0 tumors displayed a superior median survival of up to 40 mo and patients with LNR > 0.3 displayed a median survival of 6 mo at the lowest. The wide range in median survival may reflect different biology in those tumors that spread to lymph nodes and those that do not. It may also be speculated that there is a biological difference in the tumor invasiveness both regarding loco-regional and distant lymph node metastases. In general, lymph node metastases can be correlated to increasing tumor size but not in all of the cases.

It is recommended to sample at least 12 lymph nodes for histopathological diagnosis and staging[22]. Standard lymphadenectomy for pancreatic head tumors include resection of lymph node stations 5, 6, 8a, 12b1, 12b2, 12c, 13a, 13b, 14a, 14b, 17a and 17b, while tumors of the body and tail of the pancreas require removal of stations 10, 11, and 18. Extended lymphadenectomy during Whipple's procedure include resection of lymph nodes along the left side of the superior mesenteric artery and around the celiac trunk, splenic artery or left gastric artery. There is no convincing evidence that extensive lymph node resection in conjunction to pancreatic surgery increases the overall survival and is therefore not recommended[23].

Lymph node status may also be defined based

Table 1 Tumor size and survival for resectable pancreatic cancer

Ref.	Year	*n*	Tumor size, cut-off	Median OS	Statistical model	HR (95%CI)	*P* value
Matsumoto *et al*[38]	2015	968	⩾ 3 cm	NR	Multivariable	1.72 (1.16-2.56)	0.006
Jeong *et al*[39]	2015	276	⩽ 2.5 cm	13 mo	Multivariable	1.65 (1.17–2.32)	0.004
			> 2.5 cm	25 mo			
Hur *et al*[17]	2015	18338	*In situ*	120 mo	Multivariable	1	
			⩽ 1.0 cm	27 mo		3.09 (2.35-4.07)	< 0.001
			1.1-2.0 cm	17 mo		4.35 (3.42-5.53)	< 0.001
			> 2.0 cm	11 mo		5.69 (4.49-7.21)	< 0.001
Yamamoto *et al*[40]	2015	195	⩽ 2 cm	29 mo (mean)	Multivariable	0.40 (0.17-0.83)	0.012
Elberm *et al*[41]	2015	1070	< 2 cm	19 mo	Multivariable	0.63 (0.50-0.78)	< 0.001
Liu *et al*[31]	2015	411	> 2 cm	NR	Univariable	1.46 (1.14-1.88)	0.003
Okada *et al*[42]	2014	200	⩾ 3 cm	NR	Multivariable	3.26 (1.52–7.00)	0.002
Dusch *et al*[21]	2014	415	< 3 cm	16 mo	Univariable	-	< 0.03
Shin *et al*[15]	2014	537	⩽ 3 cm	22 mo	Multivariable	1.4 (1.13-1.73)	0.002
			> 3 cm	14 mo			
Kooby *et al*[37]	2014	1399	Continuous	20 mo	Multivariable	1.12 (1.06-1.18)	< 0.001
Petermann *et al*[10]	2013	114	⩽ 2 cm	35 mo	Multivariable	0.52 (0.25–1.05)	0.071
			2.1–3.4 cm	16 mo			
			3.5–4.5 cm	20 mo			
			> 4.5 cm	8 mo			
Jamieson *et al*[43]	2013	217	⩽ 3 cm	23 mo	Multivariable	1.28 (0.93–1.76)	0.13
			> 3 cm	16 mo			
Franko *et al*[14]	2013	7135	⩽ 1 cm	N0/N1: 38/18 mo	Multivariable	1	
			1.1–2 cm	N0/N1: 26/19 mo		1.18 (0.94-1.48)	0.152
			> 2 cm	N0/N1: 19/14 mo		1.67 (1.34-2.07)	< 0.001
Lad *et al*[44]	2013	382	Continuous	16 mo	Multivariable	1.23 (1.07–1.41)	0.003
Sugiura *et al*[45]	2013	208	⩾ 3 cm	NR	Univariable	NR	0.014
Hong *et al*[18]	2012	209	< 3 cm	20 mo	Univariable	NR	0.06
			⩾ 3 cm	15 mo			
Bhatti *et al*[46]	2010	84	⩽ 2 cm	34 mo	Univariable	NR	0.017
			> 2 cm, invasion-	27 mo			
			> 2 cm, invasion+	11 mo			
Yamada *et al*[47]	2009	335	> 4 cm	NR	Multivariable	2.69 (1.30-5.56)	< 0.05
Ueda *et al*[48]	2009	140	< 3 cm	22 mo	Multivariable	1.85 (1.14-3.10)	0.013
			⩾ 3 cm	11 mo			
Kaneoka *et al*[49]	2009	84	< 2 cm	NR	Multivariable	1	
			2–4 cm	20 mo		1.7 (1.0–3.1)	0.031
			> 4 cm	11 mo		2.3 (1.3–4.5)	0.003
Campbell *et al*[50]	2009	163	Continuous	14 mo	Multivariable	1.02 (1.00-1.03)	0.049
Doi *et al*[51]	2007	133	⩽ 4 cm	45% dead within 1 yr	Univariable	1.55 (1.06–2.24)	0.02
			> 4 cm	67% dead within 1 yr			
Zacharias *et al*[52]	2007	81	⩽ 3 cm	28 mo	Multivariable	1.9 (1.1–3.1)	0.018
			> 3 cm	14 mo			
Pawlik *et al*[6]	2007	905	⩾ 2 cm	17 mo	Multivariable	1.24 (1.01-0.51)	0.04
Moon *et al*[53]	2006	94	< 3 cm	25 mo	Multivariable	0.46 (0.27-0.78)	0.004
Cleary *et al*[20]	2004	123	Continuous	14 mo	Univariable	1.2 (1.0–1.4)	0.01
Ahmad *et al*[54]	2001	125	< 2 cm	16 mo	Univariable	1	
			2-4 cm			1.05 (0.58-1.89)	0.87
			> 4 cm			1.15 (0.61-2.15)	0.66
Sohn *et al*[55]	2000	616	< 3 cm	21 mo	Multivariable	0.72 (0.57-0.90)	0.004
			⩾ 3 cm	14 mo			
Meyer *et al*[56]	2000	113	⩽ 2 cm	28 mo	Multivariable	2.27	< 0.006
			> 2 cm	13 mo			

OS: Overall survival.

on the location of the lymph nodes involved. Several studies describe lymph node involvement as N1 (metastases in loco-regional lymph nodes) or N2-3 (metastases in distant lymph nodes). A few studies evaluated para-aortic lymph denoted as N3. There is a clear survival difference between local or distant lymph nodes metastases (*e.g.*, para-aortic lymph node metastases). Most studies, but not all, report that para-aortic lymph node involvement is associated with a poor prognosis, being an independent factor of adverse outcome (Table 3). Frozen-section examination of para-aortic nodes accurately detects distant lymphatic involvement reliably and should be routinely performed[24]. The presence of metastases is considered a contraindication to proceed with pancreatic resection.

Table 2 Prognostic relevance of lymph node ratio

Ref.	Year	*n*	Cut-off	Detection rate (%)	Median OS with highest LNR (mo)	Survival model	HR (95%CI)	*P* value
Fouquet *et al*[34]	2014	166	0.2	76 (46)	NR	Multivariable	2.38 (1.4-4.0)	0.001
Dusch *et al*[21]	2014	415	Continuous	0.10 (0-0.81)[1]	NR	Multivariable	1.73 (NR)	0.002
Valsangkar *et al*[57]	2013	14907	0.3	4038 (27)	NR	Multivariable	2.27 (1.67-3.08)	< 0.001
Lewis *et al*[58]	2013	424	0.3	83 (20)	16	Multivariable	1.97 (NR)	< 0.001
Robinson *et al*[59]	2012	131	0.15	70 (53)	NR	Multivariable	4.14 (NR)	< 0.010
La Torre *et al*[60]	2011	101	0.2	30 (30)	13	Multivariable	4.88 (1.07-22.2)	0.008
Bhatti *et al*[46]	2010	84	0.3	26 (31)	6	Multivariable	2.7 (1.6–4.4)	0.010
Riediger *et al*[61]	2009	182	0.3	32 (18)	NR	Multivariable	2.2 (1.4-3.6)	< 0.001
Slidell *et al*[22]	2008	3868	0.4	602 (16)	10	Multivariable	1.82 (1.59-2.07)	< 0.001
Pawlik *et al*[6]	2007	905	0.4	154 (17)	12	Multivariable	2.55 (1.75-2.70)	0.001

[1]Mean (range). LNR: Lymph node ratio; OS: Overall survival.

Table 3 Para-aortic lymph node involvement and survival

Ref.	Year	*n*	Detection rate (%)	Median OS with PALN (mo)	Survival model	HR (95%CI)	*P* value
Sho *et al*[62]	2015	882	102 (12)	17	Multivariable	1.15 (0.87-1.50)	0.335
Schwarz *et al*[24]	2014	111	17 (15)	16	Univariable	NR	0.038
Kanda *et al*[63]	2011	429	49 (11)	8	Univariable	NR	0.006
Murakami *et al*[64]	2010	103	18 (17)	12	Multivariable	1.84 (0.28-1.07)	0.078
Doi *et al*[51]	2007	133	19 (14)	5	Multivariable	2.90 (1.60-5.02)	0.001
Shimada *et al*[65]	2006	133	29 (22)	13	Univariable	NR	< 0.001

OS: Overall survival; PALN: Para-aortic lymph node involvement.

TUMOR GRADE

The WHO classification of tumor grade in pancreatic cancer is based on the original proposal of Klöppel *et al*[25] and takes into consideration mucin production, glandular differentiation, mitotic activity and nuclear atypia. Several studies have shown that tumor grade is an important prognostic indicator after resection of pancreatic cancer[26-28]. Wasif *et al*[29] analyzed 8082 patients with resected pancreatic cancer. This study found that high tumor grade had a larger impact on survival than both tumor size and lymph node metastases, both of which are part of the current TNM staging system. This observation lead the authors to conclude that the inclusion of tumor grade into the TNM staging for pancreatic cancer would improve prognostic stratification and better reflect the aggressive prognosis of poorly differentiated tumors.

VASCULAR INVASION AND PORTO-MESENTERIC VEIN RESECTION

Pancreatic tumors may occlude peripancreatic vascular structures, either partly or totally, and in the latter case are categorized as unresectable. The extent of vessel wall involvement, *i.e.*, involvement of tunica adventitia, media or intima, has been correlated with outcome[30]. Invasion of major retroperitoneal blood vessels has been found to be an independent predictor of poor survival[11,30,31]. Vascular resections should be performed if it is possible to obtain R0 resections, which is supported by previous histopathological data[32]. In the situation with positive para-aortic lymph nodes, however, venous and arterial tumor involvement may not be a prognostic factor for survival. It has been speculated that para-aortic lymph node involvement might be a stronger prognostic factor than vascular involvement.

Portal vein and superior mesenteric vein invasion often occurs due to the anatomic location of the tumor. Venous invasion was for a long time considered a contraindication to surgery. Today, vascular resection has become more common. Most studies indicate that vascular resection has similar survival rates as standard resection (Table 4), but it should be performed in carefully selected cases, given the slightly increased perioperative mortality rate and some reports that indicate worse survival, likely due to more advanced disease. Arterial resection during pancreatic resection is associated with poor short- and long-term outcome and is not recommended outside of clinical trials[33].

PERINEURAL INVASION

Perineural invasion (PNI) is a common way of pancreatic tumor growth. Several studies have revealed that PNI in specimens from patients who underwent surgical resection was associated with worse survival (Table 5). Data also indicate that perineural involvement is a predictor for early cancer recurrence[34]. The lack of perineural involvement may be a good prognostic

Table 4 Porto-mesenteric vein resection and survival

Ref.	Year	*n*	VR rate (%)	Median OS without VR/with VR (mo)	Survival model	HR (95%CI)	*P* value
Jeong *et al*[39]	2015	276	46 (17)	16/12	Multivariable	1.15 (0.78–1.71)	0.474
Murakami *et al*[66]	2015	937	435 (46)	26/19	Multivariable	1.16 (0.89-1.53)	0.268
Wang *et al*[67]	2014	122	64 (53)	31/18	Multivariable	NR	NS
Kelly *et al*[68]	2013	492	70 (14)	19/12	Multivariable	1.14 (0.83-1.57)	0.410
Gong *et al*[69]	2013	566	119 (21)	20/13	Univariable	NR	< 0.050
Castleberry *et al*[70]	2012	3582	281 (8)	Increased 30-d postoperative mortality, 2.9% *vs* 5.7%	Multivariable	2.1 (1.22-3.73)	0.008
Chakravarty *et al*[71]	2010	87	12 (14)	10/9	Multivariable	NR	0.591
Ouaissi *et al*[72]	2010	149	59 (40)	19/18	Multivariable	DFS: 0.43 (0.22-0.82)	0.011
Kaneoka *et al*[49]	2009	84	42 (50)	26/12	Multivariable	NR	NS
Kurosaki *et al*[73]	2008	77	35 (45)	20/20	Univariable	NR	0.330
Fukuda *et al*[30]	2007	121	37 (31)	NR	Univariable	NR	0.550
Carrère *et al*[74]	2006	133	45 (34)	19/15	Univariable	NR	0.690
Shimada *et al*[75]	2006	149	86 (58)	35/14	Multivariable	2.25 (1.09–3.62)	NR
Tseng *et al*[76]	2004	291	110 (38)	27/23	Multivariable	1.13 (0.79-1.63)	0.500
Poon *et al*[77]	2004	50	12 (24)	21/20	Univariable	NR	0.769
Nakagohri *et al*[78]	2003	81	33 (41)	10/15	Univariable	NR	NS
Bachellier *et al*[79]	2001	87	31 (36)	12/12	Univariable	NR	0.480

OS: Overall survival; PALN: Para-aortic lymph node involvement; NS: Not significant.

Table 5 Prognostic role of perineural invasion

Ref.	Year	*n*	Detection rate (%)	Median OS with PNI (mo)	Survival model	HR (95%CI)	*P* value
Kondo *et al*[36]	2015	209	197 (94)	15	Multivariable	No of PNIs: < 14: 1 14-40: 1.96 (1.01-3.93) > 40: 5.81 (3.17-11.35)	< 0.001
Fouquet *et al*[34]	2014	166	133 (81)	NR	Multivariable	2.77 (1.40-5.26)	0.001
Chatterjee *et al*[80]	2012	212	123 (58)	29	Multivariable	1.70 (1.18-2.45)	0.005
Takahashi *et al*[81]	2012	110	56 (51)	NR	Multivariable	2.48 (1.11-5.52)	0.026
Sahin *et al*[82]	2012	544	473 (87)	29	Multivariable	1.60 (1.08-2.36)	0.019
Robinson *et al*[59]	2012	134	128 (96)	NR	Multivariable	5.52 (NR)	< 0.050
Kanda *et al*[63]	2011	429	148 (34)	NR	Multivariable	1.72 (1.15-2.58)	< 0.001
Shimada *et al*[35]	2011	153	146 (94)	7 (DFS)	Multivariable	2.19 (1.36-3.52)	0.001
Murakami *et al*[64]	2010	103	31 (30)	NR	Multivariable	1.93 (1.03–3.62)	0.041
Kazanjan *et al*[83]	2008	182	112 (62)	20	Multivariable	2.66 (1.74-4.06)	< 0.001

OS: Overall survival; PNI: Perineural invasion.

marker of disease free survival[35]. However, various criteria for the diagnosis of PNI have been used, and the frequency of PNI in pancreatic cancer varies widely among the previous reports, between 30%-96%. According to a recent study the severity of PNI can be correlated with survival[36]. This study demonstrated that the number of PNIs was a potent predictor of survival in patients with resectable pancreatic cancer.

RESECTION MARGINS

The R classification for pancreatic cancer entails estimation of the radicality of resection. R0 denotes complete microscopic tumor removal. R1 indicates microscopic residual tumor, while R2 indicates macroscopic residual tumor. The influence of margin status on outcomes in pancreatic cancer remains controversial (Table 6). This is largely due to lack of standardization of margin definitions and reporting. Most studies show a worsened prognosis of R1 compared to R0 resection.

The poor prognosis in R1 resections is underscored by the observation that once tumor cell deposits have reached beyond the resected pancreatic surface area, it is difficult to improve survival by trying to convert R1 to R0 resections. Data show that the overall survival of turning R1 to R0 resections is still not convincingly high and once a positive intraoperative resection margin is discovered on frozen section it is doubtful whether the conversion to R0 resection is a "true R0" since the overall survival is not changed[37].

The definition of margin clearance is still under debate. However, nowadays most studies now use a margin clearance over 1 mm to define R1 resection.

CONCLUSION

Despite technical advances in the field of pancreatic

Table 6 Radicality of resection and survival

Ref.	Year	*n*	R1 definition	R1 rate (%)	Median OS R0/R1 (mo)	Survival model	HR (95% CI)	*P* value
Kooby *et al*[37]	2014	1399	1 mm	R0 (86)	21	Multivariable	1	0.009
				R1→R0 (5)	12		1.55 (1.11-2.16)	0.004
				R1 (9)	14		1.46 (1.13-1.90)	
Konstantinidis *et al*[84]	2013	554	1 mm	157 (28)	35/14	Univariable	NR	< 0.001
Kimbrough *et al*[85]	2013	283	0 mm	76 (27)	22/15	Multivariable	NR	NS
Gnerlich *et al*[86]	2012	285	1 mm	97 (34)	22/16	Univariable	NR	0.010
Jamieson *et al*[11]	2010	148	1 mm	110 (74)	27/15	Multivariable	1.76 (1.15–2.28)	0.009
Van den Broeck *et al*[87]	2009	144	1 mm	48 (33)	24/12	Univariable	NR	< 0.001
Chang *et al*[88]	2009	365	0 mm	131 (36)	20/13	Multivariable	1.48 (1.15–1.89)	0.002
Campbell *et al*[50]	2009	163	1 mm	128 (79)	25/13	Multivariable	1.44 (0.90-2.32)	0.132
Westgaard *et al*[89]	2008	40	1 mm	18 (45)	16/11	Univariable	NR	0.300
Esposito *et al*[90]	2008	111	1 mm	84 (76)	NR	Univariable	NR	0.370
Raut *et al*[91]	2007	360	0 mm	61 (17)	28/22	Multivariable	NR	NS
Verbeke *et al*[92]	2006	26	1 mm	22 (85)	37/11	Multivariable	NR	0.790
Howard *et al*[93]	2006	226	0 mm	68 (30)	NR	Multivariable	1.39 (1.02-1.90)	0.030

NS: Not significant; OS: Overall survival.

surgery, the long-term prognosis of pancreatic cancer still remains dismal. This article updates the role of established prognostic factors after curatively intended surgery for pancreatic cancer.

Tumor size is a prognostic factor, with survival decreasing in parallel to increased tumor size. However, small tumors (< 2 cm) may still metastasize and be associated with a poor outcome.

Lymph node involvement is associated with poor survival. A LNR of > 0.3 is a strong prognostic determinant. Para-aortic node sampling with frozen-section examination detects distant lymphatic involvement reliably and should be performed routinely. Metastatic deposits in para-aortic lymph nodes indicate distant disease, and should be considered a contraindication for surgical resection.

Tumor grade may be as powerful a prognostic factor as tumor size and lymph node status.

Invasion of major retroperitoneal blood vessels predicts poor outcome. The extent of vessel wall involvement is correlated with survival. Patients undergoing portal vein resection for pancreatic cancer have a similar long-term prognosis to patients undergoing standard resection.

PNI is present in most pancreatic tumors. The severity of PNI is a novel prognostic factor.

Tumor cells in the resection margin increase the risk of early deaths. A margin clearance over 1 mm should be achieved. However, additional resection to achieve a negative neck margin after positive frozen section is not recommended due to lack of survival advantage.

REFERENCES

1 **Kos FT**, Yazici O, Civelek B, Seker M, Arik Z, Aksoy S, Uncu D, Ozdemir N, Zengin N. Evaluation of the effect of comorbidity on survival in pancreatic cancer by using "Charlson Comorbidity Index" and "Cumulative Illness Rating Scale". *Wien Klin Wochenschr* 2014; **126**: 36-41 [PMID: 24249323 DOI: 10.1007/s00508-013-0453-9]

2 **Akhtar-Danesh GG**, Finley C, Akhtar-Danesh N. Long-term trends in the incidence and relative survival of pancreatic cancer in Canada: A population-based study. *Pancreatology* 2016; **16**: 259-265 [PMID: 26804003 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2015.12.180]

3 **Jemal A**, Bray F, Center MM, Ferlay J, Ward E, Forman D. Global cancer statistics. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2011; **61**: 69-90 [PMID: 21296855 DOI: 10.3322/caac.20107]

4 **Nitecki SS**, Sarr MG, Colby TV, van Heerden JA. Long-term survival after resection for ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. Is it really improving? *Ann Surg* 1995; **221**: 59-66 [PMID: 7826162]

5 **Yeo CJ**, Cameron JL, Sohn TA, Lillemoe KD, Pitt HA, Talamini MA, Hruban RH, Ord SE, Sauter PK, Coleman J, Zahurak ML, Grochow LB, Abrams RA. Six hundred fifty consecutive pancreaticoduodenectomies in the 1990s: pathology, complications, and outcomes. *Ann Surg* 1997; **226**: 248-257; discussion 257-260 [PMID: 9339931]

6 **Pawlik TM**, Gleisner AL, Cameron JL, Winter JM, Assumpcao L, Lillemoe KD, Wolfgang C, Hruban RH, Schulick RD, Yeo CJ, Choti MA. Prognostic relevance of lymph node ratio following pancreaticoduodenectomy for pancreatic cancer. *Surgery* 2007; **141**: 610-618 [PMID: 17462460 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2006.12.013]

7 **Fortner JG**, Klimstra DS, Senie RT, Maclean BJ. Tumor size is the primary prognosticator for pancreatic cancer after regional pancreatectomy. *Ann Surg* 1996; **223**: 147-153 [PMID: 8597508]

8 **Paniccia A**, Hosokawa P, Henderson W, Schulick RD, Edil BH, McCarter MD, Gajdos C. Characteristics of 10-Year Survivors of Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *JAMA Surg* 2015; **150**: 701-710 [PMID: 26062046 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2015.0668]

9 **Ferrone CR**, Pieretti-Vanmarcke R, Bloom JP, Zheng H, Szymonifka J, Wargo JA, Thayer SP, Lauwers GY, Deshpande V, Mino-Kenudson M, Fernández-del Castillo C, Lillemoe KD, Warshaw AL. Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma: long-term survival does not equal cure. *Surgery* 2012; **152**: S43-S49 [PMID: 22763261 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2012.05.020]

10 **Petermann D**, Demartines N, Schäfer M. Is tumour size an underestimated feature in the current TNM system for malignancies of the pancreatic head? *HPB* (Oxford) 2013; **15**: 872-881 [PMID: 23458601 DOI: 10.1111/hpb.12052]

11 **Jamieson NB**, Foulis AK, Oien KA, Dickson EJ, Imrie CW, Carter R, McKay CJ. Peripancreatic fat invasion is an independent predictor of poor outcome following pancreaticoduodenectomy for pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2011; **15**: 512-524 [PMID: 21116727 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-010-1395-4]

12 **Warren BF**. Resection margins and R1 rates in pancreatic cancer--are we there yet? *Histopathology* 2008; **53**: 599; author reply 599

[PMID: 18983470 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.2008.03150.x]
13 **Michalski CW**, Weitz J, Büchler MW. Surgery insight: surgical management of pancreatic cancer. *Nat Clin Pract Oncol* 2007; **4**: 526-535 [PMID: 17728711 DOI: 10.1038/ncponc0925]
14 **Franko J**, Hugec V, Lopes TL, Goldman CD. Survival among pancreaticoduodenectomy patients treated for pancreatic head cancer & lt; 1 or 2 cm. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 357-361 [PMID: 22941171 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2621-y]
15 **Shin SH**, Kim SC, Hong SM, Song KB, Lee JH, Park KM, Lee YJ. Can statistically determined prognostic factors predict the long-term survival of patients with pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma following surgical resection?: Clinicopathological analysis of 82 long-term survivors. *Pancreas* 2014; **43**: 571-577 [PMID: 24681875 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000063]
16 **Izumi S**, Nakamura S, Mano S, Onoda Y. Well-differentiated pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas measuring ≤ 1 cm exhibit early features of tumor progression: a report of five lesions and a comparative study with advanced lesions. *Surg Today* 2014; **44**: 2058-2064 [PMID: 24297432 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-013-0804-1]
17 **Hur C**, Tramontano AC, Dowling EC, Brooks GA, Jeon A, Brugge WR, Gazelle GS, Kong CY, Pandharipande PV. Early Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma Survival Is Dependent on Size: Positive Implications for Future Targeted Screening. *Pancreas* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26692444 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000587]
18 **Hong SM**, Goggins M, Wolfgang CL, Schulick RD, Edil BH, Cameron JL, Handra-Luca A, Herman JM, Hruban RH. Vascular invasion in infiltrating ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas can mimic pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia: a histopathologic study of 209 cases. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2012; **36**: 235-241 [PMID: 22082604 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e3182376e36]
19 **Bagci P**, Andea AA, Basturk O, Jang KT, Erbarut I, Adsay V. Large duct type invasive adenocarcinoma of the pancreas with microcystic and papillary patterns: a potential microscopic mimic of non-invasive ductal neoplasia. *Mod Pathol* 2012; **25**: 439-448 [PMID: 22056954 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2011.181]
20 **Cleary SP**, Gryfe R, Guindi M, Greig P, Smith L, Mackenzie R, Strasberg S, Hanna S, Taylor B, Langer B, Gallinger S. Prognostic factors in resected pancreatic adenocarcinoma: analysis of actual 5-year survivors. *J Am Coll Surg* 2004; **198**: 722-731 [PMID: 15110805 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2004.01.008]
21 **Dusch N**, Weiss C, Ströbel P, Kienle P, Post S, Niedergethmann M. Factors predicting long-term survival following pancreatic resection for ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas: 40 years of experience. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2014; **18**: 674-681 [PMID: 24241965 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-013-2408-x]
22 **Slidell MB**, Chang DC, Cameron JL, Wolfgang C, Herman JM, Schulick RD, Choti MA, Pawlik TM. Impact of total lymph node count and lymph node ratio on staging and survival after pancreatectomy for pancreatic adenocarcinoma: a large, population-based analysis. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 165-174 [PMID: 17896141 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-007-9587-1]
23 **Tol JA**, Gouma DJ, Bassi C, Dervenis C, Montorsi M, Adham M, Andrén-Sandberg A, Asbun HJ, Bockhorn M, Büchler MW, Conlon KC, Fernández-Cruz L, Fingerhut A, Friess H, Hartwig W, Izbicki JR, Lillemoe KD, Milicevic MN, Neoptolemos JP, Shrikhande SV, Vollmer CM, Yeo CJ, Charnley RM. Definition of a standard lymphadenectomy in surgery for pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma: a consensus statement by the International Study Group on Pancreatic Surgery (ISGPS). *Surgery* 2014; **156**: 591-600 [PMID: 25061003 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2014.06.016]
24 **Schwarz L**, Lupinacci RM, Svrcek M, Lesurtel M, Bubenheim M, Vuarnesson H, Balladur P, Paye F. Para-aortic lymph node sampling in pancreatic head adenocarcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2014; **101**: 530-538 [PMID: 24633831 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9444]
25 **Klöppel G**, Lingenthal G, von Bülow M, Kern HF. Histological and fine structural features of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas in relation to growth and prognosis: studies in xenografted tumours and clinico-histopathological correlation in a series of 75 cases. *Histopathology* 1985; **9**: 841-856 [PMID: 2997015]
26 **Lim JE**, Chien MW, Earle CC. Prognostic factors following curative resection for pancreatic adenocarcinoma: a population-based, linked database analysis of 396 patients. *Ann Surg* 2003; **237**: 74-85 [PMID: 12496533 DOI: 10.1097/01.SLA.0000041266.10047.38]
27 **Kuhlmann KF**, de Castro SM, Wesseling JG, ten Kate FJ, Offerhaus GJ, Busch OR, van Gulik TM, Obertop H, Gouma DJ. Surgical treatment of pancreatic adenocarcinoma; actual survival and prognostic factors in 343 patients. *Eur J Cancer* 2004; **40**: 549-558 [PMID: 14962722 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2003.10.026]
28 **Winter JM**, Cameron JL, Campbell KA, Arnold MA, Chang DC, Coleman J, Hodgin MB, Sauter PK, Hruban RH, Riall TS, Schulick RD, Choti MA, Lillemoe KD, Yeo CJ. 1423 pancreaticoduodenectomies for pancreatic cancer: A single-institution experience. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2006; **10**: 1199-1210; discussion 1210-1211 [PMID: 17114007 DOI: 10.1016/j.gassur.2006.08.018]
29 **Wasif N**, Ko CY, Farrell J, Wainberg Z, Hines OJ, Reber H, Tomlinson JS. Impact of tumor grade on prognosis in pancreatic cancer: should we include grade in AJCC staging? *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 2312-2320 [PMID: 20422460 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-010-1071-7]
30 **Fukuda S**, Oussoultzoglou E, Bachellier P, Rosso E, Nakano H, Audet M, Jaeck D. Significance of the depth of portal vein wall invasion after curative resection for pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Arch Surg* 2007; **142**: 172-179; discussion 180 [PMID: 17309969 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.142.2.172]
31 **Liu L**, Katz MH, Lee SM, Fischer LK, Prakash L, Parker N, Wang H, Varadhachary GR, Wolff RA, Lee JE, Pisters PW, Maitra A, Fleming JB, Estrella J, Rashid A, Wang H. Superior Mesenteric Artery Margin of Posttherapy Pancreaticoduodenectomy and Prognosis in Patients With Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2015; **39**: 1395-1403 [PMID: 26200098 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0000000000000491]
32 **Rehders A**, Stoecklein NH, Güray A, Riediger R, Alexander A, Knoefel WT. Vascular invasion in pancreatic cancer: tumor biology or tumor topography? *Surgery* 2012; **152**: S143-S151 [PMID: 22766363 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2012.05.012]
33 **Mollberg N**, Rahbari NN, Koch M, Hartwig W, Hoeger Y, Büchler MW, Weitz J. Arterial resection during pancreatectomy for pancreatic cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Surg* 2011; **254**: 882-893 [PMID: 22064622 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31823ac299]
34 **Fouquet T**, Germain A, Brunaud L, Bresler L, Ayav A. Is perineural invasion more accurate than other factors to predict early recurrence after pancreatoduodenectomy for pancreatic head adenocarcinoma? *World J Surg* 2014; **38**: 2132-2137 [PMID: 24715041 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-014-2465-7]
35 **Shimada K**, Nara S, Esaki M, Sakamoto Y, Kosuge T, Hiraoka N. Intrapancreatic nerve invasion as a predictor for recurrence after pancreaticoduodenectomy in patients with invasive ductal carcinoma of the pancreas. *Pancreas* 2011; **40**: 464-468 [PMID: 21289526 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e31820b5d37]
36 **Kondo N**, Murakami Y, Uemura K, Hashimoto Y, Nakagawa N, Sasaki H, Sueda T. An Increased Number of Perineural Invasions Is Independently Associated With Poor Survival of Patients With Resectable Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *Pancreas* 2015; **44**: 1345-1351 [PMID: 26465957 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000413]
37 **Kooby DA**, Lad NL, Squires MH, Maithel SK, Sarmiento JM, Staley CA, Adsay NV, El-Rayes BF, Weber SM, Winslow ER, Cho CS, Zavala KA, Bentrem DJ, Knab M, Ahmad SA, Abbott DE, Sutton JM, Kim HJ, Yeh JJ, Aufforth R, Scoggins CR, Martin RC, Parikh AA, Robinson J, Hashim YM, Fields RC, Hawkins WG, Merchant NB. Value of intraoperative neck margin analysis during Whipple for pancreatic adenocarcinoma: a multicenter analysis of 1399 patients. *Ann Surg* 2014; **260**: 494-501; discussion 501-503 [PMID: 25115425 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000000890]
38 **Matsumoto I**, Murakami Y, Shinzeki M, Asari S, Goto T, Tani M, Motoi F, Uemura K, Sho M, Satoi S, Honda G, Yamaue H, Unno

M, Akahori T, Kwon AH, Kurata M, Ajiki T, Fukumoto T, Ku Y. Proposed preoperative risk factors for early recurrence in patients with resectable pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma after surgical resection: A multi-center retrospective study. *Pancreatology* 2015; **15**: 674-680 [PMID: 26467797 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2015.09.008]

39 **Jeong J**, Choi DW, Choi SH, Heo JS, Jang KT. Long-term outcome of portomesenteric vein invasion and prognostic factors in pancreas head adenocarcinoma. *ANZ J Surg* 2015; **85**: 264-269 [PMID: 24641800 DOI: 10.1111/ans.12502]

40 **Yamamoto T**, Yagi S, Kinoshita H, Sakamoto Y, Okada K, Uryuhara K, Morimoto T, Kaihara S, Hosotani R. Long-term survival after resection of pancreatic cancer: a single-center retrospective analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 262-268 [PMID: 25574100 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i1.262]

41 **Elberm H**, Ravikumar R, Sabin C, Abu Hilal M, Al-Hilli A, Aroori S, Bond-Smith G, Bramhall S, Coldham C, Hammond J, Hutchins R, Imber C, Preziosi G, Saleh A, Silva M, Simpson J, Spoletini G, Stell D, Terrace J, White S, Wigmore S, Fusai G. Outcome after pancreaticoduodenectomy for T3 adenocarcinoma: A multivariable analysis from the UK Vascular Resection for Pancreatic Cancer Study Group. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2015; **41**: 1500-1507 [PMID: 26346183 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2015.08.158]

42 **Okada S**, Okusaka T, Ishii H, Kyogoku A, Yoshimori M, Kajimura N, Yamaguchi K, Kakizoe T. Elevated serum interleukin-6 levels in patients with pancreatic cancer. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 1998; **28**: 12-15 [PMID: 9491135]

43 **Jamieson NB**, Chan NI, Foulis AK, Dickson EJ, McKay CJ, Carter CR. The prognostic influence of resection margin clearance following pancreaticoduodenectomy for pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2013; **17**: 511-521 [PMID: 23297028 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-012-2131-z]

44 **Lad NL**, Squires MH, Maithel SK, Fisher SB, Mehta VV, Cardona K, Russell MC, Staley CA, Adsay NV, Kooby DA. Is it time to stop checking frozen section neck margins during pancreaticoduodenectomy? *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 3626-3633 [PMID: 23838908 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-3080-9]

45 **Sugiura T**, Uesaka K, Mihara K, Sasaki K, Kanemoto H, Mizuno T, Okamura Y. Margin status, recurrence pattern, and prognosis after resection of pancreatic cancer. *Surgery* 2013; **154**: 1078-1086 [PMID: 23973112 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2013.04.015]

46 **Bhatti I**, Peacock O, Awan AK, Semeraro D, Larvin M, Hall RI. Lymph node ratio versus number of affected lymph nodes as predictors of survival for resected pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 768-775 [PMID: 20052471 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-009-0336-4]

47 **Yamada S**, Nakao A, Fujii T, Sugimoto H, Kanazumi N, Nomoto S, Kodera Y, Takeda S. Pancreatic cancer with paraaortic lymph node metastasis: a contraindication for radical surgery? *Pancreas* 2009; **38**: e13-e17 [PMID: 18797422 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3181889e2d]

48 **Ueda M**, Endo I, Nakashima M, Minami Y, Takeda K, Matsuo K, Nagano Y, Tanaka K, Ichikawa Y, Togo S, Kunisaki C, Shimada H. Prognostic factors after resection of pancreatic cancer. *World J Surg* 2009; **33**: 104-110 [PMID: 19011933 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-008-9807-2]

49 **Kaneoka Y**, Yamaguchi A, Isogai M. Portal or superior mesenteric vein resection for pancreatic head adenocarcinoma: prognostic value of the length of venous resection. *Surgery* 2009; **145**: 417-425 [PMID: 19303991 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2008.12.009]

50 **Campbell F**, Smith RA, Whelan P, Sutton R, Raraty M, Neoptolemos JP, Ghaneh P. Classification of R1 resections for pancreatic cancer: the prognostic relevance of tumour involvement within 1 mm of a resection margin. *Histopathology* 2009; **55**: 277-283 [PMID: 19723142 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.2009.03376.x]

51 **Doi R**, Kami K, Ito D, Fujimoto K, Kawaguchi Y, Wada M, Kogire M, Hosotani R, Imamura M, Uemoto S. Prognostic implication of para-aortic lymph node metastasis in resectable pancreatic cancer. *World J Surg* 2007; **31**: 147-154 [PMID: 17171496 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-005-0730-5]

52 **Zacharias T**, Jaeck D, Oussoultzoglou E, Neuville A, Bachellier P. Impact of lymph node involvement on long-term survival after R0 pancreaticoduodenectomy for ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2007; **11**: 350-356 [PMID: 17458610 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-007-0113-3]

53 **Moon HJ**, An JY, Heo JS, Choi SH, Joh JW, Kim YI. Predicting survival after surgical resection for pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Pancreas* 2006; **32**: 37-43 [PMID: 16340742]

54 **Ahmad NA**, Lewis JD, Ginsberg GG, Haller DG, Morris JB, Williams NN, Rosato EF, Kochman ML. Long term survival after pancreatic resection for pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 2609-2615 [PMID: 11569683 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2001.04123.x]

55 **Sohn TA**, Yeo CJ, Cameron JL, Koniaris L, Kaushal S, Abrams RA, Sauter PK, Coleman J, Hruban RH, Lillemoe KD. Resected adenocarcinoma of the pancreas-616 patients: results, outcomes, and prognostic indicators. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2000; **4**: 567-579 [PMID: 11307091]

56 **Meyer W**, Jurowich C, Reichel M, Steinhäuser B, Wünsch PH, Gebhardt C. Pathomorphological and histological prognostic factors in curatively resected ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. *Surg Today* 2000; **30**: 582-587 [PMID: 10930222]

57 **Valsangkar NP**, Bush DM, Michaelson JS, Ferrone CR, Wargo JA, Lillemoe KD, Fernández-del Castillo C, Warshaw AL, Thayer SP. N0/N1, PNL, or LNR? The effect of lymph node number on accurate survival prediction in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2013; **17**: 257-266 [PMID: 23229885 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-012-1974-7]

58 **Lewis R**, Drebin JA, Callery MP, Fraker D, Kent TS, Gates J, Vollmer CM. A contemporary analysis of survival for resected pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *HPB* (Oxford) 2013; **15**: 49-60 [PMID: 23216779 DOI: 10.1111/j.1477-2574.2012.00571.x]

59 **Robinson SM**, Rahman A, Haugk B, French JJ, Manas DM, Jaques BC, Charnley RM, White SA. Metastatic lymph node ratio as an important prognostic factor in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2012; **38**: 333-339 [PMID: 22317758 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2011.12.020]

60 **La Torre M**, Cavallini M, Ramacciato G, Cosenza G, Rossi Del Monte S, Nigri G, Ferri M, Mercantini P, Ziparo V. Role of the lymph node ratio in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Impact on patient stratification and prognosis. *J Surg Oncol* 2011; **104**: 629-633 [PMID: 21713779 DOI: 10.1002/jso.22013]

61 **Riediger H**, Keck T, Wellner U, zur Hausen A, Adam U, Hopt UT, Makowiec F. The lymph node ratio is the strongest prognostic factor after resection of pancreatic cancer. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2009; **13**: 1337-1344 [PMID: 19418101 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-009-0919-2]

62 **Sho M**, Murakami Y, Motoi F, Satoi S, Matsumoto I, Kawai M, Honda G, Uemura K, Yanagimoto H, Kurata M, Fukumoto T, Akahori T, Kinoshita S, Nagai M, Nishiwada S, Unno M, Yamaue H, Nakajima Y. Postoperative prognosis of pancreatic cancer with para-aortic lymph node metastasis: a multicenter study on 822 patients. *J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 694-702 [PMID: 25341657 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-014-1005-4]

63 **Kanda M**, Fujii T, Nagai S, Kodera Y, Kanzaki A, Sahin TT, Hayashi M, Yamada S, Sugimoto H, Nomoto S, Takeda S, Morita S, Nakao A. Pattern of lymph node metastasis spread in pancreatic cancer. *Pancreas* 2011; **40**: 951-955 [PMID: 21441841 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3182148342]

64 **Murakami Y**, Uemura K, Sudo T, Hashimoto Y, Yuasa Y, Sueda T. Prognostic impact of para-aortic lymph node metastasis in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 1900-1907 [PMID: 20376442 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-010-0577-2]

65 **Shimada K**, Sakamoto Y, Sano T, Kosuge T. The role of paraaortic lymph node involvement on early recurrence and survival after macroscopic curative resection with extended lymphadenectomy for pancreatic carcinoma. *J Am Coll Surg* 2006; **203**: 345-352 [PMID: 16931307 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2006.05.289]

66 **Murakami Y**, Satoi S, Motoi F, Sho M, Kawai M, Matsumoto I, Honda G; Multicentre Study Group of Pancreatobiliary Surgery

(MSG-PBS). Portal or superior mesenteric vein resection in pancreatoduodenectomy for pancreatic head carcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2015; **102**: 837-846 [PMID: 25877050 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9799]

67 **Wang F**, Gill AJ, Neale M, Puttaswamy V, Gananadha S, Pavlakis N, Clarke S, Hugh TJ, Samra JS. Adverse tumor biology associated with mesenterico-portal vein resection influences survival in patients with pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 1937-1947 [PMID: 24558067 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-3554-4]

68 **Kelly KJ**, Winslow E, Kooby D, Lad NL, Parikh AA, Scoggins CR, Ahmad S, Martin RC, Maithel SK, Kim HJ, Merchant NB, Cho CS, Weber SM. Vein involvement during pancreaticoduodenectomy: is there a need for redefinition of "borderline resectable disease"? *J Gastrointest Surg* 2013; **17**: 1209-1217; discussion 1217 [PMID: 23620151 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-013-2178-5]

69 **Gong Y**, Zhang L, He T, Ding J, Zhang H, Chen G, Zhang D, Wu Z, Chen Q, Fan H, Wang Q, Bie P, Wang H. Pancreaticoduodenectomy combined with vascular resection and reconstruction for patients with locally advanced pancreatic cancer: a multicenter, retrospective analysis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e70340 [PMID: 23936411 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0070340]

70 **Castleberry AW**, White RR, De La Fuente SG, Clary BM, Blazer DG, McCann RL, Pappas TN, Tyler DS, Scarborough JE. The impact of vascular resection on early postoperative outcomes after pancreaticoduodenectomy: an analysis of the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program database. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2012; **19**: 4068-4077 [PMID: 22932857 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2585-y]

71 **Chakravarty KD**, Hsu JT, Liu KH, Yeh CN, Yeh TS, Hwang TL, Jan YY, Chen MF. Prognosis and feasibility of en-bloc vascular resection in stage II pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 997-1002 [PMID: 20180240]

72 **Ouaissi M**, Hubert C, Verhelst R, Astarci P, Sempoux C, Jouret-Mourin A, Loundou A, Gigot JF; Multidisciplary HPB Group of Center of Cancer. Vascular reconstruction during pancreatoduodenectomy for ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas improves resectability but does not achieve cure. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 2648-2661 [PMID: 20607257 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-010-0699-6]

73 **Kurosaki I**, Hatakeyama K, Minagawa M, Sato D. Portal vein resection in surgery for cancer of biliary tract and pancreas: special reference to the relationship between the surgical outcome and site of primary tumor. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2008; **12**: 907-918 [PMID: 17968629 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-007-0387-5]

74 **Carrère N**, Sauvanet A, Goere D, Kianmanesh R, Vullierme MP, Couvelard A, Ruszniewski P, Belghiti J. Pancreaticoduodenectomy with mesentericoportal vein resection for adenocarcinoma of the pancreatic head. *World J Surg* 2006; **30**: 1526-1535 [PMID: 16855797 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-005-0784-4]

75 **Shimada K**, Sano T, Sakamoto Y, Kosuge T. Clinical implications of combined portal vein resection as a palliative procedure in patients undergoing pancreaticoduodenectomy for pancreatic head carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2006; **13**: 1569-1578 [PMID: 17009145 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-006-9143-4]

76 **Tseng JF**, Raut CP, Lee JE, Pisters PW, Vauthey JN, Abdalla EK, Gomez HF, Sun CC, Crane CH, Wolff RA, Evans DB. Pancreaticoduodenectomy with vascular resection: margin status and survival duration. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2004; **8**: 935-949; discussion 949-950 [PMID: 15585381 DOI: 10.1016/j.gassur.2004.09.046]

77 **Poon RT**, Fan ST, Lo CM, Liu CL, Lam CM, Yuen WK, Yeung C, Wong J. Pancreaticoduodenectomy with en bloc portal vein resection for pancreatic carcinoma with suspected portal vein involvement. *World J Surg* 2004; **28**: 602-608 [PMID: 15366753]

78 **Nakagohri T**, Kinoshita T, Konishi M, Inoue K, Takahashi S. Survival benefits of portal vein resection for pancreatic cancer. *Am J Surg* 2003; **186**: 149-153 [PMID: 12885608]

79 **Bachellier P**, Nakano H, Oussoultzoglou PD, Weber JC, Boudjema K, Wolf PD, Jaeck D. Is pancreaticoduodenectomy with mesentericoportal venous resection safe and worthwhile? *Am J Surg* 2001; **182**: 120-129 [PMID: 11574081]

80 **Chatterjee D**, Katz MH, Rashid A, Wang H, Iuga AC, Varadhachary GR, Wolff RA, Lee JE, Pisters PW, Crane CH, Gomez HF, Abbruzzese JL, Fleming JB, Wang H. Perineural and intraneural invasion in posttherapy pancreaticoduodenectomy specimens predicts poor prognosis in patients with pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2012; **36**: 409-417 [PMID: 22301497 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e31824104c5]

81 **Takahashi H**, Ohigashi H, Ishikawa O, Gotoh K, Yamada T, Nagata S, Tomita Y, Eguchi H, Doki Y, Yano M. Perineural invasion and lymph node involvement as indicators of surgical outcome and pattern of recurrence in the setting of preoperative gemcitabine-based chemoradiation therapy for resectable pancreatic cancer. *Ann Surg* 2012; **255**: 95-102 [PMID: 22123160 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31823d813c]

82 **Sahin IH**, Shama MA, Tanaka M, Abbruzzese JL, Curley SA, Hassan M, Li D. Association of diabetes and perineural invasion in pancreatic cancer. *Cancer Med* 2012; **1**: 357-362 [PMID: 23342285 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.43]

83 **Kazanjian KK**, Hines OJ, Duffy JP, Yoon DY, Cortina G, Reber HA. Improved survival following pancreaticoduodenectomy to treat adenocarcinoma of the pancreas: the influence of operative blood loss. *Arch Surg* 2008; **143**: 1166-1171 [PMID: 19075167 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.143.12.1166]

84 **Konstantinidis IT**, Warshaw AL, Allen JN, Blaszkowsky LS, Castillo CF, Deshpande V, Hong TS, Kwak EL, Lauwers GY, Ryan DP, Wargo JA, Lillemoe KD, Ferrone CR. Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma: is there a survival difference for R1 resections versus locally advanced unresectable tumors? What is a "true" R0 resection? *Ann Surg* 2013; **257**: 731-736 [PMID: 22968073 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e318263da2f]

85 **Kimbrough CW**, St Hill CR, Martin RC, McMasters KM, Scoggins CR. Tumor-positive resection margins reflect an aggressive tumor biology in pancreatic cancer. *J Surg Oncol* 2013; **107**: 602-607 [PMID: 23450687 DOI: 10.1002/jso.23299]

86 **Gnerlich JL**, Luka SR, Deshpande AD, Dubray BJ, Weir JS, Carpenter DH, Brunt EM, Strasberg SM, Hawkins WG, Linehan DC. Microscopic margins and patterns of treatment failure in resected pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Arch Surg* 2012; **147**: 753-760 [PMID: 22911074 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2012.1126]

87 **Van den Broeck A**, Sergeant G, Ectors N, Van Steenbergen W, Aerts R, Topal B. Patterns of recurrence after curative resection of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2009; **35**: 600-604 [PMID: 19131205 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2008.12.006]

88 **Chang DK**, Johns AL, Merrett ND, Gill AJ, Colvin EK, Scarlett CJ, Nguyen NQ, Leong RW, Cosman PH, Kelly MI, Sutherland RL, Henshall SM, Kench JG, Biankin AV. Margin clearance and outcome in resected pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 2855-2862 [PMID: 19398572 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.20.5104]

89 **Westgaard A**, Tafjord S, Farstad IN, Cvancarova M, Eide TJ, Mathisen O, Clausen OP, Gladhaug IP. Resectable adenocarcinomas in the pancreatic head: the retroperitoneal resection margin is an independent prognostic factor. *BMC Cancer* 2008; **8**: 5 [PMID: 18194510 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-8-5]

90 **Esposito I**, Kleeff J, Bergmann F, Reiser C, Herpel E, Friess H, Schirmacher P, Büchler MW. Most pancreatic cancer resections are R1 resections. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 1651-1660 [PMID: 18351300 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-9839-8]

91 **Raut CP**, Tseng JF, Sun CC, Wang H, Wolff RA, Crane CH, Hwang R, Vauthey JN, Abdalla EK, Lee JE, Pisters PW, Evans DB. Impact of resection status on pattern of failure and survival after pancreaticoduodenectomy for pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Ann Surg* 2007; **246**: 52-60 [PMID: 17592291 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000259391.84304.2b]

92 **Verbeke CS**, Leitch D, Menon KV, McMahon MJ, Guillou PJ, Anthoney A. Redefining the R1 resection in pancreatic cancer. *Br J Surg* 2006; **93**: 1232-1237 [PMID: 16804874 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5397]

93 **Howard TJ**, Krug JE, Yu J, Zyromski NJ, Schmidt CM, Jacobson LE, Madura JA, Wiebke EA, Lillemoe KD. A margin-negative R0

resection accomplished with minimal postoperative complications is the surgeon's contribution to long-term survival in pancreatic cancer. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2006; **10**: 1338-1345; discussion 1345-1346 [PMID: 17175452 DOI: 10.1016/j.gassur.2006.09.008]

P- Reviewer: Kleeff J, Yang F, Zhang ZM **S- Editor**: Ma YJ
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6434

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6434-6443
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Pathophysiological role of guanylate-binding proteins in gastrointestinal diseases

Nathalie Britzen-Laurent, Christian Herrmann, Elisabeth Naschberger, Roland S Croner, Michael Stürzl

Nathalie Britzen-Laurent, Elisabeth Naschberger, Michael Stürzl, Division of Molecular and Experimental Surgery, Department of Surgery, University Medical Center Erlangen, Translational Research Center, Friedrich-Alexander University of Erlangen-Nuremberg, 91054 Erlangen, Germany

Christian Herrmann, Physical Chemistry I, Ruhr-University Bochum, Universitätsstrasse 150, 44780 Bochum, Germany

Roland S Croner, Department of Surgery, University Medical Center Erlangen, Friedrich-Alexander University of Erlangen-Nuremberg, 91054 Erlangen, Germany

Author contributions: Britzen-Laurent N, Herrmann C, Naschberger E, Croner RS and Stürzl M performed the literature analysis, discussed the data and contributed to the assembly of the manuscript; Britzen-Laurent N and Stürzl M wrote the manuscript.

Supported by German Research Foundation, No. DFG-KFO257 (sub-project 4), No. SFB796 (sub-project B9), No. DFG-BR5196, and No. FOR2438 (sub-project 2); and Interdisciplinary Center for Clinical Research (IZKF) of the Clinical Center Erlangen.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare having no conflict-of-interests for this article.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dr. Michael Stürzl, Professor, Division of Molecular and Experimental Surgery, Department of Surgery, University Medical Center Erlangen, Translational Research Center, Friedrich-Alexander University of Erlangen-Nuremberg, Schwabachanlage 12, 91054 Erlangen, Germany. michael.stuerzl@uk-erlangen.de
Telephone: +49-913185-39520
Fax: +49-913185-39523

Received: April 4, 2016
Peer-review started: April 5, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 25, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016
Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Guanylate-binding proteins (GBPs) are interferon-stimulated factors involved in the defense against cellular pathogens and inflammation. These proteins, particularly GBP-1, the most prominent member of the family, have been established as reliable markers of interferon-γ-activated cells in various diseases, including colorectal carcinoma (CRC) and inflammatory bowel diseases (IBDs). In CRC, GBP-1 expression is associated with a Th1-dominated angiostatic micromilieu and is correlated with a better outcome. Inhibition of tumor growth by GBP-1 is the result of its strong anti-angiogenic activity as well as its direct anti-tumorigenic effect on tumor cells. In IBD, GBP-1 mediates the anti-proliferative effects of interferon-γ on intestinal epithelial cells. In addition, it plays a protective role on the mucosa by preventing cell apoptosis, by inhibiting angiogenesis and by regulating the T-cell receptor signaling. These functions rely to a large extent on the ability of GBP-1 to interact with and remodel the actin cytoskeleton.

Key words: Guanylate-binding proteins; Colorectal carcinoma; Inflammatory bowel diseases; Interferon

Core tip: Guanylate-binding proteins (GBPs) are interferon-stimulated factors involved in the defense against cellular pathogens and inflammation. In addition, guanylate-binding proteins have been established as reliable markers of interferon-γ-activated cells in various diseases including colorectal carcinoma and inflammatory bowel diseases. The GBP-1 is the best characterized member of the family. For instance, the expression of GBP-1 has been associated with a better outcome in colorectal carcinoma. The inhibition of tumor growth by GBP-1 is due to its strong anti-angiogenic activity as well as its direct anti-tumorigenic effect on tumor cells. In inflammatory bowel diseases, on the one hand GBP-1 mediates the anti-proliferative effects of interferon-γ on intestinal epithelial cells, and on the other hand, it protects the mucosa by preventing cell apoptosis, by inhibiting angiogenesis and by regulating the T-cell receptor signaling. These functions rely to a large extent on the ability of GBP-1 to interact with and remodel the actin cytoskeleton.

Britzen-Laurent N, Herrmann C, Naschberger E, Croner RS, Stürzl M. Pathophysiological role of guanylate-binding proteins in gastrointestinal diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6434-6443 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6434.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6434

INTRODUCTION

Guanylate-binding proteins (GBPs) belong to the dynamin family of large GTPases and display two main particularities that distinguish them from small GTPases of the Ras superfamily. First, they hydrolyze GTP upon self-activation by oligomerization and therefore do not require the presence of GTPase-activating proteins (GAPs) or guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs)[1-3]. Second, they are inducible proteins expressed in response of various stimuli, mainly to type 1 and type 2 interferons (IFNs) and, to a lower extent, to the inflammatory cytokines interleukin (IL)-1β and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α[4,5]. Up to now, seven human GBPs (GBP-1 to -7) and eleven mouse GBPs (mGBP-1 to -11) have been described[6,7]. Most of the available knowledge is related to human GBP-1. The structure of GBP-1 has been resolved and comprises two domains: (1) a large globular α/β domain displaying the canonical GTPase sequences at the N-terminus and (2) a long C-terminal part organized in an index finger-like domain composed exclusively of α-helices (7-13, Figure 1)[8]. Because of the high sequence homology between all GBPs, their respective structures are considered to be similar. In addition, GBP-1, GBP-2 and GBP-5 are C-terminally prenylated, allowing their attachment to cellular membranes[9].

To date, biochemical as well as structural investigations have led to deeper insights into the molecular structure and enzymatic mechanism of human GBP-1. Dimer formation is induced by GTP binding leading to reorientation of a catalytic arginine side chain, thereby accelerating hydrolytic activity[1,10]. Moreover, the same catalytic machinery is employed to catalyze a second step of phosphate cleavage resulting in GMP as the major product[11,12]. While this is a unique feature among GTPases, another intriguing observation is the impact of this catalytic activity on changes in the C-terminal helical domain of GBP-1[2,13]. A salt bridge contact between the GTPase domain and the helical domain is switched such that a major reorientation of α-helices 12 and 13 allows for formation of a second contact area on the GBP-1 dimer resulting in association of the two α13 helices and thereby juxtaposition of the farnesyl groups attached to the C-termini[14]. Further biochemical experiments with farnesylated GBP-1 are required to disclose the role of this nucleotide hydrolysis-driven rearrangement for interaction with other GBP isoforms (see *e.g.,* ref. 9) and with membranous compartments.

Initially, GBPs were shown to be among the most highly induced proteins in human fibroblasts exposed to IFN-γ[4]. Subsequently, it was reported that GBP-1 expression can be induced *in vitro* by treatment with IFN-γ in many cell types including primary cells (endothelial cells, fibroblasts, keratinocytes, B-cells, T-cells and peripheral blood mononuclear cells), immortalized intestinal epithelial cells and several tumor cell lines[5,15]. In agreement with its induction by IFNs and inflammatory cytokines, GBP-1 has predominantly been detected *in vivo* in inflamed tissues associated with various diseases such as psoriasis, lupus erythematosus, adverse drug reactions and Kaposi's sarcoma[5,16,17]. Consequently, GBP-1 has been established as a robust marker of inflammation, specifically to detect activation of cells by IFN-γ at the single cell level in tissues[16].

In addition to their association with inflammation, GBPs participate in cell-autonomous defense against bacteria, protozoa and viruses[18]. Moreover, elevated expression of GBP-1, together with other GBPs, has been observed in the colons of patients with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) or in colorectal carcinoma (CRC)[15,19-21]. This review will focus on the pathophysiological roles of GBPs in CRC and IBD, and especially on GBP-1, the best described member of the GBP family to date.

CLINICAL RELEVANCE OF GBP EXPRESSION IN CRC AND IBD

GBP-1 is an independent positive prognostic factor in CRC

CRC is the third most frequent type of cancer in developed countries. The development of sporadic CRC has been considered the archetype of multistep carcinogenesis. Over the past two decades, major progress has been made in the characterization of CRC. New types of classifications have been proposed,

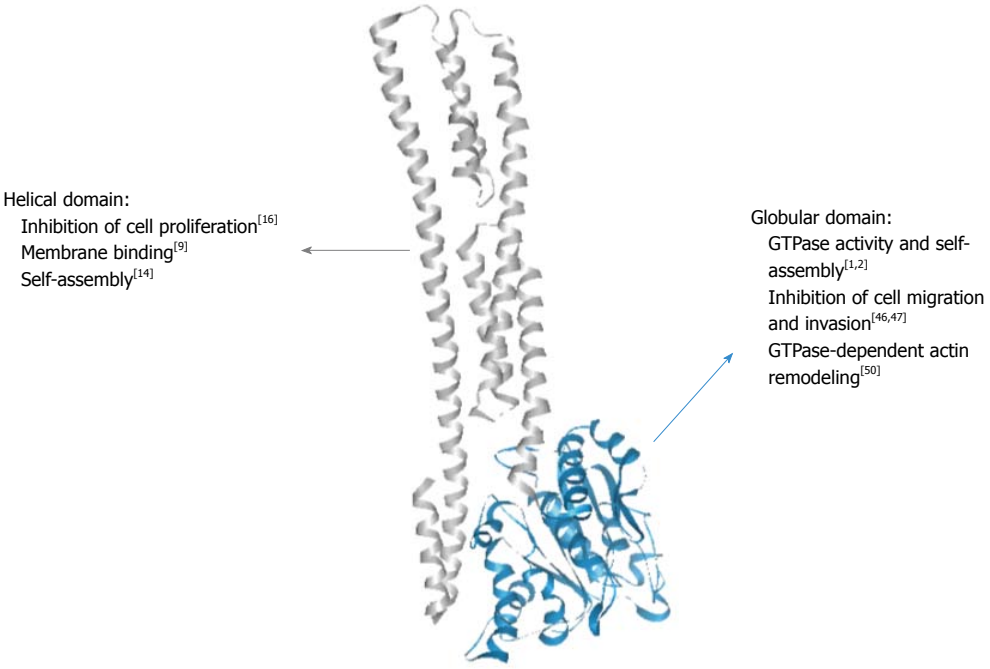


Figure 1 Structure-function relationships of guanylate-binding protein-1. The guanylate binding protein-1 can be roughly divided into two domains: a compact globular domain carrying the GTPase activity at the N-terminus (blue) and a long helical domain comprised of α-helices at the C-terminus (grey), which are responsible for different protein functions.

which have allowed prognoses to be refined, and have opened new perspectives for improving therapeutic decisions. Various kinds of molecular subtypes have been described including chromosomal instability, microsatellite instability and CpG island methylator phenotype[22-24]. In addition, gene expression profiles that correlate with prognosis have been identified. For instance, CRCs with a stem cell gene expression signature are associated with a poor prognosis[24,25]. Besides molecular classifications, the host's immune response has emerged as a powerful prognostic factor in CRC. Additionally, immune cell infiltration into the tumor and a polarized immune response have been shown to be of prognostic relevance. In particular, the presence of an active Th1 adaptive immune response in CRC correlates with a better outcome[26]. More precisely, the presence of cytotoxic and memory T-cells, together with the expression of Th1-associated factors (IFN-γ, IL-12 or IRF1), has been associated with a better prognosis in CRC[26,27]. In the meanwhile, such associations have been observed in a variety of solid tumors including breast, lung, ovarian and liver cancers[28]. Interestingly, molecular studies of CRCs also revealed the presence of an "inflammatory" gene expression signature enriched with interferon-stimulated genes (ISGs) and associated with improved prognosis[24,25]. Overall, the so-called Immunoscore has been shown to be better than the standard histo-pathological classification or the presence of microsatellite instability as a predictor of outcome for patients with CRC[26,29,30]. Expression of GBP-1, along with several other ISGs, has been detected in CRC[19,31]. Furthermore, a study involving 388 patients showed GBP-1 to be an independent prognostic marker in CRC, which correlates with prolonged 5-year cancer-specific survival[19]. This has subsequently been confirmed in a study of The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) network, which also found that the expression of GBP-1 and GBP-4 in CRC was associated with a less aggressive phenotype, including tumor stage, lymph node invasion and metastasis[32]. Of note, an association has been found between expressions of GBP-1 and GBP-2 and the regression of melanoma metastasis after immunotherapy[33]. Furthermore, GBP-1 participates in a signature of immune function genes associated with recurrence-free survival in breast cancer patients[34]. In addition, GBP-2 has been shown to be expressed in esophagus squamous cell carcinomas and in breast cancer, where it is associated with T-cell infiltration and a better prognosis[35,36]. Hence, expression of GBPs appears to be generally associated with a prognostically favorable immunological response to cancer. Specific evidence has been obtained that GBP-1 mediates the anti-tumorigenic effects induced by a Th1-dominated micromilieu.

GBP-1 is a marker for IFN-γ-induced cell activation in IBDs

IBDs comprise two main forms of chronic relapsing disorders, namely ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD)[37]. The pathogenesis of IBD is not yet fully understood, but it is generally believed to involve dysregulation of intestinal homeostasis, characterized by the loss of barrier function and an aberrant immune response leading to the loss of tolerance of enteric bacterial flora accompanied by acute inflammation[37,38]. Active IBD displays infiltration of the lamina propria by

Table 1 Expression and functions of guanylate-binding protein-1

GBP-1 expression	
Inflammatory bowel diseases	Expressed in UC and CD[15,20,21]
	Expression in epithelial cells, endothelial cells and immune cells[15,21]
Colorectal carcinoma	Expression in the stroma and partially in tumor cells[15,19]
	Associated with Th1-dominated angiostatic micromilieu and improved survival[19,31]
Functions of GBP-1	
Endothelial cells	Anti-angiogenic, inhibits proliferation, migration, invasion and spreading; protection against apoptosis[16,44,46,47,50]
Intestinal epithelial cells	Inhibits proliferation; protection against apoptosis[20,43]
Colon tumor cells	Inhibits proliferation, migration, invasion and tumor growth *in vivo*; no induction of apoptosis (but partially required)[9]
T-cells	Inhibition of spreading and early T-cell receptor signaling[54]

GBP: Guanylate-binding protein; UC: Ulcerative colitis; CD: Crohn's disease.

both innate and adaptive immune cells and increased local levels of cytokines[39-42]. Compared to healthy controls, specimens with active CD or UC show increased expression of GBP-1 at the RNA and protein levels[15,21,43]. In addition, GBP-1 mRNA expression correlated with the expression of IFN-γ in whole tissue samples, and GBP-1 expressing cells were found in the vicinity of IFN-γ-producing cells[21]. While UC has been considered as a Th2-mediated condition mostly driven by IL-13, Th1 cytokines such as IL-12 or IFN-γ have been described as primarily involved in CD. However, this paradigm has been revised and cytokines such as TNF-α, IFN-γ, IL-1, -6, -12 and -17 are considered to be involved in the pathogenesis of both diseases[42]. Accordingly, GBP-1 expression is also increased in both, and at similar levels (Table 1)[21]. In agreement with human data, elevated expression of GBP-1 was also detected in colonic tissues of mice undergoing colitis after treatment with dextran sodium sulfate (DSS)[21]. This increase was observed in both, acute and chronic DSS models and was associated with an elevation in IFN-γ tissue expression[21]. Hence, GBP-1 expression seems to be a useful marker for inflammation and IFN-γ-induced cell activation in IBD. Cytokines such as IFN-γ, TNF-α and IL-1β are not only involved in the recruitment and activation of immune cells but can also affect epithelial or endothelial cells, leading to an amplification of tissue damage and inflammation[39-42]. In IBD samples, GBP-1 expression was observed in infiltrating immune cells, in endothelial cells and in epithelial cells, confirming that IFN-γ indeed acts *in vivo* on both mesenchymal and epithelial cells[15,21].

GBP-1 FUNCTIONS IN STROMAL CELLS

GBP-1 mediates the anti-angiogenic effects of IFNs in CRC

Expression of GBP-1 has been detected in the stroma of CRCs[15,19]. In the course of tumorigenesis, the angiogenic switch allows tumors to grow beyond a critical size. In the tumor micro-environment, pro-angiogenic and anti-angiogenic factors co-exist and the resulting angiogenic balance determines the state of the vasculature. Based on the observation that the inflammatory cytokines IL-1β, TNF-α and IFN-γ inhibit proliferation and migration of endothelial cells, GBP-1 was identified by differential display RT-PCR as a gene induced by these angiostatic cytokines and repressed by the angiogenic factors VEGF and bFGF[16]. Subsequently, it has be shown that GBP-1 expression in tissues is closely associated with blood vessel endothelial cells that are exposed to these cytokines[5,16]. In agreement with these findings, in CRC, the expression of GBP-1 in vessels correlated with significantly repressed angiogenic activity and the presence of an angiostatic micro-environment, indicated by co-expression of the anti-angiogenic cytokines CXCL9, -10 and -11[19]. Because of its association with immune angiostasis in tissues *in vivo*, GBP-1 was investigated for directly exerting angiostatic activity. Indeed, it was shown to inhibit the proliferation of human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVECs) through its helical domain (Figure 1)[16]. It was also found to mediate the effects of IFN-α by protecting HUVECs from serum starvation-induced apoptosis[44]. Of note, in the same study, continuous exposure to IFN-α led to senescence of HUVECs. Unexpectedly, GBP-1 was shown to be secreted, however exclusively by endothelial cells[45]. As yet, the role of extracellular GBP-1 remains unknown. Interestingly, GBP-1 has been shown to inhibit the invasiveness and tube-forming capabilities of HUVECs by down-regulating MMP-1 expression[46]. This effect was found to be dependent on the GTPase activity of the protein. Furthermore, GBP-1 is able to inhibit migration and spreading of endothelial cells on a fibronectin matrix through expression of integrin-α4, indicating that its effect might depend on the extracelluar matrix composition of the surrounding micromilieu[47]. Mouse GBP-2 has similarly been shown to inhibit endothelial cell spreading[48,49]. Interestingly, GBP-1 has been shown to interact with other GBPs (GBP-2 to -5) and to recruit them in its own cellular compartment, suggesting that GBPs act in a cooperative manner and that GBP-1 is dominant over the other family members[9]. The effects of GBP-1 on cell migration, invasion and spreading can be explained by the fact that GBP-1 was found to bind β-actin[50]. More precisely, it has been found to mediate the IFN-γ-induced disruption of actin fibers in various tumor cell

lines and in endothelial cells[50]. The disintegration of actin fibers by GBP-1 occurred through direct binding between both proteins, both *in vivo* and *in vitro* using purified recombinant GBP-1 and actin[50]. The interaction with β-actin required both self-assembly and the GTPase activity of GBP-1[50]. Taken together, it has been shown that GBP-1 exerts a powerful anti-angiogenic role by directly inhibiting endothelial cell proliferation, migration, invasion and spreading, together with protecting cells against apoptosis, thus creating an angiostatic state for the vessels (Table 1 and Figure 2). Thereby, GBP-1 links anti-tumor immune response and inhibition of angiogenesis in CRC as a major mediator of the anti-angiogenic effect of IFNs.

Role of GBP-1 in IFN-induced vascular remodeling in IBD

As chronic IBD is established, the vascular system undergoes profound reorganization[51]. On the one hand, angiogenesis is induced through the production of VEGF. On the other hand, inflammatory stimuli activate endothelial cells, enhancing leukocyte binding, tissue infiltration and ultimately, chronic inflammation[52,53]. However, the resulting vasculature is dysfunctional. Expression of GBP-1 was observed in vascular cells and was associated with *in situ* IFN-γ expression in human IBD tissues and in DSS-induced mouse colitis samples, indicating that those vessels were in an anti-angiogenic state[21]. This was confirmed by the fact that neutralization of IFN-γ resulted in an increase in blood vessel density[21]. Hence, the angiostatic effects of IFN-γ mediated by GBP-1 seem to be a more general mechanism, because it also occurs in colitis. Of note, IFN-γ was found to increase vascular permeability in the same mouse colitis model. Thereby, IFN-γ is involved in establishing dysfunctional vasculature, potentially participating in the aggravation of tissue damage and in the increase of immune cell infiltration[21].

GBP-1 regulates T-cell receptor signaling

Expression of GBP-1 has been detected *in vitro* and *in vivo* in monocytes/macrophages and T-cells in response to IFN-γ[5,19,54]. In T-cells, GBP-1 has been found to mediate the interaction between early T-cell receptor signaling and the cytoskeleton[54]. More precisely, it was required for inhibiting T-cell spreading, down-regulating CD3 and CD45 at the cell surface, and decreasing IL-2 release. Its function in T-cells was mediated by interactions with the actin-regulating proteins plastin-2 and βII-spectrin[54]. Hence, GBP-1 might participate in a negative feedback loop in T-cells activated by IFN-γ resulting in reduced IL-2 expression during Th1 differentiation (Figure 2). Therefore, GBP-1 might prevent T-cells from over-activation, leading to a protective effect during IBD. It cannot be excluded that GBP-1 might also participate in T-cell anergy, which would result in a negative impact on the anti-tumor immune response in CRC. However, the overall impact of GBP-1 expression remains positive, which indicates that its effects on endothelial and tumor cells overcome the inhibitory functions in T-cells.

GBP-1 FUNCTIONS IN COLON EPITHELIAL AND TUMOR CELLS

GBP-1 exerts anti-tumorigenic effects in colon tumor cells

In CRC, GBP-1 expression is predominantly detected in the desmoplastic stroma. In about half the cases, GBP-1 expression is also detected in tumor cells[15]. This suggests that the stimulus responsible for GBP-1 expression, for instance IFN-γ, originates from infiltrating cells and that the tumor cells might have lost responsiveness to the respective factor and concomitantly the ability to express GBP-1. This suggests that the loss of GBP-1 expression may be a tumor escape mechanism fostered by the genetic and epigenetic instability of the cancer cells, which does not affect the adjacent stromal cells. In this framework, it is important to note that GBP-1, as shown for endothelial cells, can also inhibit proliferation, migration and invasion of CRC cell lines (Table 1, Figures 1 and 2)[15]. In addition, GBP-1 was able to reduce anchorage-independent growth and tumor growth in a mouse xenograft model[15]. Using RNA interference, it was confirmed that GBP-1 mediates the anti-proliferative, anti-migratory and anti-invasive effects of IFN-γ in CRC cell lines[15]. However, it did not induce apoptosis by itself, even if it was at least partially required for IFN-γ-induced apoptosis[15]. In this context GBP-1 must be regarded as a bona fide tumor suppressor gene. Nevertheless, its effects on tumor cells seem to be highly tumor type specific[55]. In accordance with its functions in CRC cells, GBP-1 has also been shown to inhibit mammary tumor growth in mice[56]. In contrast, GBP-1 expression has been associated with Paclitaxel resistance in ovarian cancer cell lines[57,58], docetaxel resistance of prostate cancer cells[59], and with radioresistance[60]. Other reports have shown that GBP-1 induces glioblastoma growth in mice through increased invasiveness but not proliferation of glioblastoma cells[61,62]. Similarly, it was found to induce invasion of oral squamous cell carcinoma cells[55]. Based on these findings it is clear that GBP-1 has anti-tumor functions in CRC but its activity may be converted to pro-tumorigenic functions in other tumor types. It remains to be determined in future studies whether this is dependent on specific cellular or micromilieu-derived co-factors or is partly the result of different experimental setups. Overall, GBP-1 has been shown to have a pleiotropic role in CRC, by mediating both the anti-angiogenic and anti-tumorigenic effects of IFN-γ.

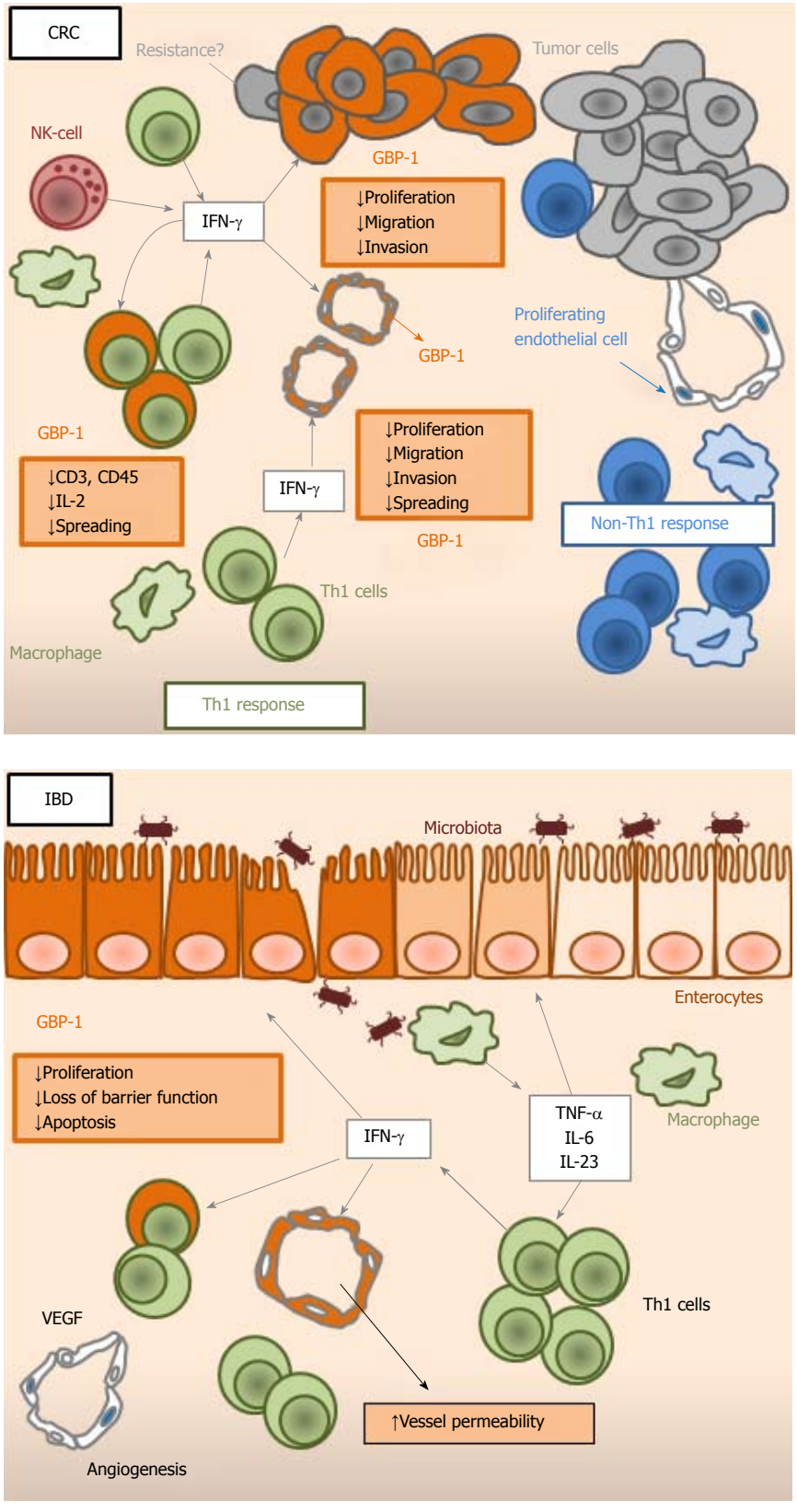


Figure 2 Role of guanylate-binding protein-1 in colorectal carcinoma and inflammatory bowel diseases. In colorectal carcinoma (CRC), guanylate-binding protein (GBP)-1 expression is associated with a Th1-dominated micromileu and results in an angiostatic vasculature. In CRC tumor cells, expression of GBP-1 induces an anti-tumorigenic phenotype. Absence of expression in tumor cells in a GBP-1-positive context indicates a mechanism of resistance. In T-cells, GBP-1 participates in the modulation of the T-cell receptor signaling pathway. In inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), GBP-1 expression is elevated in active disease and inhibits the proliferation of intestinal epithelial cells, thereby exerting a protective effect against the loss of barrier function and apoptosis. Here again, GBP-1 is associated with angiostasis and T-cell regulation. INF: Interferon; IL: Interleukin.

GBP-1 inhibits the proliferation of intestinal epithelial cells

Expression of GBP-1 in intestinal epithelial cells has been observed in human colon specimens of IBD and in the inflamed colonic mucosa of DSS-treated mice[15,21,43]. In addition, immortalized human primary colon epithelial cells are able to express GBP-1 *in vitro* after treatment with IFN-γ, IL-1β or TNF-α[15]. When induced by IFN-γ/TNF-α, GBP-1 was described as inhibiting cell proliferation of the colonic epithelial cell lines SKCO15 and T84, which harbor an enterocyte-stereotypic differentiation, are polarized and therefore are considered valuable models for studying intestinal epithelial cells[43]. In these cell lines, GBP-1 was able to reduce β-catenin protein levels and β-catenin serine 552 phosphorylation in a proteasome-independent mechanism[43]. On the other hand, it was found to have a protective effect against IFN-γ-induced apoptosis and loss of barrier function in the colonic epithelium (Figure 2)[20].

GBPS AND CELLULAR RESPONSE TO INTESTINAL PATHOGENS

Several human and mouse GBPs have been shown to be involved in the response against intracellular pathogens including viruses such as vesicular stomatitis virus, encephalomyocarditis virus, hepatitis C virus, influenza A virus, dengue virus, swine fever virus and human immunodeficiency virus-1[63-69]. GBPs have also been shown to mediate host's defense against bacterial and mycobacterial infectious agents such as *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Chlamydia trachomatis, Salmonella typhimurium*, and *Mycobacterium bovis*[70-72]. Finally, GBPs are involved in intracellular immunity against *Toxoplasma gondii*[73]. In particular, GBP-1 has been shown to be up-regulated in a colon cell line after rotavirus infection[74]. Furthermore, GBP-1 was found to be up-regulated differently in two mouse strains after colonization with commensal bacteria, and it is thought to participate, together with other interferon-stimulated genes, to host-specific responses to commensal gut bacteria, thereby shaping the microbiota[75]. Actually, IFN-α expression induced by commensal nonpathogenic *Escherichia coli* in the intestine of newborn mice was shown to mediate GBP-1 expression[76]. Furthermore, GBP-1 was required for the anti-apoptotic effects of IFN-α in immature human colon epithelia treated with staurosporine, indicating that it might play a role in the prevention of intestinal epithelial apoptosis induced by commensal bacteria[76].

CONCLUSION

Overall, expression of GBPs and in particular GBP-1 has been shown to be associated with infection by intracellular pathogens, Th1-driven inflammation during IBD and the Th1-dominated anti-tumor immune response in CRC. Additionally, GBP-1 exerts strong anti-proliferative, anti-migratory and anti-invasive effects on various cell types, resulting in the creation of angiostatic vasculature in IBD and CRC and in direct anti-tumorigenic effects on CRC cells.

REFERENCES

1 **Ghosh A**, Praefcke GJ, Renault L, Wittinghofer A, Herrmann C. How guanylate-binding proteins achieve assembly-stimulated processive cleavage of GTP to GMP. *Nature* 2006; **440**: 101-104 [PMID: 16511497]

2 **Vöpel T**, Syguda A, Britzen-Laurent N, Kunzelmann S, Lüdemann MB, Dovengerds C, Stürzl M, Herrmann C. Mechanism of GTPase-activity-induced self-assembly of human guanylate binding protein 1. *J Mol Biol* 2010; **400**: 63-70 [PMID: 20450919]

3 **Wehner M**, Kunzelmann S, Herrmann C. The guanine cap of human guanylate-binding protein 1 is responsible for dimerization and self-activation of GTP hydrolysis. *FEBS J* 2012; **279**: 203-210 [PMID: 22059445 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-4658.2011.08415.x]

4 **Cheng YS**, Colonno RJ, Yin FH. Interferon induction of fibroblast proteins with guanylate binding activity. *J Biol Chem* 1983; **258**: 7746-7750 [PMID: 6305951]

5 **Lubeseder-Martellato C**, Guenzi E, Jörg A, Töpolt K, Naschberger E, Kremmer E, Zietz C, Tschachler E, Hutzler P, Schwemmle M, Matzen K, Grimm T, Ensoli B, Stürzl M. Guanylate-binding protein-1 expression is selectively induced by inflammatory cytokines and is an activation marker of endothelial cells during inflammatory diseases. *Am J Pathol* 2002; **161**: 1749-1759 [PMID: 12414522]

6 **Olszewski MA**, Gray J, Vestal DJ. In silico genomic analysis of the human and murine guanylate-binding protein (GBP) gene clusters. *J Interferon Cytokine Res* 2006; **26**: 328-352 [PMID: 16689661 DOI: 10.1089/jir.2006.26.328]

7 **Degrandi D**, Konermann C, Beuter-Gunia C, Kresse A, Würthner J, Kurig S, Beer S, Pfeffer K. Extensive characterization of IFN-induced GTPases mGBP1 to mGBP10 involved in host defense. *J Immunol* 2007; **179**: 7729-7740 [PMID: 18025219]

8 **Prakash B**, Praefcke GJ, Renault L, Wittinghofer A, Herrmann C. Structure of human guanylate-binding protein 1 representing a unique class of GTP-binding proteins. *Nature* 2000; **403**: 567-571 [PMID: 10676968]

9 **Britzen-Laurent N**, Bauer M, Berton V, Fischer N, Syguda A, Reipschläger S, Naschberger E, Herrmann C, Stürzl M. Intracellular trafficking of guanylate-binding proteins is regulated by heterodimerization in a hierarchical manner. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e14246 [PMID: 21151871 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0014246]

10 **Praefcke GJ**, Kloep S, Benscheid U, Lilie H, Prakash B, Herrmann C. Identification of residues in the human guanylate-binding protein 1 critical for nucleotide binding and cooperative GTP hydrolysis. *J Mol Biol* 2004; **344**: 257-269 [PMID: 15504415]

11 **Kunzelmann S**, Praefcke GJ, Herrmann C. Transient kinetic investigation of GTP hydrolysis catalyzed by interferon-gamma-induced hGBP1 (human guanylate binding protein 1). *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 28627-28635 [PMID: 16873363]

12 **Rani A**, Pandita E, Rahman S, Deep S, Sau AK. Insight into temperature dependence of GTPase activity in human guanylate binding protein-1. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e40487 [PMID: 22859948 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0040487]

13 **Vöpel T**, Kunzelmann S, Herrmann C. Nucleotide dependent cysteine reactivity of hGBP1 uncovers a domain movement during GTP hydrolysis. *FEBS Lett* 2009; **583**: 1923-1927 [PMID: 19463820 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2009.05.027]

14 **Vöpel T**, Hengstenberg CS, Peulen TO, Ajaj Y, Seidel CA, Herrmann C, Klare JP. Triphosphate induced dimerization of human guanylate binding protein 1 involves association of the C-terminal helices: a joint double electron-electron resonance and FRET study. *Biochemistry* 2014; **53**: 4590-4600 [PMID: 24991938 DOI: 10.1021/bi500524u]

15 **Britzen-Laurent N**, Lipnik K, Ocker M, Naschberger E, Schellerer VS, Croner RS, Vieth M, Waldner M, Steinberg P, Hohenadl C, Stürzl M. GBP-1 acts as a tumor suppressor in colorectal cancer cells. *Carcinogenesis* 2013; **34**: 153-162 [PMID: 23042300 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgs310]

16 **Guenzi E**, Töpolt K, Cornali E, Lubeseder-Martellato C, Jörg A, Matzen K, Zietz C, Kremmer E, Nappi F, Schwemmle M, Hohenadl C, Barillari G, Tschachler E, Monini P, Ensoli B, Stürzl M. The helical domain of GBP-1 mediates the inhibition of endothelial cell proliferation by inflammatory cytokines. *EMBO J* 2001; **20**: 5568-5577 [PMID: 11598000]

17 **Naschberger E**, Wenzel J, Kretz CC, Herrmann M, Stürzl M, Kuhn A. Increased expression of guanylate binding protein-1 in lesional skin of patients with cutaneous lupus erythematosus. *Exp Dermatol* 2011; **20**: 102-106 [PMID: 21121962 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0625.2010.01160.x]

18 **MacMicking JD**. Interferon-inducible effector mechanisms in cell-autonomous immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2012; **12**: 367-382 [PMID: 22531325 DOI: 10.1038/nri3210]

19 **Naschberger E**, Croner RS, Merkel S, Dimmler A, Tripal P, Amann KU, Kremmer E, Brueckl WM, Papadopoulos T, Hohenadl C, Hohenberger W, Stürzl M. Angiostatic immune reaction in colorectal carcinoma: Impact on survival and perspectives for antiangiogenic therapy. *Int J Cancer* 2008; **123**: 2120-2129 [PMID: 18697200 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.23764]

20 **Schnoor M**, Betanzos A, Weber DA, Parkos CA. Guanylate-binding protein-1 is expressed at tight junctions of intestinal epithelial cells in response to interferon-gamma and regulates barrier function through effects on apoptosis. *Mucosal Immunol* 2009; **2**: 33-42 [PMID: 19079332]

21 **Haep L**, Britzen-Laurent N, Weber TG, Naschberger E, Schaefer A, Kremmer E, Foersch S, Vieth M, Scheuer W, Wirtz S, Waldner M, Stürzl M. Interferon Gamma Counteracts the Angiogenic Switch and Induces Vascular Permeability in Dextran Sulfate Sodium Colitis in Mice. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2015; **21**: 2360-2371 [PMID: 26164664 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000490]

22 **Laghi L**, Malesci A. Microsatellite instability and therapeutic consequences in colorectal cancer. *Dig Dis* 2012; **30**: 304-309 [PMID: 22722556 DOI: 10.1159/000337003]

23 **Ogino S**, Nosho K, Kirkner GJ, Kawasaki T, Meyerhardt JA, Loda M, Giovannucci EL, Fuchs CS. CpG island methylator phenotype, microsatellite instability, BRAF mutation and clinical outcome in colon cancer. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 90-96 [PMID: 18832519 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.155473]

24 **Sadanandam A**, Lyssiotis CA, Homicsko K, Collisson EA, Gibb WJ, Wullschleger S, Ostos LC, Lannon WA, Grotzinger C, Del Rio M, Lhermitte B, Olshen AB, Wiedenmann B, Cantley LC, Gray JW, Hanahan D. A colorectal cancer classification system that associates cellular phenotype and responses to therapy. *Nat Med* 2013; **19**: 619-625 [PMID: 23584089 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3175]

25 **Sadanandam A**, Wang X, de Sousa E Melo F, Gray JW, Vermeulen L, Hanahan D, Medema JP. Reconciliation of classification systems defining molecular subtypes of colorectal cancer: interrelationships and clinical implications. *Cell Cycle* 2014; **13**: 353-357 [PMID: 24406433 DOI: 10.4161/cc.27769]

26 **Galon J**, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pagès C, Tosolini M, Camus M, Berger A, Wind P, Zinzindohoué F, Bruneval P, Cugnenc PH, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Pagès F. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. *Science* 2006; **313**: 1960-1964 [PMID: 17008531 DOI: 10.1126/science.1129139]

27 **Tosolini M**, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Fredriksen T, Mauger S, Bindea G, Berger A, Bruneval P, Fridman WH, Pagès F, Galon J. Clinical impact of different classes of infiltrating T cytotoxic and helper cells (Th1, th2, treg, th17) in patients with colorectal cancer. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 1263-1271 [PMID: 21303976]

28 **Fridman WH**, Pagès F, Sautès-Fridman C, Galon J. The immune contexture in human tumours: impact on clinical outcome. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2012; **12**: 298-306 [PMID: 22419253]

29 **Galon J**, Pagès F, Marincola FM, Thurin M, Trinchieri G, Fox BA, Gajewski TF, Ascierto PA. The immune score as a new possible approach for the classification of cancer. *J Transl Med* 2012; **10**: 1 [PMID: 22214470 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-10-1]

30 **Mlecnik B**, Bindea G, Angell HK, Maby P, Angelova M, Tougeron D, Church SE, Lafontaine L, Fischer M, Fredriksen T, Sasso M, Bilocq AM, Kirilovsky A, Obenauf AC, Hamieh M, Berger A, Bruneval P, Tuech JJ, Sabourin JC, Le Pessot F, Mauillon J, Rafii A, Laurent-Puig P, Speicher MR, Trajanoski Z, Michel P, Sesboüe R, Frebourg T, Pagès F, Valge-Archer V, Latouche JB, Galon J. Integrative Analyses of Colorectal Cancer Show Immunoscore Is a Stronger Predictor of Patient Survival Than Microsatellite Instability. *Immunity* 2016; **44**: 698-711 [PMID: 26982367 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.02.025]

31 **Grenz S**, Naschberger E, Merkel S, Britzen-Laurent N, Schaal U, Konrad A, Aigner M, Rau TT, Hartmann A, Croner RS, Hohenberger W, Stürzl M. IFN-γ-driven intratumoral microenvironment exhibits superior prognostic effect compared with an IFN-α-driven microenvironment in patients with colon carcinoma. *Am J Pathol* 2013; **183**: 1897-1909 [PMID: 24121019 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2013.08.025]

32 **Cancer Genome Atlas Network**. Comprehensive molecular characterization of human colon and rectal cancer. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 330-337 [PMID: 22810696]

33 **Carretero R**, Wang E, Rodriguez AI, Reinboth J, Ascierto ML, Engle AM, Liu H, Camacho FM, Marincola FM, Garrido F, Cabrera T. Regression of melanoma metastases after immunotherapy is associated with activation of antigen presentation and interferon-mediated rejection genes. *Int J Cancer* 2012; **131**: 387-395 [PMID: 21964766 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.26471]

34 **Ascierto ML**, Kmieciak M, Idowu MO, Manjili R, Zhao Y, Grimes M, Dumur C, Wang E, Ramakrishnan V, Wang XY, Bear HD, Marincola FM, Manjili MH. A signature of immune function genes associated with recurrence-free survival in breast cancer patients. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2012; **131**: 871-880 [PMID: 21479927 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-011-1470-x]

35 **Guimarães DP**, Oliveira IM, de Moraes E, Paiva GR, Souza DM, Barnas C, Olmedo DB, Pinto CE, Faria PA, De Moura Gallo CV, Small IA, Ferreira CG, Hainaut P. Interferon-inducible guanylate binding protein (GBP)-2: a novel p53-regulated tumor marker in esophageal squamous cell carcinomas. *Int J Cancer* 2009; **124**: 272-279 [PMID: 19003964 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.23944]

36 **Godoy P**, Cadenas C, Hellwig B, Marchan R, Stewart J, Reif R, Lohr M, Gehrmann M, Rahnenführer J, Schmidt M, Hengstler JG. Interferon-inducible guanylate binding protein (GBP2) is associated with better prognosis in breast cancer and indicates an efficient T cell response. *Breast Cancer* 2014; **21**: 491-499 [PMID: 23001506 DOI: 10.1007/s12282-012-0404-8]

37 **Zhang YZ**, Li YY. Inflammatory bowel disease: pathogenesis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 91-99 [PMID: 24415861 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i1.91]

38 **Wallace KL**, Zheng LB, Kanazawa Y, Shih DQ. Immunopathology of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 6-21 [PMID: 24415853 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i1.6]

39 **Sanchez-Munoz F**, Dominguez-Lopez A, Yamamoto-Furusho JK. Role of cytokines in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 4280-4288 [PMID: 18666314]

40 **Neurath MF**. Cytokines in inflammatory bowel disease. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2014; **14**: 329-342 [PMID: 24751956 DOI: 10.1038/nri3661]

41 **Geremia A**, Biancheri P, Allan P, Corazza GR, Di Sabatino A. Innate and adaptive immunity in inflammatory bowel disease. *Autoimmun Rev* 2014; **13**: 3-10 [PMID: 23774107 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2013.06.004]

42 **Bouguen G**, Chevaux JB, Peyrin-Biroulet L. Recent advances in cytokines: therapeutic implications for inflammatory bowel diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 547-556 [PMID: 21350703 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i5.547]

43 **Capaldo CT**, Beeman N, Hilgarth RS, Nava P, Louis NA, Naschberger E, Stürzl M, Parkos CA, Nusrat A. IFN-γ and TNF-α-induced GBP-1 inhibits epithelial cell proliferation through

suppression of β-catenin/TCF signaling. *Mucosal Immunol* 2012; **5**: 681-690 [PMID: 22692453]
44 **Pammer J**, Reinisch C, Birner P, Pogoda K, Sturzl M, Tschachler E. Interferon-alpha prevents apoptosis of endothelial cells after short-term exposure but induces replicative senescence after continuous stimulation. *Lab Invest* 2006; **86**: 997-1007 [PMID: 16894355 DOI: 10.1038/labinvest.3700461]
45 **Naschberger E**, Lubeseder-Martellato C, Meyer N, Gessner R, Kremmer E, Gessner A, Stürzl M. Human guanylate binding protein-1 is a secreted GTPase present in increased concentrations in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with bacterial meningitis. *Am J Pathol* 2006; **169**: 1088-1099 [PMID: 16936281]
46 **Guenzi E**, Töpolt K, Lubeseder-Martellato C, Jörg A, Naschberger E, Benelli R, Albini A, Stürzl M. The guanylate binding protein-1 GTPase controls the invasive and angiogenic capability of endothelial cells through inhibition of MMP-1 expression. *EMBO J* 2003; **22**: 3772-3782 [PMID: 12881412]
47 **Weinländer K**, Naschberger E, Lehmann MH, Tripal P, Paster W, Stockinger H, Hohenadl C, Stürzl M. Guanylate binding protein-1 inhibits spreading and migration of endothelial cells through induction of integrin alpha4 expression. *FASEB J* 2008; **22**: 4168-4178 [PMID: 18697840 DOI: 10.1096/fj.08-107524]
48 **Balasubramanian S**, Messmer-Blust AF, Jeyaratnam JA, Vestal DJ. Role of GTP binding, isoprenylation, and the C-terminal α-helices in the inhibition of cell spreading by the interferon-induced GTPase, mouse guanylate-binding protein-2. *J Interferon Cytokine Res* 2011; **31**: 291-298 [PMID: 20950129 DOI: 10.1089/jir.2010.0056]
49 **Messmer-Blust AF**, Balasubramanian S, Gorbacheva VY, Jeyaratnam JA, Vestal DJ. The interferon-gamma-induced murine guanylate-binding protein-2 inhibits rac activation during cell spreading on fibronectin and after platelet-derived growth factor treatment: role for phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase. *Mol Biol Cell* 2010; **21**: 2514-2528 [PMID: 20505078]
50 **Ostler N**, Britzen-Laurent N, Liebl A, Naschberger E, Lochnit G, Ostler M, Forster F, Kunzelmann P, Ince S, Supper V, Praefcke GJ, Schubert DW, Stockinger H, Herrmann C, Stürzl M. Gamma interferon-induced guanylate binding protein 1 is a novel actin cytoskeleton remodeling factor. *Mol Cell Biol* 2014; **34**: 196-209 [PMID: 24190970 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.00664-13]
51 **Cromer WE**, Mathis JM, Granger DN, Chaitanya GV, Alexander JS. Role of the endothelium in inflammatory bowel diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 578-593 [PMID: 21350707 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i5.578]
52 **Danese S**, Sans M, de la Motte C, Graziani C, West G, Phillips MH, Pola R, Rutella S, Willis J, Gasbarrini A, Fiocchi C. Angiogenesis as a novel component of inflammatory bowel disease pathogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 2060-2073 [PMID: 16762629 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.03.054]
53 **Cromer WE**, Ganta CV, Patel M, Traylor J, Kevil CG, Alexander JS, Mathis JM. VEGF-A isoform modulation in an preclinical TNBS model of ulcerative colitis: protective effects of a VEGF164b therapy. *J Transl Med* 2013; **11**: 207 [PMID: 24020796 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-11-207]
54 **Forster F**, Paster W, Supper V, Schatzlmaier P, Sunzenauer S, Ostler N, Saliba A, Eckerstorfer P, Britzen-Laurent N, Schütz G, Schmid JA, Zlabinger GJ, Naschberger E, Stürzl M, Stockinger H. Guanylate binding protein 1-mediated interaction of T cell antigen receptor signaling with the cytoskeleton. *J Immunol* 2014; **192**: 771-781 [PMID: 24337748 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1300377]
55 **Yu CJ**, Chang KP, Chang YJ, Hsu CW, Liang Y, Yu JS, Chi LM, Chang YS, Wu CC. Identification of guanylate-binding protein 1 as a potential oral cancer marker involved in cell invasion using omics-based analysis. *J Proteome Res* 2011; **10**: 3778-3788 [PMID: 21714544 DOI: 10.1021/pr2004133]
56 **Lipnik K**, Naschberger E, Gonin-Laurent N, Kodajova P, Petznek H, Rungaldier S, Astigiano S, Ferrini S, Stürzl M, Hohenadl C. Interferon gamma-induced human guanylate binding protein 1 inhibits mammary tumor growth in mice. *Mol Med* 2010; **16**: 177-187 [PMID: 20454519 DOI: 10.2119/molmed.2009.00172]
57 **Duan Z**, Foster R, Brakora KA, Yusuf RZ, Seiden MV. GBP1 overexpression is associated with a paclitaxel resistance phenotype. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2006; **57**: 25-33 [PMID: 16028104 DOI: 10.1007/s00280-005-0026-3]
58 **De Donato M**, Mariani M, Petrella L, Martinelli E, Zannoni GF, Vellone V, Ferrandina G, Shahabi S, Scambia G, Ferlini C. Class III β-tubulin and the cytoskeletal gateway for drug resistance in ovarian cancer. *J Cell Physiol* 2012; **227**: 1034-1041 [PMID: 21520077 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.22813]
59 **Desarnaud F**, Geck P, Parkin C, Carpinito G, Makarovskiy AN. Gene expression profiling of the androgen independent prostate cancer cells demonstrates complex mechanisms mediating resistance to docetaxel. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2011; **11**: 204-212 [PMID: 21057205]
60 **Fukumoto M**, Amanuma T, Kuwahara Y, Shimura T, Suzuki M, Mori S, Kumamoto H, Saito Y, Ohkubo Y, Duan Z, Sano K, Oguchi T, Kainuma K, Usami S, Kinoshita K, Lee I, Fukumoto M. Guanine nucleotide-binding protein 1 is one of the key molecules contributing to cancer cell radioresistance. *Cancer Sci* 2014; **105**: 1351-1359 [PMID: 25098609 DOI: 10.1111/cas.12489]
61 **Li M**, Mukasa A, Inda MM, Zhang J, Chin L, Cavenee W, Furnari F. Guanylate binding protein 1 is a novel effector of EGFR-driven invasion in glioblastoma. *J Exp Med* 2011; **208**: 2657-2673 [PMID: 22162832]
62 **Lan Q**, Wang A, Cheng Y, Mukasa A, Ma J, Hong L, Yu S, Sun L, Huang Q, Purow B, Li M. Guanylate binding protein-1 mediates EGFRvIII and promotes glioblastoma growth in vivo but not in vitro. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 9680-9691 [PMID: 26848767 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.7109]
63 **Itsui Y**, Sakamoto N, Kakinuma S, Nakagawa M, Sekine-Osajima Y, Tasaka-Fujita M, Nishimura-Sakurai Y, Suda G, Karakama Y, Mishima K, Yamamoto M, Watanabe T, Ueyama M, Funaoka Y, Azuma S, Watanabe M. Antiviral effects of the interferon-induced protein guanylate binding protein 1 and its interaction with the hepatitis C virus NS5B protein. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1727-1737 [PMID: 19821486 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23195]
64 **Anderson SL**, Carton JM, Lou J, Xing L, Rubin BY. Interferon-induced guanylate binding protein-1 (GBP-1) mediates an antiviral effect against vesicular stomatitis virus and encephalomyocarditis virus. *Virology* 1999; **256**: 8-14 [PMID: 10087221]
65 **Tietzel I**, El-Haibi C, Carabeo RA. Human guanylate binding proteins potentiate the anti-chlamydia effects of interferon-gamma. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e6499 [PMID: 19652711 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0006499]
66 **Pan W**, Zuo X, Feng T, Shi X, Dai J. Guanylate-binding protein 1 participates in cellular antiviral response to dengue virus. *Virol J* 2012; **9**: 292 [PMID: 23186538 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422x-9-292]
67 **Zhu Z**, Shi Z, Yan W, Wei J, Shao D, Deng X, Wang S, Li B, Tong G, Ma Z. Nonstructural protein 1 of influenza A virus interacts with human guanylate-binding protein 1 to antagonize antiviral activity. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e55920 [PMID: 23405236 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0055920]
68 **Li LF**, Yu J, Li Y, Wang J, Li S, Zhang L, Xia SL, Yang Q, Wang X, Yu S, Luo Y, Sun Y, Zhu Y, Munir M, Qiu HJ. Guanylate-Binding Protein 1, an Interferon-Induced GTPase, Exerts an Antiviral Activity against Classical Swine Fever Virus Depending on Its GTPase Activity. *J Virol* 2016; **90**: 4412-4426 [PMID: 26889038 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.02718-15]
69 **Krapp C**, Hotter D, Gawanbacht A, McLaren PJ, Kluge SF, Stürzel CM, Mack K, Reith E, Engelhart S, Ciuffi A, Hornung V, Sauter D, Telenti A, Kirchhoff F. Guanylate Binding Protein (GBP) 5 Is an Interferon-Inducible Inhibitor of HIV-1 Infectivity. *Cell Host Microbe* 2016; **19**: 504-514 [PMID: 26996307 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2016.02.019]
70 **Kim BH**, Shenoy AR, Kumar P, Das R, Tiwari S, MacMicking JD. A family of IFN-γ-inducible 65-kD GTPases protects against bacterial infection. *Science* 2011; **332**: 717-721 [PMID: 21551061 DOI: 10.1126/science.1201711]
71 **Shenoy AR**, Wellington DA, Kumar P, Kassa H, Booth CJ, Cresswell P, MacMicking JD. GBP5 promotes NLRP3 inflammasome assembly and immunity in mammals. *Science* 2012;

336: 481-485 [PMID: 22461501 DOI: 10.1126/science.1217141]
72 **Al-Zeer MA**, Al-Younes HM, Lauster D, Abu Lubad M, Meyer TF. Autophagy restricts Chlamydia trachomatis growth in human macrophages via IFNG-inducible guanylate binding proteins. *Autophagy* 2013; **9**: 50-62 [PMID: 23086406 DOI: 10.4161/auto.22482]
73 **Selleck EM**, Fentress SJ, Beatty WL, Degrandi D, Pfeffer K, Virgin HW, Macmicking JD, Sibley LD. Guanylate-binding protein 1 (Gbp1) contributes to cell-autonomous immunity against Toxoplasma gondii. *PLoS Pathog* 2013; **9**: e1003320 [PMID: 23633952 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003320]
74 **Cuadras MA**, Feigelstock DA, An S, Greenberg HB. Gene expression pattern in Caco-2 cells following rotavirus infection. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 4467-4482 [PMID: 11932413]
75 **Brodziak F**, Meharg C, Blaut M, Loh G. Differences in mucosal gene expression in the colon of two inbred mouse strains after colonization with commensal gut bacteria. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e72317 [PMID: 23951309 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0072317]
76 **Mirpuri J**, Brazil JC, Berardinelli AJ, Nasr TR, Cooper K, Schnoor M, Lin PW, Parkos CA, Louis NA. Commensal Escherichia coli reduces epithelial apoptosis through IFN-alphaA-mediated induction of guanylate binding protein-1 in human and murine models of developing intestine. *J Immunol* 2010; **184**: 7186-7195 [PMID: 20483731 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0903116]

P- Reviewer: Arora Z, Larson BK **S- Editor**: Qi Y **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Wang CH

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6444

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6444-6455
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Management of psoriasis patients with hepatitis B or hepatitis C virus infection

Claudio Bonifati, Viviana Lora, Dario Graceffa, Lorenzo Nosotti

Claudio Bonifati, Viviana Lora, Dario Graceffa, Center for the Study and Treatment of Psoriasis San Gallicano Dermatologic Institute, IRCCS, 00144 Rome, Italy

Lorenzo Nosotti, Gastrointestinal and Liver Department, National Institute for Health, Migration and Poverty, 00153 Rome, Italy

Author contributions: Bonifati C performed research and wrote the paper; Lora V, Graceffa D and Nosotti L contributed critical revision of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No conflict of interest.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Claudio Bonifati, MD, Center for the Study and Treatment of Psoriasis San Gallicano Dermatologic Institute, IRCCS, ViaElioChianesi 53, 00144 Rome, Italy. psoriasi@ifo.gov.it
Telephone: +39-6-52665140

Received: March 23, 2016
Peer-review started: March 23, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 25, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

The systemic therapies available for the management of Psoriasis (PsO) patients who cannot be treated with more conservative options, such as topical agents and/or phototherapy, with the exception of acitretin, can worsen or reactivate a chronic infection. Therefore, before administering immunosuppressive therapies with either conventional disease-modifying drugs (cDMARDs) or biological ones (bDMARDs) it is mandatory to screen patients for some infections, including hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV). In particular, the patients eligible to receive an immunosuppressive drug must be screened for the following markers: antibody to hepatitis B core, antibody to hepatitis B surface antigen (anti-HBsAg), HBsAg, and antibody to HCV (anti-HCV). In case HBV or HCV infection is diagnosed, a close collaboration with a consultant hepatologist is needed before and during an immunosuppressive therapy. Concerning therapy with immunosuppressive drugs in PsO patients with HBV or HCV infection, data exist mainly for cyclosporine a (CyA) or bDMARDs (etanercept, adalimumab, infliximab, ustekinumab). The natural history of HBV and HCV infection differs significantly as well as the effect of immunosuppression on the aforementioned infectious diseases. As a rule, in the case of active HBV infection, systemic immunosuppressive antipsoriatic therapies must be deferred until the infection is controlled with an adequate antiviral treatment. Inactive carriers need to receive antiviral prophylaxis 2-4 wk before starting immunosuppressive therapy, to be continued after 6-12 mo from its suspension. Due to the risk of HBV reactivation, these patients should be monitored monthly for the first 3 mo and then every 3 mo for HBV DNA load together with transaminases levels. Concerning the patients who are occult HBV carriers, the risk of HBV reactivation is very low. Therefore, these patients generally do not need antiviral prophylaxis and the sera HBsAg and transaminases dosing can be monitored every 3 mo. Concerning PsO patients with chronic HCV infection their management with immunosuppressive drugs is less problematic as compared to those infected by HBV.

In fact, HCV reactivation is an extremely rare event after administration of drugs such as CyA or tumor necrosis factor-α inhibitors. As a rule, these patients can be monitored measuring HCV RNA load, and ALT, aspartate transaminase, gamma-glutamyl-transferase, bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase, albumin and platelet every 3-6 mo. The present article provides an updated overview based on more recently reported data on monitoring and managing PsO patients who need systemic antipsoriatic treatment and have HBV or HCV infection as comorbidity.

Key words: Psoriasis; Therapy; Conventional disease-modifying drugs; Biological disease-modifying drugs; Hepatitis B virus infection; Hepatitis C virus infection

Core tip: At present, no guidelines give clear indications regarding the management of psoriasis patients with concomitant hepatitis B or hepatitis C virus infection who need a systemic treatment. On the basis of the available literature data, this paper provides an overview in this field from a practical point of view. A particular emphasis is given, with regard to the use of biological drugs, in the aforementioned patients.

Bonifati C, Lora V, Graceffa D, Nosotti L. Management of psoriasis patients with hepatitis B or hepatitis C virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6444-6455 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6444.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6444

Table 1 Therapies approved by European Medicines Agency for the treatment of psoriasis

	Recommended doses for adult patients
Conventional DMARDs	
Acitretine	0.25-1 mg/kg per day
Cyclosporin a	2-5 mg/kg per day
Methotrxate	10 mg to 25 mg per week
Biologic DMARDs	
Infliximab	5 mg/kg at 0, 2 and 6 wk followed by a maintenance regimen of 5 mg/kg every 8 wk
Adalimumab	80 mg initially, 40 mg on day 8, and 40 mg every other week thereafter
Etanercept	50 mg subcutaneously 2 times a week for 3 mo; (starting doses of 50 mg once a week have been shown to be effective); maintenance: 50 mg subcutaneously once a week
Golimumab[1,2]	50 mg once a month
Certolizumab pegol[1,2]	400 mg at 0, 2 and 4 wk followed by a maintenance regimen of 200 mg every other week
Ustekinumab[3]	45 mg initially, 45 mg at 4 wk, followed by a maintenance regimen of 45 mg every 12 wk[3]
Secukinumab[2]	300 mg at 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 wk followed by a maintenance regimen of 300 mg every 4 wk. For some patients, a dose of 150 mg may be acceptable

[1]Approved for adults with active psoriatic arthritis; [2]No data available regarding the administration of patients with HBV or HCV; [3]For patients weighing > 100 kg (220 lbs), the recommended dose is 90 mg initially, 90 mg at 4 wk, followed by a maintenance regimen of 90 mg every 12 wk. HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus.

INTRODUCTION

Psoriasis (PsO) is a frequent inflammatory immune-mediated disease affecting approximately 2% of the population[1]. Various clinical types of psoriasis exist. The plaque-type, also known as psoriasis vulgaris (PV), is the most common form (80%-90% of the cases)[2]. Typical lesions of PV are represented by monomorphic, sharply demarcated erythematous plaques covered by silvery lamellar scales. From 70% to 80% of patients are affected by limited forms of PsO and need to be treated only with topical and or photo-therapy[2]. Patients with more extensive PsO (> 10% of the body surface area) or psoriatic arthritis (PsA) are in greater need of treatment. For these patients prolonged systemic therapies are often necessary[2-4].

The therapeutic armamentarium available for the cure of PsO encompasses the conventional disease-modifying drugs (cDMARDs) and biological DMARDs (bDMARDs) (Table 1).

cDMARDS represent the first line of therapies in high-need psoriatic patients, while bDMARDs are for those subjects in whom cDMARDs have either failed, were not tolerated, or were contraindicated[5-8].

The choice of a systemic treatment depends upon several variables linked to both the characteristics of a given patient and those of the drug administered.

Regarding the systemic treatments currently available for PsO, with the exception of acitretin, all the other drugs listed in Table 1 are immunosuppressive[9-11]. Therefore, the guidelines presently available, although with some differences among them, recommend screening PsO patients for some common infectious diseases [human immunodeficiency virus, latent tuberculosis, hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV)] before starting an immunosuppressive treatment[12-18].

In particular, for HBV and HCV infection, screening for the following serologic markers should be evaluated: antibody to hepatitis B core (anti-HBc), antibody to hepatitis B surface antigen (anti-HBsAg), hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) and antibody to HCV (anti-HCV)[12,15,18,19]. In case of detection of one or more markers of HBV infection the patients must be evaluated for the presence of HBV DNA in the sera[20]. If anti-HCV serum is detected, HCV RNA should be searched for by a sensitive method[20]. The existence of either HBV or HCV infection or both in PsO patients eligible

for a systemic therapy poses a series of challenging problems. In particular, the administration of an immunosuppressive drug can alter the relationship between the host and the virus and worsen a coexisting chronic infection. Moreover, cDMARDs have different degrees of hepatic toxicity[9,11] therefore increasing the risk of worsening an already compromised liver as a consequence of the HBV or HCV infection.

PsO patients with infectious diseases such as HBV or HCV are excluded by the randomized controlled clinical trial. Therefore, data available on PsO patients with HBV or HCV infection, treated with systemic drugs, rely mainly on the reports of single cases or analyses of small groups of patients.

The aim of the present article is to describe how to manage and monitor PsO patients with HBV or HCV infection who need systemic antipsoriatic drugs.

MONITORING AND MANAGEMENT OF PsO PATIENTS TREATED WITH cDMARDs OR bDMARDs AND CONCOMITANT HBV INFECTION

The first aspect to consider in patients with severe PsO and concomitant HBV infection, is to define the phase of the latter disease[18-20] and the degree of possible liver damage. To do so, a close collaboration between dermatologist and hepatologist is needed[18-20].

As a rule, during the active phases of HBV infection, systemic anti-psoriatic therapies should be deferred. After an adequate control of infection, by means of anti HBV drugs is obtained[18-21], therapies should be started. Active HBV infection includes different phases[22-24] not necessarily sequential, such as: (1) acute infection (defined as new-onset HBV infection that may or may not be icteric or symptomatic); and (2) chronic (defined as the persistence of HBsAg for six months or more) and encompassing different phases (immune-tolerant, HbeAg-positive immune-active, HBeAg-negative immune reactivation).

Acitretin is the only drug that could be administered during the active phases of HBV infection. However, the administration of said drug should be reserved only for selected cases without a severe impairment of liver function.

In daily clinical practice the more frequent scenarios that can be encountered are represented by patients with serological markers indicative of a previous exposure to HBV, with low or undetectable viral load. In particular, these subjects can be in one of the following infectious phases: (1) inactive HBV infection [serum HBV DNA < 2000 IU/mL, normal alanin aminotransferase (ALT) levels, HBsAg present, antibody to hepatitis B envelope antigen (anti-HBeAg)] present, minimal liver necroinflammation but variable fibrosis); (2) occult HBV infection (serum HBV DNA < 200 IU/mL or undetectable, HbsAg negative, anti-HBc positive, anti-HBs negative); and (3) resolved HBV infection [(rHBV); anti-HBs positive ± anti-HBc]. Some confusion exists regarding the terms "occult carrier" and "rHBV". In fact, some Authors define as "occult carriers" (or "potential occult carriers") those patients who are indicated by other authors as rHBV and vice versa[22-27]. In this paper, the terms will be used following the above reported classification. The patients, whether inactive or occult carriers or with rHBV, can be at risk of HBV reactivation (defined as the sudden increase in HBV replication) after starting an immunosuppressive therapy[28]. As expected, the risk is significantly greater in the inactive carriers as compared to occult ones. Even more rare is the case of viral reactivation in rHBV[29]. The possible occurrence of one of the three previously mentioned infectious phases in a given PsO patient, raises some problems regarding their therapeutic management. In particular: (1) which drug can be safely administered? (2) which patients need anti HBV prophylaxis to prevent HBV reactivation? And (3) which serological markers should be monitored after an antipsoriatic therapy is started?

To answer these questions the cDMARDs and bDMARDs must be analyzed separately.

cDMARDs

Acitretin: Acitretin administration is considered, due to its potential hepatotoxicity, a relative contraindication in hepatitis resulting from viral infections[18]. However, acitretin (preferably in association with ultraviolet B therapy) can be a possible option in those subjects without significant signs of liver damage as revealed by serological [ALT, aspartate transaminase (AST), gamma-glutamyl-transferase (GGT), bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase] and instrumental (ultrasonography, fibroscan) methods. Unfortunately, the effectiveness of acitretin as monotherapy and its side-effects (teratogenicity, mucosal dryness, hypertriglyceridemia) other than the potential hepatic toxicity[30] limits its use in many patients.

Cyclosporin a: The current dermatologic guidelines on the management of psoriatic disease do not give clear indications regarding the use of cyclosporin a (CyA) in patients with PsO and concomitant HBV infection[18]. The only reports of HBV reactivation concern severe immunosuppressed subjects such as renal transplant recipients and hematological patients[31,32].

In a cohort of patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA) who were anti-HBc positive and/or anti-HBs positive (defined by the Authors as resolved HBV infection) treated with either cDMARDs and or bDMARDs, CyA did not result associated with an activation of HBV infection[33]. However, the potential risks of HBV reactivation should not be underestimated also using the relatively low doses of CyA as those usually given to PsO patients. Lacking clear indications, and on the

Table 2 Diagnosis and distribution of patients treated with tumor necrosis factor-α inhibitors according to the hepatitis B virus serological profile

Ref.	Diagnosis, *n*	Inactive carriers (HBsAg$^+$), *n*	Occult carriers or resolved HBV (anti-HBc$^+$, anti-HBs$^-$ or anti-HBs ± anti-HBc), *n*	Prophylaxis[2], *n*	Reactivation, *n*
Charpin *et al*[42]	PsA, 5	0	5	0	0
Prestinari *et al*[43]	PsO, 1	0	1	0	0
Nosotti *et al*[44]	PsO, 4; PsA, 3	1	6	1 (Lamivudine)	0
Caporali *et al*[45]	PsA, 4	0	4	0	0
Kim *et al*[46]	PsA, 2	0	2	0	0
Fotadiou *et al*[47]	PsO, 7	7	0	7 (Lamivudine)	0
Prignano *et al*[48]	PsO, 12	0	12	0	0
Cassano *et al*[49]	PsO, 28; PsA, 34	0	62	0	0
Cho *et al*[50]	PsA, 2	2	0	0	1
Navarro *et al*[51]	PsO, 13	0	13	0	0
Laurenti *et al*[52]	PsA, 8	1	7	1 (Lamivudine)	0
Navarro *et al*[53]	PsO, 4	4	0	3 (Lamivudine); 1 (adefovir[2] entecavir)	0
[1]Sanz-Bueno *et al*[54]	PsO, 20	0	20	0	0

[1]This group also includes 6 patients who received UTK; [2]Only inactive carriers. PsO: Psoriasis; PsA: Psoriatic arthritis.

basis of our personal experience, we believe that CyA could be administered to patients who are HBV occult carriers or with rHBV if adequately monitored (see below).

Methotrexate: Data available on the use of methotrexate (MTX) in patients with HBV infection were gathered from patients with rheumatologic or inflammatory bowel disease[34,35]. Whether or not MTX can be safely administered to patients with a history of HBV infection is not clear[34,36].

Basically, in the dermatological field, the different guidelines agree on avoiding MTX therapy in all patients whose seromarkers indicate an exposition to HBV[12,18,37].

bDMARDs

TNF inhibitors: There is evidence from experimental models that TNF plays a critical role in HBV clearance from infected hepatocytes[38]. Therefore, a detrimental effect is expected in terms of worsening or reactivation of HBV infection in subjects treated with TNF inhibitors (TNFis).

Over the past years several cases of HBV reactivation have been reported with either infliximab (IFX), adalimumab (ADA) or etanercept (ETA) therapy, mainly in patients with rheumatologic inflammatory diseases or inflammatory bowel disease[21,39,40].

Whether or not different TNFis carry a different risk of HBV reactivation is currently not clear[41]. Some studies suggest a major risk of HBV reactivation for IFX as compared to other TNFis[21].

Presently, literature data regarding the administration of TNFis in PsO or PsA subjects with concomitant HBV infection is available for 200 patients[42-56]. The majority of subjects reported are inactive or occult carriers, or with rHBV.

On the whole, patients were treated for a period ranging from 24 wk[43] to 6 years[52]. The TNFi more frequently administered was ETA, followed by ADA and finally IFX.

In Table 2 are summarized the cases of PsO and/or PsA grouped in: (1) inactive carriers; and (2) occult carriers or rHBv. The cases shown in Table 2, are limited to those for whom there was sufficient information in each report to permit their inclusion in one of the two above cited groups.

As shown in Table 2, none of the patients who were occult carriers or with rHBV experienced an HBV reactivation during TNFis therapy. None of the above cited subjects received antiviral prophylaxis.

Concerning patients who were inactive carriers, none of those who received antiviral prophylaxis experienced an HBV reactivation. On the contrary, HBV reactivation has been reported only in one case of an inactive carrier who did not receive antiviral prophylaxis (Table 2). In addition, two other patients of the same series with chronic HBV, who did not take prophylaxis, had viral reactivation[50].

Regarding the use of TNFis in PsO with active HBV infection only one case has been reported so far[57]. Said subject received lamivudine therapy one month before starting IFX. This therapy was continued during treatment with TNFi for 6 mo with a significant improvement of PsO and a decrease of both viral load and transaminases. Thereafter, to obtain a better control of viral replication, lamivudine was substituted with enetecavir and at the 9th month a further decrease of viral load was recorded, transaminases levels being within normal range and PsO under control.

Ustekinumab: Ustekinumab (UTK) is a fully human immunoglobulin G1k monoclonal antibody, anti-IL12p40, which binds to the shared p40 subunit of

Table 3 Diagnosis and distribution of patients treated with ustekinumab according to the hepatitis B virus serological profile

Ref.	Diagnosis, *n*	Inactive carriers (HBsAg$^+$), *n*	Occult carriers or resolved HBV (anti-HBc$^+$, anti-HBs$^-$ or anti-HBs ± anti-HBc), *n*	Prophylaxis[1], *n*	Reactivation, *n*
Navarro *et al*[53]	PsO 1	1	0	1 (Entecavir)	0
Chiu *et al*[60]	PsO 14	11[2]	3	4 (Entecavir)	2
Hayashi *et al*[61]	PsO 5	0	5	0	0
Koskinas *et al*[62]	PsO 1	0	1	0	1
Steglich *et al*[63]	PsO 1	0	1	1 (Lamivudine)	0

[1]Only inactive carriers; [2]Six with diagnosis of chronic hepatitis. PsO: Psoriasis; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HBc: Hepatitis B core.

IL-12 and IL-23 with high affinity and specificity[8]. Because IL-12 plays a key role in triggering an effective cellular immune response directed towards the elimination of intracellular pathogens[58,59] its inhibition can contribute to HBV reactivation.

From 2013, 28 cases of PsO with concomitant HBV infection have been treated with UTK[53,54,60-62]. The duration of treatments ranged from 4 mo[60] to 3 years[63].

In Table 3, 22 out of the 28 above cited patients are shown, since 6 subjects belong to the case series reported by Sanz-Bueno *et al*[54] and included in Table 2.

At present the lack of data does not permit us to draw any conclusions about the safety of UTK in patients with HBV infection.

However, as shown in Table 3, 2 of the 11 inactive carriers and one patient with rHBV experienced a reactivation of HBV infection after 4 mo, 7 mo and 16 wk, respectively[60,62]. Antiviral prophylaxis was not administered to said subjects.

Antiviral prophylaxis

On the basis of the above reported data, it is clear that HBV infection does not represent a barrier to the administration of an immunosuppressive therapy in patients with severe PsO. However, when a patient is eligible to a long-lasting immunosuppressive therapy such as bDMARDs, the risk of HBV reactivation must be taken into account.

It is widely accepted that all subjects who are inactive carriers need an antiviral prophylaxis[10,38-40]. The latter should be started 2-4 wk before a bDMARD is given and continued for 6-12 mo after its suspension[10,38-40]. Concerning the type of antiviral drug to be administered, the American Gastroenterology Association (AGA) suggests a third generation nucleos(t)ide (entecavir or tenofovir) due to their high resistance to lamivudine[64].

Whether or not patients who are occult carriers or with rHBV infection should receive antiviral prophylaxis is a debatable issue[10,38-40,64]. The recent AGA guidelines suggest administering antiviral prophylaxis also in patients who are HbsAg-negative/anti-HBc positive (whether or not anti-HBs positive) treated with either TNFis or UTK[64]. However, in the context of PsO treatment with bDMARDs patients do not seem to carry a concrete risk of HBV reactivation. Therefore, in the above mentioned category of patients prophylaxis against HBV reactivation is probably not necessary[10,44].

Monitoring HBV reactivation

Regarding patients who are inactive carriers, considering the risk of HBV reactivation during therapy with a bDMARD, HBV DNA, ALT and AST, serum levels should be monitored monthly for the first 3 mo, then quarterly and continued after 6-12 mo of discontinuation of the aforementioned treatment[10,44]. More controversial is whether or not to measure HBV DNA serum levels in those PsO or PsA patients who are occult carriers or with rHBV treated withimmunosuppressive drugs (CyA or bDMARDs)[10,40,44]. As already stated above, said patients do not seem to run a concrete risk of HBV reactivation. Moreover, the measurement of viral load is an expensive test. Therefore, occult carriers as well as patients with rHBV, can be monitored every 3 mo, checking for the presence in the serum of HBsAg in conjunction with the measurement of ALT and AST levels[10,44]. Monitoring should be continued with the same above cited timing after 6-12 mo from the discontinuation of the immunosuppressive therapy.

MONITORING AND MANAGEMENT OF PsO PATIENTS TREATED WITH cDMARDs OR bDMARDs AND CONCOMITANT HCV INFECTION

After acute HCV infection occurs, from 15% to 25% of subjects spontaneously clear viremia while 75% to 85% of individuals develop chronic HCV infection[65]. The diagnosis of this last condition is based on the detection of both HCV antibodies and HCV RNA in the presence of signs of chronic hepatitis, either by elevated aminotransferases or by histology[66]. For the majority of patients the course of chronic HCV infections is benign. However, from 10% to 20% of subjects develop cirrhosis, generally in a time gap from 20 to 30 years[65]. It has been estimated that each year 1% to 4% of patients with HCV related cirrhosis will develop hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), and 20%

will further progress to decompensated cirrhosis[65].

In contrast to HVB, HCV reactivation is not very common[67]. However, when HCV reactivation occurs, its morbidity and mortality rates are similar to those of HBV reactivation[20].

Concerning the treatment of PsO patients with concomitant HCV infection, a relatively limited number of data are available.

Among cDMARDs, acitretin and CyA could be two possible options while MTX is in general contraindicated for its substantial risk of hepatic toxicity[9,12,17,18]. Among bDMARDs, TNFis seems to be a relatively safe option (see below).

Very few data are at present available concerning the management with UTK of HCV infected patients since this biologic was introduced on the market several years after TNFis. Moreover, the use of UTK is presently approved only for PsO and PsA patients.

In the past, CyA has been considered by some Authors as third line as compared to TNFis in PsO subjects with HCV infection[67].

However, several data indicate that both CyA and TNFis do not seem to cause different risks in worsening the chronic course of HCV infection[68-72].

CyA and bDMARDs are probably the more frequently administered drugs for high-need PsO patients with concomitant HCV infection.

No data are currently available concerning the concomitant administration of systemic therapies for PsO and the new direct-acting antiviral medications approved for the treatment of chronic HCV infection.

In the following paragraphs treatment with CyA or bDMARDs of PsO patients with HCV infection are described.

cDMARDs

CyA: Due to immunosuppresive activity, a detrimental effect of CyA in individuals with a chronic infection such as HCV, could be expected. However, experimental and clinical data indicate that CyA, in addition to its anti-inflammatory activity, can inhibit HCV viral replication[73]. In particular, this last effect has been found in patients carrying genotype 1 or 4 HCV[71,72]. However, also in patients carrying genotype 2, which is scarcely sensitive to antiviral effect of CyA, no worsening of HCV infection has been observed in spite of a favourable clinical course of their immunomediated diseases[72]. Said data clearly indicate that immunosuppressive and antiviral activity of CyA follow different pathways[73].

Current available literature data on PsO patients with concomitant HCV infection treated with low dose of CyA include 11 patients, 7 of whom affected by PsA[69-72,74]. These patients received CyA for a period ranging from 16 to 38 mo and none experienced a worsening of their HCV infection. In some patients a lowering of HCV RNA serum levels has been reported[69].

bDMARDs

TNFis: Data available concerning the management with TNFis of PsO patients with HCV infection are increasing.

TNF-α is a key cytokine in stimulating immunomediated response to infections, especially against intracellular pathogens. Therefore, after inhibition of TNF-α, a worsening of a viral infection such as HCV could be expected. However, experimental and clinical data suggest that increased levels of TNF-α can have a detrimental effect on HCV infection[75-77]. In particular, the aforementioned cytokine seems to reduce cell capabilityto respond to interferon (IFN) signalling and, consequently, impair viral clearance[76]. Moreover, a direct correlation between elevated levels of TNF-α and those of ALT has been reported, with increased TNF-α levels having more severe histological activity[75,77]. A further indication that decreasing TNF-α concentrations can play a favourable effect on HCV infection comes from a study in which etanercept was administered as adjuvant to IFN and ribavirin in a group of HCV infected patients[78]. These subjects showed a higher decline of viral load and ALT as compared to the placebo group.

In addition to the data above reported, further observations indicate that TNFis can be safely administered to patients with different immune-mediated diseases and concomitant HCV infection[39,40,79]. In particular, in most of said patients viral load remained stable or decreased[39,40,79]. Serum HCV RNA increase > 1 log above baseline was rarely recorded and could not be confidently attributed to TNFis.

At present, 45 PsO and 33 PsA patients with concomitant HCV infection have been treated with TNFis[48,53,80-106]. Diagnosis, ALT and viral load outcomes at the last follow-up of the mentioned subjects are shown in Table 4. Of all the patients reported, 66 received a single TNFi (56 ETA, 9 ADA, 1 IFX). Six patients were treated sequentially with 2 TNFIs (1 with IFX and then ADA, 4 with ETA and then ADA and 1 with ETA and then IFX). One patient was treated sequentially with 3 TNFis (ETA followed by IFXand then ADA).

The duration of TNFis was highly variable ranging from 1 to 48 mo[97,105].

At baseline, liver biopsy specimens were available from 16 patients which revealed various grades of fibrosis ranging from F0 to F4[81-85,87,95,96,99,101-103]. Of said subjects only 2 underwent a second liver biopsy control which showed no significant histological changes compared to pretreatment findings[95].

As shown in Table 4, in the majority of the patients described, ALT and HCV RNA viral load remained unchanged or declined during TNFis therapy.

On the whole, the safety profile of TNFis appears to be reasonably good inPsO patients with concomitant HCV infection even if 4 cases of hepatocelluar carcinoma (HCC) were recorded[53,105]. However, 3 out of

Table 4 Diagnosis and laboratory characteristics of reported psoriatic patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection treated with tumor necrosis factor-α inhibitors

Ref.	Diagnosis, *n*	Concomitant HCV therapy, *n*	ALT outcomes at last follow-up compared to baseline, *n*	HCV viral load outcome at last follow-up compared to baseline, *n*
Khanna *et al*[80]	PsA, 1	1 (N/A)	1 (N/A)	1 (N/A)
Magliocco *et al*[81]	PsA, 3	0	3 (=)	2 (↓); 1 (N/A)
Cecchi *et al*[82]	PsO, 1	0	1 (=)	1 (=)
De Simone *et al*[83]	PsO, 2	0	2 (=)	2 (↓)
Asladinis *et al*[84]	PsA, 1	0	1 (=)	1(↓)
Rokshar *et al*[85]	PsO, 1	0	1 (N/A)	1 (=)
Pitarch *et al*[86]	PsA, 1	1 (N/A)	1 (=)	1 (N/A)
Linadarki *et al*[87]	PsA, 1	0	1 (=)	1 (=)
Alcaide *et al*[88]	PsO, 1	0	1 (=)	1 (=)
Piccolo *et al*[89]	PsO, 1	0	1 (↑)	1 (↓)
Collazzo *et al*[90]	PsO, 1	0	1 (=)	1 (N/A)
Cassano *et al*[91]	PsO, 1	0	1 (=)	1 (=)
Cavazzana *et al*[92]	PsA, 1	0	1 (=)	1 (=)
Behnam *et al*[93]	PsO, 1	1 (IFN + Rib)	1 (↓)	1 (↓)
Ventura *et al*[94]	PsO, 1; PsA, 1	0	2 (↓)	1 (↑); 1 (↓)
Paradisi *et al*[95]	PsA, 2	0	2 (=)	2 (=)
Prignano *et al*[96]	PsO, 1	0	1 (N/A)	1 (=)
Richetta *et al*[97]	PsO, 1[1]	0	1 (N/A)	1 (N/A)
Garavaglia *et al*[98]	PsO, 3; PsA, 2	1 (IFN + Rib)	1 (=); 4 (↓)	3 (=); 1 (↓)
Gandhi *et al*[99]	PsO, 1	0	1 (↓)	1 (↓)
Di Lernia *et al*[100]	PsO, 1[3]	0	1 (=)	1 (=)
Zanni *et al*[101]	PsA, 3	0	3 (=)[4]	3 (=)
Prignano *et al*[48]	PsO, 6	0	6 (=)	6 (=)
Mederacke *et al*[102]	PsA, 1	1 (IFN + Rib)	1 (N/A)	1 (↓)
Navarro *et al*[53]	PsO, 20[2]	3 (IFN + Rib)	See references	See references
Bartalesi *et al*[103]	PsO, 1	1 (IFN + Rib)	1 (↓)	1 (↓)
Costa L *et al*[104]	PsA, 15	0	13 (=); 2 (↓)	14 (=); 1 (↓)
Di Nuzzo *et al*[105]	PsA, 2	1 (IFN + Rib)	1 (=); 1 (↓)	2 (↓)
Salvi *et al*[106]	PsO, 1	0	1 (↑)	1 (=)

[1]1 erythrodermic psoriasis; [2]1 erythrodermic psoriasis, 2 palmoplantar psoriasis; [3]1 palmoplantar psoriasis; [4]1 patient with concomitant alcoholic hepatitis. PsO: Psoriasis; PsA: Psoriatic arthritis; =: No significant change; ↓: Decreased; ↑: Increased; N/A: Not available; IFN: Interferon; Rib: Ribavirine.

4 said patients were affected by cirrhosis and it is impossible to draw any conclusion regarding a possible role of TNF inhibition in the appearance of the above cited HCC.

UTK: Concerning IL 12 and IL 23, both targeted by UTK, little is known about their activity in HCV infection. Presently available data suggest that IL-12 can have a relevant role against HCV in either acute or chronic phases of infection[57,107,108].

At present, seven patients with PsO and HCV infection have been treated with UTK. Abuchar *et al*[109] in 2013, described the case of one patient with erythrodermic PsO and HCV infection who, after 2 mo of UTK therapy, experienced a very good response regarding his PsO without worsening of HCV infection.

Chiu *et al*[60] reported their experience on 4 PsO patients with HCV infection who received UTK for a period ranging from 5 to 11 mo. During the follow-up period, HCV viral copy numbers increased in 3 cases with only one subject meeting the criterion of HCV reactivation, recorded after 1 mo of UTK therapy. This last patient, who at baseline had a diagnosis of cirrhosis and previous HCC experienced a recurrence of HCC after 4 mo of UTK treatment.

Navarro *et al*[53], in a study published in 2013, reported that two PsO patients with concomitant HCV infection received UTK for 16 and 12 mo, respectively. The first patient, at the end of follow-up, showed a decrease of viral load and slight increase of both ALT and AST. In the second patient at the end of follow-up, viral load remained unchanged with a slight decrease of both ALT and AST serum levels.

More data are needed to better define whether or not UTK can have a role in the treatment of PsO patients with HCV infection.

Monitoring and managing of HCV infection

No guidelines are currently available on how to monitor PsO patients with HCV infection during treatment with CyA or bDMARDs.

Monitoring liver function tests (ALT, AST, alkaline phosphatase, bilirubin, albumin and platelet) and HCV-RNA load every 3-6 mo could be a valuable option for the majority of the patients.

However, it is important to point out that an optimal follow-up of the above-cited patients requires a strict collaboration with a consultant hepatologist. This latter will decide the timing of instrumental examinations, whether or not to perform a liver biopsy and whether

or not to offer a prophylactic anti-viral treatment.

CONCLUSION

HBV and HCV are the pathogens which more frequently cause chronic hepatitis[110].

Only few studies have evaluated the prevalence of the above-cited infectious disease in the PsO population. In 2011, Yang *et al*[111] reported an increased prevalence of HBV and HCV in PsO Taiwanese patients. In 2010, Cohen *et al*[112] in their study performed in Israel found an increased prevalence of HBC but not of HBV in PsO compared to control. The different frequency of HBV and HCV infection, as well as of PsO worldwide, can account for the discrepancies among the data published so far.

The chance to encounter in clinical practice PsO patients in high need of treatment who are HBV or HCV infected, should not be underestimated. Concerning said issue all current guidelines recommend screening PsO patients eligible for an immunosuppressive therapy due to the presence of HBV and HCV infection. However, no guidelines presently available give indications on how to manage and monitor these patients. Notwithstanding the above-cited limitations, immunosuppressive therapies should not be an insurmountable barrier for subjects with severe PsO and concomitant chronic HBV or HCV infection.

As already stated in this paper, it is essential that the aforementioned patients be referred to a hepatologist for expert clinical management.

REFERENCES

1 **Christophers E**. Psoriasis--epidemiology and clinical spectrum. *Clin Exp Dermatol* 2001; **26**: 314-320 [PMID: 11422182 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2230.2001.00832.x]

2 **Boehncke WH**, Schön MP. Psoriasis. *Lancet* 2015; **386**: 983-994 [PMID: 26025581 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)61909-7]

3 **Finlay AY**. Current severe psoriasis and the rule of tens. *Br J Dermatol* 2005; **152**: 861-867 [PMID: 15888138 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2005.06502.x]

4 **Mrowietz U**, Kragballe K, Reich K, Spuls P, Griffiths CE, Nast A, Franke J, Antoniou C, Arenberger P, Balieva F, Bylaite M, Correia O, Daudén E, Gisondi P, Iversen L, Kemény L, Lahfa M, Nijsten T, Rantanen T, Reich A, Rosenbach T, Segaert S, Smith C, Talme T, Volc-Platzer B, Yawalkar N. Definition of treatment goals for moderate to severe psoriasis: a European consensus. *Arch Dermatol Res* 2011; **303**: 1-10 [PMID: 20857129]

5 **European Medicines Agency**. Find medicine - Humira [Humira: EPAR - Product Information]. 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000481/WC500050870.pdf

6 **European Medicines Agency**. Find medicine - Enbrel [Enbrel: EPAR - Product Information]. 2015. Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR__Product_Information/human/000262/WC500027361.pdf

7 **European Medicines Agency**. Find medicine - Remicade [Remicade: EPAR - Product Information]. 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000240/WC500050888.pdf

8 **European Medicines Agency**. Find medicine - Stelara [Stelara: EPAR - Product Information]. 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000958/WC500058513.pdf

9 **Czarnecka-Operacz M**, Sadowska-Przytocka A. The possibilities and principles of methotrexate treatment of psoriasis - the updated knowledge. *Postepy Dermatol Alergol* 2014; **31**: 392-400 [PMID: 25610355 DOI: 10.5114/pdia.2014.47121]

10 **Koutsianas C**, Thomas K, Vassilopoulos D. Prevention of HBV reactivation in patients treated with biologic agents. *Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol* 2016; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26775683 DOI: 10.1586/17512433.2016.1143773]

11 **Booij MT**, Van De Kerkhof PC. Acitretin revisited in the era of biologics. *J Dermatolog Treat* 2011; **22**: 86-89 [PMID: 20673152 DOI: 10.3109/09546630903578582]

12 **Hsu S**, Papp KA, Lebwohl MG, Bagel J, Blauvelt A, Duffin KC, Crowley J, Eichenfield LF, Feldman SR, Fiorentino DF, Gelfand JM, Gottlieb AB, Jacobsen C, Kalb RE, Kavanaugh A, Korman NJ, Krueger GG, Michelon MA, Morison W, Ritchlin CT, Stein Gold L, Stone SP, Strober BE, Van Voorhees AS, Weiss SC, Wanat K, Bebo BF. Consensus guidelines for the management of plaque psoriasis. *Arch Dermatol* 2012; **148**: 95-102 [PMID: 22250239 DOI: 10.1001/archdermatol.2011.1410]

13 **Nast A**, Boehncke WH, Mrowietz U, Ockenfels HM, Philipp S, Reich K, Rosenbach T, Sammain A, Schlaeger M, Sebastian M, Sterry W, Streit V, Augustin M, Erdmann R, Klaus J, Koza J, Muller S, Orzechowski HD, Rosumeck S, Schmid-Ott G, Weberschock T, Rzany B. S3 - Guidelines on the treatment of psoriasis vulgaris (English version). Update. *J Dtsch Dermatol Ges* 2012; **10** Suppl 2: S1-95 [PMID: 22386073 DOI: 10.1111/j.1610-0387.2012.07919.x]

14 **Smith CH**, Anstey AV, Barker JN, Burden AD, Chalmers RJ, Chandler DA, Finlay AY, Griffiths CE, Jackson K, McHugh NJ, McKenna KE, Reynolds NJ, Ormerod AD. British Association of Dermatologists' guidelines for biologic interventions for psoriasis 2009. *Br J Dermatol* 2009; **161**: 987-1019 [PMID: 19857207 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2009.09505.x]

15 **Motaparthi K**, Stanisic V, Van Voorhees AS, Lebwohl MG, Hsu S. From the Medical Board of the National Psoriasis Foundation: Recommendations for screening for hepatitis B infection prior to initiating anti-tumor necrosis factor-alfa inhibitors or other immunosuppressive agents in patients with psoriasis. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2014; **70**: 178-186 [PMID: 24220724 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2013.08.049]

16 **Abramson A**, Menter A, Perrillo R. Psoriasis, hepatitis B, and the tumor necrosis factor-alpha inhibitory agents: a review and recommendations for management. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2012; **67**: 1349-1361 [PMID: 22727462 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2012.04.036]

17 **Menter A**, Gottlieb A, Feldman SR, Van Voorhees AS, Leonardi CL, Gordon KB, Lebwohl M, Koo JY, Elmets CA, Korman NJ, Beutner KR, Bhushan R. Guidelines of care for the management of psoriasis and psoriatic arthritis: Section 1. Overview of psoriasis and guidelines of care for the treatment of psoriasis with biologics. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2008; **58**: 826-850 [PMID: 18423260 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2008.02.039]

18 **Nast A**, Gisondi P, Ormerod AD, Saiag P, Smith C, Spuls PI, Arenberger P, Bachelez H, Barker J, Dauden E, de Jong EM, Feist E, Jacobs A, Jobling R, Kemény L, Maccarone M, Mrowietz U, Papp KA, Paul C, Reich K, Rosumeck S, Talme T, Thio HB, van de Kerkhof P, Werner RN, Yawalkar N. European S3-Guidelines on the systemic treatment of psoriasis vulgaris--Update 2015--Short version--EDF in cooperation with EADV and IPC. *J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol* 2015; **29**: 2277-2294 [PMID: 26481193 DOI: 10.1111/jdv.13354]

19 **Ahn CS**, Dothard EH, Garner ML, Feldman SR, Huang WW. To test or not to test? An updated evidence-based assessment of the value of screening and monitoring tests when using systemic biologic agents to treat psoriasis and psoriatic arthritis. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2015; **73**: 420-428.e1 [PMID: 26184440 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2015.06.004]

20 **Bojito-Marrero L**, Pyrsopoulos N. Hepatitis B and Hepatitis C Reactivation in the Biologic Era. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2014; **2**: 240-246 [PMID: 26355300 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2014.00033]

21 **Pérez-Alvarez R**, Díaz-Lagares C, García-Hernández F, Lopez-Roses L, Brito-Zerón P, Pérez-de-Lis M, Retamozo S, Bové A, Bosch X, Sanchez-Tapias JM, Forns X, Ramos-Casals M. Hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation in patients receiving tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-targeted therapy: analysis of 257 cases. *Medicine* (Baltimore) 2011; **90**: 359-371 [PMID: 22033451 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0b013e3182380a76]

22 **WHO**. Guidelines for the prevention, care and treatment of persons with chronic hepatitis B infection. Geneva Switzerland: World Health Organization, 2015

23 **Terrault NA**, Bzowej NH, Chang KM, Hwang JP, Jonas MM, Murad MH. AASLD guidelines for treatment of chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 261-283 [PMID: 26566064 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28156]

24 **European Association For The Study Of The Liver**. EASL clinical practice guidelines: Management of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 167-185 [PMID: 22436845 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.02.010]

25 **Marzano A**, Angelucci E, Andreone P, Brunetto M, Bruno R, Burra P, Caraceni P, Daniele B, Di Marco V, Fabrizi F, Fagiuoli S, Grossi P, Lampertico P, Meliconi R, Mangia A, Puoti M, Raimondo G, Smedile A. Prophylaxis and treatment of hepatitis B in immunocompromised patients. *Dig Liver Dis* 2007; **39**: 397-408 [PMID: 17382608 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2006.12.017]

26 **López-Serrano P**, Pérez-Calle JL, Sánchez-Tembleque MD. Hepatitis B and inflammatory bowel disease: role of antiviral prophylaxis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 1342-1348 [PMID: 23538480 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i9.1342]

27 **López-Serrano P**, de la Fuente Briongos E, Alonso EC, Pérez-Calle JL, Rodríguez CF. Hepatitis B and immunosuppressive therapies for chronic inflammatory diseases: When and how to apply prophylaxis, with a special focus on corticosteroid therapy. *World J Hepatol* 2015; **7**: 539-547 [PMID: 25848477 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v7.i3.539]

28 **Hoofnagle JH**. Reactivation of hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: S156-S165 [PMID: 19399803 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22945]

29 **Cantini F**, Boccia S, Goletti D, Iannone F, Leoncini E, Panic N, Prignano F, Gaeta GB. HBV Reactivation in Patients Treated with Antitumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha (TNF-α) Agents for Rheumatic and Dermatologic Conditions: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Int J Rheumatol* 2014; **2014**: 926836 [PMID: 25114684 DOI: 10.1155/2014/926836]

30 **Ormerod AD**, Campalani E, Goodfield MJ. British Association of Dermatologists guidelines on the efficacy and use of acitretin in dermatology. *Br J Dermatol* 2010; **162**: 952-963 [PMID: 20423353 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2010.09755.x]

31 **Sandrini S**, Callea F, Cristinelli L, Savoldi S, Setti G, Scaini P, Scolari F, Scalzini A, Pizzoccolo G, Maiorca R. Viral hepatitis in HBsAg-positive renal transplant patients treated with cyclosporin and steroids. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 1990; **5**: 525-530 [PMID: 2130300]

32 **Dai MS**, Kao WY, Shyu RY, Chao TY. Restoration of immunity and reactivation of hepatitis B virus after immunosuppressive therapy in a patient with severe aplastic anaemia. *J Viral Hepat* 2004; **11**: 283-285 [PMID: 15117333 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2004.00515.x]

33 **Urata Y**, Uesato R, Tanaka D, Kowatari K, Nitobe T, Nakamura Y, Motomura S. Prevalence of reactivation of hepatitis B virus replication in rheumatoid arthritis patients. *Mod Rheumatol* 2011; **21**: 16-23 [PMID: 20668905 DOI: 10.1007/s10165-010-0337-z]

34 **Oshima Y**, Tsukamoto H, Tojo A. Association of hepatitis B with antirheumatic drugs: a case-control study. *Mod Rheumatol* 2013; **23**: 694-704 [PMID: 22802011 DOI: 10.1007/s10165-012-0709-7]

35 **Alfadhli AA**, McDonald JW, Feagan BG. Methotrexate for induction of remission in refractory Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; (**1**): CD003459 [PMID: 15674908 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003459.pub2]

36 **Laohapand C**, Arromdee E, Tanwandee T. Long-term use of methotrexate does not result in hepatitis B reactivation in rheumatologic patients. *Hepatol Int* 2015; **9**: 202-208 [PMID: 25788188 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-014-9597-6]

37 **Kalb RE**, Strober B, Weinstein G, Lebwohl M. Methotrexate and psoriasis: 2009 National Psoriasis Foundation Consensus Conference. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2009; **60**: 824-837 [PMID: 19389524 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2008.11.906]

38 **Calabrese LH**, Zein NN, Vassilopoulos D. Hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation with immunosuppressive therapy in rheumatic diseases: assessment and preventive strategies. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2006; **65**: 983-989 [PMID: 16627542 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2005.043257]

39 **Sansone S**, Guarino M, Castiglione F, Rispo A, Auriemma F, Loperto I, Rea M, Caporaso N, Morisco F. Hepatitis B and C virus reactivation in immunosuppressed patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 3516-3524 [PMID: 24707134 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i13.3516]

40 **Viganò M**, Degasperi E, Aghemo A, Lampertico P, Colombo M. Anti-TNF drugs in patients with hepatitis B or C virus infection: safety and clinical management. *Expert Opin Biol Ther* 2012; **12**: 193-207 [PMID: 22188392 DOI: 10.1517/14712598.2012.646986]

41 **Lee YH**, Bae SC, Song GG. Hepatitis B virus reactivation in HBsAg-positive patients with rheumatic diseases undergoing anti-tumor necrosis factor therapy or DMARDs. *Int J Rheum Dis* 2013; **16**: 527-531 [PMID: 24164839 DOI: 10.1111/1756-185X.12154]

42 **Charpin C**, Guis S, Colson P, Borentain P, Mattéi JP, Alcaraz P, Balandraud N, Thomachot B, Roudier J, Gérolami R. Safety of TNF-blocking agents in rheumatic patients with serology suggesting past hepatitis B state: results from a cohort of 21 patients. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2009; **11**: R179 [PMID: 19941642 DOI: 10.1186/ar2868]

43 **Prestinari F**, Ferguglia G, Laria G. Etanercept in a patient with severe psoriasis and latent viral hepatic disease and latent tuberculosis. *Am J Clin Dermatol* 2010; **11** Suppl 1: 57-58 [PMID: 20586514 DOI: 10.2165/1153429-S0-000000000-000000]

44 **Nosotti L**, Francesconi F, Izzi S, Berardesca E, Morrone A, Bonifati C. Safety of antitumour necrosis factor-α therapy in psoriatic patients with hepatitis B virus infection. *Br J Dermatol* 2010; **162**: 1408-1410 [PMID: 20184582 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2010.09714.x]

45 **Caporali R**, Bobbio-Pallavicini F, Atzeni F, Sakellariou G, Caprioli M, Montecucco C, Sarzi-Puttini P. Safety of tumor necrosis factor alpha blockers in hepatitis B virus occult carriers (hepatitis B surface antigen negative/anti-hepatitis B core antigen positive) with rheumatic diseases. *Arthritis Care Res* (Hoboken) 2010; **62**: 749-754 [PMID: 20535784 DOI: 10.1002/acr.20130]

46 **Kim YJ**, Bae SC, Sung YK, Kim TH, Jun JB, Yoo DH, Kim TY, Sohn JH, Lee HS. Possible reactivation of potential hepatitis B virus occult infection by tumor necrosis factor-alpha blocker in the treatment of rheumatic diseases. *J Rheumatol* 2010; **37**: 346-350 [PMID: 20008922 DOI: 10.3899/jrheum.090436]

47 **Fotiadou C**, Lazaridou E, Ioannides D. Safety of anti-tumour necrosis factor-α agents in psoriasis patients who were chronic hepatitis B carriers: a retrospective report of seven patients and brief review of the literature. *J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol* 2011; **25**: 471-474 [PMID: 20561122 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-3083.2010.03754.x]

48 **Prignano F**, Ricceri F, Pescitelli L, Zanieri F, Lotti T. Tumour necrosis factor-α antagonists in patients with concurrent psoriasis and hepatitis B or hepatitis C: a retrospective analysis of 17 patients. *Br J Dermatol* 2011; **164**: 645-647 [PMID: 21375517 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2010.10140.x]

49 **Cassano N**, Mastrandrea V, Principi M, Loconsole F, De Tullio N, Di Leo A, Vena GA. Anti-tumor necrosis factor treatment in occult hepatitis B virus infection: a retrospective analysis of 62 patients with psoriatic disease. *J Biol Regul Homeost Agents* 2011; **25**: 285-289 [PMID: 21880218]

50 **Cho YT**, Chen CH, Chiu HY, Tsai TF. Use of anti-tumor necrosis factor-α therapy in hepatitis B virus carriers with psoriasis or psoriatic arthritis: a case series in Taiwan. *J Dermatol* 2012; **39**: 269-273 [PMID: 22077677 DOI: 10.1111/j.1346-8138.2011.01434.x]

51 **Navarro R**, Concha-Garzón MJ, Castaño C, Casal C, Guiu A, Daudén E. Outcome of patients with serology suggestive of past hepatitis B virus infection during antitumor necrosis factor therapy for psoriasis. *Int J Dermatol* 2014; **53**: 909-911 [PMID: 24673290 DOI: 10.1111/ijd.12313]

52 **Laurenti R**, Giovannangeli F, Gubinelli E, Viviano MT, Errico A, Leoni L, Ballanti E, Migliore A. Long-term safety of anti-TNF adalimumab in HBc antibody-positive psoriatic arthritis patients: a retrospective case series of 8 patients. *Clin Dev Immunol* 2013; **2013**: 410521 [PMID: 23606869 DOI: 10.1155/2013/410521]

53 **Navarro R**, Vilarrasa E, Herranz P, Puig L, Bordas X, Carrascosa JM, Taberner R, Ferrán M, García-Bustinduy M, Romero-Maté A, Pedragosa R, García-Diez A, Daudén E. Safety and effectiveness of ustekinumab and antitumour necrosis factor therapy in patients with psoriasis and chronic viral hepatitis B or C: a retrospective, multicentre study in a clinical setting. *Br J Dermatol* 2013; **168**: 609-616 [PMID: 22985451 DOI: 10.1111/bjd.12045]

54 **Sanz-Bueno J**, Vanaclocha F, García-Doval I, Torrado R, Carretero G, Daudén E, Patricia Ruiz-Genao D, Alsina-Gibert MM, Pérez-Zafrilla B, Pérez-Rial G, Rivera R. Risk of Reactivation of Hepatitis B Virus Infection in Psoriasis Patients Treated With Biologics: A Retrospective Analysis of 20 Cases From the BIOBADADERM Database. *Actas Dermosifiliogr* 2015; **106**: 477-482 [PMID: 25776200 DOI: 10.1016/j.ad.2015.01.010]

55 **Giardina AR**, Ferraro D, Ciccia F, Ferrante A, Di Stefano R, Craxì A, Triolo G. No detection of occult HBV-DNA in patients with various rheumatic diseases treated with anti-TNF agents: a two-year prospective study. *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 2013; **31**: 25-30 [PMID: 22935442]

56 **Vassilopoulos D**, Apostolopoulou A, Hadziyannis E, Papatheodoridis GV, Manolakopoulos S, Koskinas J, Manesis EK, Archimandritis AI. Long-term safety of anti-TNF treatment in patients with rheumatic diseases and chronic or resolved hepatitis B virus infection. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2010; **69**: 1352-1355 [PMID: 20472596 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2009.127233]

57 **Conde-Taboada A**, Muñoz JP, Muñoz LC, López-Bran E. Infliximab treatment for severe psoriasis in a patient with active hepatitis B virus infection. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2009; **60**: 1077-1080 [PMID: 19467387 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2008.09.057]

58 **Schurich A**, Pallett LJ, Lubowiecki M, Singh HD, Gill US, Kennedy PT, Nastouli E, Tanwar S, Rosenberg W, Maini MK. The third signal cytokine IL-12 rescues the anti-viral function of exhausted HBV-specific CD8 T cells. *PLoS Pathog* 2013; **9**: e1003208 [PMID: 23516358 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003208]

59 **Zeuzem S**, Carreño V. Interleukin-12 in the treatment of chronic hepatitis B and C. *Antiviral Res* 2001; **52**: 181-188 [PMID: 11672828 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-3542(01)00183-8]

60 **Chiu HY**, Chen CH, Wu MS, Cheng YP, Tsai TF. The safety profile of ustekinumab in the treatment of patients with psoriasis and concurrent hepatitis B or C. *Br J Dermatol* 2013; **169**: 1295-1303 [PMID: 23746170 DOI: 10.1111/bjd.12461]

61 **Hayashi M**, Umezawa Y, Fukuchi O, Ito T, Saeki H, Nakagawa H. Efficacy and safety of ustekinumab treatment in elderly patients with psoriasis. *J Dermatol* 2014; **41**: 974-980 [PMID: 25346301 DOI: 10.1111/1346-8138.12653]

62 **Koskinas J**, Tampaki M, Doumba PP, Rallis E. Hepatitis B virus reactivation during therapy with ustekinumab for psoriasis in a hepatitis B surface-antigen-negative anti-HBs-positive patient. *Br J Dermatol* 2013; **168**: 679-680 [PMID: 23121260 DOI: 10.1111/bjd.12120]

63 **Steglich RB**, Meneghello LP, Carvalho AV, Cheinquer H, Muller FM, Reginatto FP. The use of ustekinumab in a patient with severe psoriasis and positive HBV serology. *An Bras Dermatol* 2014; **89**: 652-654 [PMID: 25054756 DOI: 10.1590/abd1806-4841.2014301]

64 **Reddy KR**, Beavers KL, Hammond SP, Lim JK, Falck-Ytter YT; American Gastroenterological Association Institute. American Gastroenterological Association Institute guideline on the prevention and treatment of hepatitis B virus reactivation during immunosuppressive drug therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 215-219; quiz 216-217 [PMID: 25447850]

65 **Lee J**, Conniff J, Kraus C, Schrager S. A Brief Clinical Update on Hepatitis C--The Essentials. *WMJ* 2015; **114**: 263-269; quiz 270 [PMID: 26854315]

66 **European Association for Study of Liver**. EASL Recommendations on Treatment of Hepatitis C 2015. *J Hepatol* 2015; **63**: 199-236 [PMID: 25911336 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.03.025]

67 **Frankel AJ**, Van Voorhees AS, Hsu S, Korman NJ, Lebwohl MG, Bebo BF, Gottlieb AB. Treatment of psoriasis in patients with hepatitis C: from the Medical Board of the National Psoriasis Foundation. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2009; **61**: 1044-1055 [PMID: 19811848 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2009.03.044]

68 **Di Lernia V**, Albertini G. Treatment of psoriasis with cyclosporine in patients with hepatitis C infection: risk or opportunity? *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2010; **63**: 342-343 [PMID: 20633803 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2009.11.593]

69 **Miura H**, Itoh Y, Matsumoto Y, Tani M, Tanabe N, Isonokami M, Kurachi K, Kozuka T. Long-term administration of cyclosporin A to HCV-antibody-positive patients with dermatologic diseases. *Int J Dermatol* 1999; **38**: 310-314 [PMID: 10321952 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-4362.1999.00690.x]

70 **Galeazzi M**, Bellisai F, Giannitti C, Manganelli S, Morozzi G, Sebastiani GD. Safety of cyclosporin A in HCV-infected patients: experience with cyclosporin A in patients affected by rheumatological disorders and concomitant HCV infection. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2007; **1110**: 544-549 [PMID: 17911470 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1423.058]

71 **Manna R**, Verrecchia E, Fonnesu C, Giovinale M, De Socio G, Curigliano V, Cerquaglia C, Soriano A, Granata M, Migliore A, Massafra U, Gasbarrini G. Cyclosporine A: good response for patients affected by autoimmune disorders and HCV infection? *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2009; **13** Suppl 1: 63-69 [PMID: 19530514]

72 **Giovanna Brunasso AM**, Michetti P, Fancelli L, Massone C. Cyclosporine as monotherapy for psoriasis in the setting of chronic HCV infection: a forgotten therapeutical option. *Hepat Mon* 2012; **12**: 349-352 [PMID: 22783348 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.6057]

73 **Watashi K**, Hijikata M, Hosaka M, Yamaji M, Shimotohno K. Cyclosporin A suppresses replication of hepatitis C virus genome in cultured hepatocytes. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 1282-1288 [PMID: 14578868 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50449]

74 **Imafuku S**, Tashiro A, Furue M. Ciclosporin treatment of psoriasis in a patient with chronic hepatitis C. *Br J Dermatol* 2007; **156**: 1367-1369 [PMID: 17441954 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2007.07873.x]

75 **Zylberberg H**, Rimaniol AC, Pol S, Masson A, De Groote D, Berthelot P, Bach JF, Bréchot C, Zavala F. Soluble tumor necrosis factor receptors in chronic hepatitis C: a correlation with histological fibrosis and activity. *J Hepatol* 1999; **30**: 185-191 [PMID: 10068094 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(99)80060-800699]

76 **Dill MT**, Duong FH, Vogt JE, Bibert S, Bochud PY, Terracciano L, Papassotiropoulos A, Roth V, Heim MH. Interferon-induced gene expression is a stronger predictor of treatment response than IL28B genotype in patients with hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1021-1031 [PMID: 21111740 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.11.039]

77 **Nelson DR**, Lim HL, Marousis CG, Fang JW, Davis GL, Shen L, Urdea MS, Kolberg JA, Lau JY. Activation of tumor necrosis factor-alpha system in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 2487-2494 [PMID: 9440625]

78 **Zein NN**. Etanercept as an adjuvant to interferon and ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection: a phase 2 randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 315-322 [PMID: 15791697 DOI: 10.1023/A:1018804426724]

79 **Pompili M**, Biolato M, Miele L, Grieco A. Tumor necrosis factor-α inhibitors and chronic hepatitis C: a comprehensive literature review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 7867-7873 [PMID: 24307780 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i44.7867]

80 **Khanna M**, Shirodkar MA, Gottlieb AB. Etanercept therapy in patients with autoimmunity and hepatitis C. *J Dermatolog Treat* 2003; **14**: 229-232 [PMID: 14660270 DOI: 10.1080/09546630310020470]

81 **Magliocco MA**, Gottlieb AB. Etanercept therapy for patients with psoriatic arthritis and concurrent hepatitis C virus infection: report of 3 cases. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2004; **51**: 580-584 [PMID: 15389194 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2004.05.013]

82 **Cecchi R**, Bartoli L. Psoriasis and hepatitis C treated with anti-TNF alpha therapy (etanercept). *Dermatol Online J* 2006; **12**: 4 [PMID: 17459290]

83 **De Simone C**, Paradisi A, Capizzi R, Carbone A, Siciliano M, Amerio PL. Etanercept therapy in two patients with psoriasis and concomitant hepatitis C. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2006; **54**: 1102-1104 [PMID: 16713482 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2005.11.1035]

84 **Aslanidis S**, Vassiliadis T, Pyrpasopoulou A, Douloumpakas I, Zamboulis C. Inhibition of TNFalpha does not induce viral reactivation in patients with chronic hepatitis C infection: two cases. *Clin Rheumatol* 2007; **26**: 261-264 [PMID: 16924392 DOI: 10.1007/s10067-006-0394-z]

85 **Rokhsar C**, Rabhan N, Cohen SR. Etanercept monotherapy for a patient with psoriasis, psoriatic arthritis, and concomitant hepatitis C infection. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2006; **54**: 361-362 [PMID: 16443079 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2005.05.043]

86 **Pitarch G**, Sanchez-Carazo JL, Mahiques L, Perez-Ferriols MA, Fortea JM. Treatment of psoriasis with adalimumab. *Clin Exp Dermatol* 2007; **32**: 18-22 [PMID: 17305904 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2230.2006.02288.x]

87 **Linardaki G**, Katsarou O, Ioannidou P, Karafoulidou A, Boki K. Effective etanercept treatment for psoriatic arthritis complicating concomitant human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis C virus infection. *J Rheumatol* 2007; **34**: 1353-1355 [PMID: 17552060]

88 **Alcaide AJ**, Barrera MV, Habicheyn S, López N, Mendiola MV, Herrera E. Safety of etanercept therapy in a patient with psoriasis, Down's syndrome and concomitant hepatitis C virus infection. *J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol* 2008; **22**: 1514-1516 [PMID: 18355196 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-3083.2008.02693.x]

89 **Piccolo D**, Di Cesare A, Fargnoli MC, Paoloni M, Vecchiotti S, Peris K. Effective control of psoriasis by etanercept in a patient with HCV-related diseases. *Eur J Dermatol* 2008; **18**: 459-460 [PMID: 18573723 DOI: 10.1684/ejd.2008.0443]

90 **Collazo MH**, González JR, Torres EA. Etanercept therapy for psoriasis in a patient with concomitant hepatitis C and liver transplant. *P R Health Sci J* 2008; **27**: 346-347 [PMID: 19069362]

91 **Cassano N**, Vena GA. Etanercept treatment in a hemodialysis patient with severe cyclosporine-resistant psoriasis and hepatitis C virus infection. *Int J Dermatol* 2008; **47**: 980-981 [PMID: 18937672 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-4632.2008.03619.x]

92 **Cavazzana I**, Ceribelli A, Cattaneo R, Franceschini F. Treatment with etanercept in six patients with chronic hepatitis C infection and systemic autoimmune diseases. *Autoimmun Rev* 2008; **8**: 104-106 [PMID: 19014870 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2008.05.002]

93 **Behnam SE**, Hindiyeh R, Fife DJ, Jeffes EW, Wu JJ. Etanercept as prophylactic psoriatic therapy before interferon-alpha and ribavirin treatment for active hepatitis C infection. *Clin Exp Dermatol* 2010; **35**: 397-398 [PMID: 19663835 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2230.2009.03476.x]

94 **Ventura F**, Gomes J, Duarte Mda L, Fernandes JC, Brito C. Efficacy and safety of etanercept in patients with psoriasis and hepatitis C. *Eur J Dermatol* 2010; **20**: 808-809 [PMID: 20923749 DOI: 10.1684/ejd.2010.1065]

95 **Paradisi A**, Caldarola G, Capizzi R, Siciliano M, Annichiarico E, Vecchio FM, Amerio PL, De Simone C. Safety of etanercept in patients with psoriasis and hepatitis C virus assessed by liver histopathology: preliminary data. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2010; **62**: 1067-1069 [PMID: 20466184 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2009.07.010]

96 **Prignano F**, Zanieri F, Milani S, Lotti T. Switch from etanercept to efalizumab in a psoriatic patient with HCV infection: a case report. *Dermatol Ther* 2009; **22**: 386-390 [PMID: 19580583 DOI: 10.1111/j.1529-8019.2009.01251.x]

97 **Richetta AG**, Maiani E, Carlomagno V, Carboni V, Mattozzi C, Giancristoforo S, Calvieri S. Treatment of erythrodermic psoriasis in HCV+ patient with adalimumab. *Dermatol Ther* 2009; **22** Suppl 1: S16-S18 [PMID: 19891686 DOI: 10.1111/j.1529-8019.2009.01266.x]

98 **Garavaglia MC**, Altomare G. Etanercept therapy in patients with psoriasis and concomitant HCV infection. *Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol* 2010; **23**: 965-969 [PMID: 20943071]

99 **Gandhi RK**, Pickup T, Sheth PB. Is etanercept safe for treating plaque psoriasis in a patient with chronic hepatitis C virus infection? *Arch Dermatol* 2010; **146**: 1151-1152 [PMID: 20956650 DOI: 10.1001/archdermatol.2010.253]

100 **Di Lernia V**, Guareschi E. Successful treatment of hand and foot psoriasis with infliximab. *Dermatol Online J* 2010; **16**: 8 [PMID: 20673536]

101 **Zanni M**, Missale G, Santilli D, Di Nuzzo S. Etanercept in the treatment of psoriasis and psoriatic arthritis with concomitant hepatitis C virus infection: clinical and virological study in three patients. *Eur J Dermatol* 2011; **21**: 564-567 [PMID: 21543290 DOI: 10.1684/ejd.2011.1318]

102 **Mederacke I**, Witte T, Wedemeyer H, Meyer-Olson D. Successful clearance of hepatitis C virus with pegylated interferon α-2a and ribavirin in an etanercept-treated patient with psoriatic arthritis, hepatitis B virus coinfection and latent tuberculosis. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2011; **70**: 1343-1344 [PMID: 21131645 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2010.139824]

103 **Bartalesi F**, Salomoni E, Cavallo A, Corti G, Pimpinelli N, Bartoloni A, Taliani G. Chronic hepatitis C virus hepatitis and psoriasis: no longer a contraindication to interferon use in the era of biological agents? *Scand J Infect Dis* 2013; **45**: 320-323 [PMID: 23113733 DOI: 10.3109/00365548.2012.720026]

104 **Costa L**, Caso F, Atteno M, Giannitti C, Spadaro A, Ramonda R, Vezzù M, Del Puente A, Morisco F, Fiocco U, Galeazzi M, Punzi L, Scarpa R. Long-term safety of anti-TNF-α in PsA patients with concomitant HCV infection: a retrospective observational multicenter study on 15 patients. *Clin Rheumatol* 2014; **33**: 273-276 [PMID: 23975363]

105 **Di Nuzzo S**, Boccaletti V, Fantini C, Cortelazzi C, Missale G, Fabrizi G, Lotti T, Hercogová J, Pagliarello C. Are Anti-TNF-α Agents Safe for Treating Psoriasis in Hepatitis C Virus Patients with Advanced Liver Disease? Case Reports and Review of the Literature. *Dermatology* 2016; **232**: 102-106 [PMID: 26444967 DOI: 10.1159/000439587]

106 **Salvi M**, Macaluso L, Luci C, Mattozzi C, Paolino G, Aprea Y, Calvieri S, Richetta AG. Safety and efficacy of anti-tumor necrosis factors α in patients with psoriasis and chronic hepatitis C. *World J Clin Cases* 2016; **4**: 49-55 [PMID: 26881191 DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v4.i2.49]

107 **Cooper S**, Erickson AL, Adams EJ, Kansopon J, Weiner AJ, Chien DY, Houghton M, Parham P, Walker CM. Analysis of a successful immune response against hepatitis C virus. *Immunity* 1999; **10**: 439-449 [PMID: 10229187 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80044-8]

108 **Lechner F**, Wong DK, Dunbar PR, Chapman R, Chung RT, Dohrenwend P, Robbins G, Phillips R, Klenerman P, Walker BD. Analysis of successful immune responses in persons infected with hepatitis C virus. *J Exp Med* 2000; **191**: 1499-1512 [PMID: 10790425]

109 **Abuchar A**, Vitiello M, Kerdel FA. Psoriasis treated with ustekinumab in a patient with hepatitis C. *Int J Dermatol* 2013; **52**: 381-382 [PMID: 23414168 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-4632.2011.04876.x]

110 **Juan J**, Feld JJ. Hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus treatment and management in patients receiving immune-modifying agents. *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 2014; **26**: 395-403 [PMID: 24841230 DOI:

10.1097/BOR.0000000000000067]
111 **Yang YW**, Keller JJ, Lin HC. Medical comorbidity associated with psoriasis in adults: a population-based study. *Br J Dermatol* 2011; **165**: 1037-1043 [PMID: 21711339 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2011.10494.x]
112 **Cohen AD**, Weitzman D, Birkenfeld S, Dreiher J. Psoriasis associated with hepatitis C but not with hepatitis B. *Dermatology* 2010; **220**: 218-222 [PMID: 20185894 DOI: 10.1159/000286131]

P- Reviewer: Gonzalez-Reimers E, Harmanci O **S- Editor**: Ma YJ
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6456

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6456-6468
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Enhanced recovery pathways in pancreatic surgery: State of the art

Nicolò Pecorelli, Sara Nobile, Stefano Partelli, Luca Cardinali, Stefano Crippa, Gianpaolo Balzano, Luigi Beretta, Massimo Falconi

Nicolò Pecorelli, Sara Nobile, Stefano Partelli, Stefano Crippa, Gianpaolo Balzano, Massimo Falconi, Division of Pancreatic Surgery, Pancreas Translational and Clinical Research Center, San Raffaele Scientific Institute, "Vita-Salute" University, 20132 Milan, Italy

Luca Cardinali, Department of Surgery, Università Politecnica delle Marche, 60100 Ancona, Italy

Luigi Beretta, Department of Anesthesiology, San Raffaele Scientific Institute, "Vita-Salute" University, 20132 Milan, Italy

Author contributions: Pecorelli N designed the study, performed the literature review, drafted the manuscript and approved the final version; all other authors contributed to this paper in its critical revision and editing, and approved the final version.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No potential conflicts of interest, no financial support.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Massimo Falconi, MD, Division of Pancreatic Surgery, Pancreas Translational and Clinical Research Center, San Raffaele Scientific Institute, Via Olgettina 60, 20132 Milan, Italy. massimo.falconi@hsr.it
Telephone: +39-02-26436046
Fax: +39-02-26437807

Received: March 30, 2016
Peer-review started: April 5, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 21, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016

Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Pancreatic surgery is being offered to an increasing number of patients every year. Although postoperative outcomes have significantly improved in the last decades, even in high-volume centers patients still experience significant postoperative morbidity and full recovery after surgery takes longer than we think. In recent years, enhanced recovery pathways incorporating a large number of evidence-based perioperative interventions have proved to be beneficial in terms of improved postoperative outcomes, and accelerated patient recovery in the context of gastrointestinal, genitourinary and orthopedic surgery. The role of these pathways for pancreatic surgery is still unclear as high-quality randomized controlled trials are lacking. To date, non-randomized studies have shown that care pathways for pancreaticoduodenectomy and distal pancreatectomy are safe with no difference in postoperative morbidity, leading to early discharge and no increase in hospital readmissions. Hospital costs are reduced due to better organization of care and resource utilization. However, further research is needed to clarify the effect of enhanced recovery pathways on patient recovery and post-discharge outcomes following pancreatic resection. Future studies should be prospective and follow recent recommendations for the design and reporting of enhanced recovery pathways.

Key words: Pancreas surgery; Perioperative care; Length of stay; Postoperative complications; Pancreatic neoplasms; Evidence-based medicine

Core tip: In this study, we reviewed the available literature for enhanced recovery pathways in pancreatic surgery with a special focus on the evidence underlying specific perioperative interventions implemented in this surgical subspecialty and on postoperative outcomes. Although the quality of available studies is suboptimal, enhanced recovery proved to be safe and has the potential to reduce postoperative length of stay and costs after pancreatic resection. No evidence is available regarding post-discharge outcomes and patient functional recovery. Further research is needed to clarify the impact of care pathways on patient recovery after pancreatic surgery.

Pecorelli N, Nobile S, Partelli S, Cardinali L, Crippa S, Balzano G, Beretta L, Falconi M. Enhanced recovery pathways in pancreatic surgery: State of the art. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6456-6468 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6456.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6456

INTRODUCTION

The number of patients undergoing pancreatic surgery has increased dramatically in the last decades[1]. At the same time, outcomes have improved. Postoperative mortality rates have decreased from nearly 20% in the 1980s[2] to 1%-2% thanks to centralization policies[3], advances in surgical technique, perioperative care and multidisciplinary management of complications[4]. However, even in high-volume centers (*i.e.*, institutions performing more than 15-20 pancreatic resections per year)[3] patients still experience significant post-operative morbidity[5] and full recovery after surgery takes longer than we think[6]. Recent studies found that patients undergoing pancreatic cancer resection take around 6 mo to return to their preoperative quality of life[7]. This finding suggests that an effort should be made to improve perioperative care and support patients in their recovery with the aim to reduce postoperative disability. In addition, considering that most of these patients receive surgery for cancer, it should be kept in mind that returning to a valid functional capacity status is also an essential pre-requisite to face adjuvant chemotherapy, which is now a mainstay of pancreatic cancer treatment.

Around 20 years ago, a Danish group lead by Henrik Kehlet reported on a series of nine colonic surgery patients that were treated with a multimodal intervention program including epidural analgesia, early oral nutrition and mobilization[8]. This represented the first step in the development of so-called fast-track programs, which later evolved in what are currently known as enhanced recovery pathways (ERPs). ERPs are standardized, multimodal, multidisciplinary care plans that integrate various evidence-based interventions in the perioperative period. Their main goal is to facilitate recovery by attenuating the metabolic surgical stress response and limiting postoperative organ dysfunction through multiple pharmacological, nutritional and physical approaches[9]. Moreover, ERPs aim to better organize care for patients undergoing a particular procedure, and thereby contribute to reducing unwanted variability in care processes and outcomes. A meta-analysis of 38 randomized trials across multiple specialties concluded that ERPs reduced the risk of complications by about 30% and were associated with reduced hospital stay by about 1 d overall[10]. The impact was consistent across specialties, which included colorectal, upper GI, genitourinary, thoracic and joint surgery.

In this review we will first discuss the specific elements included in ERPs for pancreatic surgery. We will then describe the evidence accumulated so far on the effect of enhanced recovery on postoperative outcomes following pancreatectomy, and finally we will suggest future directions in this field of research.

CHARACTERISTICS OF AN ENHANCED RECOVERY PATHWAY FOR PANCREATIC SURGERY

In 2012 the Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS®) Society drafted guidelines for perioperative care for patients undergoing pancreaticoduodenectomy (PD)[11]. The body of evidence for many ERP interventions was in large part extrapolated from studies in other fields of gastrointestinal surgery, mainly colorectal. Following the GRADE Working Group guidelines[12], recommendations were based on quality of evidence but also on the balance between desirable and undesirable effects; and on values and preferences. Accordingly, in certain cases, strong recommendations were reached from low-quality data and *vice versa*. Table 1 summarizes the specific elements that should be included in ERPs for PD according to the ERAS® Society guidelines. We will now provide an explanation for specific items of interest in the preoperative, intraoperative and postoperative settings.

Patient education and engagement

Preparing patients and their caregivers before surgery is fundamental. Patient should be informed about how they should get ready for surgery, what to expect on the day of surgery, and they should receive objectives for each postoperative day including instructions about their drains, infusions, diet and mobilization. Patients should be encouraged to play an active role in their recovery. In fact, patient knowledge and engagement have the potential to improve adherence to ERP elements, and it has been shown to reduce hospital stay, improve pain control and increase patient satisfaction[13]. The format and the way education is delivered

Table 1 Enhanced recovery pathway interventions for pancreatic surgery

Element	Description
Preoperative	
Patient education	Dedicated counseling providing patients with information and goals for recovery
Optimization of organ dysfunction	Optimization of patient comorbidities and patient conditioning
Oral immunonutrition	Oral immunonutrients should be taken for 5-7 d prior to surgery
Selective biliary drainage	Endoscopic biliary drainage only indicated if serum bilirubin > 14.5 mg/dL, in case of cholangitis or planned neoadjuvant treatment
Avoid mechanical bowel preparation	Oral bowel preparation should not be used
Minimize fasting	Intake of clear fluids up to 2 h before anesthesia, and solid food until 6 h before.
Carbohydrate loading	A carbohydrate drink should be given the morning before surgery
Intraoperative	
Thromboembolic disease prophylaxis	Low molecular weight heparin should be administered
Antimicrobial prophylaxis	Antibiotic prophylaxis should start 30-60 min before incision
Epidural and opioid sparing analgesia	Avoid opioids. Multimodal analgesia including thoracic epidural analgesia, acetaminophen, NSAIDs. Early transition to oral analgesics
PONV prophylaxis	Multimodal nausea and vomit prophylaxis
Avoid hypothermia	Active cutaneous warming
Balanced intravenous infusions	Avoid fluid overload. Maintain near-zero fluid balance. Potential benefit in the use of goal directed fluid therapy.
Postoperative	
Avoid nasogastric intubation	Nasogastric tube should be removed at the end of surgery
Glycemic control	Avoid hyperglycemia with frequent blood sugar monitoring and insulin infusion when necessary
Early removal of urinary drainage	Bladder catheter should be removed within postoperative day 2
Early removal of perianastomotic drain	Early drain removal in patients at low risk for pancreatic fistula
Early oral feeding	Patients should be allowed a normal diet without restrictions as tolerated
Gastrointestinal stimulation	Oral laxative and chewing-gum should be started early after surgery
Early stop of intravenous infusions	Intravenous fluids should be stopped as soon as patients are able to tolerate oral liquids
Early mobilization	Scheduled active mobilization should start from postoperative day 1
Audit	Systematic audit on care processes and outcomes

NSAID: Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; PONV: Postoperative nausea and vomit.

can influence the patient's ability to retain information and act accordingly[14]. Written or multimedia information have been shown to have a significant advantage on oral communication alone as information are often forgotten by patients[15].

Optimization of organ dysfunction

Preoperative optimization aims at improving patient physiologic reserve to better tolerate the incoming stress of surgery. Patients at higher risk for postoperative morbidity such as elderly, frail and patients with severe comorbidities should be evaluated in a multidisciplinary setting[16]. There is preliminary evidence in colorectal surgery that patients may benefit from prehabilitation programs focusing on improving co-existing morbid conditions and delivering effective nutritional therapy and physical exercise[17]. A relevant proportion of patients undergoing pancreatic resection are elderly cancer patients with multiple comorbidities. Thus it can be speculated that this specific surgical population may particularly benefit from this approach.

Preoperative biliary drainage

Biliary drainage in patients with jaundice should not be routinely performed as it may increase the risk of serious adverse events, which are related to the drainage procedure[18]. In a recent RCT including patients with serum bilirubin concentrations < 14.6 mg/dL, preoperative endoscopic biliary drainage showed higher morbidity compared to patients undergoing upfront surgery[19]. Patients candidate to neoadjuvant treatment or experiencing a cholangitis represent an exception. It is still unclear if patients with higher bilirubin levels actually benefit from preoperative drainage.

Preoperative fasting and carbohydrate loading

Traditionally patients have been kept fasting from midnight to prevent the risk of aspiration of gastric contents at induction of anesthesia. This leads to dehydration and increases insulin resistance triggering a catabolic state[20], which is one of the main mechanisms responsible for poor surgical outcomes[21]. It has been almost 20 years that anesthesia societies worldwide started to recommend a 6 h fast for solids, and allow oral intake of clear fluids up to 2 h before surgery, as it does not increase the risk of aspiration in healthy adults undergoing elective procedures[22]. The administration of a carbohydrate-rich drink before surgery (50 g, 2-3 h preoperatively) can increase insulin sensitivity[23], and shift cellular metabolism to a more anabolic state[20]. A recent Cochrane review found only a slight reduction of postoperative hospital stay but no difference in complications or other outcomes when compared to placebo fluids[24]. In patients undergoing PD, a double-blind placebo-controlled randomized clinical trial showed that carbohydrate-rich drinks can be safely administered,

as the residual gastric volume at anesthesia induction was similar between the carbohydrate drink and placebo groups[25].

Multimodal analgesia

A multimodal approach for analgesia is the best strategy to obtain optimal pain control and enable patient recovery. A key element is neuraxial blockade *via* thoracic epidural analgesia, which provides excellent analgesia and is associated with reduced surgical stress response[26]. Epidurals in major open surgery have been shown to reduce morbidity, especially respiratory complications, and facilitate recovery of bowel function compared to systemic opioids[27]. A retrospective study by Pratt *et al*[28] raised concern that epidural in pancreatic surgery may be associated with increased major complications linked to the common occurrence of postoperative hypotension that may lead to anastomotic failure and increased fluid administration in response. No other study has confirmed these findings and epidurals are still considered the "gold standard". In the event of epidural-related hypotension due to vasodilatation, vasopressors should be considered to avoid fluid overload[29]. In addition, acetaminophen and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) should be prescribed routinely to aid in epidural analgesia withdrawal and early transition to oral analgesics to promote patient mobilization. Opioids are given only if adequate analgesia (Visual Analogue Scale for pain < 4/10) is not obtained with all of the above.

Postoperative nausea and vomiting prophylaxis

Although no specific trial has specifically investigated postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) prophylaxis strategies in pancreatic surgery, it is evident that nausea and vomit early after surgery impair the return to oral nutrition, and mobilization. Ideally, patients should be screened for PONV risk factors using a simple risk calculator like the Apfel score[30]. PONV prophylaxis begins during surgery and continues in the first hours postoperatively. A tailored strategy with multiple modalities and agents should be used in patients at high and moderate risk[31]. Common prophylactic interventions during surgery include the use of total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA) with minimization of volatile anesthetics, and the use of loco-regional anesthesia techniques to spare systemic opioids. In addition, prophylaxis protocols include the administration of corticosteroids (*e.g.*, dexamethasone) after induction of general anesthesia, and 5-HT_3 receptor antagonists (*e.g.*, Ondansetron) or butyrophenones (*e.g.*, Droperidol) at the end of surgery.

Balanced intravenous infusions

Administering the optimal amount of fluids during and after surgery has the goal to maintain euvolemia and avoid both organ hypo- and hyper-perfusion. Salt and water overload significantly increase the complication rate and delay bowel function[32]. However, it is not the restriction in fluid administration but the "near zero" fluid balance that should be achieved, as this has been showed to improve outcomes in major open abdominal surgery[33]. Patients in ERPs usually require less maintenance fluids as they avoid prolonged fasting and bowel preparation thus have minimal deficits to be replaced[34]. Pancreatectomy is usually associated with large volume depletion and considerable blood loss, which makes it more difficult to achieve a correct balance. Several noninvasive devices providing continuous cardiac performance measures are available and can be used to tailor fluid management. Overall, their use reduces complications after major surgery[35]. Cannesson *et al*[36] recently implemented a goal directed fluid therapy (GDFT) algorithm in major surgery patients including 94 undergoing pancreatectomy, and found that GDFT significantly decreased complications and reduced length of hospital stay (LOS) by 18%. Although evidence for this approach is still preliminary, the use of monitoring devices to tailor fluid therapy should be encouraged particularly in high-risk patients (*e.g.*, patients with multiple comorbid diseases or candidate to multivisceral resection or complex vascular reconstructions).

Postoperatively, intravenous fluids should be discontinued when patients are able to drink enough liquids. After pancreatectomy in an ERP, oral fluid intake is usually started on the first day after surgery and the drip may be heplocked within 48-72 h after surgery depending on patient symptoms and tolerance of oral intake.

Perianastomotic drain

The use of an abdominal drainage in pancreatic surgery has been traditionally advocated as it is thought to minimize the consequences of a pancreatic fistula and allow a conservative management of this complication. In contrast, in other abdominal surgery contexts, drains have been abandoned as they have been associated with increased risk of drain-related infectious complications and prolonged hospital stay[37]. Currently, the routine use of a perianastomotic drain during pancreatic resection has been challenged[38]. However, a recent multicenter randomized controlled trial investigating the use of a closed-suction intraperitoneal drain *vs* no drain was stopped early because of an increase in 90-d mortality in the group of PD patients without drain[39]. Thus, it clearly provided level I evidence that a concept of routine non-drainage in all cases after PD is not safe and should be abandoned. Nonetheless, further research is warranted to assess the possibility of selective drainage only in patients with a high-risk of developing pancreatic leak (*e.g.*, soft pancreatic texture and small duct). Evidence for distal pancreatectomy is currently lacking.

Concerning the timing of removal of the periana-

stomotic drain, a randomized trial supports its early removal (*i.e*., on postoperative day 3) in patients at low risk of pancreatic fistula and low drain amylase value on postoperative day 1[40]. In this subgroup of patients, early removal was associated with a significantly decreased rate of pancreatic fistula, abdominal and pulmonary complications compared to patients with prolonged drainage. Until further data are available, systematic postoperative drainage and early removal in patients at low risk of pancreatic fistula (firm pancreas, wide pancreatic duct) is recommended[41].

Early oral nutrition

Allowing normal food at will from the first day after surgery has been shown to be feasible and safe after pancreatic surgery[42]. A large RCT including nearly one hundred patients who underwent pancreatectomy found no advantage to withholding feeding compared to normal food[43]. Furthermore, in 2014 Gerritsen *et al*[44] showed that allowing early oral feeding immediately after PD compared to prolonged naso-jejunal tube feeding is associated with reduced time to adequate oral intake and shortened LOS. Patients should be informed that early satiety, decreased appetite, and ultimately delayed gastric emptying (DGE) are common symptoms after pancreatic surgery. Thus they should be advised to gradually increase the amount of food intake as tolerated. Abdominal complications including pancreatic fistula are very common after pancreatic resection, and they may impair oral intake for long. In this event, enteral tube feeding through naso-jejunal catheters or jejunostomy should be preferred to parenteral nutrition[45].

DGE prevention and gastrointestinal stimulation

No prokinetic agent has been shown to successfully prevent delayed gastric emptying, which is defined as a functional gastroparesis causing the inability to tolerate oral diet and requiring nasogastric tube decompression[46]. Chewing sugar-free gum is a simple low cost intervention that decreases time to recovery of gastrointestinal function after colorectal surgery as part of an ERP[47]. A recent small-size RCT carried out in PD patients found that chewing gum slightly accelerates the return to bowel function and to oral intake, but the data were not significant[48]. Other authors have proposed the use of magnesium sulphate or lactulose in pancreatic surgery but few results other than safety have been reported[42]. For pylorus-preserving PD, there is preliminary data suggesting that constructing the duodenojejunostomy in an antecolic (as opposed to a retrocolic) fashion reduces DGE[49].

Early mobilization

It is well known that staying in bed leads to deconditioning that can largely be prevented by physical activity[50]. However, there is little evidence that the implementation of specific interventions to increase mobilization improves outcomes[51]. In the context of ERPs for colorectal surgery, being out of bed on the first postoperative days is an independent predictor of shorter hospital stay[52]. After pancreatic resection, due to the extent of surgical trauma, patients experience a prolonged recovery compared to other abdominal procedures. In addition, epidural-related hypotension is a common symptom limiting postoperative mobilization. However, mobilization out of bed should be scheduled early and adequate pain control provided to facilitate it.

OUTCOMES OF ENHANCED RECOVERY IN PANCREATIC SURGERY

In recent years, reporting of clinical pathways for patients undergoing pancreatic resection has progressively increased. Early reports included retrospective single cohort studies[42] and retrospective studies comparing newly implemented ERPs with historical cohorts[53-55]. They all focused on the feasibility and safety of implementing care pathways that included a limited number of perioperative interventions. Most of these studies only featured postoperative care elements such as multimodal analgesia, early return to oral diet and removal of tubes and drains, and scheduled mobilization. Compliance with the pathway seemed adequate, morbidity and readmission rates were low, and the authors concluded that this approach was safe, feasible, and promoted earlier discharge. In the following years, the number of publications on this topic, thus the number of patients and the experience with this type of approach increased but the quality of studies remained suboptimal. To date, there is still no report of a randomized clinical study, and no clinical study has been prospectively registered in an international trial registry.

Overall, seventeen trials[53-69] comparing ERPs to usual perioperative care in pancreatic surgery were published between 2000 and 2015. Table 2 reports the study design and characteristics of studies analyzed in this review. Only one study by Joliat *et al*[67] included a prospective ERP cohort, while all others performed a retrospective review comparing patients treated with a recently implemented ERP to historical controls. In a study from the Netherlands[64], the Authors also included an ERP-like group in which only a limited number of enhanced recovery elements were included.

The total number of patients included in the analyzed studies was 3220 (1576 ERP *vs* 1644 usual care). Study sample size ranged from 41 to 635 patients. Fourteen studies included PD patients, two of which also included total pancreatectomy patients. Only three studies investigated ERPs in the context of left pancreatectomy. This focus on PD is probably not only related to the greater proportion of patients who undergo this procedure compared

Table 2 Study design and characteristics

Study	Year	Design	Sample size		Type of resection
			ERP	Control	
Porter *et al*[53]	2000	Retrospective cohort	80	68	PD, TP
Vanounou *et al*[54]	2007	Retrospective cohort	145	64	PD
Kennedy *et al*[55]	2007	Retrospective cohort	92	44	PD, TP
Balzano *et al*[56]	2008	Retrospective cohort	252	252	PD
Kennedy *et al*[57]	2009	Retrospective cohort	71	40	LP
Nikfarjam *et al*[58]	2013	Retrospective cohort	20	21	PD
Abu Hilal *et al*[59]	2013	Retrospective cohort	24	20	PD
Braga *et al*[60]	2014	Retrospective cohort	115	115	PD
Kobayashi *et al*[61]	2014	Retrospective cohort	100	142	PD
Nussbaum *et al*[62]	2014	Retrospective cohort	50	100	LP
Nussbaum *et al*[63]	2014	Retrospective cohort	100	142	PD
Coolsen *et al*[64]	2014	Retrospective cohort	144[1]	86	PD
Shao *et al*[65]	2015	Retrospective cohort	325	310	PD
Sutcliffe *et al*[66]	2015	Retrospective cohort	65	65	PD
Joliat *et al*[67]	2015	Prospective cohort[2]	74	87	PD
Morales Soriano *et al*[68]	2015	Retrospective cohort	41	44	PD
Richardson *et al*[69]	2015	Retrospective cohort	22	44	LP

[1]Includes 47 patients treated with an enhanced recovery-like pathway; [2]Only the ERP group was prospective. PD: Pancreaticoduodenectomy; TP: Total pancreatectomy; LP: Left pancreatectomy.

to distal pancreatectomy, but also to the greater impact that this procedure has on patient recovery. In fact, PD is characterized by lengthy operative times, and extensive fluid and protein losses. At least three visceral anastomoses are fashioned leading to slower recovery of bowel function and obviously a greater chance of major complications compared to distal pancreatectomy. Laparoscopy was included in two out of three ERPs for patients undergoing distal pancreatectomy. In the context of enhanced recovery, laparoscopy has the potential to further accelerate recovery, as it has been shown for colorectal surgery[70], but conclusive evidence is lacking on the outcomes following laparoscopic distal pancreatectomy compared to the open approach. However, several comparative nonrandomized studies have found that laparoscopy can shorten postoperative recovery compared to open surgery in terms of accelerated return to oral intake, recovery of bowel function and reduced LOS[71]. The minimally invasive approach for PD, mainly laparoscopy, is slowly becoming more popular. However, this procedure is technically demanding requiring long operative times and a steep learning curve[72-74]. Single-centre studies from high-volume institutions have demonstrated that laparoscopic PD is feasible and safe in patients with benign and malignant pancreatic lesions[75,76]. In their meta-analysis including only comparative cohort studies, de Rooij *et al*[77] found no difference in postoperative mortality, morbidity and pancreatic fistula rates. They also reported quicker postoperative recovery resulting in reduced LOS. Nonetheless, the level of evidence supporting laparoscopic PD remains low and limited to small nonrandomized series. Even fewer evidence is available for robotic surgery, which may potentially facilitate the transition from open surgery and shorten the learning curve. In addition, to our knowledge there is no series evaluating the results of minimally invasive PD in the context of an ERP.

The role of adherence to ERP elements

In comparative studies analyzed in this review, a total of 17 individual elements aiming to enhance recovery after pancreatic resection were identified (Table 3). The number of elements used within each study ranged from 4 to 17 (median 9). The elements most frequently included were mostly part of postoperative care: standardized perianastomotic drain management (n = 17), omission or early removal of the nasogastric tube (n = 16), early oral feeding (n = 16), thromboembolic disease prophylaxis (n = 13), and early mobilization (n = 13).

Collecting information about adherence to the different care processes included in the ERP is important in order to understand outcomes and how to improve care. However, only a few studies reported the adherence to the individual ERP elements[59,60,67]. This confirms recent findings from Day *et al*[78] showing that the current standard of reporting in enhanced recovery trials is frequently incomplete, suggesting the need for guidelines for the design and reporting of such studies.

It is still unclear if there is an ideal combination of ERP items that should be implemented, what is the impact of overall adherence to the ERP and the relative contribution of each element included. Studies in colorectal surgery suggest that there is a dose-effect relationship between adherence and postoperative outcomes[79]. In pancreatic surgery patients, Braga *et al*[60] found that adherence was suboptimal for most of the postoperative interventions, especially perioperative fluid management and achievement of daily mobilization milestones. Notably, patients who experienced postoperative complications had a poor compliance early in the ERP pathway, suggesting that early low adherence may be associated with occurrence of postoperative complications. Sutcliffe *et al*[66] used a drain amylase cutoff of 350 U/L on the first day after surgery to stratify high- from low-risk PD patients and chose to implement only a limited

Table 3 Enhanced recovery pathway elements used in comparative studies

Study	Preoperative				Intraoperative					Postoperative								Total number of ERP elements
	Patient education and counselling	No mechanical bowel preparation	Shorter pre-operative fasting	Carbohydrate loading	Prophylactic antibiotics	Thromboembolic disease prophylaxis	Epidural/ multimodal analgesia	Prevention of nausea and vomiting	Prevention of hypothermia	Early nasogastric tube removal	Early removal of urinary catheter	Early discontinuation of IV fluids	Glycemic control	Standardized perianastomotic drain management	Early oral feeding	Early mobilization	Stimulation of GI function	
Porter *et al*[53]										√	√			√	√			4
Vanounou *et al*[54]	√				√	√	√			√	√			√				7
Kennedy *et al*[55]					√	√	√			√	√	√		√	√	√		9
Balzano *et al*[56]	√				√	√	√			√				√	√	√		8
Kennedy *et al*[57]					√	√	√			√	√	√		√	√	√		9
Nikfarjam *et al*[58]	√		√		√	√	√			√	√	√		√	√	√	√	12
Abu Hilal *et al*[59]			√			√						√		√	√	√	√	7
Braga *et al*[60]	√	√	√		√	√	√	√	√	√		√		√	√	√		13
Kobayashi *et al*[61]	√	√	√							√				√	√			6
Nussbaum *et al*[62]					√	√				√	√	√		√	√	√		8
Nussbaum *et al*[63]					√	√	√			√	√	√		√	√	√		9
Coolsen *et al*[64]	√		√	√	√	√	√		√	√	√	√		√	√	√	√	14
Shao *et al*[65]							√			√				√	√			4
Sutcliffe *et al*[66]	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√				√	√	√		13
Joliat *et al*[67]	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	17
Morales Soriano *et al*[68]		√	√		√		√	√	√	√	√			√	√	√		11
Richardson *et al*[69]	√		√	√		√				√	√	√		√	√	√		10

Table 4 Postoperative length of stay and readmission rates

Study	Postoperative length of stay (d)			Readmission rates		
	ERP	Usual care	*P* value	ERP	Usual care	*P* value
Porter *et al*[53]	12	15	0.001	10 (15)	9 (11)	0.620
Vanounou *et al*[54]	8	8	0.357	13 (9)	4 (6)	0.508
Kennedy *et al*[55]	7	13	< 0.001	7 (8)	3 (7)	> 0.05
Balzano *et al*[56]	13 (7-110)	15 (7-102)	< 0.001	18 (7)	16 (6)	0.865
Kennedy *et al*[57]	Mean 7	Mean 10	0.037	5 (7)	10 (25)	0.027
Nikfarjam *et al*[58]	8 (7-16)	14 (8-29)	< 0.001	3 (15)	0	0.107
Abu Hilal *et al*[59]	8 (7-13)	13 (10-20)	0.015	1 (1)	2 (8)	0.583
Braga *et al*[60]	11 (5-51)	13 (8-54)	0.226	14 (12)	12 (10)	0.835
Kobayashi *et al*[61]	22 ± 12	36 ± 24	< 0.001	2 (2)	2 (2)	0.689
Nussbaum *et al*[62]	6 (5-9)	7 (5-9)	0.026	15 (30)	20 (20)	0.219
Nussbaum *et al*[63]	11 (8-18)	13 (10-18)	0.015	31 (31)	36 (25)	0.850
Coolsen *et al*[64]	14 (7-83)	20 (9-132)	< 0.050	11 (13)	14 (14)	NR
Shao *et al*[65]	14 ± 7	18 ± 8	< 0.001	43 (13)	44 (14)	0.725
Sutcliffe *et al*[66]	9 (4-70)	10 (4-114)	0.160	9 (15)	5 (8)	0.260
Joliat *et al*[67]	15 (11-24)	19 (14-29)	0.029	NR	NR	NR
Morales Soriano *et al*[68]	14 ± 1.3	19 ± 2	0.014	9 (10)	4 (9)	> 0.05
Richardson *et al*[69]	3 (3-4)	6 (5-10)	< 0.001	2 (9)	8 (18)	0.476

Data for length of stay are reported as median (range or interquartile range) or mean ± SD. Data for readmission are reported as number of patients (%). ERP: Enhanced recovery pathway.

number of ERP elements in the high-risk group. Early oral intake, avoidance of nasogastric drainage, and early perianastomotic drain removal were only applied to low-risk patients. Although it is intuitive that high-risk patients will be more likely to develop postoperative morbidity and experience a slower recovery, with holding oral diet has been repeatedly shown to be unnecessary and to delay recovery after pancreatic surgery[43,44], while prolonging postoperative nasogastric drainage after elective abdominal surgery is a known risk factor for pulmonary complications and delayed return to bowel function[80]. Additionally, di Sebastiano *et al*[81] found that tolerating oral diet is an independent factor predicting early discharge within and ERP for PD. Studies published so far have shown that ERPs are safe and feasible in all elective patients undergoing pancreatic resection, including the elderly[82]. Thus it is not recommended to select patients for being treated within an ERP. Further studies are warranted to clarify the impact of adherence to the pathway and identify key elements associated with improved outcomes.

Postoperative outcomes

The most common postoperative outcome considered in studies evaluating enhanced recovery in pancreatic surgery was LOS. Despite being influenced by many non-clinical factors such as surgeon's preference, social situation, caregiver availability as well as distance from the hospital[83], LOS is an easy way to monitor outcomes within an institution as it relates to recovery, complications and costs. In addition, it is important to monitor hospital readmissions as discharging patients early may lead to misdiagnosed complications and increase the risk of patients returning to the emergency room and being readmitted early after discharge[84].

Table 4 shows LOS and readmissions for the studies analyzed in this review. The majority of the studies reported that primary LOS was significantly shorter when patients undergoing pancreatic resection were treated within an ERP with no increase in hospital readmissions. This corroborates with the results observed in other surgical populations[10]. Differences in LOS between control and ERP groups varied from 1 to 14 d. It is important to observe that in studies where this difference was not significant[60,66], subgroup analyses showed that in uncomplicated patients and patients experiencing minor complications, LOS was significantly shorter in the ERP compared to the usual care group.

Table 5 reports morbidity and mortality for the comparative studies analyzed. Complication rates ranged from 16% to 70%. Five of the sixteen studies reporting postoperative morbidity rates showed differences in overall complications when the control and ERP groups were compared. No difference was found in postoperative mortality. None of the studies reported differences in surgical complications between groups, while three studies[56,61,65] found a significant reduction in the occurrence of delayed gastric emptying. A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials in colorectal surgery found that ERPs had a protective effect only on medical complications whereas surgical complications were similar to the usual care[85]. Compared to colectomy, pancreatectomy is associated with a higher rate of postoperative complications, often exceeding 50%. Most of these are surgical complications related to pancreatic fistula, which are unlikely to be influenced by the implementation of a care pathway as this does not modify relevant prognostic factors such as pancreatic

Table 5 Morbidity and mortality rates

Study	Complication rates			Mortality rates		
	ERP	Usual care	*P* value	ERP	Usual care	*P* value
Porter *et al*[53]	56 (70)	52 (76)	0.210	2 (3)	1 (1)	0.870
Vanounou *et al*[54]	77 (54)	40 (62)	0.207	2 (1)	1 (2)	0.918
Kennedy *et al*[55]	34 (37)	19 (44)	> 0.05	1 (1)	1 (2)	> 0.05
Balzano *et al*[56]	119 (47)	148 (59)	0.014	9 (4)	7 (3)	0.798
Kennedy *et al*[57]	11 (16)	15 (38)	> 0.05	1 (1)	1 (2)	> 0.05
Nikfarjam *et al*[58]	NR	NR		NR	NR	-
Abu Hilal *et al*[59]	8 (40)	6 (67)	0.077	0	0	-
Braga *et al*[60]	69 (60)	76 (66)	0.339	4 (4)	4 (4)	1
Kobayashi *et al*[61]	39 (39)	54 (60)	0.004	0	1.1	0.957
Nussbaum *et al*[62]	13 (26)	24 (24)	0.842	0	0	-
Nussbaum *et al*[63]	43 (43)	53 (41)	0.792	1 (1)	4 (3)	0.651
Coolsen *et al*[64]	46 (53)	48 (49)	> 0.05	4 (5)	6 (6)	> 0.05
Shao *et al*[65]	127 (39)	173 (55.8)	< 0.001	40 (12)	53 (17)	NR
Sutcliffe *et al*[66]	15 (34)	15 (41)	0.650	2 (3)	2 (3)	1
Joliat *et al*[67]	50 (68)	71 (82)	0.046	3 (4)	4 (5)	1
Morales Soriano *et al*[68]	12 (30)	24 (55)	0.029	0	2 (2)	> 0.05
Richardson *et al*[69]	6 (27)	17 (39)	0.421	0	0	-

Data are reported as number of patients (%). ERP: Enhanced recovery pathway.

texture and duct diameter, and intraoperative blood loss[86].

Costs

Six studies analyzed hospital costs after the implementation of an ERP for pancreatic surgery[53,55,57,67,69]. Three of them found a significant decrease in cost following the implementation of an ERP[53,55,69]. All analyses were limited to in-hospital resources, and the most significant savings were due to a reduction in board and room costs because of reduction in LOS. Notably, Joliat *et al*[67] performed a cost minimization analysis where they also took into account the fixed costs for the implementation of the pathway including a full-time dedicated ERP nurse manager and the use of a specific ERP database. No significant difference was found in overall costs but savings occurred for anesthesia, operating room, medication and laboratory costs. It should be noted that no study compared indirect costs between patients treated within an ERP and usual care. As care pathways aim at improving patient recovery and they result in reduced LOS, we may hypothesize that societal costs including time spent away from work and need for prolonged home support may be reduced as well. In colorectal surgery patients, a prospective study found that patients managed with an ERP incurred in lower societal costs compared to a conventional care strategy[87]. After discharge, patients managed in the ERP experienced less productivity loss, had less caregiver burden and made fewer visits to outpatient health centers.

Other postoperative outcomes

In the context of ERPs for pancreatic surgery there is no study reporting recovery outcomes other than traditional short-term measures such as hospital LOS and complication rates, which are of interest for clinicians but do not reflect the complexity of the recovery process and fail to capture patient's perspective. An alternative measure of in-hospital recovery may be obtained by assessing the time to achieve specific discharge criteria ("time to readiness for discharge")[88]. The main advantage of this measure is that only factors related to physiological recovery are considered, without the influence of organizational and personal factors that affect LOS. Moreover, in line with the principles of patient-centered care[89], recent literature has advocated that postoperative recovery be measured using patient-reported outcomes (reports of health coming directly from the patient without interpretation by others)[90]. The main advantage of using patient reported outcomes in the context of recovery is that they allow a broad assessment of health across various domains, engaging patients as the key stakeholders in the recovery process.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

We suggest that future research in this context should move in two directions: (1) designing studies with higher methodological quality to determine the impact of ERPs on postoperative outcomes and patient recovery after pancreatic resection; and (2) exploring the role of prehabilitation to optimize patients at high-risk of major complications.

Although non-randomized studies can yield relevant information when RCT data is not available, randomization is still the best approach to prevent selection bias in intervention studies. Therefore, it is our opinion that RCTs should be encouraged to provide convincing evidence about the role of ERPs in pancreatic resection patients. We do recognize that conducting RCTs to study complex interventions such as ERPs is challenging[91], and that a relevant number of ERP

interventions are now considered standard of care even in institutions where a formal ERP has not been implemented, but examples of well-conducted trials in other surgical populations show that it is possible[70,92]. In addition, all studies even if non-randomized, should be prospective and follow a structured reporting platform for enhanced recovery pathways as recently proposed[78]. Moreover, more relevant recovery outcomes including physiological variables (*e.g.*, postoperative stress response markers), long-term results and patient-reported outcomes should be investigated.

Recent literature reports scoring systems to predict patients at higher risk for major complications after pancreatic resection[5,86]. In addition, research advocates the assessment of body composition measures such as abdominal muscle area and visceral adiposity in cancer patients undergoing PD, as sarcopenic and visceral obese patients are at higher risk for pancreatic fistula and postoperative mortality[93,94]. High-risk patients could benefit from a prehabilitation program, which aims at improving patient's coexisting chronic disease therapy, nutritional status, and physical function through a multidisciplinary counseling involving multiple medical specialists, nutritionists and physiotherapists[16,17]. Considering that systemic treatment with chemotherapy is virtually recommended at any stage of pancreatic cancer, patients at very high risk for postoperative mortality could even be shifted from upfront surgery to a tailored preoperative pathway including neoadjuvant chemotherapy[95] and a prehabilitation program. This would allow a greater proportion of patients to receive treatment compared to an adjuvant setting where about a quarter of patients are unable to undergo chemotherapy due to surgical complications, poor performance status, or comorbidity[96]. According to West *et al*[97], a structured preoperative exercise program in patients undergoing neoadjuvant treatment for rectal cancer can improve patient physical fitness and reduce surgical risk. In the context of pancreatic surgery, the use of neoadjuvant therapy would potentially buy the time needed to carry out prehabilitation eventually leading to improved surgical and oncologic outcomes. Future studies are needed to verify the clinical effectiveness of prehabilitation in pancreatic cancer patients at high risk for postoperative morbidity and mortality, and test the feasibility of a combination of neoadjuvant treatment and a physical intervention in this setting.

CONCLUSION

This review analyzed the state of the art of enhanced recovery pathways in pancreatic surgery. Although the amount of literature has grown exponentially in the last decade, the methodological quality of available studies is suboptimal. Most of the studies suggested that the use of ERP is safe and has the potential to reduce primary LOS and hospitalization costs. Well-designed trials are needed to provide conclusive evidence about the role of ERPs in pancreatic surgery. Future studies should be prospective, follow recent recommendations for the reporting of enhanced recovery pathways and should also take into account more specific recovery outcomes such as physiological and patient reported outcomes.

REFERENCES

1 **Cameron JL**, He J. Two thousand consecutive pancreaticoduodenectomies. *J Am Coll Surg* 2015; **220**: 530-536 [PMID: 25724606 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2014.12.031]

2 **Herter FP**, Cooperman AM, Ahlborn TN, Antinori C. Surgical experience with pancreatic and periampullary cancer. *Ann Surg* 1982; **195**: 274-281 [PMID: 6277259]

3 **Gooiker GA**, Lemmens VE, Besselink MG, Busch OR, Bonsing BA, Molenaar IQ, Tollenaar RA, de Hingh IH, Wouters MW. Impact of centralization of pancreatic cancer surgery on resection rates and survival. *Br J Surg* 2014; **101**: 1000-1005 [PMID: 24844590 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9468]

4 **Ghaferi AA**, Osborne NH, Birkmeyer JD, Dimick JB. Hospital characteristics associated with failure to rescue from complications after pancreatectomy. *J Am Coll Surg* 2010; **211**: 325-330 [PMID: 20800188 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2010.04.025]

5 **Uzunoglu FG**, Reeh M, Vettorazzi E, Ruschke T, Hannah P, Nentwich MF, Vashist YK, Bogoevski D, König A, Janot M, Gavazzi F, Zerbi A, Todaro V, Malleo G, Uhl W, Montorsi M, Bassi C, Izbicki JR, Bockhorn M. Preoperative Pancreatic Resection (PREPARE) score: a prospective multicenter-based morbidity risk score. *Ann Surg* 2014; **260**: 857-863; discussion 863-864 [PMID: 25243549 DOI: 10.1097/sla.0000000000000946]

6 **Eaton AA**, Gonen M, Karanicolas P, Jarnagin WR, D'Angelica MI, DeMatteo R, Kingham TP, Allen PJ. Health-Related Quality of Life After Pancreatectomy: Results From a Randomized Controlled Trial. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2016; **23**: 2137-2145 [PMID: 26786091 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-015-5077-z]

7 **Heerkens HD**, Tseng DS, Lips IM, van Santvoort HC, Vriens MR, Hagendoorn J, Meijer GJ, Borel Rinkes IH, van Vulpen M, Molenaar IQ. Health-related quality of life after pancreatic resection for malignancy. *Br J Surg* 2016; **103**: 257-266 [PMID: 26785646 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.10032]

8 **Bardram L**, Funch-Jensen P, Jensen P, Crawford ME, Kehlet H. Recovery after laparoscopic colonic surgery with epidural analgesia, and early oral nutrition and mobilisation. *Lancet* 1995; **345**: 763-764 [PMID: 7891489]

9 **Kehlet H**, Wilmore DW. Evidence-based surgical care and the evolution of fast-track surgery. *Ann Surg* 2008; **248**: 189-198 [PMID: 18650627 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31817f2c1a]

10 **Nicholson A**, Lowe MC, Parker J, Lewis SR, Alderson P, Smith AF. Systematic review and meta-analysis of enhanced recovery programmes in surgical patients. *Br J Surg* 2014; **101**: 172-188 [PMID: 24469618 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9394]

11 **Lassen K**, Coolsen MM, Slim K, Carli F, de Aguilar-Nascimento JE, Schäfer M, Parks RW, Fearon KC, Lobo DN, Demartines N, Braga M, Ljungqvist O, Dejong CH. Guidelines for perioperative care for pancreaticoduodenectomy: Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS®) Society recommendations. *World J Surg* 2013; **37**: 240-258 [PMID: 22956014 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-012-1771-1]

12 **Guyatt GH**, Oxman AD, Kunz R, Falck-Ytter Y, Vist GE, Liberati A, Schünemann HJ. Going from evidence to recommendations. *BMJ* 2008; **336**: 1049-1051 [PMID: 18467413 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.39493.646875.AE]

13 **Kiecolt-Glaser JK**, Page GG, Marucha PT, MacCallum RC, Glaser R. Psychological influences on surgical recovery. Perspectives from psychoneuroimmunology. *Am Psychol* 1998; **53**: 1209-1218 [PMID: 9830373]

14 **Fredericks S**, Guruge S, Sidani S, Wan T. Postoperative patient education: a systematic review. *Clin Nurs Res* 2010; **19**: 144-164 [PMID: 20435785 DOI: 10.1177/1054773810365994]

15 **Snyder-Ramos SA**, Seintsch H, Böttiger BW, Motsch J, Martin E, Bauer M. Patient satisfaction and information gain after the preanesthetic visit: a comparison of face-to-face interview, brochure, and video. *Anesth Analg* 2005; **100**: 1753-1758 [PMID: 15920209 DOI: 10.1213/01.ane.0000153010.49776.e5]

16 **Glance LG**, Osler TM, Neuman MD. Redesigning surgical decision making for high-risk patients. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1379-1381 [PMID: 24716679 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMp1315538]

17 **Li C**, Carli F, Lee L, Charlebois P, Stein B, Liberman AS, Kaneva P, Augustin B, Wongyingsinn M, Gamsa A, Kim do J, Vassiliou MC, Feldman LS. Impact of a trimodal prehabilitation program on functional recovery after colorectal cancer surgery: a pilot study. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 1072-1082 [PMID: 23052535 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2560-5]

18 **Fang Y**, Gurusamy KS, Wang Q, Davidson BR, Lin H, Xie X, Wang C. Pre-operative biliary drainage for obstructive jaundice. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; (**9**): CD005444 [PMID: 22972086 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005444.pub3]

19 **van der Gaag NA**, Rauws EA, van Eijck CH, Bruno MJ, van der Harst E, Kubben FJ, Gerritsen JJ, Greve JW, Gerhards MF, de Hingh IH, Klinkenbijl JH, Nio CY, de Castro SM, Busch OR, van Gulik TM, Bossuyt PM, Gouma DJ. Preoperative biliary drainage for cancer of the head of the pancreas. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 129-137 [PMID: 20071702 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0903230]

20 **Ravid S**, Spudich JA. Myosin heavy chain kinase from developed Dictyostelium cells. Purification and characterization. *J Biol Chem* 1989; **264**: 15144-15150 [PMID: 2549052 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2014.608]

21 **Ljungqvist O**. Insulin resistance and outcomes in surgery. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **95**: 4217-4219 [PMID: 20823470 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2010-1525]

22 **Ljungqvist O**, Søreide E. Preoperative fasting. *Br J Surg* 2003; **90**: 400-406 [PMID: 12673740 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.4066]

23 **Svanfeldt M**, Thorell A, Hausel J, Soop M, Nygren J, Ljungqvist O. Effect of "preoperative" oral carbohydrate treatment on insulin action--a randomised cross-over unblinded study in healthy subjects. *Clin Nutr* 2005; **24**: 815-821 [PMID: 15979768 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2005.05.002]

24 **Smith MD**, McCall J, Plank L, Herbison GP, Soop M, Nygren J. Preoperative carbohydrate treatment for enhancing recovery after elective surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; (**8**): CD009161 [PMID: 25121931 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD009161.pub2]

25 **Braga M**, Bissolati M, Rocchetti S, Beneduce A, Pecorelli N, Di Carlo V. Oral preoperative antioxidants in pancreatic surgery: a double-blind, randomized, clinical trial. *Nutrition* 2012; **28**: 160-164 [PMID: 21890323 DOI: 10.1016/j.nut.2011.05.014]

26 **Uchida I**, Asoh T, Shirasaka C, Tsuji H. Effect of epidural analgesia on postoperative insulin resistance as evaluated by insulin clamp technique. *Br J Surg* 1988; **75**: 557-562 [PMID: 3293693]

27 **Pöpping DM**, Elia N, Van Aken HK, Marret E, Schug SA, Kranke P, Wenk M, Tramèr MR. Impact of epidural analgesia on mortality and morbidity after surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Ann Surg* 2014; **259**: 1056-1067 [PMID: 24096762 DOI: 10.1097/sla.0000000000000237]

28 **Pratt WB**, Steinbrook RA, Maithel SK, Vanounou T, Callery MP, Vollmer CM. Epidural analgesia for pancreatoduodenectomy: a critical appraisal. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2008; **12**: 1207-1220 [PMID: 18264686 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-008-0467-1]

29 **Hiltebrand LB**, Koepfli E, Kimberger O, Sigurdsson GH, Brandt S. Hypotension during fluid-restricted abdominal surgery: effects of norepinephrine treatment on regional and microcirculatory blood flow in the intestinal tract. *Anesthesiology* 2011; **114**: 557-564 [PMID: 21307765 DOI: 10.1097/ALN.0b013e31820bfc81]

30 **Apfel CC**, Greim CA, Haubitz I, Goepfert C, Usadel J, Sefrin P, Roewer N. A risk score to predict the probability of postoperative vomiting in adults. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand* 1998; **42**: 495-501 [PMID: 9605363]

31 **Gan TJ**, Diemunsch P, Habib AS, Kovac A, Kranke P, Meyer TA, Watcha M, Chung F, Angus S, Apfel CC, Bergese SD, Candiotti KA, Chan MT, Davis PJ, Hooper VD, Lagoo-Deenadayalan S, Myles P, Nezat G, Philip BK, Tramèr MR. Consensus guidelines for the management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesth Analg* 2014; **118**: 85-113 [PMID: 24356162 DOI: 10.1213/ane.0000000000000002]

32 **Lobo DN**, Bostock KA, Neal KR, Perkins AC, Rowlands BJ, Allison SP. Effect of salt and water balance on recovery of gastrointestinal function after elective colonic resection: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1812-1818 [PMID: 12044376 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(02)08711-1]

33 **Varadhan KK**, Lobo DN. A meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials of intravenous fluid therapy in major elective open abdominal surgery: getting the balance right. *Proc Nutr Soc* 2010; **69**: 488-498 [PMID: 20515521 DOI: 10.1017/s0029665110001734]

34 **Miller TE**, Roche AM, Mythen M. Fluid management and goal-directed therapy as an adjunct to Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS). *Can J Anaesth* 2015; **62**: 158-168 [PMID: 25391735 DOI: 10.1007/s12630-014-0266-y]

35 **Navarro LH**, Bloomstone JA, Auler JO, Cannesson M, Rocca GD, Gan TJ, Kinsky M, Magder S, Miller TE, Mythen M, Perel A, Reuter DA, Pinsky MR, Kramer GC. Perioperative fluid therapy: a statement from the international Fluid Optimization Group. *Perioper Med* (Lond) 2015; **4**: 3 [PMID: 25897397 DOI: 10.1186/s13741-015-0014-z]

36 **Cannesson M**, Ramsingh D, Rinehart J, Demirjian A, Vu T, Vakharia S, Imagawa D, Yu Z, Greenfield S, Kain Z. Perioperative goal-directed therapy and postoperative outcomes in patients undergoing high-risk abdominal surgery: a historical-prospective, comparative effectiveness study. *Crit Care* 2015; **19**: 261 [PMID: 26088649 DOI: 10.1186/s13054-015-0945-2]

37 **Wang Z**, Chen J, Su K, Dong Z. Abdominal drainage versus no drainage post-gastrectomy for gastric cancer. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; (**5**): CD008788 [PMID: 25961741 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008788.pub3]

38 **Peng S**, Cheng Y, Yang C, Lu J, Wu S, Zhou R, Cheng N. Prophylactic abdominal drainage for pancreatic surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; (**8**): CD010583 [PMID: 26292656 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD010583.pub2]

39 **Van Buren G**, Bloomston M, Hughes SJ, Winter J, Behrman SW, Zyromski NJ, Vollmer C, Velanovich V, Riall T, Muscarella P, Trevino J, Nakeeb A, Schmidt CM, Behrns K, Ellison EC, Barakat O, Perry KA, Drebin J, House M, Abdel-Misih S, Silberfein EJ, Goldin S, Brown K, Mohammed S, Hodges SE, McElhany A, Issazadeh M, Jo E, Mo Q, Fisher WE. A randomized prospective multicenter trial of pancreaticoduodenectomy with and without routine intraperitoneal drainage. *Ann Surg* 2014; **259**: 605-612 [PMID: 24374513 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000000460]

40 **Bassi C**, Molinari E, Malleo G, Crippa S, Butturini G, Salvia R, Talamini G, Pederzoli P. Early versus late drain removal after standard pancreatic resections: results of a prospective randomized trial. *Ann Surg* 2010; **252**: 207-214 [PMID: 20622661 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181e61e88]

41 **Strobel O**, Büchler MW. Drainage after pancreaticoduodenectomy: controversy revitalized. *Ann Surg* 2014; **259**: 613-615 [PMID: 24603296 DOI: 10.1097/sla.0000000000000630]

42 **Berberat PO**, Ingold H, Gulbinas A, Kleeff J, Müller MW, Gutt C, Weigand M, Friess H, Büchler MW. Fast track--different implications in pancreatic surgery. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2007; **11**: 880-887 [PMID: 17440787 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-007-0167-2]

43 **Lassen K**, Kjaeve J, Fetveit T, Tranø G, Sigurdsson HK, Horn A, Revhaug A. Allowing normal food at will after major upper gastrointestinal surgery does not increase morbidity: a randomized multicenter trial. *Ann Surg* 2008; **247**: 721-729 [PMID: 18438106 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31815cca68]

44 **Gerritsen A**, Wennink RA, Besselink MG, van Santvoort HC, Tseng DS, Steenhagen E, Borel Rinkes IH, Molenaar IQ. Early oral feeding after pancreatoduodenectomy enhances recovery without increasing morbidity. *HPB* (Oxford) 2014; **16**: 656-664 [PMID:

24308458 DOI: 10.1111/hpb.12197]
45 **Gianotti L**, Meier R, Lobo DN, Bassi C, Dejong CH, Ockenga J, Irtun O, MacFie J. ESPEN Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition: pancreas. *Clin Nutr* 2009; **28**: 428-435 [PMID: 19464771 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2009.04.003]
46 **Wente MN**, Bassi C, Dervenis C, Fingerhut A, Gouma DJ, Izbicki JR, Neoptolemos JP, Padbury RT, Sarr MG, Traverso LW, Yeo CJ, Büchler MW. Delayed gastric emptying (DGE) after pancreatic surgery: a suggested definition by the International Study Group of Pancreatic Surgery (ISGPS). *Surgery* 2007; **142**: 761-768 [PMID: 17981197 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2007.05.005]
47 **Short V**, Herbert G, Perry R, Atkinson C, Ness AR, Penfold C, Thomas S, Andersen HK, Lewis SJ. Chewing gum for postoperative recovery of gastrointestinal function. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; (**2**): CD006506 [PMID: 25914904 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006506.pub3]
48 **Andersson T**, Bjerså K, Falk K, Olsén MF. Effects of chewing gum against postoperative ileus after pancreaticoduodenectomy--a randomized controlled trial. *BMC Res Notes* 2015; **8**: 37 [PMID: 25886536 DOI: 10.1186/s13104-015-0996-0]
49 **Bell R**, Pandanaboyana S, Shah N, Bartlett A, Windsor JA, Smith AM. Meta-analysis of antecolic versus retrocolic gastric reconstruction after a pylorus-preserving pancreatoduodenectomy. *HPB* (Oxford) 2015; **17**: 202-208 [PMID: 25267428 DOI: 10.1111/hpb.12344]
50 **Convertino VA**. Cardiovascular consequences of bed rest: effect on maximal oxygen uptake. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 1997; **29**: 191-196 [PMID: 9044222]
51 **Castelino T**, Fiore JF, Niculiseanu P, Landry T, Augustin B, Feldman LS. The effect of early mobilization protocols on postoperative outcomes following abdominal and thoracic surgery: A systematic review. *Surgery* 2016; **159**: 991-1003 [PMID: 26804821 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2015.11.029]
52 **Maessen J**, Dejong CH, Hausel J, Nygren J, Lassen K, Andersen J, Kessels AG, Revhaug A, Kehlet H, Ljungqvist O, Fearon KC, von Meyenfeldt MF. A protocol is not enough to implement an enhanced recovery programme for colorectal resection. *Br J Surg* 2007; **94**: 224-231 [PMID: 17205493 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.5468]
53 **Porter GA**, Pisters PW, Mansyur C, Bisanz A, Reyna K, Stanford P, Lee JE, Evans DB. Cost and utilization impact of a clinical pathway for patients undergoing pancreaticoduodenectomy. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2000; **7**: 484-489 [PMID: 10947015]
54 **Vanounou T**, Pratt W, Fischer JE, Vollmer CM, Callery MP. Deviation-based cost modeling: a novel model to evaluate the clinical and economic impact of clinical pathways. *J Am Coll Surg* 2007; **204**: 570-579 [PMID: 17382215 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2007.01.025]
55 **Kennedy EP**, Rosato EL, Sauter PK, Rosenberg LM, Doria C, Marino IR, Chojnacki KA, Berger AC, Yeo CJ. Initiation of a critical pathway for pancreaticoduodenectomy at an academic institution--the first step in multidisciplinary team building. *J Am Coll Surg* 2007; **204**: 917-923; discussion 923-924 [PMID: 17481510 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2007.01.057]
56 **Balzano G**, Zerbi A, Braga M, Rocchetti S, Beneduce AA, Di Carlo V. Fast-track recovery programme after pancreatico-duodenectomy reduces delayed gastric emptying. *Br J Surg* 2008; **95**: 1387-1393 [PMID: 18844251 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.6324]
57 **Kennedy EP**, Grenda TR, Sauter PK, Rosato EL, Chojnacki KA, Rosato FE, Profeta BC, Doria C, Berger AC, Yeo CJ. Implementation of a critical pathway for distal pancreatectomy at an academic institution. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2009; **13**: 938-944 [PMID: 19190968 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-009-0803-0]
58 **Nikfarjam M**, Weinberg L, Low N, Fink MA, Muralidharan V, Houli N, Starkey G, Jones R, Christophi C. A fast track recovery program significantly reduces hospital length of stay following uncomplicated pancreaticoduodenectomy. *JOP* 2013; **14**: 63-70 [PMID: 23306337 DOI: 10.6092/1590-8577/1223]
59 **Abu Hilal M**, Di Fabio F, Badran A, Alsaati H, Clarke H, Fecher I, Armstrong TH, Johnson CD, Pearce NW. Implementation of enhanced recovery programme after pancreatoduodenectomy: a single-centre UK pilot study. *Pancreatology* 2013; **13**: 58-62 [PMID: 23395571 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2012.11.312]
60 **Braga M**, Pecorelli N, Ariotti R, Capretti G, Greco M, Balzano G, Castoldi R, Beretta L. Enhanced recovery after surgery pathway in patients undergoing pancreaticoduodenectomy. *World J Surg* 2014; **38**: 2960-2966 [PMID: 24870390 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-014-2653-5]
61 **Kobayashi S**, Ooshima R, Koizumi S, Katayama M, Sakurai J, Watanabe T, Nakano H, Imaizumi T, Otsubo T. Perioperative care with fast-track management in patients undergoing pancreaticoduodenectomy. *World J Surg* 2014; **38**: 2430-2437 [PMID: 24692004 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-014-2548-5]
62 **Nussbaum DP**, Penne K, Speicher PJ, Stinnett SS, Perez A, White RR, Clary BM, Tyler DS, Blazer DG. The role of clinical care pathways: an experience with distal pancreatectomy. *J Surg Res* 2014; **190**: 64-71 [PMID: 24666986 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2014.02.026]
63 **Nussbaum DP**, Penne K, Stinnett SS, Speicher PJ, Cocieru A, Blazer DG, Zani S, Clary BM, Tyler DS, White RR. A standardized care plan is associated with shorter hospital length of stay in patients undergoing pancreaticoduodenectomy. *J Surg Res* 2015; **193**: 237-245 [PMID: 25062813 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2014.06.036]
64 **Coolsen MM**, van Dam RM, Chigharoe A, Olde Damink SW, Dejong CH. Improving outcome after pancreaticoduodenectomy: experiences with implementing an enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) program. *Dig Surg* 2014; **31**: 177-184 [PMID: 25097014 DOI: 10.1159/000363583]
65 **Shao Z**, Jin G, Ji W, Shen L, Hu X. The role of fast-track surgery in pancreaticoduodenectomy: a retrospective cohort study of 635 consecutive resections. *Int J Surg* 2015; **15**: 129-133 [PMID: 25615646 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijsu.2015.01.007]
66 **Sutcliffe RP**, Hamoui M, Isaac J, Marudanayagam R, Mirza DF, Muiesan P, Roberts JK. Implementation of an Enhanced Recovery Pathway After Pancreaticoduodenectomy in Patients with Low Drain Fluid Amylase. *World J Surg* 2015; **39**: 2023-2030 [PMID: 25809067 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-015-3051-3]
67 **Joliat GR**, Labgaa I, Petermann D, Hübner M, Griesser AC, Demartines N, Schäfer M. Cost-benefit analysis of an enhanced recovery protocol for pancreaticoduodenectomy. *Br J Surg* 2015; **102**: 1676-1683 [PMID: 26492489 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9957]
68 **Morales Soriano R**, Esteve Pérez N, Tejada Gavela S, Cuadrado García Á, Rodríguez Pino JC, Morón Canis JM, Molina Romero X, Muñoz Pérez J, González Argente X. Outcomes of an enhanced recovery after surgery programme for pancreaticoduodenectomy. *Cir Esp* 2015; **93**: 509-515 [PMID: 26072690 DOI: 10.1016/j.ciresp.2015.04.009]
69 **Richardson J**, Di Fabio F, Clarke H, Bajalan M, Davids J, Abu Hilal M. Implementation of enhanced recovery programme for laparoscopic distal pancreatectomy: feasibility, safety and cost analysis. *Pancreatology* 2015; **15**: 185-190 [PMID: 25641674 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2015.01.002]
70 **Vlug MS**, Wind J, Hollmann MW, Ubbink DT, Cense HA, Engel AF, Gerhards MF, van Wagensveld BA, van der Zaag ES, van Geloven AA, Sprangers MA, Cuesta MA, Bemelman WA. Laparoscopy in combination with fast track multimodal management is the best perioperative strategy in patients undergoing colonic surgery: a randomized clinical trial (LAFA-study). *Ann Surg* 2011; **254**: 868-875 [PMID: 21597360 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31821fd1ce]
71 **Mehrabi A**, Hafezi M, Arvin J, Esmaeilzadeh M, Garoussi C, Emami G, Kössler-Ebs J, Müller-Stich BP, Büchler MW, Hackert T, Diener MK. A systematic review and meta-analysis of laparoscopic versus open distal pancreatectomy for benign and malignant lesions of the pancreas: it's time to randomize. *Surgery* 2015; **157**: 45-55 [PMID: 25482464 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2014.06.081]
72 **Tan CL**, Zhang H, Peng B, Li KZ. Outcome and costs of laparoscopic pancreaticoduodenectomy during the initial learning curve vs laparotomy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 5311-5319 [PMID: 25954105 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i17.5311]
73 **Speicher PJ**, Nussbaum DP, White RR, Zani S, Mosca PJ,

Blazer DG, Clary BM, Pappas TN, Tyler DS, Perez A. Defining the learning curve for team-based laparoscopic pancreaticoduodenectomy. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 4014-4019 [PMID: 24923222 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-3839-7]

74 **Song KB**, Kim SC, Hwang DW, Lee JH, Lee DJ, Lee JW, Park KM, Lee YJ. Matched Case-Control Analysis Comparing Laparoscopic and Open Pylorus-preserving Pancreaticoduodenectomy in Patients With Periampullary Tumors. *Ann Surg* 2015; **262**: 146-155 [PMID: 25563866 DOI: 10.1097/sla.0000000000001079]

75 **Kendrick ML**, Cusati D. Total laparoscopic pancreaticoduodenectomy: feasibility and outcome in an early experience. *Arch Surg* 2010; **145**: 19-23 [PMID: 20083750 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2009.243]

76 **Asbun HJ**, Stauffer JA. Laparoscopic vs open pancreaticoduodenectomy: overall outcomes and severity of complications using the Accordion Severity Grading System. *J Am Coll Surg* 2012; **215**: 810-819 [PMID: 22999327 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2012.08.006]

77 **de Rooij T**, Lu MZ, Steen MW, Gerhards MF, Dijkgraaf MG, Busch OR, Lips DJ, Festen S, Besselink MG; Dutch Pancreatic Cancer Group Minimally Invasive Versus Open Pancreatoduodenectomy: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis of Comparative Cohort and Registry Studies. *Ann Surg* 2016; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26863398 DOI: 10.1097/sla.0000000000001660]

78 **Day RW**, Fielder S, Calhoun J, Kehlet H, Gottumukkala V, Aloia TA. Incomplete reporting of enhanced recovery elements and its impact on achieving quality improvement. *Br J Surg* 2015; **102**: 1594-1602 [PMID: 26364714 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9918]

79 **Gustafsson UO**, Hausel J, Thorell A, Ljungqvist O, Soop M, Nygren J. Adherence to the enhanced recovery after surgery protocol and outcomes after colorectal cancer surgery. *Arch Surg* 2011; **146**: 571-577 [PMID: 21242424 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.2010.309]

80 **Nelson R**, Edwards S, Tse B. Prophylactic nasogastric decompression after abdominal surgery. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; (**3**): CD004929 [PMID: 17636780 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004929.pub3]

81 **di Sebastiano P**, Festa L, De Bonis A, Ciuffreda A, Valvano MR, Andriulli A, di Mola FF. A modified fast-track program for pancreatic surgery: a prospective single-center experience. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2011; **396**: 345-351 [PMID: 20703500 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-010-0707-1]

82 **Partelli S**, Crippa S, Castagnani R, Ruffo G, Marmorale C, Franconi AM, De Angelis C, Falconi M. Evaluation of an enhanced recovery protocol after pancreaticoduodenectomy in elderly patients. *HPB* (Oxford) 2016; **18**: 153-158 [PMID: 26902134 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2015.09.009]

83 **Neville A**, Lee L, Antonescu I, Mayo NE, Vassiliou MC, Fried GM, Feldman LS. Systematic review of outcomes used to evaluate enhanced recovery after surgery. *Br J Surg* 2014; **101**: 159-170 [PMID: 24469616 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9324]

84 **Wind J**, Hofland J, Preckel B, Hollmann MW, Bossuyt PM, Gouma DJ, van Berge Henegouwen MI, Fuhring JW, Dejong CH, van Dam RM, Cuesta MA, Noordhuis A, de Jong D, van Zalingen E, Engel AF, Goei TH, de Stoppelaar IE, van Tets WF, van Wagensveld BA, Swart A, van den Elsen MJ, Gerhards MF, de Wit LT, Siepel MA, van Geloven AA, Juttmann JW, Clevers W, Bemelman WA. Perioperative strategy in colonic surgery; LAparoscopy and/or FAst track multimodal management versus standard care (LAFA trial). *BMC Surg* 2006; **6**: 16 [PMID: 17134506 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2482-6-16]

85 **Greco M**, Capretti G, Beretta L, Gemma M, Pecorelli N, Braga M. Enhanced recovery program in colorectal surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *World J Surg* 2014; **38**: 1531-1541 [PMID: 24368573 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-013-2416-8]

86 **Braga M**, Capretti G, Pecorelli N, Balzano G, Doglioni C, Ariotti R, Di Carlo V. A prognostic score to predict major complications after pancreaticoduodenectomy. *Ann Surg* 2011; **254**: 702-707; discussion 707-708 [PMID: 22042466 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31823598fb]

87 **Lee L**, Mata J, Ghitulescu GA, Boutros M, Charlebois P, Stein B, Liberman AS, Fried GM, Morin N, Carli F, Latimer E, Feldman LS. Cost-effectiveness of Enhanced Recovery Versus Conventional Perioperative Management for Colorectal Surgery. *Ann Surg* 2015; **262**: 1026-1033 [PMID: 25371130 DOI: 10.1097/sla.0000000000001019]

88 **Fiore JF**, Faragher IG, Bialocerkowski A, Browning L, Denehy L. Time to readiness for discharge is a valid and reliable measure of short-term recovery after colorectal surgery. *World J Surg* 2013; **37**: 2927-2934 [PMID: 24101012 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-013-2208-1]

89 **Selby JV**, Beal AC, Frank L. The Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute (PCORI) national priorities for research and initial research agenda. *JAMA* 2012; **307**: 1583-1584 [PMID: 22511682 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2012.500]

90 **Feldman LS**, Lee L, Fiore J. What outcomes are important in the assessment of Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS) pathways? *Can J Anaesth* 2015; **62**: 120-130 [PMID: 25391733 DOI: 10.1007/s12630-014-0263-1]

91 **Lassen K**, Hφye A, Myrmel T. Randomised trials in surgery: the burden of evidence. *Rev Recent Clin Trials* 2012; **7**: 244-248 [PMID: 22621283]

92 **Jones C**, Kelliher L, Dickinson M, Riga A, Worthington T, Scott MJ, Vandrevala T, Fry CH, Karanjia N, Quiney N. Randomized clinical trial on enhanced recovery versus standard care following open liver resection. *Br J Surg* 2013; **100**: 1015-1024 [PMID: 23696477 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9165]

93 **Pecorelli N**, Carrara G, De Cobelli F, Cristel G, Damascelli A, Balzano G, Beretta L, Braga M. Effect of sarcopenia and visceral obesity on mortality and pancreatic fistula following pancreatic cancer surgery. *Br J Surg* 2016; **103**: 434-442 [PMID: 26780231 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.10063]

94 **Kirihara Y**, Takahashi N, Hashimoto Y, Sclabas GM, Khan S, Moriya T, Sakagami J, Huebner M, Sarr MG, Farnell MB. Prediction of pancreatic anastomotic failure after pancreatoduodenectomy: the use of preoperative, quantitative computed tomography to measure remnant pancreatic volume and body composition. *Ann Surg* 2013; **257**: 512-519 [PMID: 23241871 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31827827d0]

95 **Sutton JM**, Abbott DE. Neoadjuvant therapy for pancreas cancer: past lessons and future therapies. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 15564-15579 [PMID: 25400440 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i42.15564]

96 **Spitz FR**, Abbruzzese JL, Lee JE, Pisters PW, Lowy AM, Fenoglio CJ, Cleary KR, Janjan NA, Goswitz MS, Rich TA, Evans DB. Preoperative and postoperative chemoradiation strategies in patients treated with pancreaticoduodenectomy for adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. *J Clin Oncol* 1997; **15**: 928-937 [PMID: 9060530]

97 **West MA**, Loughney L, Lythgoe D, Barben CP, Sripadam R, Kemp GJ, Grocott MP, Jack S. Effect of prehabilitation on objectively measured physical fitness after neoadjuvant treatment in preoperative rectal cancer patients: a blinded interventional pilot study. *Br J Anaesth* 2015; **114**: 244-251 [PMID: 25274049 DOI: 10.1093/bja/aeu318]

P- Reviewer: Kokosis G, Wani IA **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6469

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6469-6483
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Specific CD8$^+$ T cell response immunotherapy for hepatocellular carcinoma and viral hepatitis

Elia Moreno-Cubero, Juan-Ramón Larrubia

Elia Moreno-Cubero, Juan-Ramón Larrubia, Translational Hepatology Unit, Guadalajara University Hospital, University of Alcalá, E-19002 Guadalajara, Spain

Elia Moreno-Cubero, Department of Biology of Systems, University of Alcalá, 28805 Alcalá de Henares (Madrid), Spain

Juan-Ramón Larrubia, Department of Medicine and Medical Specialties, University of Alcalá, 28805 Alcalá de Henares (Madrid), Spain

Author contributions: Moreno-Cubero E and Larrubia JR contributed equally to the conception and design of the review; Moreno-Cubero E wrote the manuscript; and Larrubia JR revised the final document.

Supported by "Instituto de Salud Carlos III", Spain & "European Regional Development Fund (ERDF), a way of making Europe", No. PI12/00130 and No. PI15/00074; and "Gilead Spain & Instituto de Salud Carlos III", No. GLD14_00217.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Juan-Ramón Larrubia, MD, MSc, PhD, Translational Hepatology Unit, Guadalajara University Hospital, University of Alcalá, E-19002 Guadalajara, Spain. juan.larrubia@uah.es
Telephone: +34-949-209200
Fax: +34-949-909256

Received: March 23, 2016
Peer-review started: March 24, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 21, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), chronic hepatitis B (CHB) and chronic hepatitis C (CHC) are characterized by exhaustion of the specific CD8$^+$ T cell response. This process involves enhancement of negative co-stimulatory molecules, such as programmed cell death protein-1 (PD-1), cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4), 2B4, Tim-3, CD160 and LAG-3, which is linked to intrahepatic overexpression of some of the cognate ligands, such as PD-L1, on antigen presenting cells and thereby favouring a tolerogenic environment. Therapies that disrupt these negative signalling mechanisms represent promising therapeutic tools with the potential to restore reactivity of the specific CD8$^+$ T cell response. In this review we discuss the impressive *in vitro* and *in vivo* results that have been recently achieved in HCC, CHB and CHC by blocking these negative receptors with monoclonal antibodies against these immune checkpoint modulators. The article mainly focuses on the role of CTLA-4 and PD-1 blocking monoclonal antibodies, the first ones to have reached clinical practice. The humanized monoclonal antibodies against CTLA-4 (tremelimumab and ipilimumab) and PD-1 (nivolumab and pembrolizumab) have yielded good results in testing of HCC and chronic viral hepatitis patients. Trelimumab, in particular, has shown a significant increase in the time to progression in HCC, while nivolumab has shown a remarkable effect on hepatitis C viral load reduction. The research on the role of ipilimumab, nivolumab and pembrolizumab on HCC is currently underway.

Key words: Hepatocellular carcinoma; CD8$^+$ T cells;

Immune checkpoint modulation; Chronic viral hepatitis; Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4; Programmed cell death protein-1

Core tip: In certain types of chronic diseases, such as hepatocellular carcinoma and chronic viral hepatitis, disease curation involves restoration of the specific cytotoxic T cell response. Chronic hepatotropic viruses and tumoural cells develop mechanisms to induce exhaustion of the specific CD8$^+$ T cells in order to escape immune destruction. One hallmark of this dysfunction is the overexpression of negative co-stimulatory molecules. Blockade of these negative co-stimulatory pathways, a process known as immune checkpoint modulation, is a promising novel therapy that could improve the treatment of liver diseases that feature T cell exhaustion.

Moreno-Cubero E, Larrubia JR. Specific CD8$^+$ T cell response immunotherapy for hepatocellular carcinoma and viral hepatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6469-6483 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6469.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6469

INTRODUCTION

Specific CD8$^+$ T cells have a central role in pathogenesis of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) as well as control of infection with hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV) because these cells are able to recognise infected/tumoural cells and destroy them[1-11]. Nevertheless, in chronic viral infections and tumoural diseases that feature high-grade and persistent antigenemia, the adaptive immune system has to surrender in order to diminish tissue damage[12-16]. This is the case for HCC and chronic viral hepatitis, wherein tumoural cells and HBV/HCV viruses modulate common mechanisms to induce specific T cell exhaustion. Among such viral and tumoural strategies, the induction of negative co-stimulatory molecules stands out.

Unfortunately, the on-going lack of effective treatments for HCC[17], for achieving complete HBV clearance[18] and for preventing HCV relapse after direct-acting antiviral (DAA) agent failure[19] has led to an urgent need for developing new therapeutic approaches, such as immunotherapy focused on specific cytotoxic T cell restoration[20]. Modulation of negative co-stimulatory signalling molecules expressed on these cells could have a substantial impact when developed as a therapeutic tool. In this review we discuss the specific CD8$^+$ T cell response during HCC and chronic hepatitis B and C (commonly known as CHB and CHC respectively), focusing on the disease mechanisms used by tumoural cells and hepatotropic viruses to induce T cell exhaustion and on the potential therapeutic strategies to modulate co-stimulatory pathways in order to restore specific T cell reactivity.

T CELL EXHAUSTION

CD8$^+$ T cell activation depends on physical interaction between the T cell receptor and the major histocompatibility complex I (MHC I)/epitope complex, as well as that between co-stimulatory molecules with their ligands in an adequate cytokine milieu[21]. Upon completion of their effector tasks, primed specific T cells switch-off their effector activity by expressing negative co-stimulatory molecules, generating a sustained memory T cell population[22]. Thus, the balance between positive and negative co-stimulation determines the status of CD8$^+$ T cell activation and the intensity of the accompanying immune response[23].

During tumoural and persistent viral infections - characterized by high-grade and persistent antigenemia - the adaptive immune system is tuned down in order to avoid host-induced tissue damage. Tumoural cells and persistent viruses have developed mechanisms that induce early expression of negative co-stimulatory molecules so as to favour T cell exhaustion before the effector T cells are able to control the disease[24-26]. This phenomenon could represent an evolutionary advantage for the chronic persistence of these diseases.

T cell exhaustion is characterized by a lack of effector cell capacity that is linked to overexpression of negative co-stimulatory pathways. Upon binding to their respective ligands, these negative co-stimulatory molecules act to disrupt the processes of T cell proliferation as well as secretion of type-Ⅰ cytokines and development of cytolytic functions, creating an environment that allows for tumour persistence and virus evasion[13,27-29]. Among these negative co-stimulatory pathways, the most advanced in the pipeline for clinical use are cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4) and programmed cell death protein-1 (PD-1), as will be discussed later[30,31].

Exhausted CD8$^+$ T cells were first identified during chronic lymphocoriomeningitis virus (LCMV) infection and defined as virus-specific CD8$^+$ T cells that did not produce antiviral cytokines and were ineffective at controlling the infection[32]. Since that time, subsequent research has provided descriptions of T cell exhaustion in different human chronic infections and cancers[33-35]. Loss of functionality occurs in a hierarchical manner throughout the process of exhaustion. It has been noted that the greater the antigen load or the duration of the disease, the greater the extent of exhaustion. Usually, functions such as interleukin (IL)-2 production, high expansion ability and *ex vivo* killing are lost first; this stage is named "partial exhaustion Ⅰ". In the next stage of exhaustion, "partial exhaustion Ⅱ", these cells lose their ability to produce tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α, and their expansion ability and antigen-induced production of interferon (IFN)-γ

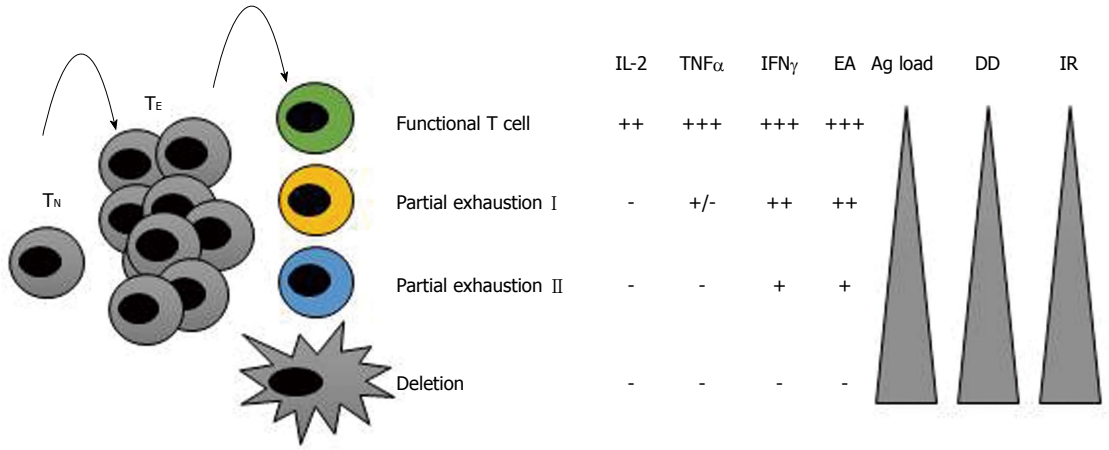


Figure 1 T cell exhaustion during diseases with persistent and high antigenemia. At the beginning of an infection, naïve T cells (T_N) are primed and differentiate into effector T cells (T_E). During acute infections, T_E are completely functional and control the pathogen/tumoural cell. After clearing the antigen, these cells are then deleted by apoptosis and a memory population is generated and maintained. Nevertheless, in conditions of chronic infections or tumours, these cells gradually loss their effector capacity, becoming exhausted. The greater the antigen load or duration of the infection, the more exhausted the cells become. The steps of exhaustion are summarised here. In "partial exhaustion I" IL-2 production, high expansion ability and *ex vivo* killing are lost. In "partial exhaustion II", the more advanced stage of exhaustion, these cells lose their capacity to produce tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α, produce less interferon-γ and proliferate less. In the final stage of exhaustion, these cells are deleted by apoptosis. Ag: Antigen; DD: Duration of the disease; EA: Expansion ability; IR: Inhibitory receptors' expression.

become impaired. The final stage of exhaustion is the deletion of these cells by apoptosis[32,36,37] (Figure 1). A detailed understanding of the mechanism underlying this process may aid in development of efficacious therapies that restore the function of these cells and - from a practical point of view - the modulation of negative co-stimulatory pathways.

LIVER AS A TOLEROGENIC ORGAN

As previously described, one reason why specific cytotoxic T cells become exhausted in HCC, CHB and CHC is related to the strategies developed by the pathogen/tumour itself; yet, the host contributes to the exhaustion process as well, due to the particular liver features that are described below.

Bowen *et al*[38] elegantly showed that activation of primary CD8$^+$ T cells within the lymph nodes leads to an efficient response, whereas activation of primary CD8$^+$ T cells within the liver commits T cells to the development of an immunotolerant state. This divergent response is related to the liver's intense tolerogenic properties, which are in line with this organ's role in dealing with a massive load of foreign antigens from the gastrointestinal tract. For this reason, in order to develop new immunotherapeutic approaches to treat viral hepatitis and HCC it is first necessary to understand how intrahepatic immunity is regulated. An important feature to consider is that liver can support primary T cell activation independently of secondary lymphoid tissues and involvement of dendritic cells (DCs). Moreover, the ligands expressed by resident liver cells could favour exhaustion of specific liver-infiltrating T cells after antigen recognition. These two conditions could definitely impair the quality of T cell response[39,40].

Several liver cell types (listed below) can work as antigen-presenting cells (APCs) to activate naïve CD8$^+$ T cells.

Hepatocytes

Hepatocytes represent about two-thirds of the total cell population in the liver. Antigen presentation by hepatocytes is the most relevant mechanism of infection with hepatotropic viruses. Naïve CD8$^+$ T cells can directly interact with hepatocytes *via* liver sinusoidal endothelial cell (LSEC) fenestrations[41]. Although hepatocytes have been demonstrated as capable of promoting rapid activation and proliferation of CD8$^+$ T cells *in vivo*[39,40], they do not express positive co-stimulatory molecules, such as CD80 and CD86; therefore, because of this they could fail to induce functional CD8$^+$ T cells in *in vivo* conditions[42,43]. Besides, one of the ligands of the negative co-stimulatory molecule PD-1 (PD-L1) can be expressed by hepatocytes[44], and its interaction with PD-1 on the hepatocyte-activated CD8$^+$ T cell contributes to its functional suppression[45].

Kupffer cells

Kupffer cells (KCs) are the resident macrophages in the liver and represent the largest population of resident tissue macrophages in the entire body[46]. KCs are localized mainly in the periportal area, where they serve to clear endotoxins and phagocytose debris and microorganisms. These cells can also pass through the space of Dissé, coming into contact with hepatocytes and phagocytosing any with apoptotic features[47,48]. KCs express Fas-ligand[49] and PD-L1[50], leading to apoptosis and functional exhaustion of CD8$^+$ T cells respectively. In addition, the KCs can secrete immunosuppressive cytokines, such as IL-10

and tumour growth factor (TGF)-β, both of which can contribute to T cell exhaustion[51].

LSECs

LSECs can express MHC and co-stimulatory molecules and are capable of presenting antigen to CD8$^+$ T cells by at least two pathways, thereby promoting tolerance. Firstly, these cells express PD-L1 even at low antigen concentration[52] and, secondly, they can secrete IL-10 and TGF-β[53], which could impair CD8$^+$ T cell activation, as previously commented on.

Hepatic stellate cells

Hepatic stellate cells (HSCs), located at the space of Dissé, represent the major cell type involved in liver fibrosis, but they are also involved in antigen presentation[54]. TGF-β secreted by the HSCs contributes both to liver fibrosis and to the exhaustion of CD8$^+$ T cells[55].

DCs

Resident hepatic DCs are predominantly immature cells, prone to capturing and processing of antigens[56]. Because IL-10 and TGF-β are secreted by KCs and LSECs, the uninfected liver provides a unique cytokine environment that may render a tolerogenic state for the resident DCs[56-58]. Moreover, resting DCs can induce peripheral CD8$^+$ T cell tolerance through up-regulation of PD-1 and CTLA-4[59].

Consequently, CD8$^+$ T cells that are activated by these liver APCs are not optimally primed and fail to exert effector functions, thus promoting tolerance and T cell exhaustion. This situation can represent a survival advantage for hepatotropic viruses and HCC, since the specific cytotoxic T cells that are capable of recognising viral and tumoural antigens can become exhausted easily, due to the tolerogenic liver status. Such an environment features high-level expression of negative co-stimulatory ligands on the resident liver cells as well as induction of negative co-stimulatory receptors on the specific T cells, as related to the liver cytokine milieu.

Following our above introduction of the concept of T cell exhaustion in HCC, CHB and CHC, as well as of the mechanisms involved in this process, we will next highlight the current evidence showing why specific cytotoxic T cell response restoration could impact HCC, HCV and HBV treatment.

HCC

Worldwide rates of liver cancer classify it as the fifth most common cancer in men and the seventh in women. Infection with HBV and HCV, chronic alcoholism and fatty liver disease, among others, are major risk factors for HCC[60]. Once diagnosed, HCC usually has a poor prognosis, due to lack of efficacy of the available treatments. Therefore, novel effective therapies are urgently needed to treat patients with this type of tumour, particularly for those in advanced stages for whom the most efficacious of the current treatments are still only suboptimal.

Immune evasion is a general strategy of cancers, but much is still unknown about it. Most of the research on this phenomenon has focused on devising ways to directly destroy the tumoural cell, while the role that immune system restoration may play in resisting or eradicating the tumour formation and its progression has been largely, if not completely, overlooked[61]. Adaptive immune response, especially the cytotoxic response, is known to play a crucial role in the control of solid tumours[8]. Several lines of evidence have been reported that support the importance of CD8$^+$ T cells during HCC. Firstly, the presence of a high number of tumour-infiltrating T cells in HCC tissue suggests a role in HCC pathogenesis[9]. Secondly, the quantity of tumour-infiltrating T cells is considered a good prognosis marker of HCC[10]. Finally, adoptive immunotherapy could protect against HCC, diminishing the recurrence risk after surgical treatment[11].

Mizukoshi *et al*[62] analysed immune responses against various HCC epitopes in peripheral blood mononuclear cells from patients with HCC. After radiofrequency ablation (RFA), the authors noted an improvement of these responses in two-thirds of the patients; interestingly, those patients with a detectable response also experienced longer survival[62]. Flecken *et al*[12] recently described some tumour-associated antigen (TAA)-specific CD8$^+$ T cell responses in HCC. In that elegant study, the authors applied overlapping peptides to a large cohort of HCC patients and showed that a variety of TAAs can induce CD8$^+$ responses against α-fetoprotein (AFP), glypican-3 (GPC-3), melanoma-associated antigen-1 (MAGE-1) and New York-oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma-1 (NY-ESO-1). The authors also showed a positive correlation between either the quantity of TAA-specific CD8$^+$ T cells or the number of TAA targets and the survival of these patients. Finally, they also demonstrated that TAA-specific CD8$^+$ T cells were able to proliferate, but not able to produce IFN-γ after antigen encounter[12]. Therefore, HCC features CD8$^+$ T cells that are able to recognise tumoural neo-antigens; although, these cells display an exhausted behaviour. Interestingly, PD-1 was found to be up-regulated in these cells, a feature which could represent a base for immunotherapy by blocking this negative co-stimulatory molecule. Consequently, one possible approach for HCC treatment could be to restore the effector capabilities of these cells and one option towards achieving this end could be the modulation of negative co-stimulatory pathways, such as PD-1, as will be discussed below.

HCV

HCV was first cloned in 1989 as a non-A non-B he-

patitis virus[63]. Since then, substantial progress has been made in our understanding of both the virus and its interactions with the host system. The final result of this intense research effort has been the generation of DAAs that show curative effect on HCV infection in approximately 95% of the CHC patients[64-66].

In the last two decades, we have learnt several important lessons about the strategies that the HCV employs to avoid the immune system in order to persist in the host. HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells play an essential role in controlling HCV during acute infection[1-3], based upon their abilities to both recognize and destroy the infected cell through cytolytic and non-cytolitic mechanisms[4,67]. However, in approximately 70% of primo-infections, the virus is able to persist in the host, leading to chronic infection[68,69]. Viral escape mutations are the first mechanism used by HCV to avoid immune control, exploiting the lack of a proofreading function by the viral polymerase[70]. The second mechanism involves overwhelming the immune response. Because of the persistent antigenemia that accompanies HCV infection, the HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cell response becomes exhausted and fails to control infection, featuring loss of effector capacities and overexpression of negative-regulation pathways[13,14].

Thus, although DAAs are very effective treatments, continued research in HCV immunotherapy is still necessary because of the existence of DAA non-responders and to develop it as a strategy to boost other anti-viral treatments (both established and new) and to support development of a therapeutic vaccine. Moreover, since these HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells up-regulate negative co-stimulatory molecules, blocking the interaction of these receptors with their ligands could be considered as a potential therapeutic strategy.

HBV

HBV is a hepatotropic non-cytopathic DNA virus and member of the family Hepadnaviridae[71]. Approximately 2 billion people worldwide have been infected by HBV, and it is estimated that more than 350 million of these individuals are persistent carriers of the virus. Most HBV infections occur *via* vertical transmission. Around 5%-10% of patients infected during adulthood develop CHB, with 10%-30% of those patients progressing to liver cirrhosis and/or HCC. Ultimately, however, 1-2 million HBV-related deaths are reported annually[72].

The primary treatment of CHB is based on two kinds of drugs currently: pegylated IFN-α and nucleoside/nucleotide analogues[73]. Nevertheless, complete HBV eradication, with clearance of the covalently closed circular DNA, is rarely achieved[18], making it necessary to develop new effective therapies for this major public health problem. The potential benefit of immunotherapy in HBV is highlighted by several important aspects of the infection itself. Firstly, in subjects who spontaneously clear the HBV infection, viral control is determined by the development of a strong, polyclonal and multi-specific CD8$^+$ T cell response[5-7]; this usually happens during adulthood, when nearly 90% of the infected subjects are able to control the virus and in contrast to individuals (children) who obtain the virus through vertical transmission and in who the HBV persists due to immunotolerance induction[74]. Secondly, CHB resolution occurs in some bone marrow transplantation recipients who received tissue from a donor with natural immunity to HBV[75]. Finally, those individuals with natural immunity to HBV maintain immunological memory through HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells that can last decades after the primo-infection that is capable of controlling virus at trace amounts[76]. Nevertheless, in chronically infected patients, the HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cell response is weak (barely detectable) and exhausted in both the peripheral blood and the liver[15,16], and this feature is accompanied by up-regulated expression of negative co-stimulatory molecules, as will be discussed in the following paragraphs. Thus, taking into account these facts, immunotherapy based on modulation of the co-stimulatory pathway could be a promising approach to improve HBV chronic infection treatment.

IMMUNE CHECKPOINTS

The cytotoxic T cell response is essential to eradication of tumoural and virus-infected cells. In patients with chronic viral hepatitis and HCC this response is impaired and, theoretically, its restoration could help in disease control. As previously commented, one of the strategies used by tumoural and virus-infected cells to induce exhaustion of the CD8$^+$ T cells is up-regulation of negative co-stimulatory molecules. Therefore, therapeutic blockade of various inhibitory receptors, a process also referred to as "checkpoint blockade", has begun to provide very promising results in the treatment of different diseases; these will be summarised hereafter.

The first proof of concept of the efficacy of this kind of treatment was reported for "ipilimumab", a human monoclonal antibody against the negative co-stimulatory molecule CTLA-4 that was approved by the United States' Food and Drug Administration in 2011; this drug is currently in clinical use for treating metastatic melanoma[77]. Since its introduction, this antibody (and others) against different co-stimulatory molecules has entered testing for other malignancies and various viral infections. There are several completed, on-going and planned clinical trials for investigating treatment of chronic hepatitis and HCC with single-agent inhibitors, as well as with combinations of inhibitors targeting multiple checkpoints or adding other therapies to this blockade. In the next lines, we will review the mechanism of action of these immune checkpoints, and the effect of blockade as determined in pre-clinical and clinical studies.

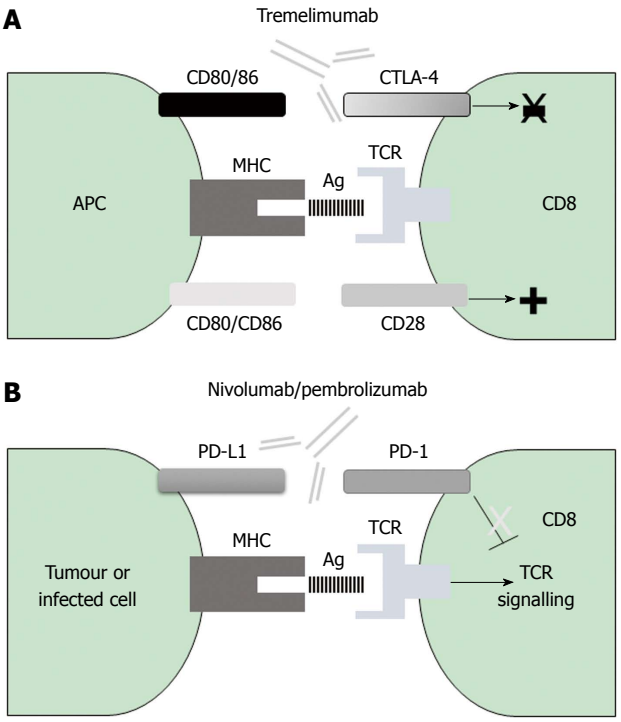


Figure 2 Mechanisms of action of negative co-stimulatory pathways involved in current immunotherapy for cytotoxic T cells. A: The CTLA-4 immune checkpoint impairs early T cell activation; the inhibitory CTLA-4 molecule binds with higher affinity to the CD80/CD86 ligands on antigen presenting cells and prevents their binding to the positive co-stimulatory molecule CD28, with the consequence being a decrease in T cell activation. B: The PD-1 negative receptor on T cells interacts with either PD-L1 or PD-L2 on the surface of the infected or tumoural cell, thereby promoting T cell exhaustion; blockade of either CTLA-4 or PD-1 with humanized monoclonal antibodies releases the break that is exerted by these molecules and results in T cell activation. CTLA-4: Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4; MHC: Major histocompatibility complex; PD-1: Programmed cell death protein-1; TCR: T cell receptor.

Table 1 Clinical trials of immune checkpoint inhibitors in patients with chronic hepatitis and hepatocellular carcinoma

NCT	Status	Disease	Agent	Result	Ref.
01008358	Completed	HCC and CHC	Tremelimumab	TTP: 6.48 m	[30]
01853618	Recruiting	HCC	Tremelimumab	TTP: 7.4 m	[111]
00703469	Completed	CHC	Nivolumab	15% significant reduction of viral load	[31]
02658019	Not yet recruiting	HCC	Pembrolizumab	NA	[112]
01658878	Recruiting	HCC	Nivolumab Ipilimumab	NA	[113]

Tremelimumab and ipilimumab are humanized monoclonal antibodies against CTLA-4; Nivolumab and pembrolizumab are humanized monoclonal antibodies against PD-1. HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; NA: Not available; NCT: Clinical trial number at clinicaltrials.gov; TTP: Time to progression.

CTLA-4

Mechanism of action of CTLA-4: Since its discovery in 1987[78], research has determined that CTLA-4 is expressed only on T cells, where it regulates early immune activation. This negative co-stimulatory molecule counteracts the activity of the positive co-stimulatory molecule CD28[79-82]. After antigen encounter, the CD28 co-signal triggers the T cell receptor (TCR) signal that activates T cells[83]. CTLA-4 and CD28 share the same APC-expressed ligands, namely CD80 and CD86. CTLA-4 displays at least two different ways by which it can inhibit T cell activation; in the first, it inhibits positive signalling of CD28 according to the feature that CTLA-4 has more affinity for CD80 and CD86 than the positive co-stimulatory molecule CD28[84] and in the second, CTLA-4 directly inhibits TCR signalling[85,86] (Figure 2).

The central function of CTLA-4 is regulation of the access of CD28 to its shared ligands in order to protect against autoimmunity and to switch-off a normal immune response after antigen control has been achieved. The vital importance of CTLA-4 was demonstrated in two different studies that were based on Ctla-4 knock-out mice. The CTLA-4-deficient mice present a profound immune dysregulation and autoimmune disease that leads to massive lympho-proliferation and fatal multi-organic tissue destruction[87,88]. Nevertheless, the inadequate induction of CTLA-4 under viral infection and tumour conditions and disrupted effects on specific CD8$^+$ T cells could favour early exhaustion of these cells and consequently allow persistence of the disease.

Thus, considering the known mechanism of action of CTLA-4, enhancement of the CD8$^+$ T cell response by CTLA-4 blockade could represent a satisfactory approach to treating diseases that feature persistent antigenemia, such as viral hepatitis and HCC.

CTLA-4 blockade (pre-clinical): Nakamoto *et al*[27] discovered that CTLA-4 is overexpressed in PD-1$^+$ intrahepatic mononuclear cells of patients with CHC (Table 1). In addition, when the authors blockaded these inhibitory receptors individually they found no restoration of intrahepatic HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cell response. Surprisingly, however, when they blocked both inhibitory receptors simultaneously, the effector ability of these cells was restored, indicating the existence of a synergic effect between both receptors[27]. CTLA-4 blockade alone, however, could be sufficient to restore specific cytotoxic T cell response in persistent HBV infection. Schurich *et al*[28] showed that CTLA-4 blockade is able to restore the expansion ability of HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells in both the intrahepatic and peripheral compartments of patients with CHB. It is unfortunate, though, that to date the research in HCC has only involved *in vitro* investigations of the blockade of CTLA-4 in peripheral blood mononuclear cells from HCC patients and that the results have shown no restoration of the ability of IFN-γ secretion by GPC-3-specific CD8$^+$ T cells[29]. However, a study of a mouse model carried out by

Leach *et al*[89] showed that *in vivo* administration of antibodies against CTLA-4 can result in regression of certain types of tumours, specifically those that are more immunogenic. These last data are consistent with the results obtained in a recent clinical trial that will be commented on later in this review.

PD-1

Mechanism of action of PD-1: PD-1 was first identified in 1992 by Ishida *et al*[90] as a negative co-stimulatory molecule that belongs to the CD28 immunoglobulin superfamily of transmembrane proteins[91]. PD-1 is inducibly expressed on T cells, B cells and monocytes, upon their activation[92]. The PD-1 ligands, PD-L1 and PD-L2, are members of the B7 co-stimulatory molecules family[93,94]. APCs and non-lymphoid tissues, including the liver, express PD-L1, while DCs and macrophages can up-regulate PD-L2 expression[34,44,94-97] (Table 1). Interaction of PD-1 with its ligands leads to inhibition of proliferation through a cell cycle arrest at G_0/G_1 and also impairs IL-2 secretion by T cells[98]. In addition, interaction between PD-1 and PD-L1 or PD-L2 promotes apoptosis and secretion of the immunosuppressive cytokine IL-10[99-101] (Figure 2).

The immunoregulatory properties of PD-1 are reflected by the Pdl-1 knockout mouse model, which presents with severe autoimmune disease[102]. Thus, PD-1 is considered to play an important role in controlling the cellular immune response and in switching-off cells after they have completed their tasks in order to avoid autoimmune disorders; yet, its early expression can induce T cell exhaustion. Several studies have reported a positive correlation between exhaustion and PD-1 up-regulation[24,103,104]. Therefore, the blockade of PD-1 and its ligands could represent an efficient therapeutic approach by which to restore an effector T cell response against HCC and viral hepatitis.

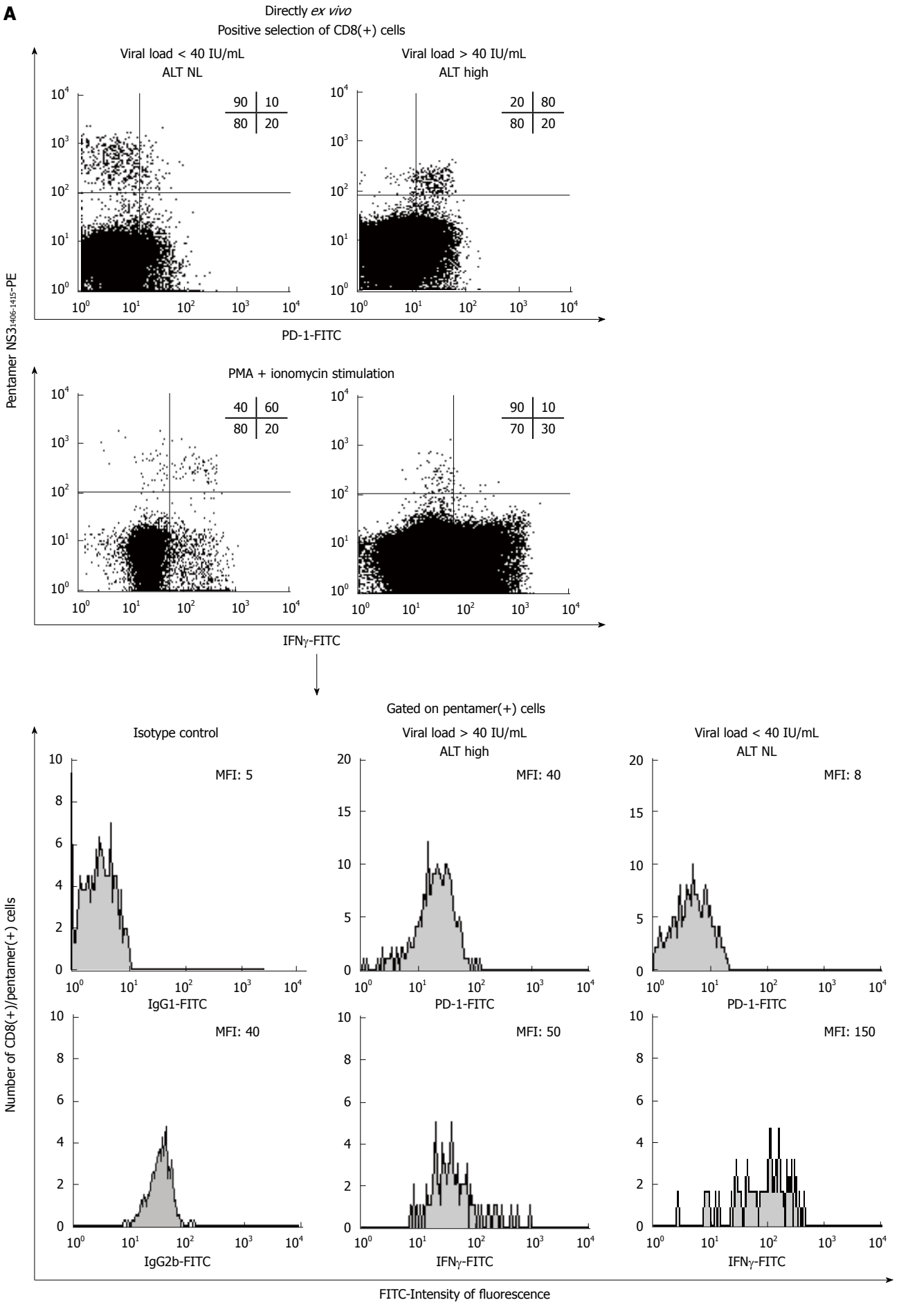
PD-1/PD-L1 blockade (pre-clinical): Several studies have been carried out to evaluate the effect of blocking the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway under conditions of viral hepatitis and HCC. Studies focusing on CHC, by Penna *et al*[105] and Radziewicz *et al*[106], along with data obtained by our own group, have shown that up-regulation of PD-1 affects HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells in peripheral blood and in the intrahepatic compartment during chronic HCV infection (Table 1). Besides, blockade of the PD-1/PD-L1 interaction was shown to improve the expansion ability of and IFN-γ secretion from HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells[24,105,106]. Moreover, Fuller *et al*[107] elegantly showed how PD-1 blockade could control HCV replication in a chimpanzee model of CHC. Interestingly, the chimpanzee with controlled infection also presented a broader base-line immunity response than the cohort animals that were non-responders, suggesting that anti-PD-1 treatment may be useful in only those cases with a critical threshold of pre-existing HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells.

Figure 3 shows an example of HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cell restoration achieved by use of anti-PD-1 monoclonal antibody. In a study of CHB infection carried out by Peng *et al*[25], PD-1 up-regulation on HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells was shown in blood samples of patients with chronic infection *vs* the controls (Table 1); moreover, blockade of the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway was shown to significantly enhance the expansion ability of and the IFN-γ production from HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells after antigen encounter[25]. Fisicaro *et al*[108] further demonstrated that HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells from the mononuclear cell population of livers infected with hepatitis virus express higher levels of PD-1 than those in the peripheral compartment; additionally, blockade of the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway was shown to improve the effector capacity of these intrahepatic cells, as evidenced by measure of their expansion ability and production of the Tc1 cytokines, such as IL-2 and IFN-γ[108]. Tzeng *et al*[109] studied T cell exhaustion affecting the intrahepatic infiltrating T cells, using a mouse model of persistent HBV infection; the authors discovered that PD-1 was up-regulated on the HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells and that blockade of the interaction between PD-1 and PD-L1 results in restoration of the capacity of these cells to produce IFN-γ[29]. Furthermore, Gao *et al*[26] showed that overexpression of the PD-1 ligand, PD-L1, in HCC is associated with tumour aggressiveness, providing the rationale for developing a new therapy based on blockade of the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway (Table 1). Finally, Shi *et al*[110] demonstrated that the HCC-infiltrating CD8$^+$ T cells have a drastic increase in PD-1 expression. Taken together, these data support the rationale to set-up clinical trials to analyse the usefulness of blocking the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway in HCC and HBV/HCV chronic infections.

Checkpoint inhibitors blockade: Clinical trials

Taking into account all the previously discussed known characteristics and features of the specific CD8$^+$ T cell response in HCC and chronic viral hepatitis, a number of clinical trials have been designed to analyse the effect of PD-1 and CTLA-4 pathway blocking (Table 2). Here, we will describe the completed, on-going and planned clinical trials investigating checkpoint modulation as a therapeutic approach for treating HCC and chronic viral hepatitis.

Regarding CTLA-4, Sangro *et al*[30] performed the first pilot clinical trial to address the potential anti-tumour and anti-viral effects of a monoclonal anti-CTLA-4 antibody in CHC and HCC. For this purpose, the authors used "tremelimumab", a fully humanized IgG2 monoclonal antibody that blocks CTLA-4. The study cohort was a small population of patients with HCC superimposed on CHC. Tremelimumab showed an acceptable safety profile, as well as both anti-tumour and anti-viral activities. The anti-tumour effect was particularly encouraging as it was characterized by a


A
Directly *ex vivo*
Positive selection of CD8(+) cells
Viral load < 40 IU/mL
ALT NL
Viral load > 40 IU/mL
ALT high
90 10
80 20
20 80
80 20
Pentamer NS3$_{1406-1415}$-PE
PD-1-FITC
PMA + ionomycin stimulation
40 60
80 20
90 10
70 30
IFNγ-FITC
Gated on pentamer(+) cells
Isotype control
MFI: 5
Viral load > 40 IU/mL
ALT high
MFI: 40
Viral load < 40 IU/mL
ALT NL
MFI: 8
IgG1-FITC
PD-1-FITC
PD-1-FITC
MFI: 40
MFI: 50
MFI: 150
IgG2b-FITC
IFNγ-FITC
IFNγ-FITC
Number of CD8(+)/pentamer(+) cells
FITC-Intensity of fluorescence

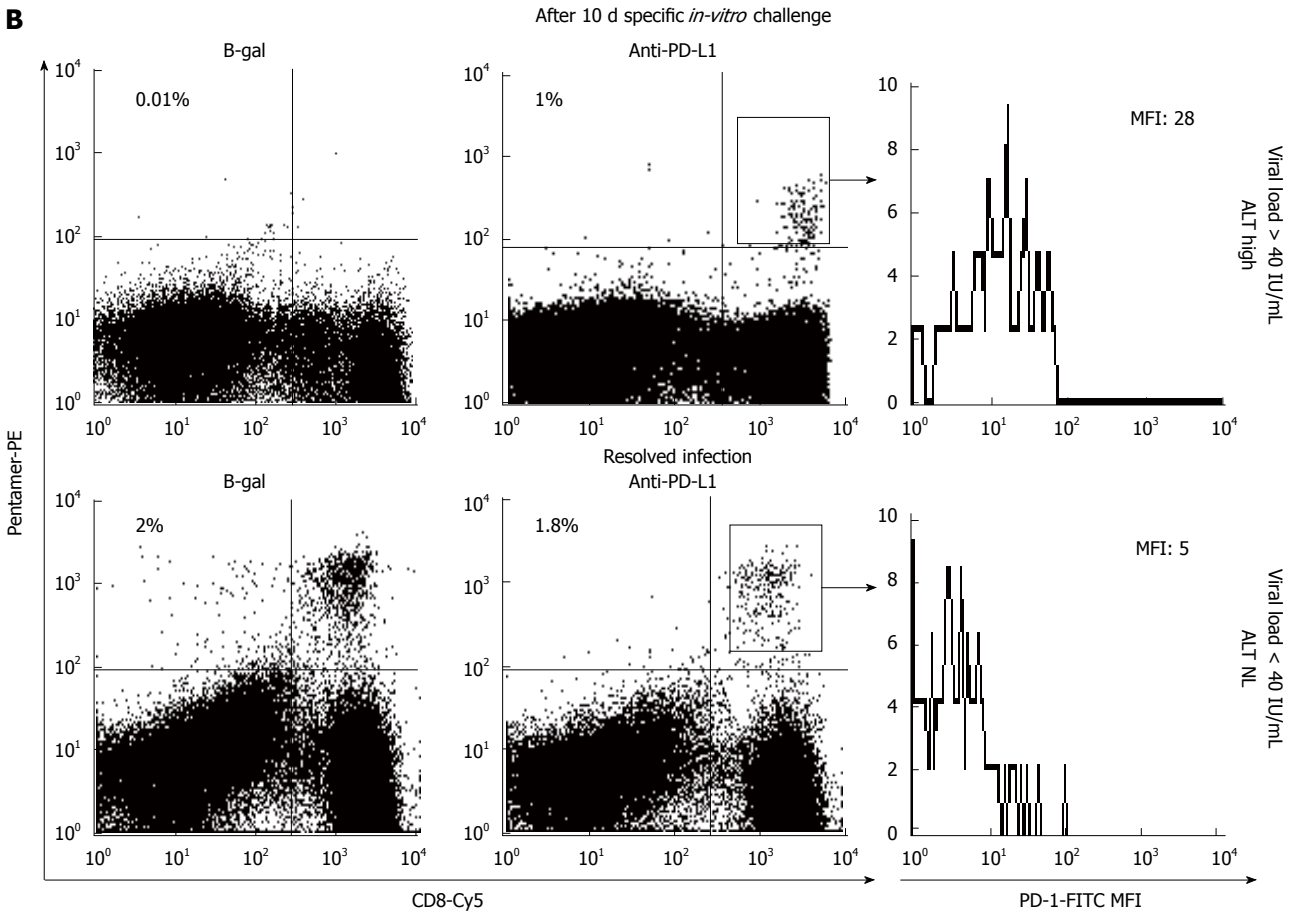


Figure 3 PD-1/PD-L1 blockade-induced restoration *in vitro* of hepatitis C virus-specific CD8$^+$ T cells from a patient with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. A: FACScan® dot-plots directly gated on *ex vivo* CD8$^+$ T cells showing the PD-1 phenotype and the interferon (IFN)-γ secretion of HCV-NS3$_{1406}$-pentamer-binding CD8$^+$ T cells from a patient with chronic HCV infection and a patient who was able to resolve the infection; B: FACScan® dot-plots showing the frequency of HCV-NS3$_{1406}$-pentamer-binding CD8$^+$ T cells after a 10-d specific *in vitro* challenge in the presence and absence of anti-PD-L1 to block the interaction between PD-1 and its ligand in the patients from (A) with chronic HCV infection and who resolved the infection; PD-1 expression on gated HCV-NS3$_{1406}$-pentamer-binding CD8$^+$ T cells after expansion is also shown. ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; HCV: Hepatitis C virus.

Table 2 Overexpressed negative pathways in liver diseases

Disease	Overexpressed NR	Ligand for the overexpressed NR
HCC	CTLA-4[29], PD-1[12]	PD-L1[26], CD48[135]
CHB	CTLA-4[28], PD-1[25], LAG-3[117], Tim-3[129]	PD-L1[136]
CHC	CTLA-4[27], PD-1[24,105,106], LAG-3[116], 2B4[13,122], Tim-3[128]	PD-L1[44]

Overexpression of negative receptors on specific CD8$^+$ T cells in different malignancies and overexpression of their cognate ligands in the liver tissue. CHB: Chronic hepatitis B; CHC: Chronic hepatitis C; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; NR: Negative receptor.

significant increase in the time to progression (TTP), up to 6.48 mo, with respect to the control group. For its anti-viral activity, the drug was shown to induce a significant decrease in viral load, with 15% of the patients achieving sustained virological response without any other anti-HCV treatment. This anti-viral efficacy may appear low, but it could represent a difference in patients who are non-responders to DAA, in who a DAA + anti-PD-1 treatment combination could improve the sustained virologic response rate. Moreover, these outcomes may be improved by use of a higher dose of the drug[30].

Other studies with the same anti-CTLA-4 molecule are currently in progress. Greten *et al*[111], for example, are currently recruiting patients to participate in their clinical trial to test the safety and effectiveness of tremelimumab in combination with transarterial chemoembolization or RFA in advanced liver cancer. These authors presented their preliminary results during the 2015 American Society of Clinical Oncology Annual Meeting, stating that the combination was safe, feasible and effective, increasing TTP up to 7.4 mo[18].

Similar to the results of the studies on CTLA-4, the current research data from the studies of PD-1/PD-L1 blockade are encouraging. Gardiner *et al*[31] described, for the first time and as proof-of-concept, their findings from an evaluation of anti-PD-1 antibody treatment in patients with CHC, in which the fully human anti-PD-1 monoclonal IgG4 antibody "nivolumab" was administered as a single dose. The treatment did not produce any significant side effects, indicating a suffi-

cient safety, and one-third of the patients experienced significant reductions in viral load. Perhaps, if the authors had combined blockade of the PD-1 pathway with modulation of other co-stimulatory molecules, they could have achieved better results. However, the importance of this pilot clinical trial is that it highlights the significant role of the PD-1 pathway during CHC[31] and shows that it could represent an adjuvant treatment for DAA regimes.

Feun *et al*[112] have already designed a clinical trial to determine the anti-tumour effect of anti-PD-1 antibody treatment in patients with advanced, unresectable HCC using another humanized monoclonal IgG4 antibody that binds to PD-1, which is called "pembrolizumab". The primary objective of this study is to assess therapeutic efficacy, but the researchers also plan to evaluate the expression of PD-L1 in tumour tissue, with the aim of gaining insights into which cases may benefit most from this type of treatment.

After realising that blocking either CTLA-4 or PD-1 pathways could be useful to treat HCC, it becomes apparent that one option to increase anti-tumoural effectiveness could be a treatment combination. A clinical trial is currently in progress to study such an alternative, namely the role of combining the fully humanized anti-CTLA-4 IgG1 antibody called "ipilimumab" in conjunction with the previously introduced anti-PD-1 "nivolumab"[113]. The first part of that study will evaluate the safety profile of nivolumab in HCC patients, after which the efficacy of nivolumab will be compared with that of sorafenib. Finally, the researchers plan to address the safety and efficacy profiles of the combination nivolumab and ipilimumab for treatment of advanced HCC[86]. In the near future, hepatologists and oncologists should know if this hopeful combination represents a *bona fide* treatment option for patients with advanced HCC.

Other inhibitory receptors

Although CTLA-4 and PD-1 are the best characterized inhibitory receptors to date, there are other negative co-stimulatory molecules involved in CD8$^+$ T cell exhaustion that deserve to be studied. Most of the work carried out on the role of these other co-stimulatory molecules has been done in the conditions of HVB and HCV infections, while information in the condition of HCC remains scarce.

LAG-3

LAG-3 was identified in 1990 by Triebel *et al*[114]. Even though its main ligand is MHC class Ⅱ, it also helps PD-1 to maintain CD8$^+$ T cell exhaustion during chronic viral infections[115]. Chen *et al*[116] demonstrated that LAG-3 was overexpressed on HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells in patients with CHC and that LAG-3 blockade restored effector capacity of these cells, as evidenced by measure of their expansion ability and cytokine production (Table 1). Kennedy *et al*[117] demonstrated different expression patterns of LAG-3 on HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells during the natural history of CHB, whereby LAG-3 up-regulation occurs progressively, suggesting that HBV infection induces a progressive status of T cell exhaustion over time. Li *et al*[118] studied LAG-3 expression in patients with HBV-related HCC and discovered an overexpression of LAG-3 on the HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells from liver tissue, as compared with those in the peripheral blood. Taking these collective data into account, LAG-3 appears to be another immune checkpoint to bear in mind during consideration of diseases affected by T cell exhaustion.

Natural killer cell receptor (2B4)

The 2B4 was first identified in 1993 by Valiante *et al*[119]. Its ligand, CD48, has 5-10 times stronger affinity for 2B4 than CD2, a molecule necessary for T cell activation[120,121]. This competitive advantage of 2B4 for binding to CD48 could impair T cell activation if 2B4 is induced early. Bengsch *et al*[13] and Schlaphoff *et al*[122] studied 2B4 expression on HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells in the blood of patients with chronic hepatitis infections and demonstrated overexpression in PD-1$^+$-HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells, which was further linked to an exhausted behaviour. Similarly, Kroy *et al*[123] showed an up-regulation of 2B4 in HCV-specific CD8$^+$ intrahepatic lymphocytes, as compared with peripheral lymphocytes, during CHC. Bengsch *et al*[13] studied the effect of blockade of several inhibitory receptors, including 2B4, in the functionality of HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells during CHB and found that the response to blockade was primarily mediated by PD-1 (Table 1). Considering all of these data, 2B4 up-regulation seems to be linked with PD-1 overexpression, and its modulation could have a less robust effect on T cell restoration than other negative co-stimulatory molecules.

T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin-domain containing-3

T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin-domain containing (Tim)-3 was first identified in 2002 by Monney *et al*[124]. Tim-3 is another immune checkpoint receptor that limits the duration and magnitude of T cell responses[125-127]. McMahan *et al*[128] demonstrated that Tim-3 was up-regulated on HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells in patients with chronic hepatitis infection, as compared to those who had been able to control the infection; in addition, remarkably, Tim-3 blockade restored the expansion ability of these cells. Wu *et al*[129] studied Tim-3 expression on HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells during CHB and discovered that Tim-3 overexpression was related to disease progression; the authors also demonstrated that blockade of the Tim-3 pathway restored the effector capacity of the HBV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells[130] (Table 1). Interestingly, a lack of Tim-3 has thus far not been found to be associated with autoimmune diseases[131], making Tim-3 a very attractive therapeutic target.

CD160

CD160 was discovered in 1998 by Anumanthan *et al*[132] and is another negative co-stimulatory molecule associated with T cell exhaustion[133]. Bengsch *et al*[13] and Schlaphoff *et al*[122] also studied CD160 expression on HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells obtained from patients with chronic hepatitis infections and demonstrated an overexpression of this protein that was related with exhaustion. Nevertheless, Kroy *et al*[123] showed that there was no overexpression of this molecule in intrahepatic HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells in CHC, as compared to the peripheral cells. Another study from Viganò *et al*[134] investigated the expression of CD160 on HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells during CHC and found functional impairment in these cells, which was independent of PD-1 expression; moreover, the blockade of CD160/CD160L in this study restored the expansion ability of the HCV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells[134] (Table 1). Nevertheless, due to the current contradictory data more studies are needed to gain an adequate understanding of this pathway before it can be considered as a potential therapeutic target.

CONCLUSION

Immune checkpoint modulation can resolve CD8$^+$ T cell exhaustion *in vitro* and *in vivo* in chronic infections with hepatoviruses and in tumoural diseases. This therapy could represent a promising treatment option for patients with advanced HCC and chronic viral hepatitis who are non-responders to the current standard of care. The use of humanized monoclonal antibodies against negative co-stimulatory molecules can reverse the exhaustion state of CD8$^+$ T cells, thereby making them able to control either the tumour or the virus. In the upcoming years, we will likely see the results of combining these agents with current HCC and anti-viral therapies. While the current results from clinical studies remain modest, they could be the base for encouraging development and implementation of novel therapeutic strategies. Clearly, we must expand our basic and clinical knowledge about how modulating and finely tuning these receptors will help to avoid adverse events, and how appropriate patient selection will help to define the groups most likely to respond to this kind of treatment. We must also learn how to best use these drugs in combination with other therapies in order to obtain the maximum clinical benefit. Fortunately, the field of immunotherapy highlights the fact that translational medicine can improve the health of our patients, bringing the results obtained by basic research to the bedside in a short period.

REFERENCES

1 **Lechner F**, Wong DK, Dunbar PR, Chapman R, Chung RT, Dohrenwend P, Robbins G, Phillips R, Klenerman P, Walker BD. Analysis of successful immune responses in persons infected with hepatitis C virus. *J Exp Med* 2000; **191**: 1499-1512 [PMID: 10790425 DOI: 10.1084/jem.191.9.1499]

2 **Cooper S**, Erickson AL, Adams EJ, Kansopon J, Weiner AJ, Chien DY, Houghton M, Parham P, Walker CM. Analysis of a successful immune response against hepatitis C virus. *Immunity* 1999; **10**: 439-449 [PMID: 10229187 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(99)70289-1]

3 **Smyk-Pearson S**, Tester IA, Klarquist J, Palmer BE, Pawlotsky JM, Golden-Mason L, Rosen HR. Spontaneous recovery in acute human hepatitis C virus infection: functional T-cell thresholds and relative importance of CD4 help. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 1827-1837 [PMID: 18045940 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01581-07]

4 **Larrubia JR**, Moreno-Cubero E, Lokhande MU, García-Garzón S, Lázaro A, Miquel J, Perna C, Sanz-de-Villalobos E. Adaptive immune response during hepatitis C virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 3418-3430 [PMID: 24707125 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i13.3418]

5 **Maini MK**, Boni C, Ogg GS, King AS, Reignat S, Lee CK, Larrubia JR, Webster GJ, McMichael AJ, Ferrari C, Williams R, Vergani D, Bertoletti A. Direct ex vivo analysis of hepatitis B virus-specific CD8(+) T cells associated with the control of infection. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 1386-1396 [PMID: 10579980]

6 **Gallimore A**, Glithero A, Godkin A, Tissot AC, Plückthun A, Elliott T, Hengartner H, Zinkernagel R. Induction and exhaustion of lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes visualized using soluble tetrameric major histocompatibility complex class I-peptide complexes. *J Exp Med* 1998; **187**: 1383-1393 [PMID: 9565631 DOI: 10.1084/jem.187.9.1383]

7 **Webster GJ**, Reignat S, Maini MK, Whalley SA, Ogg GS, King A, Brown D, Amlot PL, Williams R, Vergani D, Dusheiko GM, Bertoletti A. Incubation phase of acute hepatitis B in man: dynamic of cellular immune mechanisms. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 1117-1124 [PMID: 11050064 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2000.19324]

8 **Mellman I**, Coukos G, Dranoff G. Cancer immunotherapy comes of age. *Nature* 2011; **480**: 480-489 [PMID: 22193102 DOI: 10.1038/nature10673]

9 **Yoong KF**, McNab G, Hübscher SG, Adams DH. Vascular adhesion protein-1 and ICAM-1 support the adhesion of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes to tumor endothelium in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Immunol* 1998; **160**: 3978-3988 [PMID: 9558106]

10 **Wada Y**, Nakashima O, Kutami R, Yamamoto O, Kojiro M. Clinicopathological study on hepatocellular carcinoma with lymphocytic infiltration. *Hepatology* 1998; **27**: 407-414 [PMID: 9462638 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510270214]

11 **Takayama T**, Sekine T, Makuuchi M, Yamasaki S, Kosuge T, Yamamoto J, Shimada K, Sakamoto M, Hirohashi S, Ohashi Y, Kakizoe T. Adoptive immunotherapy to lower postsurgical recurrence rates of hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 802-807 [PMID: 11022927 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)02654-4]

12 **Flecken T**, Schmidt N, Hild S, Gostick E, Drognitz O, Zeiser R, Schemmer P, Bruns H, Eiermann T, Price DA, Blum HE, Neumann-Haefelin C, Thimme R. Immunodominance and functional alterations of tumor-associated antigen-specific CD8+ T-cell responses in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 1415-1426 [PMID: 24002931 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26731]

13 **Bengsch B**, Seigel B, Ruhl M, Timm J, Kuntz M, Blum HE, Pircher H, Thimme R. Coexpression of PD-1, 2B4, CD160 and KLRG1 on exhausted HCV-specific CD8+ T cells is linked to antigen recognition and T cell differentiation. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000947 [PMID: 20548953 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000947]

14 **Wood NA**, Linn ML, Bowen DG. Exhausted or just sleeping: awakening virus-specific responses in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: 1879-1882 [PMID: 22038790 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24602]

15 **Maini MK**, Boni C, Lee CK, Larrubia JR, Reignat S, Ogg GS, King AS, Herberg J, Gilson R, Alisa A, Williams R, Vergani D, Naoumov NV, Ferrari C, Bertoletti A. The role of virus-specific CD8(+) cells in liver damage and viral control during persistent hepatitis B virus infection. *J Exp Med* 2000; **191**: 1269-1280 [PMID: 10770795 DOI: 10.1084/jem.191.8.1269]

16 **You CR**, Lee SW, Jang JW, Yoon SK. Update on hepatitis B virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 13293-13305 [PMID: 25309066 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i37.13293]

17 **El-Serag HB**, Marrero JA, Rudolph L, Reddy KR. Diagnosis and treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 1752-1763 [PMID: 18471552 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.02.090]

18 **Bitton Alaluf M**, Shlomai A. New therapies for chronic hepatitis B. *Liver Int* 2016; **36**: 775-782 [PMID: 26854115 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13086]

19 **European Association for Study of Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: management of hepatitis C virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 392-420 [PMID: 24331294 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.11.003]

20 **Romano E**, Romero P. The therapeutic promise of disrupting the PD-1/PD-L1 immune checkpoint in cancer: unleashing the CD8 T cell mediated anti-tumor activity results in significant, unprecedented clinical efficacy in various solid tumors. *J Immunother Cancer* 2015; **3**: 15 [PMID: 25901287 DOI: 10.1186/s40425-015-0059-z]

21 **Choudhuri K**, Kearney A, Bakker TR, van der Merwe PA. Immunology: how do T cells recognize antigen? *Curr Biol* 2005; **15**: R382-R385 [PMID: 15916940 DOI: 10.1016/j.cub.2005.05.001]

22 **Appay V**, van Lier RA, Sallusto F, Roederer M. Phenotype and function of human T lymphocyte subsets: consensus and issues. *Cytometry A* 2008; **73**: 975-983 [PMID: 18785267 DOI: 10.1002/cyto.a.20643]

23 **Chen L**, Flies DB. Molecular mechanisms of T cell co-stimulation and co-inhibition. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2013; **13**: 227-242 [PMID: 23470321 DOI: 10.1038/nri3405]

24 **Larrubia JR**, Benito-Martínez S, Miquel J, Calvino M, Sanz-de-Villalobos E, González-Praetorius A, Albertos S, García-Garzón S, Lokhande M, Parra-Cid T. Bim-mediated apoptosis and PD-1/PD-L1 pathway impair reactivity of PD1(+)/CD127(-) HCV-specific CD8(+) cells targeting the virus in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Cell Immunol* 2011; **269**: 104-114 [PMID: 21481848 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellimm.2011.03.011]

25 **Peng G**, Li S, Wu W, Tan X, Chen Y, Chen Z. PD-1 upregulation is associated with HBV-specific T cell dysfunction in chronic hepatitis B patients. *Mol Immunol* 2008; **45**: 963-970 [PMID: 17868872 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2007.07.038]

26 **Gao Q**, Wang XY, Qiu SJ, Yamato I, Sho M, Nakajima Y, Zhou J, Li BZ, Shi YH, Xiao YS, Xu Y, Fan J. Overexpression of PD-L1 significantly associates with tumor aggressiveness and postoperative recurrence in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 971-979 [PMID: 19188168 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-1608]

27 **Nakamoto N**, Cho H, Shaked A, Olthoff K, Valiga ME, Kaminski M, Gostick E, Price DA, Freeman GJ, Wherry EJ, Chang KM. Synergistic reversal of intrahepatic HCV-specific CD8 T cell exhaustion by combined PD-1/CTLA-4 blockade. *PLoS Pathog* 2009; **5**: e1000313 [PMID: 19247441 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000313]

28 **Schurich A**, Khanna P, Lopes AR, Han KJ, Peppa D, Micco L, Nebbia G, Kennedy PT, Geretti AM, Dusheiko G, Maini MK. Role of the coinhibitory receptor cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen-4 on apoptosis-Prone CD8 T cells in persistent hepatitis B virus infection. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1494-1503 [PMID: 21360567 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24249]

29 **Xu Y**, Li H, Gao RL, Adeyemo O, Itkin M, Kaplan DE. Expansion of interferon-gamma-producing multifunctional CD4+ T-cells and dysfunctional CD8+ T-cells by glypican-3 peptide library in hepatocellular carcinoma patients. *Clin Immunol* 2011; **139**: 302-313 [PMID: 21419713 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2011.02.014]

30 **Sangro B**, Gomez-Martin C, de la Mata M, Iñarrairaegui M, Garralda E, Barrera P, Riezu-Boj JI, Larrea E, Alfaro C, Sarobe P, Lasarte JJ, Pérez-Gracia JL, Melero I, Prieto J. A clinical trial of CTLA-4 blockade with tremelimumab in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 2013; **59**: 81-88 [PMID: 23466307 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.02.022]

31 **Gardiner D**, Lalezari J, Lawitz E, DiMicco M, Ghalib R, Reddy KR, Chang KM, Sulkowski M, Marro SO, Anderson J, He B, Kansra V, McPhee F, Wind-Rotolo M, Grasela D, Selby M, Korman AJ, Lowy I. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled assessment of BMS-936558, a fully human monoclonal antibody to programmed death-1 (PD-1), in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e63818 [PMID: 23717490 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0063818]

32 **Zajac AJ**, Blattman JN, Murali-Krishna K, Sourdive DJ, Suresh M, Altman JD, Ahmed R. Viral immune evasion due to persistence of activated T cells without effector function. *J Exp Med* 1998; **188**: 2205-2213 [PMID: 9858507 DOI: 10.1084/jem.188.12.2205]

33 **Pauken KE**, Wherry EJ. Overcoming T cell exhaustion in infection and cancer. *Trends Immunol* 2015; **36**: 265-276 [PMID: 25797516 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2015.02.008]

34 **Larrubia JR**, Benito-Martínez S, Miquel J, Calvino M, Sanz-de-Villalobos E, Parra-Cid T. Costimulatory molecule programmed death-1 in the cytotoxic response during chronic hepatitis C. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5129-5140 [PMID: 19891011 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.5129]

35 **Larrubia JR**, Moreno-Cubero E, Miquel J, Sanz-de-Villalobos E. Hepatitis C virus-specific cytotoxic T cell response restoration after treatment-induced hepatitis C virus control. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 3480-3491 [PMID: 25834312 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i12.3480]

36 **Moskophidis D**, Lechner F, Pircher H, Zinkernagel RM. Virus persistence in acutely infected immunocompetent mice by exhaustion of antiviral cytotoxic effector T cells. *Nature* 1993; **362**: 758-761 [PMID: 8469287 DOI: 10.1038/362758a0]

37 **Larrubia JR**, Lokhande MU, García-Garzón S, Miquel J, González-Praetorius A, Parra-Cid T, Sanz-de-Villalobos E. Persistent hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection impairs HCV-specific cytotoxic T cell reactivity through Mcl-1/Bim imbalance due to CD127 down-regulation. *J Viral Hepat* 2013; **20**: 85-94 [PMID: 23301543 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2012.01618.x]

38 **Bowen DG**, Zen M, Holz L, Davis T, McCaughan GW, Bertolino P. The site of primary T cell activation is a determinant of the balance between intrahepatic tolerance and immunity. *J Clin Invest* 2004; **114**: 701-712 [PMID: 15343389 DOI: 10.1172/JCI21593]

39 **Bertolino P**, Bowen DG, McCaughan GW, Fazekas de St Groth B. Antigen-specific primary activation of CD8+ T cells within the liver. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 5430-5438 [PMID: 11313380 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.166.9.5430]

40 **Morimoto J**, Tan X, Teague RM, Ohlén C, Greenberg PD. Induction of tolerance in CD8+ T cells to a transgenic autoantigen expressed in the liver does not require cross-presentation. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 6849-6860 [PMID: 17513733 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.11.6849]

41 **Warren A**, Le Couteur DG, Fraser R, Bowen DG, McCaughan GW, Bertolino P. T lymphocytes interact with hepatocytes through fenestrations in murine liver sinusoidal endothelial cells. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 1182-1190 [PMID: 17058232 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21378]

42 **Bertolino P**. Impaired function of dendritic cells translocating the liver sinusoids: a veto effect contributing to intrahepatic tolerance? *Eur J Immunol* 2008; **38**: 938-941 [PMID: 18395848 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200838296]

43 **Holz LE**, Benseler V, Bowen DG, Bouillet P, Strasser A, O'Reilly L, d'Avigdor WM, Bishop AG, McCaughan GW, Bertolino P. Intrahepatic murine CD8 T-cell activation associates with a distinct phenotype leading to Bim-dependent death. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 989-997 [PMID: 18619445 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.05.078]

44 **Mühlbauer M**, Fleck M, Schütz C, Weiss T, Froh M, Blank C, Schölmerich J, Hellerbrand C. PD-L1 is induced in hepatocytes by viral infection and by interferon-alpha and -gamma and mediates T cell apoptosis. *J Hepatol* 2006; **45**: 520-528 [PMID: 16876901 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2006.05.007]

45 **Maier H**, Isogawa M, Freeman GJ, Chisari FV. PD-1: PD-L1 interactions contribute to the functional suppression of virus-specific CD8+ T lymphocytes in the liver. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**:

2714-2720 [PMID: 17312113 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.5.2714]
46 **Mackay IR**. Hepatoimmunology: a perspective. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2002; **80**: 36-44 [PMID: 11869361 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1711.2002.01063.x]
47 **Gale RP**, Sparkes RS, Golde DW. Bone marrow origin of hepatic macrophages (Kupffer cells) in humans. *Science* 1978; **201**: 937-938 [PMID: 356266 DOI: 10.1126/science.356266]
48 **MacPhee PJ**, Schmidt EE, Groom AC. Intermittence of blood flow in liver sinusoids, studied by high-resolution in vivo microscopy. *Am J Physiol* 1995; **269**: G692-G698 [PMID: 7491960]
49 **Sun Z**, Wada T, Maemura K, Uchikura K, Hoshino S, Diehl AM, Klein AS. Hepatic allograft-derived Kupffer cells regulate T cell response in rats. *Liver Transpl* 2003; **9**: 489-497 [PMID: 12740792 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2003.50091]
50 **Wu K**, Kryczek I, Chen L, Zou W, Welling TH. Kupffer cell suppression of CD8+ T cells in human hepatocellular carcinoma is mediated by B7-H1/programmed death-1 interactions. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 8067-8075 [PMID: 19826049 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-0901]
51 **Zhang M**, Xu S, Han Y, Cao X. Apoptotic cells attenuate fulminant hepatitis by priming Kupffer cells to produce interleukin-10 through membrane-bound TGF-β. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 306-316 [PMID: 21140375 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24029]
52 **Schurich A**, Berg M, Stabenow D, Böttcher J, Kern M, Schild HJ, Kurts C, Schuette V, Burgdorf S, Diehl L, Limmer A, Knolle PA. Dynamic regulation of CD8 T cell tolerance induction by liver sinusoidal endothelial cells. *J Immunol* 2010; **184**: 4107-4114 [PMID: 20212092 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0902580]
53 **von Oppen N**, Schurich A, Hegenbarth S, Stabenow D, Tolba R, Weiskirchen R, Geerts A, Kolanus W, Knolle P, Diehl L. Systemic antigen cross-presented by liver sinusoidal endothelial cells induces liver-specific CD8 T-cell retention and tolerization. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1664-1672 [PMID: 19205034 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22795]
54 **Viñas O**, Bataller R, Sancho-Bru P, Ginès P, Berenguer C, Enrich C, Nicolás JM, Ercilla G, Gallart T, Vives J, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Human hepatic stellate cells show features of antigen-presenting cells and stimulate lymphocyte proliferation. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 919-929 [PMID: 14512879 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50392]
55 **Li Y**, Kim BG, Qian S, Letterio JJ, Fung JJ, Lu L, Lin F. Hepatic Stellate Cells Inhibit T Cells through Active TGF-β1 from a Cell Surface-Bound Latent TGF-β1/GARP Complex. *J Immunol* 2015; **195**: 2648-2656 [PMID: 26246140 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1500139]
56 **Lau AH**, Thomson AW. Dendritic cells and immune regulation in the liver. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 307-314 [PMID: 12524419 DOI: 10.1136/gut.52.2.307]
57 **Khanna A**, Morelli AE, Zhong C, Takayama T, Lu L, Thomson AW. Effects of liver-derived dendritic cell progenitors on Th1- and Th2-like cytokine responses in vitro and in vivo. *J Immunol* 2000; **164**: 1346-1354 [PMID: 10640749 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.164.3.1346]
58 **Buelens C**, Verhasselt V, De Groote D, Thielemans K, Goldman M, Willems F. Human dendritic cell responses to lipopolysaccharide and CD40 ligation are differentially regulated by interleukin-10. *Eur J Immunol* 1997; **27**: 1848-1852 [PMID: 9295017 DOI: 10.1002/eji.1830270805]
59 **Probst HC**, McCoy K, Okazaki T, Honjo T, van den Broek M. Resting dendritic cells induce peripheral CD8+ T cell tolerance through PD-1 and CTLA-4. *Nat Immunol* 2005; **6**: 280-286 [PMID: 15685176 DOI: 10.1038/ni1165]
60 **El-Serag HB**. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 1118-1127 [PMID: 21992124 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1001683]
61 **Hanahan D**, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. *Cell* 2011; **144**: 646-674 [PMID: 21376230 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2011.02.013]
62 **Mizukoshi E**, Yamashita T, Arai K, Sunagozaka H, Ueda T, Arihara F, Kagaya T, Yamashita T, Fushimi K, Kaneko S. Enhancement of tumor-associated antigen-specific T cell responses by radiofrequency ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2013; **57**: 1448-1457 [PMID: 23174905 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26153]
63 **Choo QL**, Kuo G, Weiner AJ, Overby LR, Bradley DW, Houghton M. Isolation of a cDNA clone derived from a blood-borne non-A, non-B viral hepatitis genome. *Science* 1989; **244**: 359-362 [PMID: 2523562]
64 **Zhang X**. Direct anti-HCV agents. *Acta Pharm Sin B* 2016; **6**: 26-31 [PMID: 26904396 DOI: 10.1016/j.apsb.2015.09.008]
65 **Attar BM**, Van Thiel DH. Hepatitis C virus: A time for decisions. Who should be treated and when? *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **7**: 33-40 [PMID: 26855810 DOI: 10.4292/wjgpt.v7.i1.33]
66 **González-Grande R**, Jiménez-Pérez M, González Arjona C, Mostazo Torres J. New approaches in the treatment of hepatitis C. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 1421-1432 [PMID: 26819511 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i4.1421]
67 **Jo J**, Aichele U, Kersting N, Klein R, Aichele P, Bisse E, Sewell AK, Blum HE, Bartenschlager R, Lohmann V, Thimme R. Analysis of CD8+ T-cell-mediated inhibition of hepatitis C virus replication using a novel immunological model. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1391-1401 [PMID: 19185579 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.12.034]
68 **Rehermann B**. Pathogenesis of chronic viral hepatitis: differential roles of T cells and NK cells. *Nat Med* 2013; **19**: 859-868 [PMID: 23836236 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3251]
69 **Hajarizadeh B**, Grebely J, Dore GJ. Epidemiology and natural history of HCV infection. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **10**: 553-562 [PMID: 23817321 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2013.107]
70 **Chang KM**, Rehermann B, McHutchison JG, Pasquinelli C, Southwood S, Sette A, Chisari FV. Immunological significance of cytotoxic T lymphocyte epitope variants in patients chronically infected by the hepatitis C virus. *J Clin Invest* 1997; **100**: 2376-2385 [PMID: 9410918 DOI: 10.1172/JCI119778]
71 **Guidotti LG**, Chisari FV. Immunobiology and pathogenesis of viral hepatitis. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2006; **1**: 23-61 [PMID: 18039107 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.pathol.1.110304.100230]
72 **Fattovich G**, Bortolotti F, Donato F. Natural history of chronic hepatitis B: special emphasis on disease progression and prognostic factors. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 335-352 [PMID: 18096267 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.11.011]
73 **European Association For The Study Of The Liver**. EASL clinical practice guidelines: Management of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 167-185 [PMID: 22436845 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.02.010]
74 **Balmasova IP**, Yushchuk ND, Mynbaev OA, Alla NR, Malova ES, Shi Z, Gao CL. Immunopathogenesis of chronic hepatitis B. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 14156-14171 [PMID: 25339804 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i39.14156]
75 **Ilan Y**, Nagler A, Adler R, Tur-Kaspa R, Slavin S, Shouval D. Ablation of persistent hepatitis B by bone marrow transplantation from a hepatitis B-immune donor. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **104**: 1818-1821 [PMID: 8500741]
76 **Rehermann B**, Ferrari C, Pasquinelli C, Chisari FV. The hepatitis B virus persists for decades after patients' recovery from acute viral hepatitis despite active maintenance of a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte response. *Nat Med* 1996; **2**: 1104-1108 [PMID: 8837608 DOI: 10.1038/nm1096-1104]
77 **Hodi FS**, O'Day SJ, McDermott DF, Weber RW, Sosman JA, Haanen JB, Gonzalez R, Robert C, Schadendorf D, Hassel JC, Akerley W, van den Eertwegh AJ, Lutzky J, Lorigan P, Vaubel JM, Linette GP, Hogg D, Ottensmeier CH, Lebbé C, Peschel C, Quirt I, Clark JI, Wolchok JD, Weber JS, Tian J, Yellin MJ, Nichol GM, Hoos A, Urba WJ. Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 711-723 [PMID: 20525992 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1003466]
78 **Brunet JF**, Denizot F, Luciani MF, Roux-Dosseto M, Suzan M, Mattei MG, Golstein P. A new member of the immunoglobulin superfamily--CTLA-4. *Nature* 1987; **328**: 267-270 [PMID: 3496540 DOI: 10.1038/328267a0]
79 **Schwartz RH**. Costimulation of T lymphocytes: the role of CD28, CTLA-4, and B7/BB1 in interleukin-2 production and immunotherapy. *Cell* 1992; **71**: 1065-1068 [PMID: 1335362]
80 **Lenschow DJ**, Walunas TL, Bluestone JA. CD28/B7 system of T

cell costimulation. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1996; **14**: 233-258 [PMID: 8717514 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.14.1.233]
81 **Rudd CE**, Taylor A, Schneider H. CD28 and CTLA-4 coreceptor expression and signal transduction. *Immunol Rev* 2009; **229**: 12-26 [PMID: 19426212 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2009.00770.x]
82 **Walker LS**, Sansom DM. Confusing signals: recent progress in CTLA-4 biology. *Trends Immunol* 2015; **36**: 63-70 [PMID: 25582039 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2014.12.001]
83 **Poggi A**, Bottino C, Zocchi MR, Pantaleo G, Ciccone E, Mingari C, Moretta L, Moretta A. CD3+ WT31- peripheral T lymphocytes lack T44 (CD28), a surface molecule involved in activation of T cells bearing the alpha/beta heterodimer. *Eur J Immunol* 1987; **17**: 1065-1068 [PMID: 2440693 DOI: 10.1002/eji.1830170725]
84 **Linsley PS**, Greene JL, Brady W, Bajorath J, Ledbetter JA, Peach R. Human B7-1 (CD80) and B7-2 (CD86) bind with similar avidities but distinct kinetics to CD28 and CTLA-4 receptors. *Immunity* 1994; **1**: 793-801 [PMID: 7534620]
85 **Schneider H**, Downey J, Smith A, Zinselmeyer BH, Rush C, Brewer JM, Wei B, Hogg N, Garside P, Rudd CE. Reversal of the TCR stop signal by CTLA-4. *Science* 2006; **313**: 1972-1975 [PMID: 16931720 DOI: 10.1126/science.1131078]
86 **Xiao Y**, Qiao G, Tang J, Tang R, Guo H, Warwar S, Langdon WY, Tao L, Zhang J. Protein Tyrosine Phosphatase SHP-1 Modulates T Cell Responses by Controlling Cbl-b Degradation. *J Immunol* 2015; **195**: 4218-4227 [PMID: 26416283 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1501200]
87 **Tivol EA**, Borriello F, Schweitzer AN, Lynch WP, Bluestone JA, Sharpe AH. Loss of CTLA-4 leads to massive lymphoproliferation and fatal multiorgan tissue destruction, revealing a critical negative regulatory role of CTLA-4. *Immunity* 1995; **3**: 541-547 [PMID: 7584144]
88 **Waterhouse P**, Penninger JM, Timms E, Wakeham A, Shahinian A, Lee KP, Thompson CB, Griesser H, Mak TW. Lymphoproliferative disorders with early lethality in mice deficient in Ctla-4. *Science* 1995; **270**: 985-988 [PMID: 7481803]
89 **Leach DR**, Krummel MF, Allison JP. Enhancement of antitumor immunity by CTLA-4 blockade. *Science* 1996; **271**: 1734-1736 [PMID: 8596936]
90 **Ishida Y**, Agata Y, Shibahara K, Honjo T. Induced expression of PD-1, a novel member of the immunoglobulin gene superfamily, upon programmed cell death. *EMBO J* 1992; **11**: 3887-3895 [PMID: 1396582]
91 **Agata Y**, Kawasaki A, Nishimura H, Ishida Y, Tsubata T, Yagita H, Honjo T. Expression of the PD-1 antigen on the surface of stimulated mouse T and B lymphocytes. *Int Immunol* 1996; **8**: 765-772 [PMID: 8671665]
92 **Okazaki T**, Iwai Y, Honjo T. New regulatory co-receptors: inducible co-stimulator and PD-1. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2002; **14**: 779-782 [PMID: 12413529]
93 **Freeman GJ**, Long AJ, Iwai Y, Bourque K, Chernova T, Nishimura H, Fitz LJ, Malenkovich N, Okazaki T, Byrne MC, Horton HF, Fouser L, Carter L, Ling V, Bowman MR, Carreno BM, Collins M, Wood CR, Honjo T. Engagement of the PD-1 immunoinhibitory receptor by a novel B7 family member leads to negative regulation of lymphocyte activation. *J Exp Med* 2000; **192**: 1027-1034 [PMID: 11015443]
94 **Latchman Y**, Wood CR, Chernova T, Chaudhary D, Borde M, Chernova I, Iwai Y, Long AJ, Brown JA, Nunes R, Greenfield EA, Bourque K, Boussiotis VA, Carter LL, Carreno BM, Malenkovich N, Nishimura H, Okazaki T, Honjo T, Sharpe AH, Freeman GJ. PD-L2 is a second ligand for PD-1 and inhibits T cell activation. *Nat Immunol* 2001; **2**: 261-268 [PMID: 11224527 DOI: 10.1038/85330]
95 **Grakoui A**, John Wherry E, Hanson HL, Walker C, Ahmed R. Turning on the off switch: regulation of anti-viral T cell responses in the liver by the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway. *J Hepatol* 2006; **45**: 468-472 [PMID: 16901572 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2006.07.009]
96 **Rodig N**, Ryan T, Allen JA, Pang H, Grabie N, Chernova T, Greenfield EA, Liang SC, Sharpe AH, Lichtman AH, Freeman GJ. Endothelial expression of PD-L1 and PD-L2 down-regulates CD8+ T cell activation and cytolysis. *Eur J Immunol* 2003; **33**: 3117-3126 [PMID: 14579280 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200324270]
97 **Liang SC**, Latchman YE, Buhlmann JE, Tomczak MF, Horwitz BH, Freeman GJ, Sharpe AH. Regulation of PD-1, PD-L1, and PD-L2 expression during normal and autoimmune responses. *Eur J Immunol* 2003; **33**: 2706-2716 [PMID: 14515254 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200324228]
98 **Sheppard KA**, Fitz LJ, Lee JM, Benander C, George JA, Wooters J, Qiu Y, Jussif JM, Carter LL, Wood CR, Chaudhary D. PD-1 inhibits T-cell receptor induced phosphorylation of the ZAP70/CD3zeta signalosome and downstream signaling to PKCtheta. *FEBS Lett* 2004; **574**: 37-41 [PMID: 15358536 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2004.07.083]
99 **Selenko-Gebauer N**, Majdic O, Szekeres A, Höfler G, Guthann E, Korthäuer U, Zlabinger G, Steinberger P, Pickl WF, Stockinger H, Knapp W, Stöckl J. B7-H1 (programmed death-1 ligand) on dendritic cells is involved in the induction and maintenance of T cell anergy. *J Immunol* 2003; **170**: 3637-3644 [PMID: 12646628]
100 **Tsushima F**, Yao S, Shin T, Flies A, Flies S, Xu H, Tamada K, Pardoll DM, Chen L. Interaction between B7-H1 and PD-1 determines initiation and reversal of T-cell anergy. *Blood* 2007; **110**: 180-185 [PMID: 17289811 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2006-11-060087]
101 **Goldberg MV**, Maris CH, Hipkiss EL, Flies AS, Zhen L, Tuder RM, Grosso JF, Harris TJ, Getnet D, Whartenby KA, Brockstedt DG, Dubensky TW, Chen L, Pardoll DM, Drake CG. Role of PD-1 and its ligand, B7-H1, in early fate decisions of CD8 T cells. *Blood* 2007; **110**: 186-192 [PMID: 17392506 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2006-12-062422]
102 **Dong H**, Zhu G, Tamada K, Flies DB, van Deursen JM, Chen L. B7-H1 determines accumulation and deletion of intrahepatic CD8(+) T lymphocytes. *Immunity* 2004; **20**: 327-336 [PMID: 15030776]
103 **Barber DL**, Wherry EJ, Masopust D, Zhu B, Allison JP, Sharpe AH, Freeman GJ, Ahmed R. Restoring function in exhausted CD8 T cells during chronic viral infection. *Nature* 2006; **439**: 682-687 [PMID: 16382236 DOI: 10.1038/nature04444]
104 **Barathan M**, Gopal K, Mohamed R, Ellegård R, Saeidi A, Vadivelu J, Ansari AW, Rothan HA, Ravishankar Ram M, Zandi K, Chang LY, Vignesh R, Che KF, Kamarulzaman A, Velu V, Larsson M, Kamarul T, Shankar EM. Chronic hepatitis C virus infection triggers spontaneous differential expression of biosignatures associated with T cell exhaustion and apoptosis signaling in peripheral blood mononucleocytes. *Apoptosis* 2015; **20**: 466-480 [PMID: 25577277 DOI: 10.1007/s10495-014-1084-y]
105 **Penna A**, Pilli M, Zerbini A, Orlandini A, Mezzadri S, Sacchelli L, Missale G, Ferrari C. Dysfunction and functional restoration of HCV-specific CD8 responses in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 588-601 [PMID: 17326153 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21541]
106 **Radziewicz H**, Ibegbu CC, Fernandez ML, Workowski KA, Obideen K, Wehbi M, Hanson HL, Steinberg JP, Masopust D, Wherry EJ, Altman JD, Rouse BT, Freeman GJ, Ahmed R, Grakoui A. Liver-infiltrating lymphocytes in chronic human hepatitis C virus infection display an exhausted phenotype with high levels of PD-1 and low levels of CD127 expression. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 2545-2553 [PMID: 17182670 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02021-06]
107 **Fuller MJ**, Callendret B, Zhu B, Freeman GJ, Hasselschwert DL, Satterfield W, Sharpe AH, Dustin LB, Rice CM, Grakoui A, Ahmed R, Walker CM. Immunotherapy of chronic hepatitis C virus infection with antibodies against programmed cell death-1 (PD-1). *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2013; **110**: 15001-15006 [PMID: 23980172 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1312772110]
108 **Fisicaro P**, Valdatta C, Massari M, Loggi E, Biasini E, Sacchelli L, Cavallo MC, Silini EM, Andreone P, Missale G, Ferrari C. Antiviral intrahepatic T-cell responses can be restored by blocking programmed death-1 pathway in chronic hepatitis B. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 682-693, 693.e1-4 [PMID: 19800335 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.09.052]
109 **Tzeng HT**, Tsai HF, Liao HJ, Lin YJ, Chen L, Chen PJ, Hsu PN. PD-1 blockage reverses immune dysfunction and hepatitis B viral persistence in a mouse animal model. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e39179

[PMID: 22761734 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0039179]
110 **Shi F**, Shi M, Zeng Z, Qi RZ, Liu ZW, Zhang JY, Yang YP, Tien P, Wang FS. PD-1 and PD-L1 upregulation promotes CD8(+) T-cell apoptosis and postoperative recurrence in hepatocellular carcinoma patients. *Int J Cancer* 2011; **128**: 887-896 [PMID: 20473887 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25397]
111 **National Cancer Institute (NCI)**. Tremelimumab With Chemoembolization or Ablation for Liver Cancer. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2013. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01853618
112 **University of Miami**. Pembrolizumab (Keytruda) in Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2016. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/study/NCT02658019#contacts
113 **Squibb BM**. A Study to Evaluate the Effectiveness, Safety and Tolerability of Nivolumab and the Combination Nivolumab Plus Ipilimumab in Patients With Advanced Liver Cancer. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2012 [cited 2016 May 18]. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01658878
114 **Triebel F**, Jitsukawa S, Baixeras E, Roman-Roman S, Genevee C, Viegas-Pequignot E, Hercend T. LAG-3, a novel lymphocyte activation gene closely related to CD4. *J Exp Med* 1990; **171**: 1393-1405 [PMID: 1692078 DOI: 10.1084/jem.171.5.1393]
115 **Blackburn SD**, Shin H, Haining WN, Zou T, Workman CJ, Polley A, Betts MR, Freeman GJ, Vignali DA, Wherry EJ. Coregulation of CD8+ T cell exhaustion by multiple inhibitory receptors during chronic viral infection. *Nat Immunol* 2009; **10**: 29-37 [PMID: 19043418 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1679]
116 **Chen N**, Liu Y, Guo Y, Chen Y, Liu X, Liu M. Lymphocyte activation gene 3 negatively regulates the function of intrahepatic hepatitis C virus-specific CD8+ T cells. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **30**: 1788-1795 [PMID: 26095288 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.13017]
117 **Kennedy PT**, Sandalova E, Jo J, Gill U, Ushiro-Lumb I, Tan AT, Naik S, Foster GR, Bertoletti A. Preserved T-cell function in children and young adults with immune-tolerant chronic hepatitis B. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 637-645 [PMID: 22710188 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.06.009]
118 **Li FJ**, Zhang Y, Jin GX, Yao L, Wu DQ. Expression of LAG-3 is coincident with the impaired effector function of HBV-specific CD8(+) T cell in HCC patients. *Immunol Lett* 2013; **150**: 116-122 [PMID: 23261718 DOI: 10.1016/j.imlet.2012.12.004]
119 **Valiante NM**, Trinchieri G. Identification of a novel signal transduction surface molecule on human cytotoxic lymphocytes. *J Exp Med* 1993; **178**: 1397-1406 [PMID: 8376943 DOI: 10.1084/jem.178.4.1397]
120 **Brown MH**, Boles K, van der Merwe PA, Kumar V, Mathew PA, Barclay AN. 2B4, the natural killer and T cell immunoglobulin superfamily surface protein, is a ligand for CD48. *J Exp Med* 1998; **188**: 2083-2090 [PMID: 9841922]
121 **Latchman Y**, McKay PF, Reiser H. Identification of the 2B4 molecule as a counter-receptor for CD48. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 5809-5812 [PMID: 9834056]
122 **Schlaphoff V**, Lunemann S, Suneetha PV, Jaroszewicz J, Grabowski J, Dietz J, Helfritz F, Bektas H, Sarrazin C, Manns MP, Cornberg M, Wedemeyer H. Dual function of the NK cell receptor 2B4 (CD244) in the regulation of HCV-specific CD8+ T cells. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002045 [PMID: 21625589 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002045]
123 **Kroy DC**, Ciuffreda D, Cooperrider JH, Tomlinson M, Hauck GD, Aneja J, Berger C, Wolski D, Carrington M, Wherry EJ, Chung RT, Tanabe KK, Elias N, Freeman GJ, de Kruyff RH, Misdraji J, Kim AY, Lauer GM. Liver environment and HCV replication affect human T-cell phenotype and expression of inhibitory receptors. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 550-561 [PMID: 24148617 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.10.022]
124 **Monney L**, Sabatos CA, Gaglia JL, Ryu A, Waldner H, Chernova T, Manning S, Greenfield EA, Coyle AJ, Sobel RA, Freeman GJ, Kuchroo VK. Th1-specific cell surface protein Tim-3 regulates macrophage activation and severity of an autoimmune disease. *Nature* 2002; **415**: 536-541 [PMID: 11823861 DOI: 10.1038/415536a]
125 **Zhu C**, Anderson AC, Schubart A, Xiong H, Imitola J, Khoury SJ, Zheng XX, Strom TB, Kuchroo VK. The Tim-3 ligand galectin-9 negatively regulates T helper type 1 immunity. *Nat Immunol* 2005; **6**: 1245-1252 [PMID: 16286920 DOI: 10.1038/ni1271]
126 **Sakuishi K**, Apetoh L, Sullivan JM, Blazar BR, Kuchroo VK, Anderson AC. Targeting Tim-3 and PD-1 pathways to reverse T cell exhaustion and restore anti-tumor immunity. *J Exp Med* 2010; **207**: 2187-2194 [PMID: 20819927 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20100643]
127 **Liu Y**, Gao LF, Liang XH, Ma CH. Role of Tim-3 in hepatitis B virus infection: An overview. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 2294-2303 [PMID: 26900291 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i7.2294]
128 **McMahan RH**, Golden-Mason L, Nishimura MI, McMahon BJ, Kemper M, Allen TM, Gretch DR, Rosen HR. Tim-3 expression on PD-1+ HCV-specific human CTLs is associated with viral persistence, and its blockade restores hepatocyte-directed in vitro cytotoxicity. *J Clin Invest* 2010; **120**: 4546-4557 [PMID: 21084749 DOI: 10.1172/JCI43127]
129 **Wu W**, Shi Y, Li J, Chen F, Chen Z, Zheng M. Tim-3 expression on peripheral T cell subsets correlates with disease progression in hepatitis B infection. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 113 [PMID: 21392402 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-113]
130 **Wu W**, Shi Y, Li S, Zhang Y, Liu Y, Wu Y, Chen Z. Blockade of Tim-3 signaling restores the virus-specific CD8$^+$ T-cell response in patients with chronic hepatitis B. *Eur J Immunol* 2012; **42**: 1180-1191 [PMID: 22539292 DOI: 10.1002/eji.201141852]
131 **Ngiow SF**, von Scheidt B, Akiba H, Yagita H, Teng MW, Smyth MJ. Anti-TIM3 antibody promotes T cell IFN-γ-mediated antitumor immunity and suppresses established tumors. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 3540-3551 [PMID: 21430066 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-0096]
132 **Anumanthan A**, Bensussan A, Boumsell L, Christ AD, Blumberg RS, Voss SD, Patel AT, Robertson MJ, Nadler LM, Freeman GJ. Cloning of BY55, a novel Ig superfamily member expressed on NK cells, CTL, and intestinal intraepithelial lymphocytes. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 2780-2790 [PMID: 9743336]
133 **Kared H**, Saeed S, Klein MB, Shoukry NH. CD127 expression, exhaustion status and antigen specific proliferation predict sustained virologic response to IFN in HCV/HIV co-infected individuals. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e101441 [PMID: 25007250 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0101441]
134 **Viganò S**, Banga R, Bellanger F, Pellaton C, Farina A, Comte D, Harari A, Perreau M. CD160-associated CD8 T-cell functional impairment is independent of PD-1 expression. *PLoS Pathog* 2014; **10**: e1004380 [PMID: 25255144 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004380]
135 **Wu Y**, Kuang DM, Pan WD, Wan YL, Lao XM, Wang D, Li XF, Zheng L. Monocyte/macrophage-elicited natural killer cell dysfunction in hepatocellular carcinoma is mediated by CD48/2B4 interactions. *Hepatology* 2013; **57**: 1107-1116 [PMID: 23225218 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26192]
136 **Wenjin Z**, Chuanhui P, Yunle W, Lateef SA, Shusen Z. Longitudinal fluctuations in PD1 and PD-L1 expression in association with changes in anti-viral immune response in chronic hepatitis B. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2012; **12**: 109 [PMID: 22894700 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-12-109]

P- Reviewer: Abdel-Razik A, Lleo A, Otsuka M **S- Editor**: Ma YJ
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6484

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6484-6500
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Prevention and management of hepatitis B virus reactivation in patients with hematological malignancies treated with anticancer therapy

Man Fai Law, Rita Ho, Carmen KM Cheung, Lydia HP Tam, Karen Ma, Kent CY So, Bonaventure Ip, Jacqueline So, Jennifer Lai, Joyce Ng, Tommy HC Tam

Man Fai Law, Carmen KM Cheung, Lydia HP Tam, Karen Ma, Kent CY So, Bonaventure Ip, Jacqueline So, Jennifer Lai, Joyce Ng, Tommy HC Tam, Department of Medicine and Therapeutics, Prince of Wales Hospital, Hong Kong, China

Rita Ho, Department of Medicine, North District Hospital, Hong Kong, China

Author contributions: Law MF designed the research topic; all authors contributed to the literature search, analysis and writing the paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interest for this article.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dr. Man Fai Law, Department of Medicine and Therapeutics, Prince of Wales Hospital, Shatin, Hong Kong, China. mflaw99@yahoo.com.hk
Telephone: +852-97763090

Received: April 1, 2016
Peer-review started: April 7, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 24, 2016
Accepted: June 15, 2016
Article in press: June 15, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Hepatitis due to hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation can be severe and potentially fatal, but is preventable. HBV reactivation is most commonly reported in patients receiving cancer chemotherapy, especially rituximab-containing therapy for hematological malignancies and those receiving stem cell transplantation. All patients with hematological malignancies receiving anticancer therapy should be screened for active or resolved HBV infection by blood tests for hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) and antibody to hepatitis B core antigen (anti-HBc). Patients found to be positive for HBsAg should be given prophylactic antiviral therapy to prevent HBV reactivation. For patients with resolved HBV infection, no standard strategy has yet been established to prevent HBV reactivation. There are usually two options. One is pre-emptive therapy guided by serial HBV DNA monitoring, whereby antiviral therapy is given as soon as HBV DNA becomes detectable. However, there is little evidence regarding the optimal interval and period of monitoring. An alternative approach is prophylactic antiviral therapy, especially for patients receiving high-risk therapy such as rituximab, newer generation of anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, obinutuzumab or hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. This strategy may effectively prevent HBV reactivation and avoid the inconvenience of repeated HBV DNA monitoring. Entecavir or tenofovir are preferred over lamivudine as prophylactic therapy. Although there is no well-defined guideline on the optimal duration of prophylactic therapy, there is growing evidence to recommend continuing prophylactic antiviral therapy for at least 12 mo after cessation of chemotherapy, and even longer for those who receive rituximab or who had high serum HBV DNA levels before the start of immunosuppressive

therapy. Many novel agents have recently become available for the treatment of hematological malignancies, and these agents may be associated with HBV reactivation. Although there is currently limited evidence to guide the optimal preventive measures, we recommend antiviral prophylaxis in HBsAg-positive patients receiving novel treatments, especially the Bruton tyrosine kinase inhibitors and the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase inhibitors, which are B-cell receptor signaling modulators and reduce proliferation of malignant B-cells. Further studies are needed to clarify the risk of HBV reactivation with these agents and the best prophylactic strategy in the era of targeted therapy for hematological malignancies.

Key words: Hepatitis B virus reactivation; Hematological malignancies; Rituximab; Hematopoietic stem cell transplant; Prophylactic antiviral therapy

Core tip: Hepatitis due to hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation can be severe and potentially fatal. All patients with hematological malignancies receiving anticancer therapy should be screened for hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) and antibody to hepatitis B core antigen. Patients found to be positive for HBsAg should be given prophylactic antiviral therapy. For patients with resolved HBV infection, either preemptive therapy guided by serial HBV DNA monitoring or prophylactic antiviral therapy, especially for patients receiving high-risk therapy are reasonable options. Further studies are needed to find out the best prophylactic strategy in the era of targeted therapy for hematological malignancies.

Law MF, Ho R, Cheung CKM, Tam LHP, Ma K, So KCY, Ip B, So J, Lai J, Ng J, Tam THC. Prevention and management of hepatitis B virus reactivation in patients with hematological malignancies treated with anticancer therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6484-6500 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6484.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6484

INTRODUCTION

Patients infected with hepatitis B virus (HBV) are at risk of reactivation of the virus if they receive chemotherapy, even if they have chronic or resolved HBV infection. HBV reactivation is most commonly reported in patients receiving cancer chemotherapy for haematological malignancies or haemopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) recipients, although it has also been reported in patients receiving treatment for solid tumours like breast cancer.

The first few reports of hepatitis B reactivation were in patients with lymphoma[1], but the highest risk of HBV reactivation is seen with the potent anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, rituximab, which came into use in the last two decades and results in profound B-cell depletion.

The newer generation of anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, obinutuzumab, will induce a more profound B-cell depletion than rituximab does, and the risk of HBV reactivation is expected to be high. Similarly, the newer targeted therapies, such as the Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitors and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) inhibitors, which have recently proven to be successful in a number of hematological malignancies[2-12], may also potentially cause HBV reactivation because they block B-cell antigen receptor signalling and reduce malignant proliferation of B-cells. The increasing use of proteasome inhibitors in multiple myeloma and hypomethylating agents in elderly patients with acute myeloid leukemia should arouse caution on the risk of HBV reactivation in these hematological malignancies.

The initiating factor of HBV reactivation is thought to be loss of immune control over viral replication. During chemotherapy, when the immune system is suppressed, HBV replicates dramatically and the viral load increases causing widespread infection of hepatocytes. When chemotherapy is stopped and immune function is restored, liver cells containing HBV may produce a strong immune-mediated reaction causing liver damage[13].

The clinical manifestations of HBV reactivation range from asymptomatic self-limiting anicteric hepatitis to potentially fatal, severe liver failure. Deranged liver function due to HBV reactivation may also lead to a delay or interruption of the chemotherapy regimen, which is likely to increase the risk of morbidity and mortality associated with the underlying malignancy.

Most of the data of HBV reactivation in cancer patients come from lymphoma patients receiving chemotherapy and rituximab. This article describes the risk and clinical course of HBV reactivation in patients with lymphoma, as well as those with other hematological malignancies such as multiple myeloma or acute leukemia, or receiving the novel agents used in hematological malignancies. We will also discuss the choice of antiviral agent for the prevention of HBV reactivation and duration of antiviral prophylactic therapy and management of HBV reactivation.

DEFINITIONS OF HBV REACTIVATION AND CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Approximately 350 million people worldwide are chronically infected with HBV. All patients with HBV infection develop anti-HBc and the antibody persists after clearance of HBsAg. Therefore, anti-HBc is a good marker of current as well as past infection with HBV. Anti-HBs can be present due to previous infection or successful hepatitis B vaccination. The presence of anti-HBc without HBsAg or anti-HBs indicates resolved

HBV infection, but patients with this marker are still at risk of HBV reactivation and a fatal outcome. Although HBV DNA is rarely found in peripheral blood after the HBV infection has resolved, trace amounts are often found within the liver and can be activated when the immune response is suppressed.

HBV reactivation is diagnosed by a marked increase or de novo appearance of HBV DNA in serum[14]. Reactivation of HBV replication is defined as a marked increase in HBV replication [⩾ 2log increase (100 fold) from baseline levels or a new appearance of HBV DNA to a level of ⩾ 100 IU/mL] in a person with previously stable or undetectable levels of HBV DNA[15]. Newer and more sensitive HBV DNA assays have increased the number of patients who can be diagnosed with HBV reactivation[16].

HBV reactivation can be described as exacerbation of chronic hepatitis B or reactivation of past hepatitis B infection. The latter can be further defined as reverse HBsAg seroconversion (reappearance of HBsAg), or appearance of HBV DNA in serum in the absence of HBsAg.

The course of HBV reactivation has three phases[15,17]. During the first phase, there is an increase in levels of HBV DNA in the serum of an HBsAg-positive person or a reappearance of HBsAg or HBV DNA in serum in a person who was previously HBsAg-negative or had undetectable serum HBV DNA, respectively. Symptoms of hepatitis are usually absent and levels of liver enzymes, *e.g.,* alanine aminotransferase (ALT), are not elevated.

During the second phase, serum HBV DNA levels continue to increase, and there is an increase in ALT levels, with or without symptoms of acute hepatitis. Hepatic injury may progress in some patients, causing liver failure and even death. These changes in the second phase may occur between chemotherapy administrations or after cessation of chemotherapy, and may result from reconstitution of the host immune response[18].

In the third phase, hepatic injury resolves either spontaneously or as a result of withholding immunosuppressive therapy or initiation of antiviral therapy.

HBV reactivation can occur at any time during or after chemotherapy. It typically occurs after the second or third courses of chemotherapy for patients undergoing treatment for lymphoma. In patients receiving rituximab for the treatment of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, HBV reactivation may occur after a median of six doses and up to 12 mo after the last dose of rituximab[19].

HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive patients who receive allogeneic HSCT are at risk of developing HBV reactivation for several years after transplantation because of the long delay in reconstituting the recipient's immune response to HBV[20].

RISK FACTORS FOR HBV REACTIVATION

Underlying diseases

HBV reactivation is most commonly reported in patients with lymphoma, but it is unclear whether lymphoma itself increases the risk of HBV reactivation because there are no studies comparing the risk in patients with other diseases receiving similar chemotherapeutic regimens. The frequent association between lymphoma and HBV reactivation might be related to the intensity of the chemotherapy regimen, resulting in marked immunosuppression. Alternatively, it might also be related to a higher prevalence of HBV infection among lymphoma patients[21-25].

Deng *et al*[26] recently showed that in HBsAg-positive diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) patients, the majority (96%) of patients' amino acid sequences of heavy- and light-chain complementarity-determining region 3 exhibited a high homology to antibodies specific for HBsAg, and 90% of *IgHV* and *IgLV* genes were mutated. This suggests that HBV-associated DLBCL might arise from HBV antigen-selected B-cells.

Although most early reports of HBV reactivation were in patients with lymphoma, more data on HBV reactivation have recently emerged in patients with other hematological diseases like multiple myeloma. Multiple myeloma is the second most common hematological malignancy. HBV reactivation has been reported in patients who are HBsAg-positive and in those who are HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive[27-30]. Moreover, severe immune dysfunction associated with advanced myeloma may also predispose myeloma patients to virus reactivation[31].

Mya *et al*[27] investigated the incidence of hepatitis B reactivation in 273 patients with multiple myeloma undergoing high-dose therapy followed by autologous stem cell transplant (HDT-ASCT) and treatment with novel agents. Patients were screened for the presence of HBsAg and anti-HBc. The prevalence of HBV infection was 5.5%, including three cases of HBV reactivation despite lamivudine prophylaxis. Of the three patients with HBV reactivation, two developed reactivation 3 to 5 mo after HDT-ASCT while receiving thalidomide maintenance, and one reactivated 3 years after HDT-ASCT followed by bortezomib salvage therapy.

Another study by Li *et al*[30] analyzed 139 myeloma patients. HBsAg-positive patients underwent prophylactic therapy before starting immunosuppressive therapy, and the incidence of HBV reactivation was 22.1%. This high incidence of HBV reactivation is believed to be due to the use of bortezomib and/or treatment with ASCT.

The risk of HBV reactivation is significant in patients with acute myeloid leukemia (AML) receiving chemotherapy, with an incidence similar to that in

patients with lymphoma. A recent study by Chen *et al*[32] analysed 490 AML patients and found that the incidence of HBV reactivation and HBV-related hepatitis were 9.5 and 8.3 per 100 person-years, respectively, in AML patients who are also chronic hepatitis B carriers. This is similar to the incidence of HBV reactivation in lymphoma patients. Prophylaxis with anti-HBV agents significantly decreased the risk of hepatitis B reactivation among HBV carriers (13% *vs* 61%, $P < 0.001$). Since fulminant hepatitis B is a catastrophic event for AML patients infected with HBV[33-35], periodic assessment of liver function and HBV serological status or prophylactic antiviral therapy is important during chemotherapy. Further prospective studies of patients with AML would be useful to assess the true incidence of HBV flare-ups and the best prophylactic strategy.

HBV reactivation is common in the setting of HSCT as a result of profound immunosuppression, the use of multiple immunosuppressive agents for allogeneic transplantations and substitution of the preexisting immune system with one that has not been exposed to HBV in the past[14].

The risk is greatest among patients undergoing allogeneic HSCT because of the requirement for high-dose conditioning chemotherapy, and the profound immunosuppression and prolonged use of immunosuppressive agents to prevent the development of graft-*vs*-host-disease after HSCT. Patients undergoing autologous HSCT receive high-dose chemotherapy like high-dose melphalan in multiple myeloma or BEAM [BCNU (carmustine), etoposide, cytarabine, melphalan] in relapsed or refractory lymphoma. The risk of HBV reactivation in autologous HSCT is similar to that in patients undergoing intensive chemotherapy.

HBV reactivation is not uncommon in HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc positive patients undergoing HSCT, with a rate of HBsAg seroconversion (reappearance of HBsAg in a person who was HBsAg-negative, anti-HBc-positive before HSCT) of 20% according to a retrospective study[20]. The cumulative probability of HBsAg seroconversion was 42.9% at 4 years after HSCT.

Gender

Male sex is a consistent host factor shown to be associated with an increased risk of HBV reactivation[1,36]. In one study of 78 HBsAg-positive patients with various types of cancer, 29% of the male patients had HBV reactivation compared with 10% of the female patients[36].

HBV serologic status

HBsAg-positive patients have a higher risk of HBV reactivation than patients who are HBsAg-negative-anti-HBc-positive. HBsAg positivity is associated with a 5- to 8-fold increase in the risk for HBV reactivation[37]. Moreover, those with detectable or high levels of serum HBV DNA prior to start of immunosuppressive therapy have a higher risk of HBV reactivation than do those with undetectable or low levels of HBV DNA[38-40].

HBV reactivation in HBsAg-negative patients is also increasingly being encountered nowadays because of the use of B-cell-depleting agents[16,41,42]. Most HBsAg-negative-anti-HBc-positive patients have undetectable serum HBV DNA levels, but the risk of HBV reactivation is higher in the minority with detectable serum HBV DNA at baseline. Moreover, in HBsAg-negative-anti-HBc-positive patients, those who have an undetectable or low titre of anti-HBs level at the onset of immunosuppressive therapy or have a loss of anti-HBs during immunosuppressive therapy have an increased risk of HBV reactivation[43-47].

Types of anticancer therapies

Steroids are a common component of treatment for hematological malignancies, especially lymphoid diseases, and are combined with chemotherapy in most regimens used to treat lymphoma and multiple myeloma. It was shown that long-term treatment with prednisolone increases HBsAg levels and HBV DNA in hepatocytes, with rebound immune T-cell function and subsequent hepatocyte destruction upon withdrawal of the corticosteroid[48]. High-dose steroid (> 20 mg/d of prednisolone) and long duration of therapy (> 4 wk) increases the risk of HBV reactivation.

Anthracyclines, such as doxorubicin or daunorubicin, are commonly used to treat hematological malignancies such as lymphoma and acute leukemia. There is a significant risk of HBV reactivation in patients receiving doxorubicin as part of the chemotherapeutic regimens[49,50].

B-cell depleting agents, like anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies, are used in various hematological malignancies, including lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL). These monoclonal antibodies (including rituximab, ofatumumab) act against B-lymphocyte antigen CD20, resulting in profound depletion of the B-cells involved in priming specific cytotoxic T-cells[51]. Rituximab was the first monoclonal antibody approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), and is the most widely used treatment for CD20-positive B-cell lymphoma patients. Rituximab is a chimeric type 1 antibody that kills CLL cells primarily by means of complement-dependent and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity after binding to CD20. The use of rituximab is associated with a more than 5-fold increase in the risk of HBV reactivation[19]. In 2013, the United States FDA issued a black box warning concerning the risk of HBV reactivation in patients receiving anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies[52].

The profound B-cell depletion induced by rituximab interferes with the generation of anti-HBs, which can neutralize circulating HBsAg. Rituximab worsens the impairment of antigen-presenting B-cells that is seen with chronic HBV, leading to insufficient induction of CD4 T-cell activation and proliferation and a T-cell

Table 1 Drug classes and corresponding risks of HBV reactivation[49,67]

Drug class	Drug	Risk of HBV reactivation for HBsAg-positive patients	Risk of HBV reactivation for HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive patients
Monoclonal antibody	Rituximab Ofatumumab Obinutuzumab	High (30%-60%)	High (> 10%)
Anthracycline chemotherapy	Doxorubicin Epirubicin Daunorubicin	High (15%-30%)	High (> 10%)
Corticosteroids	High dose, *e.g.*, Prednisolone ⩾ 20 mg for ⩾ 4 wk	High (> 10%)	Not available
	Moderate dose, *e.g.*, Prednisolone < 20 mg for ⩾ 4 wk	Moderate (1%-10%)	Moderate (1%-10%)
	Low dose, *e.g.*, Prednisolone < 1 wk	Low (< 1%)	Low (< 1%)
Tyrosine kinase inhibitors	Imatinib, nilotinib	Moderate (1%-10%)	Moderate (1%-10%)
Traditional immunosuppressive agents	Methotrexate, azathioprine, 6-mercaptopurine	Low (< 1%)	Low (< 1%)

HBV: Hepatitis B virus.

hyporesponsive state[53].

Alemtuzumab is an anti-CD52 monoclonal antibody that is useful in refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia patients and certain types of T-cell lymphoma. HBV reactivation has also been reported to occur with alemtuzumab therapy[54-57].

Tyrosine kinase inhibitors (*e.g.*, imatinib, dasatinib, nilotinib) are currently the standard treatment for all phases of chronic myeloid leukemia. There have been some reports of HBV reactivation in patients who have been given these agents[58-64]. The exact mechanism for HBV reactivation is not clear with tyrosine kinase inhibitors, but it may be related to immune restoration. Clinicians need to give prophylactic antiviral therapy or regularly monitor HBV DNA and liver enzymes of HBV-infected patients during imatinib treatment.

The use of hypomethylating agents including decitabine and azacitidine has increased in recent years, especially in the elderly acute myeloid leukemia (AML) patients. AML is common in elderly patients and the median age of onset is 67 years[65,66]. To date, there has been no reported case of HBV reactivation in patients using hypomethylating agents, possibly because the degree of myelosuppression with these agents is not as severe as it is with cytotoxic chemotherapy for AML. There is no recommended prophylactic strategy for HBV reactivation in these patients using hypomethylating agents. We would recommend consideration of antiviral prophylaxis for HBsAg positive patients using hypomethylating agents for the treatment of AML, since myelosuppression is a side effect of these agents. Table 1 summarizes the drug classes and corresponding risks of HBV reactivation[49,67].

Newer monoclonal antibodies

Adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma (ATLL) is a rare but aggressive subtype of T-cell lymphoma with a higher prevalence in Japan and South America. Mogamulizumab is a humanized monoclonal antibody targeting the C-C chemokine receptor 4 that was developed and introduced into the management of ATLL. However, there have been reports of HBV reactivation in Japanese patients treated with this agent, affecting both HBsAg-positive and HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc patients[68-70]. One of these cases of HBV reactivation with mogamulizumab in an ATLL patient was fatal[68]. Further prospective studies are needed to estimate the risk and incidence of HBV reactivation in patients using this agent and to establish regular HBV DNA monitoring-guided preemptive antiviral therapy for such patients.

Brentuximab vedotin is an anti-CD30 drug-conjugated antibody used in the treatment of relapsed or refractory Hodgkin lymphoma and CD30 positive T-cell lymphoma[71-73]. CD30 can be found on malignant lymphoid cells and activated T-cells. CD30 has an important role in developing memory and effector $CD4^+$ T-cells, but its effects on B-cells are controversial. Following binding to CD30, brentuximab vedotin will be internalized rapidly and cause cell cycle arrest and apoptosis. There has been a case report from China of HBV reactivation in one patient given brentuximab vedotin[74].

Obinutuzumab is a newer generation of anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody. Similar to rituximab, it is a humanized, glycol-engineered type 2 antibody also targeted against CD20[75]. Based on the risk of HBV reactivation with rituximab, the FDA has mandated a warning about risk of HBV reactivation with obinutuzumab, although no specific events of reactivation have been reported with this agent. Obinutuzumab showed higher efficacy than rituximab, by inducing direct cell death and enhanced antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (with less complement-dependent cytotoxicity). It can cause more profound suppression of CD20 than rituximab. A comparison of obinutuzumab with rituximab showed better complete response rate and longer progression-free survival with obinutuzumab than with rituximab,

when both were given in combination with chlorambucil in the treatment of CLL[76]. The use of this agent would be expected to increase in the treatment of CLL and other lymphoproliferative diseases.

Other novel agents

There are many new targeted agents for hematological malignancies, including the BTK ibrutinib and the PI3K delta inhibitor idelalisib, which are both B-cell receptor signaling modulators. They have been approved by FDA for the treatment of CLL and certain low-grade non-Hodgkin's lymphomas (NHL). These oral compounds are currently in various clinical trials in patients with different subtypes of aggressive and low-grade B-cell NHLs and they will be used more clinically in the future.

There is already a case report concerning the HBV reactivation in a CLL patient receiving ibrutinib[77]. This patient with relapsed CLL had previously resolved hepatitis B infection and was negative for HBsAg and positive for anti-HBc Ab. HBV reactivation occurred five months after starting ibrutinib treatment. The patient recovered from HBV reactivation after receiving entecavir therapy. Ibrutinib acts by blocking B-cell antigen receptor signalling, thereby reducing malignant proliferation of B-cells and inducing cell death[4]. Ibrutinib irreversibly binds IL-2-inducible kinase and inhibits activation of Th2 cells after T-cell receptor stimulation. This inhibition is specific to Th2-polarized CD4 T-cells, because redundant resting lymphocyte kinase remains functional, thus providing a compensatory platform for activation of Th1 and CD8 T-cells[78].

Physicians should be vigilant about the possibility of HBV reactivation when using these agents. We recommend screening patients for HBV antigens before using the BTK or PI3K blockers, and prescribing prophylactic antiviral therapy in HBsAg-positive patients. Further studies are required to assess the risk of HBV reactivation in patients receiving small molecules in the treatment of lymphoma and leukemia.

Myelofibrosis is a myeloproliferative disease characterized by excessive production of reticulin and collagen fibers, hepatosplenomegaly, anemia and a tendency to transform to acute leukemia. About 50% of patients present the JAK2V617F mutation, resulting in a constitutively activated Janus-activated kinase (JAK) signal and increased production of cytokines. Ruxolitinib is a novel inhibitor JAK1 and JAK2 that has been approved for the treatment of patients with myelofibrosis. Clinical trials have shown that ruxolitinib can effectively reduce the size of the spleen and liver and improve myelofibrosis-related symptoms[79,80]. However, there are also reports of HBV reactivation in patients with myelofibrosis following ruxolitinib treatment[81,82].

The approval of the proteasome inhibitor bortezomib for newly diagnosed and relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma patients marked a revolutionary change in the drug treatment of multiple myeloma[83-85]. Bortezomib is also the backbone of induction therapy for transplant-eligible patients prior to stem cell harvest. It inhibits T-cell function[86,87], which could promote viral replication in patients with multiple myeloma. Bortezomib has been shown to be associated with HBV reactivation in both HBsAg positive patients and HBsAg negative/anti-HBc positive patients with or without stem cell transplant[29,30,88]. HBV reactivation has been reported 1 to 3 years after stem cell transplantation in some patients and it may be due to immune dysfunction in patients with multiple myeloma and factors associated with bortezomib-containing chemotherapy and autologous stem cell transplant.

Multiple myeloma cells uniformly overexpress CD38. Daratumumab, a CD38-targeting, human IgG1κ monoclonal antibody, was shown to have a favorable safety profile and encouraging efficacy in heavily pretreated patients with refractory myeloma[89]. Daratumumab can potentially increase the risk of HBV reactivation because CD38 is expressed in B-cell hematological malignancies. There is no reported case so far and further studies are needed to assess the risk of HBV reactivation with this monoclonal antibody.

There has been a report of HBV reactivation occurring after six cycles of pomalidomide/doxorubicin/dexamethasone treatment in a myeloma patient with an initially unknown HBV carrier status[90]. This had not been observed after previous administration of highly immunosuppressive high-dose melphalan prior to autologous stem cell transplantation, which may indicate that the immunomodulatory agent (pomalidomide) was the cause of the HBV reactivation. More data are needed to determine whether immunomodulators affect the risk of HBV reactivation.

PREVENTION OF HBV REACTIVATION

HBV screening

The key to prevention of HBV reactivation is the identification of patients with HBV infection before initiation of chemotherapy. Patients at risk of HBV reactivation are easily identified by testing HBsAg and anti-HBc. The European Association for the Study of the Liver and Asian-Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver recommend universal HBV screening prior to initiation of immunosuppressive therapy while the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases, American Gastroenterological Association and American Society of Clinical Oncology recommend screening patients with risk factors[49,91-94]. We recommend screening all patients with hematological malignancies for active or prior HBV infection by testing for HBsAg and anti-HBc in serum.

HBsAg positive patients

The risk of HBV reactivation is high in HBsAg-positive patients receiving chemotherapy. The risk is

even higher in patients with high HBV replication at baseline with high serum HBV DNA level, receiving rituximab-containing chemotherapy or a stem cell transplant. A systematic review of 14 studies showed that, in HBsAg-positive patients who were not given prophylaxis with the antiviral agent lamivudine during chemotherapy, the rate of HBV reactivation, liver failure, and death were 32%, 13%, and 7%, respectively[95]. Furthermore, lamivudine prophylaxis could decrease HBV reactivation and HBV hepatitis by 80% to 100% and eliminate HBV liver failure, as well as reducing the delay or interruption of chemotherapy due to HBV reactivation[96].

Therefore, once a patient is identified as being seropositive for HBsAg, the patient will benefit from receiving prophylactic antiviral treatment for hepatitis B before or concomitantly with starting chemotherapy, irrespective of the HBV DNA level. The number needed to treat to prevent one reactivation was 3 patients[97]. Antiviral therapy started after HBV reactivation may not be able to prevent hepatitis or hepatitis flares[16], because antiviral therapy usually takes a few weeks to months to reduce viral loads and control the disease, during which there is ongoing inflammation and necrosis of the liver[14]. Moreover, randomized trials have shown that prophylactic antiviral therapy is more effective than a pre-emptive strategy in HBsAg-positive patients[98,99]. Another major limitation of pre-emptive antiviral therapy is its reliance on close monitoring of HBV DNA levels.

HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive patients

Patients with resolved HBV infection may have occult HBV infection with persistent detectable viremia despite the absence of detectable circulating HBsAg[14]. The HBV reactivation rate ranged from 8.9% to 41.5% in HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive patients receiving rituximab-containing chemotherapy in different studies with different definitions of HBV reactivation, using either HBsAg seroconversion or detectable HBV DNA[16,41,42,45,99]. A meta-analysis of 15 studies (6 prospective and 9 retrospective) involving 578 patients gave a pooled risk estimation of HBV reactivation (ALT more than 3 times the upper limit of normal and either HBsAg seroconversion or an increase in serum HBV DNA) of 6.3% in patients exposed to rituximab[100]. Most of the reported cases of HBV reactivation in patients with resolved HBV infection were self-limited, but fulminant hepatitis and hepatitis-induced mortality were sometimes reported[99,101-105].

For patients with resolved HBV infection, no standard strategy has yet been established to prevent HBV reactivation. There are usually two options. One is pre-emptive therapy guided by serial HBV DNA monitoring, whereby the antiviral drug is given as soon as HBV DNA becomes detectable. Pre-emptive antiviral therapy may be a reasonable strategy, but there is limited evidence regarding the optimal interval and period of monitoring[16,106]. An alternative approach is prophylactic antiviral therapy, especially for high-risk chemotherapy such as rituximab-containing chemotherapy. This strategy may effectively prevent HBV reactivation and avoid the inconvenience of repeated HBV DNA monitoring[107]. Moreover, antiviral therapy may be less effective once high titers of viremia are attained, and the same medication could be more effective if given earlier, when viremia is minimal.

Prophylactic antiviral therapy is more effective than pre-emptive antiviral therapy in preventing HBV reactivation in high-risk patients, such as those receiving rituximab or undergoing HSCT. Whether pre-emptive antiviral therapy is more cost-effective in clinical settings associated with moderate risk of HBV reactivation (for example, HBsAg-negative-anti-HBc-positive patients receiving chemotherapy for lymphoma that does not include anti-CD20 therapy) is unclear. A major limitation of pre-emptive antiviral therapy is its reliance on close monitoring of HBV DNA levels and prompt initiation of antiviral therapy when HBV reactivation is detected. Table 2 summarizes the prospective studies in HBsAg negative/anti-HBc positive patients with hematological malignancies who received pre-emptive or prophylactic treatment.

More reports of resolved HBV infection in other hematological malignancies like multiple myeloma have been published in recent few years. In a recently published study of 230 HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive multiple myeloma patients, 12 (5.2%) displayed HBV reactivation, which was defined as the reappearance of HBsAg with or without de novo detection of HBV DNA in the blood[29]. The cumulative rate of HBV reactivation was 5% at 2 years and 8% at 5 years[29]. Absence of anti-HBs and high-dose therapy and then autologous stem cell transplant were found to be risk factors associated with HBV reactivation. The cumulative incidence rate of HBV reactivation rate at 2 years was significantly higher in patients who were anti-HBs negative than anti-HBs positive at baseline (9% *vs* 3%, $P = 0.033$) patients, and was also significantly higher for patients who had received high-dose therapy and then autologous stem cell transplant than for patients who had not (7% *vs* 0%, $P = 0.025$). These high-risk patients may benefit from regular monitoring of HBV DNA levels.

Future prospective studies are needed on cost-effective strategies for the optimal timing and duration for the regular monitoring of HBV DNA and indication of prophylactic antiviral therapy in multiple myeloma patients for avoiding HBV-related liver complications and mortality.

Another recent study included 315 HBsAg-negative, anti-HBc positive patients who received autologous or allogenic stem cell transplantation. The primary endpoint was the incidence of HBV reactivation. With a median follow-up duration was 21.4 mo, antiviral prophylaxis was not given to 219 patients, and 96 received

Table 2 Prospective studies on HBV reactivation in haematology patients with resolved hepatitis B virus infection (HBsAg negative anti-HBc positive patients)

Author/year	Disease	Study design	Sample size	Definition of HBV reactivation	Rate of HBV reactivation	Risk factor(s) identified for HBV reactivation	Death from HBV reactivation
Yeo *et al*[99] 2009	Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma	All patients were observed every 2-3 wk during anticancer therapy and every 6-8 wk for 9 mo after anticancer therapy Start lamivudine upon HBV reactivation	46	HBsAg seroconversion (the reappearance of HBsAg) with an increase in HBV DNA levels when compared with baseline HBV DNA levels, in the absence of acute infection with HAV, HCV, or other systemic infections	25% in patients receiving R-CHOP	Absence of anti-HBs, use of rituximab and male sex	20% died of HBV reactivation
Huang *et al*[107] 2013	B-cell lymphoma	Entecavir prophylaxis (continued until 3 mo after completing chemotherapy) *vs* preemptive treatment	80	Elevation of HBV viral load to 2000 IU/mL with two consecutive determinations (2 wk apart)	Incidence was 4.3% in entecavir group and 25.9% in the control group at 1.5 yr	Lack of entecavir prophylaxis	Nil
Seto *et al*[45] 2014	CD20 positive B-cell lymphoma	HBV DNA monitoring every 4 wk Start entecavir upon detection of HBV reactivation	63	HBV DNA ≥ 10 IU/mL	2-yr cumulative rate 41.5%	Anti-HBs < 10 mIU/mL	Nil
Hsu *et al*[16] 2014	CD20 positive B-cell lymphoma	HBV DNA monitoring every 4 wk Start entecavir upon detection of HBV reactivation	150	> 10-fold increase in HBV DNA, compared with previous nadir levels	Incidence was 10.4%	Absence of anti-HBs	Nil
Kusumoto *et al*[46] 2015	CD20 positive B-cell lymphoma	HBV DNA monitoring every 4 wk Start entecavir upon detection of HBV reactivation	269	HBV DNA ≥ 11 IU/mL	Incidence was 8.3% at 1.5 yr	Anti-HBs < 10 mIU/mL and baseline HBV DNA below level of quantification	Nil

HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBc: Hepatitis B core antigen.

prophylaxis. The median duration of prophylaxis was 7.0 mo. HBV reactivated in 12 patients (4 in the group receiving prophylaxis and 8 in the non-prophylactic group). The median time to reactivation was 20.5 mo after starting chemotherapy[108]. All patients who developed HBV reactivation were treated with antiviral agents. The risk of reactivation was increased significantly in patients who had an allogeneic HSCT and those with loss of anti-HBs. This study showed that short-term antiviral prophylaxis may not be able to decrease the risk of HBV reactivation. This suggests that prophylaxis should be used for longer than 24 mo or careful monitoring of HBV DNA should be combined with on-demand antiviral treatment to prevent hepatitis flares in post-transplant patients.

HBsAg negative/anti-HBc negative/anti-HBs positive patients

HBV reactivation in patients with isolated anti-HBs is extremely rare. In general, individuals who are seropositive only for anti-HBs (HBsAg negative and anti-HBc negative) are usually considered as having a history of HBV vaccination and are at no risk for HBV reactivation. Routine monitoring is usually not recommended. However, HBV reactivation has been reported to occur in patients who were seropositive for anti-HBs alone[109,110].

A patient with follicular lymphoma without record of hepatitis B vaccination had only anti-HBs but no anti-HBc before chemotherapy. He later developed high viremia with an HBV escape mutant, which was difficult to detect by HBsAg assays[109]. The escape mutants of HBV carry mutations in the major antigenic region of HBsAg. They are able to grow in the presence of anti-HBs. Anti-HBc may appear very late.

Another patient with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma without record of vaccination against HBV was negative for HBsAg and anti-HBc, and positive for anti-HBs (127 IU/mL) before chemotherapy. She had HBV reactivation after finishing rituximab-containing chemotherapy. She died of liver failure although antiviral treatment was started after detection of HBV reactivation[110].

Therefore, clinicians should be aware of this possible complication when they give chemotherapy to hematology patients who are HBsAg negative/anti-HBc negative/anti-HBs positive. When the patient has unexplained deranged liver function, HBV DNA should

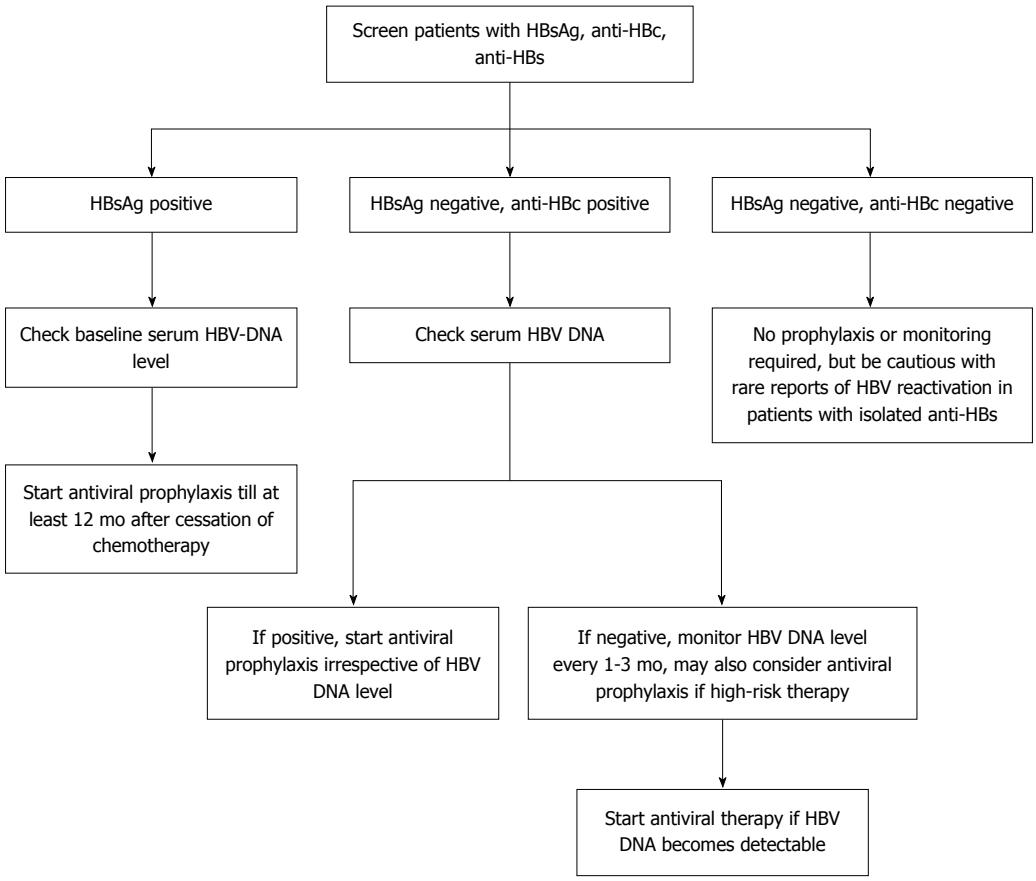


Figure 1 Recommended algorithm for hepatitis B virus testing and treatment in patients with hematological malignancies receiving anti-cancer therapy. HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBc: Hepatitis B core antigen.

be checked to look for HBV reactivation in this setting.

Figure 1 is a suggested algorithm for testing of HBV and management of patients with hematological malignancies receiving anticancer therapy. Table 3 summarizes the recent international guidelines on the management of patients with HBV infection receiving chemotherapy.

CHOICE OF ANTIVIRAL THERAPIES

Lamivudine was the first oral antiviral agent used to treat chronic HBV infection, and has been studied in randomized controlled trials for its efficacy to prevent HBV reactivation in patients receiving immunosuppressive therapies[85,98]. Lamivudine is generally safe and well tolerated, but it is also associated with a high incidence of viral resistance after prolonged use for more than 6 mo due to the emergence of YMDD mutations[93]. Lamivudine has been shown to have a low barrier to resistance with rates of antiviral resistance of 14%-32% after 1 year of treatment and 60%-70% after 5 years of treatment in clinical trials in patients with chronic hepatitis B[93]. Emergence of drug resistance mutations may outweigh the benefits of preventative antiviral therapy and can lead to hepatitis flares, liver failure and death.

Antiviral agents with high genetic barriers to resistance (*i.e.*, entecavir or tenofovir) are preferred to lamivudine in the treatment of chronic HBV infection[79]. A prospective randomized study by Huang *et al*[111] recruited 121 patients seropositive for the HBsAg with untreated DLBCL (61 received entecavir prophylaxis and 60 received lamivudine prophylaxis). It showed that the rate of various endpoints were significantly lower in the entecavir than the lamivudine group: for HBV-related hepatitis (0% *vs* 13.3%, P = 0.003), HBV reactivation (6.6% *vs* 30%, P = 0.001), and chemotherapy disruption (1.6% *vs* 18.3%, P = 0.002)[111].

A recent retrospective study in 213 patients (entecavir group, 70 patients; lamivudine group, 143 patients) found a lower incidence of HBV reactivation in the entecavir group than the lamivudine group (0% *vs* 7.0%, P = 0.02). No HBV reactivation was noted in the patients with a baseline HBV DNA level < 2000 IU/mL. A baseline HBV DNA level > 2000 IU/mL, HBeAg, and lamivudine were significantly associated with HBV reactivation[40]. Another recent study also showed that, compared with lamivudine, entecavir has more potent antiviral efficacy and may be a better choice for prophylaxis of HBV reactivation in HBsAg-positive allogenic HSCT recipients[112].

There are also recent data suggesting that tenofovir may help to prevent HBV reactivation. During routine

Table 3 Comparison of international guidelines on the management of patients with hepatitis B virus infection receiving chemotherapy

Association guidelines	HBV screening	Screening tests	HBsAg positive patients	HBsAg negative, anti-HBc positive patients	Antiviral drug recommended	Duration of antiviral therapy
EASL 2012[91]	All candidates for chemo- and immunosuppressive therapy	HBsAg, anti-HBc, HBV DNA if serology positive	Prophylactic antiviral therapy, test for HBV-DNA level	Test for HBV DNA; provide prophylactic antiviral therapy if detectable HBV DNA; monitor ALT and HBV DNA levels closely if no detectable HBV DNA	Lamivudine if HBV DNA < 2000 IU/mL and the treatment duration is finite and short, Entecavir or tenofovir if HBV DNA is high, and/or lengthy and repeated cycles of immunosuppression	12 mo after cessation of therapy
APASLD 2012[92]	All patients prior to receiving immunosuppression or chemotherapy	HBsAg, anti-HBc	Prophylactic antiviral therapy	Monitor HBV-DNA	Lamivudine or entecavir or tenofovir	Continue until 6 mo after end of chemotherapy
AGA 2015[49]	High risk of HBV reactivation (> 10%) and moderate risk of HBV reactivation (1%-10%) Routine screening not recommended for low risk of HBV reactivation (< 1%)	HBsAg, anti-HBc , HBV DNA if serology positive	Prophylactic antiviral therapy	Antiviral prophylaxis over monitoring for patients if the chemotherapy is associated with high or moderate risk of HBV reactivation	Drug with high barrier to resistance is favored over lamivudine	6 mo after discontinuation of therapy and at least 12 mo for B-cell depleting agents
AASLD 2009[93], no update in the version in 2016[126]	Anyone at high risk of HBV infection	HBsAg and anti-HBc	Prophylactic antiviral therapy	No recommendation	Lamivudine or telbivudine if the anticipated treatment duration is < 12 mo and baseline HBV DNA is not detectable Tenofovir or entecavir if anticipated treatment duration > 12 mo	Maintain for 6 mo after completion of chemotherapy
ASCO 2015[94]	Risk-adapted HBV screening strategy	HBsAg, anti-HBc , HBV DNA if serology positive	Prophylactic antiviral therapy	Consider Antiviral prophylaxis if the systemic cancer therapy is associated with high risk of HBV reactivation	Entecavir, tenofovir	Minimum of 6 mo after stopping therapy, longer than 12 mo for patients receiving anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies

HBV: Hepatitis B virus; EASL: European Association for the Study of the Liver; APASLD: Asian Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver; AGA: American Gastroenterology Association; AASLD: American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases; ASCO: American Society of Clinical Oncology.

clinical practice, none of the 25 patients who received prophylactic treatment with tenofovir had HBV flares and all achieved undetectable serum HBV DNA during a mean follow-up period of 17.2 mo. One patient even had HBsAg seroconversion[113].

Entecavir will be a better option in the case of significant renal impairment as tenofovir has a small risk of inducing proximal tubular dysfunction and renal insufficiency[114-116]. On the other hand, tenofovir is preferred to entecavir if patients have received lamivudine therapy previously because of a high rate of resistance (genotypic resistance of 51% and virologic breakthrough of 43% within 5 years)[117]. Prophylaxis with telbivudine or adefovir is not recommended because of development of drug resistance and there are limited data from clinical trials using these agents[49].

A recent study showed that concurrent telbivudine treatment with initial chemotherapy can reduce HBV reactivation in HBsAg-positive lymphoma patients, and the efficacy is independent of the baseline HBV viral loads[118]. This study in 60 HBsAg-positive patients showed that the rate of HBV reactivation was 11.7% (7/60), and the median time to HBV reactivation was 228 d (range 113-699 d). The fulminant hepatitis rate was 6.6%. The rates of undetectable HBV DNA and ALT normalization were 61.7% and 83.3%, respectively[118].

Duration of antiviral therapies

There are few data available in the literature to guide physicians on when antiviral therapy can be stopped. For patients receiving B cell-depleting agents, the duration of antiviral therapy should be extended to at least 12 mo after cessation of the B-cell depleting agent, because there is profound suppression of B-cell function[14,19,107]. The duration of nucleoside analog therapy also depends on the patient's baseline serum HBV DNA level and the degree of fibrosis/cirrhosis

present. A previous study showed that high levels of serum HBV DNA (≥ $4\log_{10}$ copies/mL) before chemotherapy was the most important predictor of HBV reactivation after withdrawal of prophylactic antiviral therapy[119].

There is growing evidence that HBsAg-positive patients with lymphoma can develop hepatitis B flares due to HBV reactivation more than 6 mo after cessation of chemotherapy[21,120]. It is reasonable to consider extending the duration of prophylactic antiviral therapy to at least one year after completion of chemotherapy.

Kim *et al*[121] also reported the importance of HBV DNA levels and consolidation period as predictors of HBV reactivation after withdrawal of prophylactic antiviral therapy. Their study enrolled 95 HBsAg-positive patients who were analyzed for sustained off-treatment virological response, defined as HBV DNA levels below 2000 IU/mL for at least 12 mo after the end of therapy. The baseline HBV DNA level was shown to be an independent factor associated with sustained off-treatment virological response. The rate of HBV reactivation was 72.1% and 23.5% for those with HBV DNA < 2000 IU/mL and ≥ 2000 IU/mL, respectively ($P < 0.001$). Consolidation treatment duration showed association with sustained off-treatment virological response only for those with low baseline HBV DNA levels. The sustained off-treatment virological response rates were 54.5%, 71.4%, 73.9%, and 100% for consolidation treatment durations of < 3, 3-6, 6-12, and ≥ 12 mo, respectively, among those with baseline HBV DNA < 2000 IU/mL[121].

Liu *et al*[122] recently analyzed 107 newly diagnosed DLBCL patients with HBV infection who received chemotherapy. The median time from the cessation of antitumor therapy to the withdrawal of prophylactic antiviral therapy was 6.1 mo. Ten of the 46 patients in the HBsAg-positive group (21.7%) experienced delayed HBV reactivation, whereas none in the HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive group exhibited delayed HBV reactivation.

HBV reactivation can occur many years after HSCT, so antiviral prophylaxis is required for a longer duration. The optimal duration of therapy is not well defined in HSCT patients with occult infection. HBV reactivation can occur months or even years (up to 6 years) after transplantation[20, 123].

Management of Hepatitis B virus reactivation

Any adverse change in liver function in a patient undergoing chemotherapy needs to be thoroughly investigated, to distinguish HBV reactivation from other potential causes, including infections by other hepatitis virus (A, C, D, E) or opportunistic infections (*e.g.,* cytomegalovirus, herpes viruses) and hepatotoxic drugs. Once HBV reactivation is detected, patients should receive antiviral therapy with either entecavir or tenofovir[49]. Severe flares can be accompanied by an increase in IgM hepatitis B core antibody, which may be misdiagnosed as acute HBV infection.

Hepatitis B flare-ups are generally rare when patients are receiving anti-HBV prophylaxis with potent antivirals. When patients are receiving lamivudine as a prophylaxis, they may develop resistance and may benefit from rescue therapy such as entecavir or tenofovir. We need to watch out for resistance when using low genetic barrier drug such as lamivudine. A recent study also showed that some patients could recover virologically and biochemically after combination regimens with lamivudine plus adefovir or entecavir plus adefovir, respectively[124].

The goal of treatment is to prevent the development of severe hepatitis, hepatic failure and even mortality. Close monitoring of liver enzymes, bilirubin levels and the clotting profile is essential. Occasionally, patients progress to hepatic failure despite nucleoside therapy[16], especially if they already have jaundice or a marked increase in liver enzymes. Although there have been a few reports of successful liver transplantation in patients who develop liver failure, most of those with hematological malignancy will die because their underlying disease will preclude them from being candidates for liver transplantation[125].

CONCLUSION

Hepatitis due to HBV reactivation is a common and important complication in patients receiving cancer chemotherapy, especially for hematological malignancies. Although potentially fatal, HBV reactivation is preventable through screening with blood tests and administration of prophylactic antiviral therapy for patients with moderate or high risk of HBV reactivation.

We recommend undertaking screening tests for HBsAg, anti-HBc and anti-HBs in all hematology patients about to start anticancer therapy. Risk stratification based on their serologic status and the types of therapies would be the next step. For HBsAg-positive patients, prophylactic antiviral therapy is essential. There are two options for HBsAg-negative/anti-HBc-positive patients. One is pre-emptive therapy guided by serial HBV DNA monitoring, whereby the antiviral drug is as soon as HBV DNA becomes detectable. The other approach is routine prophylactic antiviral therapy. We recommend prophylactic therapy in patients receiving high-risk therapies like anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies or HSCT recipients.

Entecavir or tenofovir are preferred over lamivudine as prophylactic therapy. We recommend continuing preventative antiviral therapy for at least 12 mo after the completion of chemotherapy and even longer for those who receive rituximab or who had high serum HBV DNA levels before the start of chemotherapy. Screening for HBV before the start of chemotherapy is the key to preventing HBV reactivation.

In the era of targeted therapy for hematological

malignancies, further studies are needed to estimate the risk of HBV infection and the optimal prophylactic strategy in patients receiving new targeted therapies. Although there is currently limited evidence to guide the optimal preventive measures, we recommend consideration of antiviral prophylaxis in HBsAg-positive patients to minimize the risk of HBV reactivation, especially with the BTK and PI3K inhibitors, which are B-cell receptor signaling modulators and reduce proliferation of malignant B-cells.

REFERENCES

1 **Lok AS**, Liang RH, Chiu EK, Wong KL, Chan TK, Todd D. Reactivation of hepatitis B virus replication in patients receiving cytotoxic therapy. Report of a prospective study. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **100**: 182-188 [PMID: 1983820]

2 **Byrd JC**, Furman RR, Coutre SE, Flinn IW, Burger JA, Blum KA, Grant B, Sharman JP, Coleman M, Wierda WG, Jones JA, Zhao W, Heerema NA, Johnson AJ, Sukbuntherng J, Chang BY, Clow F, Hedrick E, Buggy JJ, James DF, O'Brien S. Targeting BTK with ibrutinib in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 32-42 [PMID: 23782158 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1215637]

3 **Wang ML**, Rule S, Martin P, Goy A, Auer R, Kahl BS, Jurczak W, Advani RH, Romaguera JE, Williams ME, Barrientos JC, Chmielowska E, Radford J, Stilgenbauer S, Dreyling M, Jedrzejczak WW, Johnson P, Spurgeon SE, Li L, Zhang L, Newberry K, Ou Z, Cheng N, Fang B, McGreivy J, Clow F, Buggy JJ, Chang BY, Beaupre DM, Kunkel LA, Blum KA. Targeting BTK with ibrutinib in relapsed or refractory mantle-cell lymphoma. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 507-516 [PMID: 23782157 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1306220]

4 **Cameron F**, Sanford M. Ibrutinib: first global approval. *Drugs* 2014; **74**: 263-271 [PMID: 24464309 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-014-0178-8]

5 **Burger JA**, Tedeschi A, Barr PM, Robak T, Owen C, Ghia P, Bairey O, Hillmen P, Bartlett NL, Li J, Simpson D, Grosicki S, Devereux S, McCarthy H, Coutre S, Quach H, Gaidano G, Maslyak Z, Stevens DA, Janssens A, Offner F, Mayer J, O'Dwyer M, Hellmann A, Schuh A, Siddiqi T, Polliack A, Tam CS, Suri D, Cheng M, Clow F, Styles L, James DF, Kipps TJ. Ibrutinib as Initial Therapy for Patients with Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 2425-2437 [PMID: 26639149 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1509388]

6 **Treon SP**, Tripsas CK, Meid K, Warren D, Varma G, Green R, Argyropoulos KV, Yang G, Cao Y, Xu L, Patterson CJ, Rodig S, Zehnder JL, Aster JC, Harris NL, Kanan S, Ghobrial I, Castillo JJ, Laubach JP, Hunter ZR, Salman Z, Li J, Cheng M, Clow F, Graef T, Palomba ML, Advani RH. Ibrutinib in previously treated Waldenström's macroglobulinemia. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 1430-1440 [PMID: 25853747 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1501548]

7 **Gopal AK**, Kahl BS, de Vos S, Wagner-Johnston ND, Schuster SJ, Jurczak WJ, Flinn IW, Flowers CR, Martin P, Viardot A, Blum KA, Goy AH, Davies AJ, Zinzani PL, Dreyling M, Johnson D, Miller LL, Holes L, Li D, Dansey RD, Godfrey WR, Salles GA. PI3Kδ inhibition by idelalisib in patients with relapsed indolent lymphoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1008-1018 [PMID: 24450858 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1314583]

8 **Furman RR**, Cheng S, Lu P, Setty M, Perez AR, Guo A, Racchumi J, Xu G, Wu H, Ma J, Steggerda SM, Coleman M, Leslie C, Wang YL. Ibrutinib resistance in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 2352-2354 [PMID: 24869597 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1315226]

9 **Byrd JC**, Brown JR, O'Brien S, Barrientos JC, Kay NE, Reddy NM, Coutre S, Tam CS, Mulligan SP, Jaeger U, Devereux S, Barr PM, Furman RR, Kipps TJ, Cymbalista F, Pocock C, Thornton P, Caligaris-Cappio F, Robak T, Delgado J, Schuster SJ, Montillo M, Schuh A, de Vos S, Gill D, Bloor A, Dearden C, Moreno C, Jones JJ, Chu AD, Fardis M, McGreivy J, Clow F, James DF, Hillmen P. Ibrutinib versus ofatumumab in previously treated chronic lymphoid leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **371**: 213-223 [PMID: 24881631 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1400376]

10 **Dreyling M**, Jurczak W, Jerkeman M, Silva RS, Rusconi C, Trneny M, Offner F, Caballero D, Joao C, Witzens-Harig M, Hess G, Bence-Bruckler I, Cho SG, Bothos J, Goldberg JD, Enny C, Traina S, Balasubramanian S, Bandyopadhyay N, Sun S, Vermeulen J, Rizo A, Rule S. Ibrutinib versus temsirolimus in patients with relapsed or refractory mantle-cell lymphoma: an international, randomised, open-label, phase 3 study. *Lancet* 2016; **387**: 770-778 [PMID: 26673811 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)00667-4]

11 **Chanan-Khan A**, Cramer P, Demirkan F, Fraser G, Silva RS, Grosicki S, Pristupa A, Janssens A, Mayer J, Bartlett NL, Dilhuydy MS, Pylypenko H, Loscertales J, Avigdor A, Rule S, Villa D, Samoilova O, Panagiotidis P, Goy A, Mato A, Pavlovsky MA, Karlsson C, Mahler M, Salman M, Sun S, Phelps C, Balasubramanian S, Howes A, Hallek M. Ibrutinib combined with bendamustine and rituximab compared with placebo, bendamustine, and rituximab for previously treated chronic lymphocytic leukaemia or small lymphocytic lymphoma (HELIOS): a randomised, double-blind, phase 3 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2016; **17**: 200-211 [PMID: 26655421 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(15)00465-9]

12 **Byrd JC**, Harrington B, O'Brien S, Jones JA, Schuh A, Devereux S, Chaves J, Wierda WG, Awan FT, Brown JR, Hillmen P, Stephens DM, Ghia P, Barrientos JC, Pagel JM, Woyach J, Johnson D, Huang J, Wang X, Kaptein A, Lannutti BJ, Covey T, Fardis M, McGreivy J, Hamdy A, Rothbaum W, Izumi R, Diacovo TG, Johnson AJ, Furman RR. Acalabrutinib (ACP-196) in Relapsed Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2016; **374**: 323-332 [PMID: 26641137 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1509981]

13 **Faggioli P**, De Paschale M, Tocci A, Luoni M, Fava S, De Paoli A, Tosi A, Cassi E. Acute hepatic toxicity during cyclic chemotherapy in non Hodgkin's lymphoma. *Haematologica* 1997; **82**: 38-42 [PMID: 9107080]

14 **Di Bisceglie AM**, Lok AS, Martin P, Terrault N, Perrillo RP, Hoofnagle JH. Recent US Food and Drug Administration warnings on hepatitis B reactivation with immune-suppressing and anticancer drugs: just the tip of the iceberg? *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 703-711 [PMID: 25412906 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27609]

15 **Hwang JP**, Lok AS. Management of patients with hepatitis B who require immunosuppressive therapy. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 209-219 [PMID: 24247262 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2013.216]

16 **Hsu C**, Tsou HH, Lin SJ, Wang MC, Yao M, Hwang WL, Kao WY, Chiu CF, Lin SF, Lin J, Chang CS, Tien HF, Liu TW, Chen PJ, Cheng AL. Chemotherapy-induced hepatitis B reactivation in lymphoma patients with resolved HBV infection: a prospective study. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 2092-2100 [PMID: 24002804 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26718]

17 **Hoofnagle JH**. Reactivation of hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: S156-S165 [PMID: 19399803]

18 **Lalazar G**, Rund D, Shouval D. Screening, prevention and treatment of viral hepatitis B reactivation in patients with haematological malignancies. *Br J Haematol* 2007; **136**: 699-712 [PMID: 17338776 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.2006.06465.x]

19 **Evens AM**, Jovanovic BD, Su YC, Raisch DW, Ganger D, Belknap SM, Dai MS, Chiu BC, Fintel B, Cheng Y, Chuang SS, Lee MY, Chen TY, Lin SF, Kuo CY. Rituximab-associated hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation in lymphoproliferative diseases: meta-analysis and examination of FDA safety reports. *Ann Oncol* 2011; **22**: 1170-1180 [PMID: 21115603 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdq583]

20 **Hammond SP**, Borchelt AM, Ukomadu C, Ho VT, Baden LR, Marty FM. Hepatitis B virus reactivation following allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant* 2009; **15**: 1049-1059 [PMID: 19660717 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbmt.2009.05.001]

21 **Law MF**, Lai HK, Chan HN, Ha CY, Ng C, Yeung YM, Yip

SF. The impact of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection on clinical outcomes of patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. *Eur J Cancer Care* (Engl) 2015; **24**: 117-124 [PMID: 25848698 DOI: 10.1111/ecc.12166]

22 **Engels EA**, Cho ER, Jee SH. Hepatitis B virus infection and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma in South Korea: a cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 827-834 [PMID: 20688564 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70167-4]

23 **Lim ST**, Fei G, Quek R, Lim LC, Lee LH, Yap SP, Loong S, Tao M. The relationship of hepatitis B virus infection and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and its impact on clinical characteristics and prognosis. *Eur J Haematol* 2007; **79**: 132-137 [PMID: 17635237 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0609.2007.00878.x]

24 **Park SC**, Jeong SH, Kim J, Han CJ, Kim YC, Choi KS, Cho JH, Lee M, Jung HH, Ki SS, Chang YH, Lee SS, Park YH, Lee KH. High prevalence of hepatitis B virus infection in patients with B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in Korea. *J Med Virol* 2008; **80**: 960-966 [PMID: 18428141 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21168]

25 **Wang F**, Xu RH, Han B, Shi YX, Luo HY, Jiang WQ, Lin TY, Huang HQ, Xia ZJ, Guan ZZ. High incidence of hepatitis B virus infection in B-cell subtype non-Hodgkin lymphoma compared with other cancers. *Cancer* 2007; **109**: 1360-1364 [PMID: 17326056 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.22549]

26 **Deng L**, Song Y, Young KH, Hu S, Ding N, Song W, Li X, Shi Y, Huang H, Liu W, Zheng W, Wang X, Xie Y, Lin N, Tu M, Ping L, Ying Z, Zhang C, Sun Y, Zhu J. Hepatitis B virus-associated diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: unique clinical features, poor outcome, and hepatitis B surface antigen-driven origin. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 25061-25073 [PMID: 26314957 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.4677]

27 **Mya DH**, Han ST, Linn YC, Hwang WY, Goh YT, Tan DC. Risk of hepatitis B reactivation and the role of novel agents and stem-cell transplantation in multiple myeloma patients with hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 421-426 [PMID: 21551005 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdr142]

28 **Huang B**, Li J, Zhou Z, Zheng D, Liu J, Chen M. High prevalence of hepatitis B virus infection in multiple myeloma. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2012; **53**: 270-274 [PMID: 21823833 DOI: 10.3109/10428194.2011.610013]

29 **Lee JY**, Lim SH, Lee MY, Kim H, Sinn DH, Gwak GY, Choi MS, Lee JH, Jung CW, Jang JH, Kim WS, Kim SJ, Kim K. Hepatitis B reactivation in multiple myeloma patients with resolved hepatitis B undergoing chemotherapy. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 2363-2369 [PMID: 25832927 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12838]

30 **Li J**, Huang B, Li Y, Zheng D, Zhou Z, Liu J. Hepatitis B virus reactivation in patients with multiple myeloma receiving bortezomib-containing regimens followed by autologous stem cell transplant. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2015; **56**: 1710-1717 [PMID: 25098429 DOI: 10.3109/10428194.2014.941833]

31 **Feyler S**, Selby PJ, Cook G. Regulating the regulators in cancer-immunosuppression in multiple myeloma (MM). *Blood Rev* 2013; **27**: 155-164 [PMID: 23623928 DOI: 10.1016/j.blre.2013.04.004]

32 **Chen CY**, Huang SY, Cheng A, Chou WC, Yao M, Tang JL, Tsay W, Sheng WH, Tien HF. High Risk of Hepatitis B Reactivation among Patients with Acute Myeloid Leukemia. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0126037 [PMID: 25973905]

33 **Kojima H**, Abei M, Takei N, Mukai Y, Hasegawa Y, Iijima T, Nagasawa T. Fatal reactivation of hepatitis B virus following cytotoxic chemotherapy for acute myelogenous leukemia: fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis. *Eur J Haematol* 2002; **69**: 101-104 [PMID: 12366713 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-0609.2002.02719.x]

34 **Ishiga K**, Kawatani T, Suou T, Tajima F, Omura H, Idobe Y, Kawasaki H. Fulminant hepatitis type B after chemotherapy in a serologically negative hepatitis B virus carrier with acute myelogenous leukemia. *Int J Hematol* 2001; **73**: 115-118 [PMID: 11372746 DOI: 10.1007/BF02981912]

35 **Yujiri T**, Tanaka M, Taguchi A, Tanaka Y, Nakamura Y, Tanizawa Y. Reactivation of hepatitis B virus in a hepatitis B surface antigen-negative patient with acute promyelocytic leukemia treated with arsenic trioxide. *Ann Hematol* 2014; **93**: 351-352 [PMID: 23728611 DOI: 10.1007/s00277-013-1804-3]

36 **Yeo W**, Chan PK, Zhong S, Ho WM, Steinberg JL, Tam JS, Hui P, Leung NW, Zee B, Johnson PJ. Frequency of hepatitis B virus reactivation in cancer patients undergoing cytotoxic chemotherapy: a prospective study of 626 patients with identification of risk factors. *J Med Virol* 2000; **62**: 299-307 [PMID: 11055239 DOI: 10.1002/1096-9071(200011)62:3<299::AID-JMV1>3.0.CO;2-0]

37 **Shouval D**, Shibolet O. Immunosuppression and HBV reactivation. *Semin Liver Dis* 2013; **33**: 167-177 [PMID: 23749673 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1345722]

38 **Yeo W**, Zee B, Zhong S, Chan PK, Wong WL, Ho WM, Lam KC, Johnson PJ. Comprehensive analysis of risk factors associating with Hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation in cancer patients undergoing cytotoxic chemotherapy. *Br J Cancer* 2004; **90**: 1306-1311 [PMID: 15054446 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6601699]

39 **Lau GK**, Leung YH, Fong DY, Au WY, Kwong YL, Lie A, Hou JL, Wen YM, Nanj A, Liang R. High hepatitis B virus (HBV) DNA viral load as the most important risk factor for HBV reactivation in patients positive for HBV surface antigen undergoing autologous hematopoietic cell transplantation. *Blood* 2002; **99**: 2324-2330 [PMID: 11895763 DOI: 10.1182/blood.V99.7.2324]

40 **Chen WC**, Cheng JS, Chiang PH, Tsay FW, Chan HH, Chang HW, Yu HC, Tsai WL, Lai KH, Hsu PI. A Comparison of Entecavir and Lamivudine for the Prophylaxis of Hepatitis B Virus Reactivation in Solid Tumor Patients Undergoing Systemic Cytotoxic Chemotherapy. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0131545 [PMID: 26121480 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0131545]

41 **Matsue K**, Kimura S, Takanashi Y, Iwama K, Fujiwara H, Yamakura M, Takeuchi M. Reactivation of hepatitis B virus after rituximab-containing treatment in patients with CD20-positive B-cell lymphoma. *Cancer* 2010; **116**: 4769-4776 [PMID: 20597091 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.25253]

42 **Kim SJ**, Hsu C, Song YQ, Tay K, Hong XN, Cao J, Kim JS, Eom HS, Lee JH, Zhu J, Chang KM, Reksodiputro AH, Tan D, Goh YT, Lee J, Intragumtornchai T, Chng WJ, Cheng AL, Lim ST, Suh C, Kwong YL, Kim WS. Hepatitis B virus reactivation in B-cell lymphoma patients treated with rituximab: analysis from the Asia Lymphoma Study Group. *Eur J Cancer* 2013; **49**: 3486-3496 [PMID: 23910494 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2013.07.006]

43 **Ferraro D**, Pizzillo P, Di Marco V, Vultaggio A, Iannitto E, Venezia G, Craxì A, Di Stefano R. Evaluating the risk of hepatitis B reactivation in patients with haematological malignancies: is the serum hepatitis B virus profile reliable? *Liver Int* 2009; **29**: 1171-1177 [PMID: 19602139 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2009.02071.x]

44 **Onozawa M**, Hashino S, Izumiyama K, Kahata K, Chuma M, Mori A, Kondo T, Toyoshima N, Ota S, Kobayashi S, Hige S, Toubai T, Tanaka J, Imamura M, Asaka M. Progressive disappearance of anti-hepatitis B surface antigen antibody and reverse seroconversion after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with previous hepatitis B virus infection. *Transplantation* 2005; **79**: 616-619 [PMID: 15753855 DOI: 10.1097/01.TP.0000151661.52601.FB]

45 **Seto WK**, Chan TS, Hwang YY, Wong DK, Fung J, Liu KS, Gill H, Lam YF, Lie AK, Lai CL, Kwong YL, Yuen MF. Hepatitis B reactivation in patients with previous hepatitis B virus exposure undergoing rituximab-containing chemotherapy for lymphoma: a prospective study. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 3736-3743 [PMID: 25287829 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.56.7081]

46 **Kusumoto S**, Tanaka Y, Suzuki R, Watanabe T, Nakata M, Takasaki H, Fukushima N, Fukushima T, Moriuchi Y, Itoh K, Nosaka K, Choi I, Sawa M, Okamoto R, Tsujimura H, Uchida T, Suzuki S, Okamoto M, Takahashi T, Sugiura I, Onishi Y, Kohri M, Yoshida S, Sakai R, Kojima M, Takahashi H, Tomita A, Maruyama D, Atsuta Y, Tanaka E, Suzuki T, Kinoshita T, Ogura M, Mizokami M, Ueda R. Monitoring of Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) DNA and Risk of HBV Reactivation in B-Cell Lymphoma: A Prospective Observational Study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2015;**61**: 719-729 [PMID: 25935551 DOI: 10.1093/cid/civ344]

47 **Cho Y**, Yu SJ, Cho EJ, Lee JH, Kim TM, Heo DS, Kim YJ, Yoon JH. High titers of anti-HBs prevent rituximab-related viral reactivation in resolved hepatitis B patient with non-Hodgkin's

lymphoma. *J Med Virol* 2016; **88**: 1010-1017 [PMID: 26531242 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.24423]
48 **Hanson RG**, Peters MG, Hoofnagle JH. Effects of immunosuppressive therapy with prednisolone on B and T lymphocyte function in patients with chronic type B hepatitis. *Hepatology* 1986; **6**: 173-179 [PMID: 2937707 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840060204]
49 **Perrillo RP**, Gish R, Falck-Ytter YT. American Gastroenterological Association Institute technical review on prevention and treatment of hepatitis B virus reactivation during immunosuppressive drug therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 221-244.e3 [PMID: 25447852 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.10.038]
50 **Ling WH**, Soe PP, Pang AS, Lee SC. Hepatitis B virus reactivation risk varies with different chemotherapy regimens commonly used in solid tumours. *Br J Cancer* 2013; **108**: 1931-1935 [PMID: 23652302 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2013.225]
51 **Lazdina U**, Alheim M, Nyström J, Hultgren C, Borisova G, Sominskaya I, Pumpens P, Peterson DL, Milich DR, Sällberg M. Priming of cytotoxic T cell responses to exogenous hepatitis B virus core antigen is B cell dependent. *J Gen Virol* 2003; **84**: 139-146 [PMID: 12533710 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.18678-0]
52 **Mitka M**. FDA: Increased HBV reactivation risk with ofatumumab or rituximab. *JAMA* 2013; **310**: 1664 [PMID: 24150447 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2013.281115]
53 **Xu X**, Shang Q, Chen X, Nie W, Zou Z, Huang A, Meng M, Jin L, Xu R, Zhang JY, Fu J, Wang L, Tang Z, Xie Y, Yang X, Zhang Z, Wang FS. Reversal of B-cell hyperactivation and functional impairment is associated with HBsAg seroconversion in chronic hepatitis B patients. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2015; **12**: 309-316 [PMID: 25849120 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2015.25]
54 **Kim SJ**, Moon JH, Kim H, Kim JS, Hwang YY, Intragumtornchai T, Issaragrisil S, Kwak JY, Lee JJ, Won JH, Reksodiputro AH, Lim ST, Cheng AL, Kim WS, Kwong YL. Non-bacterial infections in Asian patients treated with alemtuzumab: a retrospective study of the Asian Lymphoma Study Group. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2012; **53**: 1515-1524 [PMID: 22273250 DOI: 10.3109/10428194.2012.659735]
55 **Iannitto E**, Minardi V, Calvaruso G, Mulè A, Ammatuna E, Di Trapani R, Ferraro D, Abbadessa V, Craxí A, Di Stefano R. Hepatitis B virus reactivation and alemtuzumab therapy. *Eur J Haematol* 2005; **74**: 254-258 [PMID: 15693796 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0609.2004.00375.x]
56 **Cortelezzi A**, Viganò M, Zilioli VR, Fantini NN, Pasquini MC, Deliliers GL, Colombo M, Lampertico P. Adefovir added to lamivudine for hepatitis B recurrent infection in refractory B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia on prolonged therapy with Campath-1H. *J Clin Virol* 2006; **35**: 467-469 [PMID: 16316778 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2005.10.009]
57 **Moses SE**, Lim ZY, Sudhanva M, Devereux S, Ho AY, Pagliuca A, Zuckerman M, Mufti GJ. Lamivudine prophylaxis and treatment of hepatitis B Virus-exposed recipients receiving reduced intensity conditioning hematopoietic stem cell transplants with alemtuzumab. *J Med Virol* 2006; **78**: 1560-1563 [PMID: 17063522 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20705]
58 **Kang BW**, Lee SJ, Moon JH, Kim SN, Chae YS, Kim JG, Hwang YJ, Sohn SK. Chronic myeloid leukemia patient manifesting fatal hepatitis B virus reactivation during treatment with imatinib rescued by liver transplantation: case report and literature review. *Int J Hematol* 2009; **90**: 383-387 [PMID: 19641858 DOI: 10.1007/s12185-009-0386-2]
59 **Ando T**, Kojima K, Isoda H, Eguchi Y, Honda T, Ishigami M, Kimura S. Reactivation of resolved infection with the hepatitis B virus immune escape mutant G145R during dasatinib treatment for chronic myeloid leukemia. *Int J Hematol* 2015; **102**: 379-382 [PMID: 25842192 DOI: 10.1007/s12185-015-1788-y]
60 **Wang YD**, Cui GH, Li M, Gowrea B, Xia J, Hu Y. Hepatitis B virus reactivation in a chronic myeloid leukemia patient treated with imatinib mesylate. *Chin Med J* (Engl) 2012; **125**: 2636-2637 [PMID: 22882953]
61 **Thia TJ**, Tan HH, Chuah TH, Chow WC, Lui HF. Imatinib mesylate-related fatal acute hepatic failure in a patient with chronic myeloid leukaemia and chronic hepatitis B infection. *Singapore Med J* 2008; **49**: e86-e89 [PMID: 18362995]
62 **Ikeda K**, Shiga Y, Takahashi A, Kai T, Kimura H, Takeyama K, Noji H, Ogawa K, Nakamura A, Ohira H, Sato Y, Maruyama Y. Fatal hepatitis B virus reactivation in a chronic myeloid leukemia patient during imatinib mesylate treatment. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2006; **47**: 155-157 [PMID: 16321842 DOI: 10.1080/10428230500236818]
63 **Lai GM**, Yan SL, Chang CS, Tsai CY. Hepatitis B reactivation in chronic myeloid leukemia patients receiving tyrosine kinase inhibitor. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 1318-1321 [PMID: 23483799 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i8.1318]
64 **Lakhani S**, Davidson L, Priebat DA, Sherker AH. Reactivation of chronic hepatitis B infection related to imatinib mesylate therapy. *Hepatol Int* 2008; **2**: 498-499 [PMID: 19669326 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-008-9099-5]
65 **Fenaux P**, Mufti GJ, Hellström-Lindberg E, Santini V, Gattermann N, Germing U, Sanz G, List AF, Gore S, Seymour JF, Dombret H, Backstrom J, Zimmerman L, McKenzie D, Beach CL, Silverman LR. Azacitidine prolongs overall survival compared with conventional care regimens in elderly patients with low bone marrow blast count acute myeloid leukemia. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 562-569 [PMID: 20026804 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.23.8329]
66 **Kantarjian HM**, Thomas XG, Dmoszynska A, Wierzbowska A, Mazur G, Mayer J, Gau JP, Chou WC, Buckstein R, Cermak J, Kuo CY, Oriol A, Ravandi F, Faderl S, Delaunay J, Lysák D, Minden M, Arthur C. Multicenter, randomized, open-label, phase III trial of decitabine versus patient choice, with physician advice, of either supportive care or low-dose cytarabine for the treatment of older patients with newly diagnosed acute myeloid leukemia. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 2670-2677 [PMID: 22689805 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.38.9429]
67 **Reddy KR**, Beavers KL, Hammond SP, Lim JK, Falck-Ytter YT; American Gastroenterological Association Institute. American Gastroenterological Association Institute guideline on the prevention and treatment of hepatitis B virus reactivation during immunosuppressive drug therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 215-219; quiz 216-217 [PMID: 25447850 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.10.039]
68 **Ifuku H**, Kusumoto S, Tanaka Y, Totani H, Ishida T, Okada M, Murakami S, Mizokami M, Ueda R, Iida S. Fatal reactivation of hepatitis B virus infection in a patient with adult T-cell leukemia-lymphoma receiving the anti-CC chemokine receptor 4 antibody mogamulizumab. *Hepatol Res* 2015; **45**: 1363-1367 [PMID: 25753008 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.12513]
69 **Nakano N**, Kusumoto S, Tanaka Y, Ishida T, Takeuchi S, Takatsuka Y, Akinaga S, Mizokami M, Ueda R, Utsunomiya A. Reactivation of hepatitis B virus in a patient with adult T-cell leukemia-lymphoma receiving the anti-CC chemokine receptor 4 antibody mogamulizumab. *Hepatol Res* 2014; **44**: 354-357 [PMID: 23601025 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.12117]
70 **Totani H**, Kusumoto S, Ishida T, Masuda A, Yoshida T, Ito A, Ri M, Komatsu H, Murakami S, Mizokami M, Ueda R, Niimi A, Inagaki H, Tanaka Y, Iida S. Reactivation of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection in adult T-cell leukemia-lymphoma patients with resolved HBV infection following systemic chemotherapy. *Int J Hematol* 2015; **101**: 398-404 [PMID: 25633779 DOI: 10.1007/s12185-015-1750-z]
71 **Younes A**, Bartlett NL, Leonard JP, Kennedy DA, Lynch CM, Sievers EL, Forero-Torres A. Brentuximab vedotin (SGN-35) for relapsed CD30-positive lymphomas. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 1812-1821 [PMID: 21047225 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1002965]
72 **Gopal AK**, Chen R, Smith SE, Ansell SM, Rosenblatt JD, Savage KJ, Connors JM, Engert A, Larsen EK, Chi X, Sievers EL, Younes A. Durable remissions in a pivotal phase 2 study of brentuximab vedotin in relapsed or refractory Hodgkin lymphoma. *Blood* 2015; **125**: 1236-1243 [PMID: 25533035 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2014-08-595801]
73 **Moskowitz CH**, Nademanee A, Masszi T, Agura E, Holowiecki J, Abidi MH, Chen AI, Stiff P, Gianni AM, Carella A, Osmanov D,

Bachanova V, Sweetenham J, Sureda A, Huebner D, Sievers EL, Chi A, Larsen EK, Hunder NN, Walewski J. Brentuximab vedotin as consolidation therapy after autologous stem-cell transplantation in patients with Hodgkin's lymphoma at risk of relapse or progression (AETHERA): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 1853-1862 [PMID: 25796459 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)60165-9]

74 **Yang H**, Cao Z, Wang Z, Liu M, Zhou H, Yang Q. [Hepatitis B virus reactivation induced by Brentuximab vedotin in the treatment of Hodgkin lymphoma: a case report and literature review]. *Zhonghua Xue Ye Xue Zazhi* 2014; **35**: 949-950 [PMID: 25339337]

75 **Owen C**, Stewart DA. Obinutuzumab for the treatment of lymphoproliferative disorders. *Expert Opin Biol Ther* 2012; **12**: 343-351 [PMID: 22283718 DOI: 10.1517/14712598.2012.657622]

76 **Goede V**, Fischer K, Busch R, Engelke A, Eichhorst B, Wendtner CM, Chagorova T, de la Serna J, Dilhuydy MS, Illmer T, Opat S, Owen CJ, Samoylova O, Kreuzer KA, Stilgenbauer S, Döhner H, Langerak AW, Ritgen M, Kneba M, Asikanius E, Humphrey K, Wenger M, Hallek M. Obinutuzumab plus chlorambucil in patients with CLL and coexisting conditions. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1101-1110 [PMID: 24401022 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1313984]

77 **de Jésus Ngoma P**, Kabamba B, Dahlqvist G, Sempoux C, Lanthier N, Shindano T, Van Den Neste E, Horsmans Y. Occult HBV reactivation induced by ibrutinib treatment: a case report. *Acta Gastroenterol Belg* 2015; **78**: 424-426 [PMID: 26712054]

78 **Dubovsky JA**, Beckwith KA, Natarajan G, Woyach JA, Jaglowski S, Zhong Y, Hessler JD, Liu TM, Chang BY, Larkin KM, Stefanovski MR, Chappell DL, Frissora FW, Smith LL, Smucker KA, Flynn JM, Jones JA, Andritsos LA, Maddocks K, Lehman AM, Furman R, Sharman J, Mishra A, Caligiuri MA, Satoskar AR, Buggy JJ, Muthusamy N, Johnson AJ, Byrd JC. Ibrutinib is an irreversible molecular inhibitor of ITK driving a Th1-selective pressure in T lymphocytes. *Blood* 2013; **122**: 2539-2549 [PMID: 23886836 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2013-06-507947]

79 **Verstovsek S**, Mesa RA, Gotlib J, Levy RS, Gupta V, DiPersio JF, Catalano JV, Deininger M, Miller C, Silver RT, Talpaz M, Winton EF, Harvey JH, Arcasoy MO, Hexner E, Lyons RM, Paquette R, Raza A, Vaddi K, Erickson-Viitanen S, Koumenis IL, Sun W, Sandor V, Kantarjian HM. A double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of ruxolitinib for myelofibrosis. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 799-807 [PMID: 22375971 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1110557]

80 **Harrison C**, Kiladjian JJ, Al-Ali HK, Gisslinger H, Waltzman R, Stalbovskaya V, McQuitty M, Hunter DS, Levy R, Knoops L, Cervantes F, Vannucchi AM, Barbui T, Barosi G. JAK inhibition with ruxolitinib versus best available therapy for myelofibrosis. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 787-798 [PMID: 22375970 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1110556]

81 **Shen CH**, Hwang CE, Chen YY, Chen CC. Hepatitis B virus reactivation associated with ruxolitinib. *Ann Hematol* 2014; **93**: 1075-1076 [PMID: 24173089 DOI: 10.1007/s00277-013-1936-5]

82 **Caocci G**, Murgia F, Podda L, Solinas A, Atzeni S, La Nasa G. Reactivation of hepatitis B virus infection following ruxolitinib treatment in a patient with myelofibrosis. *Leukemia* 2014; **28**: 225-227 [PMID: 23929216 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2013.235]

83 **Richardson PG**, Sonneveld P, Schuster MW, Irwin D, Stadtmauer EA, Facon T, Harousseau JL, Ben-Yehuda D, Lonial S, Goldschmidt H, Reece D, San-Miguel JF, Bladé J, Boccadoro M, Cavenagh J, Dalton WS, Boral AL, Esseltine DL, Porter JB, Schenkein D, Anderson KC. Bortezomib or high-dose dexamethasone for relapsed multiple myeloma. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **352**: 2487-2498 [PMID: 15958804]

84 **San Miguel JF**, Schlag R, Khuageva NK, Dimopoulos MA, Shpilberg O, Kropff M, Spicka I, Petrucci MT, Palumbo A, Samoilova OS, Dmoszynska A, Abdulkadyrov KM, Schots R, Jiang B, Mateos MV, Anderson KC, Esseltine DL, Liu K, Cakana A, van de Velde H, Richardson PG. Bortezomib plus melphalan and prednisone for initial treatment of multiple myeloma. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 906-917 [PMID: 18753647 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0801479]

85 **Cavo M**, Tacchetti P, Patriarca F, Petrucci MT, Pantani L, Galli M, Di Raimondo F, Crippa C, Zamagni E, Palumbo A, Offidani M, Corradini P, Narni F, Spadano A, Pescosta N, Deliliers GL, Ledda A, Cellini C, Caravita T, Tosi P, Baccarani M. Bortezomib with thalidomide plus dexamethasone compared with thalidomide plus dexamethasone as induction therapy before, and consolidation therapy after, double autologous stem-cell transplantation in newly diagnosed multiple myeloma: a randomised phase 3 study. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 2075-2085 [PMID: 21146205 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61424-9]

86 **Basler M**, Lauer C, Beck U, Groettrup M. The proteasome inhibitor bortezomib enhances the susceptibility to viral infection. *J Immunol* 2009; **183**: 6145-6150 [PMID: 19841190 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0901596]

87 **Vogelbacher R**, Meister S, Gückel E, Starke C, Wittmann S, Stief A, Voll R, Daniel C, Hugo C. Bortezomib and sirolimus inhibit the chronic active antibody-mediated rejection in experimental renal transplantation in the rat. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2010; **25**: 3764-3773 [PMID: 20466656]

88 **Yoshida T**, Kusumoto S, Inagaki A, Mori F, Ito A, Ri M, Ishida T, Komatsu H, Iida S, Sugauchi F, Tanaka Y, Mizokami M, Ueda R. Reactivation of hepatitis B virus in HBsAg-negative patients with multiple myeloma: two case reports. *Int J Hematol* 2010; **91**: 844-849 [PMID: 20473594 DOI: 10.1007/s12185-010-0592-y]

89 **Lonial S**, Dimopoulos M, Palumbo A, White D, Grosicki S, Spicka I, Walter-Croneck A, Moreau P, Mateos MV, Magen H, Belch A, Reece D, Beksac M, Spencer A, Oakervee H, Orlowski RZ, Taniwaki M, Röllig C, Einsele H, Wu KL, Singhal A, San-Miguel J, Matsumoto M, Katz J, Bleickardt E, Poulart V, Anderson KC, Richardson P. Elotuzumab Therapy for Relapsed or Refractory Multiple Myeloma. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 621-631 [PMID: 26035255 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1505654]

90 **Danhof S**, Schreder M, Strifler S, Einsele H, Knop S. Long-term disease control by pomalidomide-/dexamethasone-based therapy in a patient with advanced multiple myeloma: a case report and review of the literature. *Case Rep Oncol* 2015; **8**: 189-195 [PMID: 25969681 DOI: 10.1159/000381983]

91 **European Association For The Study Of The Liver**. EASL clinical practice guidelines: Management of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 167-185 [PMID: 22436845]

92 **Liaw YF**, Kao JH, Piratvisuth T, Chan HL, Chien RN, Liu CJ, Gane E, Locarnini S, Lim SG, Han KH, Amarapurkar D, Cooksley G, Jafri W, Mohamed R, Hou JL, Chuang WL, Lesmana LA, Sollano JD, Suh DJ, Omata M. Asian-Pacific consensus statement on the management of chronic hepatitis B: a 2012 update. *Hepatol Int* 2012; **6**: 531-561 [PMID: 26201469 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-012-9365-4]

93 **Lok AS**, McMahon BJ. Chronic hepatitis B: update 2009. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 661-662 [PMID: 19714720 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23190]

94 **Hwang JP**, Somerfield MR, Alston-Johnson DE, Cryer DR, Feld JJ, Kramer BS, Sabichi AL, Wong SL, Artz AS. Hepatitis B Virus Screening for Patients With Cancer Before Therapy: American Society of Clinical Oncology Provisional Clinical Opinion Update. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 2212-2220 [PMID: 25964247 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2015.61.3745]

95 **Loomba R**, Rowley A, Wesley R, Liang TJ, Hoofnagle JH, Pucino F, Csako G. Systematic review: the effect of preventive lamivudine on hepatitis B reactivation during chemotherapy. *Ann Intern Med* 2008; **148**: 519-528 [PMID: 18378948 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-148-7-200804010-00008]

96 **Martyak LA**, Taqavi E, Saab S. Lamivudine prophylaxis is effective in reducing hepatitis B reactivation and reactivation-related mortality in chemotherapy patients: a meta-analysis. *Liver Int* 2008; **28**: 28-38 [PMID: 17976155 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2007.01618.x]

97 **Lau GK**, Yiu HH, Fong DY, Cheng HC, Au WY, Lai LS, Cheung M, Zhang HY, Lie A, Ngan R, Liang R. Early is superior to deferred preemptive lamivudine therapy for hepatitis B patients undergoing chemotherapy. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1742-1749 [PMID: 14724827 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.09.026]

98 **Hsu C**, Hsiung CA, Su IJ, Hwang WS, Wang MC, Lin SF, Lin TH, Hsiao HH, Young JH, Chang MC, Liao YM, Li CC, Wu HB, Tien HF, Chao TY, Liu TW, Cheng AL, Chen PJ. A revisit of prophylactic lamivudine for chemotherapy-associated hepatitis B reactivation in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: a randomized trial. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 844-853 [PMID: 18302293 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22106]

99 **Yeo W**, Chan TC, Leung NW, Lam WY, Mo FK, Chu MT, Chan HL, Hui EP, Lei KI, Mok TS, Chan PK. Hepatitis B virus reactivation in lymphoma patients with prior resolved hepatitis B undergoing anticancer therapy with or without rituximab. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 605-611 [PMID: 19075267 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.18.0182]

100 **Mozessohn L**, Chan KK, Feld JJ, Hicks LK. Hepatitis B reactivation in HBsAg-negative/HBcAb-positive patients receiving rituximab for lymphoma: a meta-analysis. *J Viral Hepat* 2015; **22**: 842-849 [PMID: 25765930 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12402]

101 **Yamagata M**, Murohisa T, Tsuchida K, Okamoto Y, Tsunoda S, Nakamura M, Kusano K, Majima Y, Kuniyoshi T, Iijima M, Sugaya H, Hiraishi H. Fulminant B hepatitis in a surface antigen and hepatitis B DNA-negative patient with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma after CHOP chemotherapy plus rituximab. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2007; **48**: 431-433 [PMID: 17325912 DOI: 10.1080/10428190601059704]

102 **Perceau G**, Diris N, Estines O, Derancourt C, Lévy S, Bernard P. Late lethal hepatitis B virus reactivation after rituximab treatment of low-grade cutaneous B-cell lymphoma. *Br J Dermatol* 2006; **155**: 1053-1056 [PMID: 17034541 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2006.07451.x]

103 **Hui CK**, Cheung WW, Zhang HY, Au WY, Yueng YH, Leung AY, Leung N, Luk JM, Lie AK, Kwong YL, Liang R, Lau GK. Kinetics and risk of de novo hepatitis B infection in HBsAg-negative patients undergoing cytotoxic chemotherapy. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **131**: 59-68 [PMID: 16831590 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.04.015]

104 **Ji D**, Cao J, Hong X, Li J, Wang J, Chen F, Wang C, Zou S. Low incidence of hepatitis B virus reactivation during chemotherapy among diffuse large B-cell lymphoma patients who are HBsAg-negative/ HBcAb-positive: a multicenter retrospective study. *Eur J Haematol* 2010; **85**: 243-250 [PMID: 20491883 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0609.2010.01474.x]

105 **Koo YX**, Tay M, Teh YE, Teng D, Tan DS, Tan IB, Tai DW, Quek R, Tao M, Lim ST. Risk of hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation in hepatitis B surface antigen negative/hepatitis B core antibody positive patients receiving rituximab-containing combination chemotherapy without routine antiviral prophylaxis. *Ann Hematol* 2011; **90**: 1219-1223 [PMID: 21520001 DOI: 10.1007/s00277-011-1241-0]

106 **Fukushima N**, Mizuta T, Tanaka M, Yokoo M, Ide M, Hisatomi T, Kuwahara N, Tomimasu R, Tsuneyoshi N, Funai N, Sueoka E. Retrospective and prospective studies of hepatitis B virus reactivation in malignant lymphoma with occult HBV carrier. *Ann Oncol* 2009; **20**: 2013-2017 [PMID: 19561036 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdp230]

107 **Huang YH**, Hsiao LT, Hong YC, Chiou TJ, Yu YB, Gau JP, Liu CY, Yang MH, Tzeng CH, Lee PC, Lin HC, Lee SD. Randomized controlled trial of entecavir prophylaxis for rituximab-associated hepatitis B virus reactivation in patients with lymphoma and resolved hepatitis B. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 2765-2772 [PMID: 23775967 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.48.5938]

108 **Yoo JJ**, Cho EJ, Cho YY, Lee M, Lee DH, Cho Y, Lee JH, Yu SJ, Yoon SS, Yoon JH, Kim YJ. Efficacy of antiviral prophylaxis in HBsAg-negative, anti-HBc positive patients undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 2530-2536 [PMID: 26053357 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12882]

109 **Awerkiew S**, Däumer M, Reiser M, Wend UC, Pfister H, Kaiser R, Willems WR, Gerlich WH. Reactivation of an occult hepatitis B virus escape mutant in an anti-HBs positive, anti-HBc negative lymphoma patient. *J Clin Virol* 2007; **38**: 83-86 [PMID: 17134939 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2006.10.006]

110 **Ferreira R**, Carvalheiro J, Torres J, Fernandes A, Giestas S, Mendes S, Agostinho C, Campos MJ. Fatal hepatitis B reactivation treated with entecavir in an isolated anti-HBs positive lymphoma patient: a case report and literature review. *Saudi J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 277-281 [PMID: 22824772 DOI: 10.4103/1319-3767.98436]

111 **Huang H**, Li X, Zhu J, Ye S, Zhang H, Wang W, Wu X, Peng J, Xu B, Lin Y, Cao Y, Li H, Lin S, Liu Q, Lin T. Entecavir vs lamivudine for prevention of hepatitis B virus reactivation among patients with untreated diffuse large B-cell lymphoma receiving R-CHOP chemotherapy: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2014; **312**: 2521-2530 [PMID: 25514302 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2014.15704]

112 **Shang J**, Wang H, Sun J, Fan Z, Huang F, Zhang Y, Jiang Q, Dai M, Xu N, Lin R, Liu Q. A comparison of lamivudine vs entecavir for prophylaxis of hepatitis B virus reactivation in allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation recipients: a single-institutional experience. *Bone Marrow Transplant* 2016; **51**: 581-586 [PMID: 26752138 DOI: 10.1038/bmt.2015.328]

113 **Koskinas JS**, Deutsch M, Adamidi S, Skondra M, Tampaki M, Alexopoulou A, Manolakopoulos S, Pectasides D. The role of tenofovir in preventing and treating hepatitis B virus (HBV) reactivation in immunosuppressed patients. A real life experience from a tertiary center. *Eur J Intern Med* 2014; **25**: 768-771 [PMID: 25037900]

114 **Gara N**, Zhao X, Collins MT, Chong WH, Kleiner DE, Jake Liang T, Ghany MG, Hoofnagle JH. Renal tubular dysfunction during long-term adefovir or tenofovir therapy in chronic hepatitis B. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 1317-1325 [PMID: 22506503 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2012.05093.x]

115 **Pipili C**, Cholongitas E, Papatheodoridis G. Review article: nucleos(t)ide analogues in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection and chronic kidney disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 35-46 [PMID: 24299322 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12538]

116 **Marcellin P**, Gane E, Buti M, Afdhal N, Sievert W, Jacobson IM, Washington MK, Germanidis G, Flaherty JF, Aguilar Schall R, Bornstein JD, Kitrinos KM, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Heathcote EJ. Regression of cirrhosis during treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B: a 5-year open-label follow-up study. *Lancet* 2013; **381**: 468-475 [PMID: 23234725 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61425-1]

117 **Tenney DJ**, Rose RE, Baldick CJ, Pokornowski KA, Eggers BJ, Fang J, Wichroski MJ, Xu D, Yang J, Wilber RB, Colonno RJ. Long-term monitoring shows hepatitis B virus resistance to entecavir in nucleoside-naïve patients is rare through 5 years of therapy. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1503-1514 [PMID: 19280622 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22841]

118 **Li W**, Huang L, Guo H, Wei X, Liang Z. Antiviral efficacy analysis of telbivudine concurrent with the first cycle of chemotherapy in HBsAg-positive lymphoma patients. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **61**: 199-203 [PMID: 25128391 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.07.005]

119 **Hui CK**, Cheung WW, Au WY, Lie AK, Zhang HY, Yueng YH, Wong BC, Leung N, Kwong YL, Liang R, Lau GK. Hepatitis B reactivation after withdrawal of pre-emptive lamivudine in patients with haematological malignancy on completion of cytotoxic chemotherapy. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1597-1603 [PMID: 16000641 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.070763]

120 **Dai MS**, Chao TY, Kao WY, Shyu RY, Liu TM. Delayed hepatitis B virus reactivation after cessation of preemptive lamivudine in lymphoma patients treated with rituximab plus CHOP. *Ann Hematol* 2004; **83**: 769-774 [PMID: 15338194 DOI: 10.1007/s00277-004-0899-y]

121 **Kim HJ**, Sinn DH, Kim NJ, Kim JH, Kim E, Gwak GY, Paik YH, Choi MS, Lee JH, Koh KC, Paik SW, Yoo BC. Stopping Preemptive Antiviral Therapy for Hepatitis B Virus Can Be Considered for Patients with Favorable Predictors. *Dig Dis Sci* 2015; **60**: 3794-3800 [PMID: 26215285 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-015-3812-8]

122 **Liu WP**, Wang XP, Zheng W, Ping LY, Zhang C, Wang GQ, Song YQ, Zhu J. Hepatitis B virus reactivation after withdrawal of prophylactic antiviral therapy in patients with diffuse large B cell lymphoma. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2016; **57**: 1355-1362 [PMID: 26727044 DOI: 10.3109/10428194.2015.1116121]

123 **Mikulska M**, Nicolini L, Signori A, Rivoli G, Del Bono V, Raiola

AM, Di Grazia C, Dominietto A, Varaldo R, Ghiso A, Bacigalupo A, Viscoli C. Hepatitis B reactivation in HBsAg-negative/HBcAb-positive allogeneic haematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients: risk factors and outcome. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: O694-O701 [PMID: 24575948 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12611]

124 **An J**, Shim JH, Kim SO, Choi J, Kim SW, Lee D, Kim KM, Lim YS, Lee HC, Chung YH, Lee YS, Suh DJ. Comprehensive outcomes of on- and off-antiviral prophylaxis in hepatitis B patients undergoing cancer chemotherapy: A competing risks analysis. *J Med Virol* 2016; **88**: 1576-1586 [PMID: 26945543 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.24512]

125 **Noterdaeme T**, Longrée L, Bataille C, Deroover A, Lamproye A, Delwaide J, Beguin Y, Honoré P, Detry O. Liver transplantation for acute hepatic failure due to chemotherapy-induced HBV reactivation in lymphoma patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 3069-3072 [PMID: 21799656 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i25.3069]

126 **Terrault NA**, Bzowej NH, Chang KM, Hwang JP, Jonas MM, Murad MH. AASLD guidelines for treatment of chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 261-283 [PMID: 26566064 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28156]

P- Reviewer: Matsui T, Sinn DH **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6501

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6501-6508
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

Polyethylene glycols: An effective strategy for limiting liver ischemia reperfusion injury

Gianfranco Pasut, Arnau Panisello, Emma Folch-Puy, Alexandre Lopez, Carlos Castro-Benítez, Maria Calvo, Teresa Carbonell, Agustín García-Gil, René Adam, Joan Roselló-Catafau

Gianfranco Pasut, Department of Pharmaceutical and Pharmacological, University of Padova and Veneto Institute of Oncology, IRCCS, 35128 Padova, Italy

Arnau Panisello, Emma Folch-Puy, Joan Roselló-Catafau, Experimental Pathology Department, Institute of Biomedical Research of Barcelona, 08036 Barcelona, Spain

Alexandre Lopez, Carlos Castro-Benítez, René Adam, Centre Hépatobiliaire, AP-HP Hôpital Paul Brousse, Inserm U935, Université Paris-Sud, Villejuif, 75008 Paris, France

Maria Calvo, Unitat de Microscòpia Òptic Avançada, CCiTUB, Centre Científics i Tecnològics, Faculty of Medicine, University of Barcelona, 08036 Barcelona, Spain

Teresa Carbonell, Physiology Department, Faculty of Biology, Universitat de Barcelona, 08036 Barcelona, Spain

Agustín García-Gil, Hospital Clinico de Zaragoza, 50009 Zaragoza, Spain

Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to the writing of the manuscript and approved the final version.

Supported by Fondo de Investigaciones Sanitarias, Ministerio de Economía y Competitividad (Madrid, Spain), No. PI15/00110.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interests to declare.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Joan Roselló-Catafau, PhD, Experimental Pathology Department, Institute of Biomedical Research of Barcelona, Rosselló 161, 08036-Barcelona, Catalonia, Spain. jrcbam@iibb.csic.es
Telephone: +34-93-3638333
Fax: +34-93-3638301

Received: March 9, 2016
Peer-review started: March 10, 2016
First decision: April 14, 2016
Revised: May 4, 2016
Accepted: June 2, 2016
Article in press: June 2, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Liver ischemia-reperfusion injury (IRI) is an inherent feature of liver surgery and liver transplantation in which damage to a hypoxic organ (ischemia) is exacerbated following the return of oxygen delivery (reperfusion). IRI is a major cause of primary non-function after transplantation and may lead to graft rejection, regardless of immunological considerations. The immediate response involves the disruption of cellular mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation and the accumulation of metabolic intermediates during the ischemic period, and oxidative stress during blood flow restoration. Moreover, a complex cascade of inflammatory mediators is generated during reperfusion, contributing to the extension of the damage and finally to organ failure. A variety of pharmacological interventions (antioxidants, anti-cytokines, *etc.*) have been proposed to alleviate graft injury but their usefulness is limited by the local and specific action of the drugs and by their potential undesirable toxic effects. Polyethylene glycols (PEGs), which are non-toxic water-soluble compounds approved by the FDA, have been widely used as a vehicle or a base in food, cosmetics and pharmaceuticals, and also

as adjuvants for ameliorating drug pharmacokinetics. Some PEGs are also currently used as additives in organ preservation solutions prior to transplantation in order to limit the damage associated with cold ischemia reperfusion. More recently, the administration of PEGs of different molecular weights by intravenous injection has emerged as a new therapeutic tool to protect liver grafts from IRI. In this review, we summarize the current knowledge concerning the use of PEGs as a useful target for limiting liver IRI.

Key words: Ischemia reperfusion injury; Polyethylene glycol; Liver preconditioning; Liver transplantation; UW solution; IGL-1 solution; SCOT solution; PEG rinse solution; Machine perfusion

Core tip: Pharmacological treatments for preventing liver ischemia reperfusion injury are limited, due to the complex pathophysiology of this condition. The drugs currently used for preventing ischemia-reperfusion injury (IRI) all have local and specific activity with potentially damaging side effects. This review focuses on the current understanding of polyethylene glycols, which are non-toxic polymers, as new emerging agents for limiting liver IRI, and proposes directions for future investigations.

Pasut G, Panisello A, Folch-Puy E, Lopez A, Castro-Benítez C, Calvo M, Carbonell T, García-Gil A, Adam R, Roselló-Catafau J. Polyethylene glycols: An effective strategy for limiting liver ischemia reperfusion injury. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6501-6508 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6501.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6501

INTRODUCTION

It is well known that the interruption of blood to an organ (ischemia) and its subsequent restoration (reperfusion) leads to irreversible damage which is termed ischemia reperfusion injury (IRI). IRI is inherent to liver surgical procedures such as hepatic resection and liver transplantation[1-3]. During liver resections, the damage is commonly a consequence of the vascular occlusion of the liver hilum (Pringle' s maneuver) under normothermic conditions[1]. In the case of transplantation, the damage is sustained during cold storage of the liver graft (at 4 ℃) in preservation solution following explantation from the donor, and during subsequent warm reperfusion and implantation into the recipient[4].

There are several steps between organ recovery and transplantation that can exacerbate the damage to the graft. The most important are organ procurement (pre-preservation), conservation in preservation solution (cold storage), and rewarming (graft washout) before transplant (reperfusion). The cumulative injuries due to each step are determinant for the successful graft outcome after transplantation but the most significant lesions occur during cold ischemia, graft rewarming and normothemic reperfusion after transplantation.

At the cellular level, prolonged ischemia leads to ATP breakdown and provokes the accumulation of hypoxanthine, mitochondrial de-energization and ionic alterations which finally lead to liver cell necrosis. Upon oxygenation during reperfusion, reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation by uncoupled mitochondria promotes oxidative stress and a complex cascade of inflammatory mediators (nitric oxide, cytokines, adhesion molecules, chemokines, *etc.*) which all contribute to the spread of the damage and finally to cell death[4].

Because of the range of mechanisms involved in hepatic IRI, the choice of preventive or therapeutic strategies is very difficult[5]. Pharmacological strategies for preventing IRI focus on the use of specific agents, but the benefits of these drugs are limited because of their local actions, side effects and potential toxicity. In this situation, there is a clear need to test the use of non-toxic, water-soluble and protective agents for tissues such as PEGs as "preconditioning agents" for preventing IRI and also as potential targets for therapeutic interventions in organ transplantation.

This review is an update of the most significant advances in the use of polyethylene glycols (PEGs) as therapeutic tools for protecting the liver against IRI, placing specific emphasis on future perspectives in liver graft preservation and transplantation.

PEGS: CHEMICAL STRUCTURE AND MEDICAL USE

PEGs are non-immunogenic, non-toxic and water-soluble polymers which show no electric charge and no affinity for any specific organ. They are composed of repeating units of ethylene glycol which form polymers with a linear shape of different molecular weight[6-9]. PEGs with different shapes can be obtained by using different initiator molecules during the polymerization reaction (*e.g.,* hexa-glycerin instead of methanol to form a tri PEG) or by joining different linear PEGs to create different structures, as shown in Figure 1.

PEGs are negligibly metabolized *in vivo* and are mainly unaltered when eliminated from the body either by the kidneys (for PEGs < 30 kDa, slowly for 30 kDa < PEGs < 40 kDa) or in the faeces (for PEGs > 20 kDa)[10]. PEGs are generally considered to have low toxicity *via* all routes of administration, as demonstrated by tests in many animals[11]. Due to their high flexibility, hydrophilicity, and the large number of water molecules coordinated by their chains, PEGs present a greater hydrodynamic volume than would be expected from their molecular weight, and they show

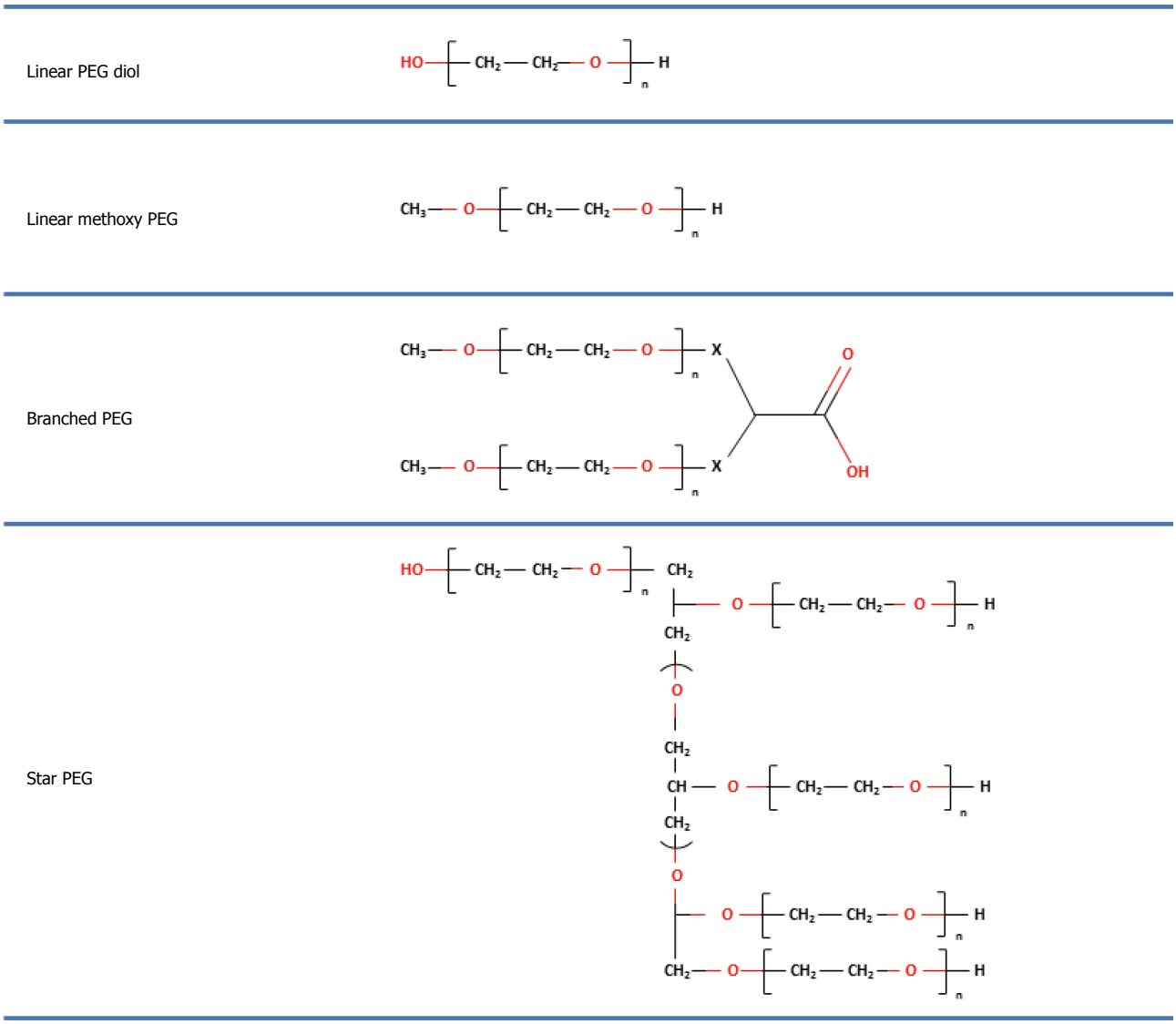


Figure 1 Schematic composition of linear, branched and star polyethylene glycols. Polyethylene glycols (PEGs) are synthesized by a process of linking repeating units of ethylene glycol. The reaction gives products with one or two end chain hydroxyl groups termed methoxy-PEG or diol-PEG, respectively. Then, the linear PEG with branches at irregular intervals along the polymer chain forms branched PEGs. Star-shaped PEGs are the simplest class of branched PEGs with a general structure consisting of several (more than three) linear chains connected to a central core.

high protein-rejecting properties[12].

PEGs have an apparent molecular weight which, depending on the molecular weight of the polymer, can be 5-10 times higher than a corresponding soluble protein of similar molecular mass, as shown by gel permeation chromatography[13]. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved the use of PEGs as a vehicle or a base in food, cosmetics and pharmaceuticals, including injectable and bowel solutions[14,15]. For example, low molecular weight PEGs are widely used as the basis of a number of laxatives and soft capsules, and high molecular weight PEGs have been used as components in organ preservation solutions to attenuate injury from cold perfusion in animal organs such as pancreas[16], small bowel[17], kidney[18] and liver[19]. In addition, the attachment of PEG (PEGylation) to drugs, peptides, proteins, nanoparticles, micelles, and liposomes is spreading as a technology for enhancing the bioavailability, stability, safety, and efficacy of a wide range of therapeutic agents[20,21]. Examples include PEGylated interferon alpha, which is used to treat hepatitis C[22], or PEGylated antihuman TNF-alpha for rheumatoid arthritis[23].

PEG STRATEGIES TO PREVENT ISCHEMIA-REPERFUSION INJURY: AN APPROACH TO THE LIVER

The use of PEGs to minimize the deleterious effects of IRI has not been studied in depth. However, PEGs have been shown to be effective in cell protection against hypoxia/oxygenation, as additives in preservation and perfusion solutions for organ transplantation and, more

recently, as "preconditioning agents" for preventing IRI in heart and liver. As a result, PEGs may offer new therapeutic strategies for applications in clinical liver surgery and transplantation, as indicated below.

PEG and cryopreservation ("supercooling")

Current technologies can preserve livers outside the body for about 12 h using a combination of cold temperatures and a preservation solution. This has helped increase the number of successful liver transplants, but extending the time a liver can survive outside the body even further would provide many extra benefits.

The presence of PEGs has been shown to be determinant for hepatocyte preservation in hypothermic conditions[24-26]. The addition of PEG8 to the preservation solution suppressed cell swelling in cultured hepatocytes, keeping them relatively well-preserved and restoring membrane integrity[24-26]. This is consistent with the further development of a slow-cooling method that first chills rat livers at 4 ℃ and then drops the temperature to below freezing (named "supercooling"), allowing them to be stored in a "supercooled" but non-frozen state[27]. In this connection, a recent study by Berendsen *et al*[28] presented a method for extended liver storage combining supercooling and machine perfusion. An essential step in this method was the addition of PEG35 to the preservation solution. Similar results were found by the same researchers with "supercooled" hepatocytes: this addition of 5% PEG35 to the storage solution prevented cold-induced lipid peroxidation and maintained hepatocyte viability and functionality during supercooling[25-27].

PEGs in organ preservation solutions

The cold static preservation of solid organs using preservation solutions is the gold standard in clinical organ transplantation today. PEG35 and PEG20 have been used as oncotic agents in IGL-1 and SCOT 20 preservation solutions respectively to prevent cell swelling[29-32]. The presence of PEG35 in IGL-1 makes this solution a good alternative to UW solution (the standard goal for liver transplantation), especially in the presence of moderate to severe hepatic steatosis[33,34]. PEG20 is the basic component of the SCOT solution, which furthermore contains low K+/high Na+ concentrations. PEG20 at 15 g/L has been found to reduce alloantigen recognition after liver reperfusion in comparison to UW solution[35]. However, the use of this PEG20 in preservation solutions has not shown a greater benefit than PEG35[35].

PEG35 (at 1 g/L) plays a key role in reducing the higher vulnerability of fatty livers to IRI[33]. This is mainly due to the production of nitric oxide (NO), whose vasodilatory properties contribute to counteracting the exacerbated alterations of microcirculation in steatotic livers due to the accumulation of fat in the sinusoids, which makes it more difficult to obtain an adequate hepatic revascularization after transplantation. Moreover, the NO generated may act as a suitable scavenger for preventing the impairment of lipid peroxidation in fatty livers against reperfusion[36].

It has also been demonstrated that PEG interferes with the coagulation system and reduces platelet adhesion *in vitro* and *in vivo*[37,38] by forming a molecular barrier on the glycocalyx. This PEG barrier prevents acute platelet deposition on damaged arteries. When a relatively low molecular weight PEG (< 10 kDa) was conjugated to pericardium, it reduced the deposits of calcium and decreased platelet and leukocyte surface attachment[39,40]. Therefore, the conjugation of PEG to the surface of endothelial cells seemed to reduce inflammation and control water content. Longer PEG chains, such as that of PEG35, might be expected to interact with the surface of endothelial cells of blood vessels and/or remain in the interstitial fluid of transplanted liver, thus promoting the above mentioned beneficial effects even after the washout of the organ graft.

The presence of PEG35 in IGL-1 solution also promotes the activation of several protective cell signaling pathways during liver cold storage, as a self-response of the organ to oxygen deprivation. This leads to the induction of cytoprotective factors such as adenosine monophosphate protein kinase (AMPK), an enzyme which is involved in the glucose metabolism breakdown and modulates the energy balance towards an energy preserving state. PEG35 also activates other protective factors associated with the deprivation of oxygen supply to the organ such as the hypoxia inducible factor HIF alpha[41].

PEG in perfusion solutions (graft washout and machine perfusion)

Rinse solutions help to wash the liver graft preserved in organ preservation solutions by avoiding air emboli and the secondary effects of the remnants of preservation solution, such as the excessively high concentration of intravascular potassium and metabolic waste during cold storage[42,43]. Although there is no consensus among physicians on how the graft flushes should be carried out, the most widely used solutions are Ringer Lactate and 5% human albumin[42].

PEG35 is a suitable additive in rinse solution for an efficient liver graft washout, and also ensures additional protection against reperfusion injury[44]. Protective mechanisms induced by PEG35 against liver reperfusion injury mainly involve the preservation of liver mitochondrial status[44], as shown in Figure 2.

Rhodamine 123 cell viability marker (in green) shows the preserved membrane potential of liver mitochondria in liver grafts preserved in UW and then rinsed with PEG35 solution when compared to livers rinsed with Ringer lactate. In this case, Evans Blue labeling (in red) shows the albumin content and the disrupted mitochondrial membranes. Thus,

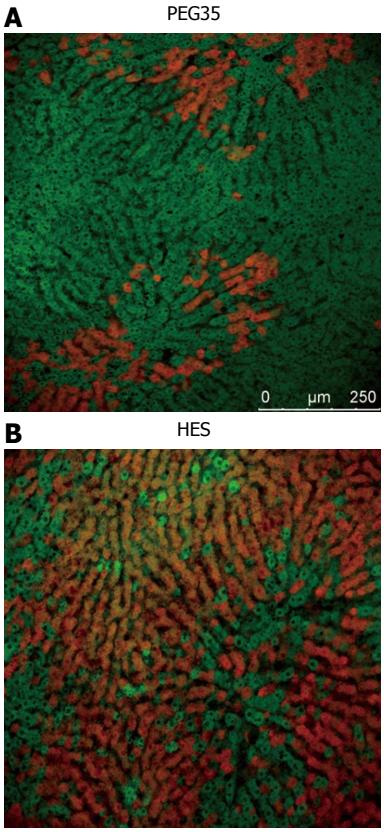


Figure 2 PEG35 preserves liver graft function. Confocal microscopy images showing green fluorescence of rhodamine 123 cell viability marker. Liver grafts were better preserved when they were rinsed with a solution containing PEG35 (A) rather than Ringer lactate solution (B).

PEG35 preserves the cytoskeleton structure and cell morphology against the effects of IRI[44,45].

Static cold preservation remains the gold standard, but the growing needs of liver transplantation oblige physicians to use machine perfusion (MP) techniques in different temperature conditions: hypothermia (HMP), normothermia (NMP) and subnormothermia (SNMP) for graft preservation purposes[46-48]. The use of PEG in MP solutions is very limited in contrast to UW-gluconate and KPS solutions[46-48]. Bessems *et al*[49,50] have shown that substitution of hydroxyethyl starch by PEG in Polysol perfusion solution achieved equal or better function and less damage in rat liver after 24 h of HMP, and that this Polysol-PEG solution was more efficient than UW-Gluconate perfusion solution. In rat steatotic livers, cold storage using Polysol resulted in significantly better integrity and functions of the liver[51] and thus improved the preservation quality of partial liver transplantation[52]. More recently, it was shown that addition of PEG35 to SNMP at 5 g/L using the "supercooling" technique was necessary to achieve successful liver transplantation after six days' preservation[28,53]. Thus, PEG contributes to the rapid extension of cooling and the lower temperatures attained also contributed to preserving the membrane and cytoskeletal structure of hepatocytes during HMP[25].

PEGs as "preconditioning" agents for IRI prevention

Recent investigations in the heart have found that high molecular weight PEG (15-20 kDa) protected cardiac myocytes from hypoxia reoxygenation[54]. More recently, these cardioprotective benefits for PEG 15-20 were observed when it was administered just before reperfusion[55].

With this in mind, our group explored the benefits of using PEG35 to limit IRI in different experimental models of cold ischemia and warm ischemia reperfusion in rats[56,57]. Intravenous administration of PEG35 to rats before the induction of cold ischemia-reperfusion insult (a single 10 mg/kg dose) protected fatty livers from the lesions associated with IRI[56]. The prevention of liver damage was accompanied by a high protection of liver cytoskeleton and mitochondria, which was concomitant with increased phosphorylation of pro-survival protein kinase b (AKT) and the activation of cyto-protective factors such as e-NOS and AMPK respectively[56].

These investigations reveal that *in vivo* PEGs improve the initial conditions of organs against the cold ischemia reperfusion insult. This PEG strategy can be considered as a useful tool for multi-organ preconditioning before organ recovery and then static cold storage/machine perfusion preservation.

These protective mechanisms of PEG were also corroborated in a warm ischemia-reperfusion model in the rat[57]. Intravenous administration of PEG35 at 10 mg/kg was protective against IRI. In this case, PEG35 not only prevented mitochondria damage, but also promoted the activation of prosurvival pathways (AKT, AMPK), and reinforced the cytoskeleton structure and preservation of the hepatocytes' morphological features[44,56]. However, the precise mechanisms by which PEGs interact with the cytoskeleton remains to be elucidated.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

Many studies have been designed to prevent mitochondrial dysfunction and to increase endothelial NO generation as a tool for favoring a rapid recovery of liver graft viability after reperfusion. The use of new NO-releasing molecules covalently linked to PEG, as oncotic agents for fatty liver preservation, could help to prevent exacerbated microcirculation in steatotic liver grafts. This practice has been extended to the pharmacological preconditioning of fatty livers, with very promising results (unpublished data).

Moreover, the use of another alternative molecule similar to butanediol mononitrate, conjugated to the carboxylic groups of PEG derivatives by an ester linkage, may provide a new kind of PEG derivative obtained by preparation of PEG-dendron polymers. This may be useful for defining new PEG molecules for supercooling purposes either in combination with MP or not.

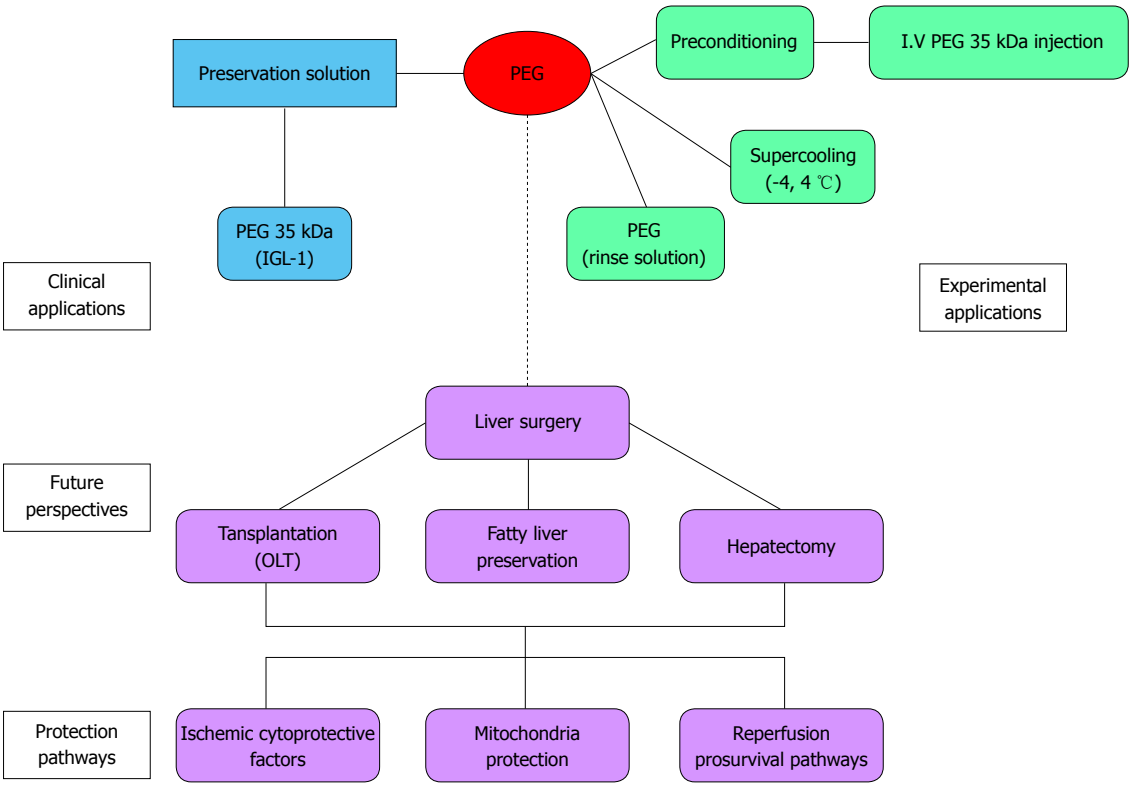


Figure 3 State of the art and future perspectives of polyethylene glycols as effective tool for limiting hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury. Currently, the clinical applications of polyethylene glycols (PEGs) focus on their use as oncotic agents in IGL-1 solution for liver transplantation (in blue). Recent experimental investigations confirm the value of PEG35 for "supercooling" strategies combined with machine perfusion, as well as its use as a component in rinse solution for liver graft washout. Intravenous PEG35 treatment has also been shown to induce liver protection against cold and warm ischemia-reperfusion injury (IRI) (in green). Future clinical applications should be investigated (in violet). PEG protection mechanisms are characterized by a prevention of mitochondrial damage and by the promotion of several cyto-protective factors during IRI (in violet).

On the other hand, given the potential of PEGs as therapeutic targets for liver protection against IRI, it will be important to identify new PEG derivatives for use in liver transplantation as preconditioning agents. PEG treatment in donors and during reperfusion could minimize the deleterious effects of IRI, such as oxidative stress, cytoskeleton disruption and apoptosis. Moreover, in reduced orthotopic liver transplantation, the prophylactic administration of PEG to donor or/and recipient could contribute to a better liver regeneration of the implanted reduced graft and thus contribute to preventing the small-for-size syndrome present in living-living donor transplantation. In this particular case, the use of new derivatives based on growth factors releasing molecules covalently linked to PEG could offer potential advantages for rapid liver regeneration. Hepatic Growth Factor may be a suitable candidate. The benefits and perspectives of PEGs for limiting liver IRI are summarized in Figure 3.

CONCLUSION

The use of PEG may improve the initial conditions of organs available for transplantation, especially in the case of the most vulnerable ones such as steatotic livers. PEG is a very promising tool for limiting IRI in liver surgery (hepatectomy and transplantation) but further investigation in clinical trials is needed.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to Michael Maudsley from the Language Advisory Service of the University of Barcelona for revising the English text.

REFERENCES

1 **Weigand K**, Brost S, Steinebrunner N, Büchler M, Schemmer P, Müller M. Ischemia/Reperfusion injury in liver surgery and transplantation: pathophysiology. *HPB Surg* 2012; **2012**: 176723 [PMID: 22693364 DOI: 10.1155/2012/176723]

2 **Bzeizi KI**, Jalan R, Plevris JN, Hayes PC. Primary graft dysfunction after liver transplantation: from pathogenesis to prevention. *Liver Transpl Surg* 1997; **3**: 137-148 [PMID: 9346727]

3 **Busuttil RW**, Tanaka K. The utility of marginal donors in liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2003; **9**: 651-663 [PMID: 12827549 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2003.50105]

4 **Casillas-Ramírez A**, Mosbah IB, Ramalho F, Roselló-Catafau J, Peralta C. Past and future approaches to ischemia-reperfusion lesion associated with liver transplantation. *Life Sci* 2006; **79**: 1881-1894 [PMID: 16828807 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2006.06.024]

5 **Gurusamy KS**, Gonzalez HD, Davidson BR. Current protective strategies in liver surgery. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 6098-6103 [PMID: 21182224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i48.6098]

6 **Mero A**, Clementi C, Veronese FM, Pasut G. Covalent conjugation of poly(ethylene glycol) to proteins and peptides: strategies and methods. *Methods Mol Biol* 2011; **751**: 95-129 [PMID: 21674328

DOI: 10.1007/978-1-61779-151-28]
7 **Schiavon O**, Pasut G, Moro S, Orsolini P, Guiotto A, Veronese FM. PEG-Ara-C conjugates for controlled release. *Eur J Med Chem* 2004; **39**: 123-133 [PMID: 14987821 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejmech.2003.10.005]
8 **Pasut G**, Veronese FM. PEG conjugates in clinical development or use as anticancer agents: an overview. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2009; **61**: 1177-1188 [PMID: 19671438 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2009.02.010]
9 **Harris JM**, Chess RB. Effect of pegylation on pharmaceuticals. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2003; **2**: 214-221 [PMID: 12612647 DOI: 10.1038/nrd1033]
10 **Yamaoka T**, Tabata Y, Ikada Y. Distribution and tissue uptake of poly(ethylene glycol) with different molecular weights after intravenous administration to mice. *J Pharm Sci* 1994; **83**: 601-606 [PMID: 8046623 DOI: 10.1002/jps.2600830432]
11 **Fruijtier-Pölloth C**. Safety assessment on polyethylene glycols (PEGs) and their derivatives as used in cosmetic products. *Toxicology* 2005; **214**: 1-38 [PMID: 16011869 DOI: 10.1016/j.tox.2005.06001]
12 **Abuchowski A**, van Es T, Palczuk NC, Davis FF. Alteration of immunological properties of bovine serum albumin by covalent attachment of polyethylene glycol. *J Biol Chem* 1977; **252**: 3578-3581 [PMID: 405385]
13 **Pasut G**, Veronese FM. State of the art in PEGylation: the great versatility achieved after forty years of research. *J Control Release* 2012; **161**: 461-472 [PMID: 22094104 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2011.10.037]
14 **Lichtenstein G**. Bowel preparations for colonoscopy: a review. *Am J Health Syst Pharm* 2009; **66**: 27-37 [PMID: 19106342 DOI: 10.2146/ajhp080084]
15 **Lim YJ**, Hong SJ. What is the best strategy for successful bowel preparation under special conditions? *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 2741-2745 [PMID: 24659865 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i11.2741]
16 **Neuzillet Y**, Giraud S, Lagorce L, Eugene M, Debre P, Richard F, Barrou B. Effects of the molecular weight of peg molecules (8, 20 and 35 KDA) on cell function and allograft survival prolongation in pancreatic islets transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 2006; **38**: 2354-2355 [PMID: 16980088 DOI: 10.1016/jtransproceed.2006.06117]
17 **Valuckaite V**, Seal J, Zaborina O, Tretiakova M, Testa G, Alverdy JC. High molecular weight polyethylene glycol (PEG 15-20) maintains mucosal microbial barrier function during intestinal graft preservation. *J Surg Res* 2013; **183**: 869-875 [PMID: 23522457 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2013.02.035]
18 **Hauet T**, Goujon JM, Baumert H, Petit I, Carretier M, Eugene M, Vandewalle A. Polyethylene glycol reduces the inflammatory injury due to cold ischemia/reperfusion in autotransplanted pig kidneys. *Kidney Int* 2002; **62**: 654-667 [PMID: 12110031]
19 **Abbas R**, Kombu RS, Dignam D, Gunning W, Stulberg JJ, Brunengraber H, Sanabria JR. Polyethylene glycol modified-albumin enhances the cold preservation properties of University of Wisconsin solution in rat liver and a hepatocyte cell line. *J Surg Res* 2010; **164**: 95-104 [PMID: 19577257 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2009.03.030]
20 **Veronese FM**, Mero A. The impact of PEGylation on biological therapies. *BioDrugs* 2008; **22**: 315-329 [PMID: 18778113]
21 **Turecek PL**, Bossard MJ, Schoetens F, Ivens IA. PEGylation of Biopharmaceuticals: A Review of Chemistry and Nonclinical Safety Information of Approved Drugs. *J Pharm Sci* 2016; **105**: 460-475 [PMID: 26869412 DOI: 10.1016/j.xphs.2015.11.015]
22 **Kim V**, Abreu RM, Nakagawa DM, Baldassare RM, Carrilho FJ, Ono SK. Pegylated interferon alfa for chronic hepatitis B: systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Viral Hepat* 2016; **23**: 154-169 [PMID: 25967226 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12418]
23 **Pasut G**. Pegylation of biological molecules and potential benefits: pharmacological properties of certolizumab pegol. *BioDrugs* 2014; **28** Suppl 1: S15-S23 [PMID: 24687235 DOI: 10.1007/s40259-013-0064-z]
24 **Marsh DC**, Lindell SL, Fox LE, Belzer FO, Southard JH. Hypothermic preservation of hepatocytes. I. Role of cell swelling. *Cryobiology* 1989; **26**: 524-534 [PMID: 2480865]
25 **Stefanovich P**, Ezzell RM, Sheehan SJ, Tompkins RG, Yarmush ML, Toner M. Effects of hypothermia on the function, membrane integrity, and cytoskeletal structure of hepatocytes. *Cryobiology* 1995; **32**: 389-403 [PMID: 7656572 DOI: 10.1006/cryo.1995.1039]
26 **Dutheil D**, Underhaug Gjerde A, Petit-Paris I, Mauco G, Holmsen H. Polyethylene glycols interact with membrane glycerophospholipids: is this part of their mechanism for hypothermic graft protection? *J Chem Biol* 2009; **2**: 39-49 [PMID: 19568791 DOI: 10.1007/s12154-009-0014-x]
27 **Puts CF**, Berendsen TA, Bruinsma BG, Ozer S, Luitje M, Usta OB, Yarmush ML, Uygun K. Polyethylene glycol protects primary hepatocytes during supercooling preservation. *Cryobiology* 2015; **71**: 125-129 [PMID: 25936340 DOI: 10.1016/jcryobiol.2015.04.010]
28 **Berendsen TA**, Bruinsma BG, Puts CF, Saeidi N, Usta OB, Uygun BE, Izamis ML, Toner M, Yarmush ML, Uygun K. Supercooling enables long-term transplantation survival following 4 days of liver preservation. *Nat Med* 2014; **20**: 790-793 [PMID: 24973919 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3588]
29 **Bejaoui M**, Pantazi E, Folch-Puy E, Baptista PM, García-Gil A, Adam R, Roselló-Catafau J. Emerging concepts in liver graft preservation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 396-407 [PMID: 25593455 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i2.396]
30 **Hauet T**, Eugene M. A new approach in organ preservation: potential role of new polymers. *Kidney Int* 2008; **74**: 998-1003 [PMID: 18633345 DOI: 10.1038/ki.2008]
31 **Mosbah IB**, Saidane D, Peralta C, Roselló-Catafau J, Abdennebi HB. Efficacy of polyethylene glycols in University of Wisconsin preservation solutions: a study of isolated perfused rat liver. *Transplant Proc* 2005; **37**: 3948-3950 [PMID: 16386593 DOI: 10.1016/jtransproceed.2015.10.038]
32 **Tabka D**, Bejaoui M, Javellaud J, Roselló-Catafau J, Achard JM, Abdennebi HB. Effects of Institut Georges Lopez-1 and Celsior preservation solutions on liver graft injury. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 4159-4168 [PMID: 25892865 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i14.4159]
33 **Ben Mosbah I**, Roselló-Catafau J, Franco-Gou R, Abdennebi HB, Saidane D, Ramella-Virieux S, Boillot O, Peralta C. Preservation of steatotic livers in IGL-1 solution. *Liver Transpl* 2006; **12**: 1215-1223 [PMID: 16724331 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20788]
34 **Adam R**, Delvart V, Karam V, Ducerf C, Navarro F, Letoublon C, Belghiti J, Pezet D, Castaing D, Le Treut YP, Gugenheim J, Bachellier P, Pirenne J, Muiesan P. Compared efficacy of preservation solutions in liver transplantation: a long-term graft outcome study from the European Liver Transplant Registry. *Am J Transplant* 2015; **15**: 395-406 [PMID: 25612492 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.13060]
35 **Gerber PC**. Perio disease: target market for 90s' GPs. *Dent Manage* 1990; **30**: 29-33 [PMID: 2209980 DOI: 10.1016/jtransproceed.2011.09.054]
36 **Ben Abdennebi H**, Zaoualí MA, Alfany-Fernandez I, Tabka D, Roselló-Catafau J. How to protect liver graft with nitric oxide. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 2879-2889 [PMID: 21734799 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i24.2879]
37 **Bakaltcheva I**, Ganong JP, Holtz BL, Peat RA, Reid T. Effects of high-molecular-weight cryoprotectants on platelets and the coagulation system. *Cryobiology* 2000; **40**: 283-293 [PMID: 10924260 DOI: 10.1016/cryo.2000.2247]
38 **Garb LG**. A new development in the provision of comprehensive medical care in Australia. A description of the Southern Memorial Hospital, Melbourne, Victoria. *Am J Public Health* 1975; **65**: 280-283 [PMID: 1115293 DOI: 10.1016/s0049-3848(00)00364-9]
39 **Deible CR**, Beckman EJ, Russell AJ, Wagner WR. Creating molecular barriers to acute platelet deposition on damaged arteries with reactive polyethylene glycol. *J Biomed Mater Res* 1998; **41**: 251-256 [PMID: 9638530]
40 **Vasudev SC**, Chandy T, Sharma CP. The antithrombotic versus calcium antagonistic effects of polyethylene glycol grafted bovine pericardium. *J Biomater Appl* 1999; **14**: 48-66 [PMID: 10405884]
41 **Zaouali MA**, Ben Mosbah I, Boncompagni E, Ben Abdennebi H, Mitjavila MT, Bartrons R, Freitas I, Rimola A, Roselló-Catafau

J. Hypoxia inducible factor-1alpha accumulation in steatotic liver preservation: role of nitric oxide. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 3499-3509 [PMID: 20653058 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i28.3499]

42 **Adam R**, Astarcioglu I, Castaing D, Bismuth H. Ringer's lactate vs serum albumin as a flush solution for UW preserved liver grafts: results of a prospective randomized study. *Transplant Proc* 1991; **23**: 2374-2375 [PMID: 1926391]

43 **Gao WS**, Takei Y, Marzi I, Lindert KA, Caldwell-Kenkel JC, Currin RT, Tanaka Y, Lemasters JJ, Thurman RG. Carolina rinse solution--a new strategy to increase survival time after orthotopic liver transplantation in the rat. *Transplantation* 1991; **52**: 417-424 [PMID: 1897011]

44 **Zaouali MA**, Bejaoui M, Calvo M, Folch-Puy E, Pantazi E, Pasut G, Rimola A, Ben Abdennebi H, Adam R, Roselló-Catafau J. Polyethylene glycol rinse solution: an effective way to prevent ischemia-reperfusion injury. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 16203-16214 [PMID: 25473175 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i43.16203]

45 **Chiang ET**, Camp SM, Dudek SM, Brown ME, Usatyuk PV, Zaborina O, Alverdy JC, Garcia JG. Protective effects of high-molecular weight polyethylene glycol (PEG) in human lung endothelial cell barrier regulation: role of actin cytoskeletal rearrangement. *Microvasc Res* 2009; **77**: 174-186 [PMID: 19121327 DOI: 10.1016/j.mvr.2008.11.007]

46 **Schlegel A**, Kron P, Dutkowski P. Hypothermic Oxygenated Liver Perfusion: Basic Mechanisms and Clinical Application. *Curr Transplant Rep* 2015; **2**: 52-62 [PMID: 26097802 DOI: 10.1007/s40472-014-0046-1]

47 **Fontes P**, Lopez R, van der Plaats A, Vodovotz Y, Minervini M, Scott V, Soltys K, Shiva S, Paranjpe S, Sadowsky D, Barclay D, Zamora R, Stolz D, Demetris A, Michalopoulos G, Marsh JW. Liver preservation with machine perfusion and a newly developed cell-free oxygen carrier solution under subnormothermic conditions. *Am J Transplant* 2015; **15**: 381-394 [PMID: 25612645 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.12991]

48 **Ravikumar R**, Jassem W, Mergental H, Heaton N, Mirza D, Perera MT, Quaglia A, Holroyd D, Vogel T, Coussios CC, Friend PJ. Liver Transplantation After Ex Vivo Normothermic Machine Preservation: A Phase 1 (First-in-Man) Clinical Trial. *Am J Transplant* 2016; **16**: 1779-1787 [PMID: 26752191 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.13708]

49 **Bessems M**, Doorschodt BM, Hooijschuur O, van Vliet AK, van Gulik TM. Optimization of a new preservation solution for machine perfusion of the liver: which is the preferred colloid? *Transplant Proc* 2005; **37**: 329-331 [PMID: 15808633 DOI: 10.1016/jtransproceed.2004.12.220]

50 **Bessems M**, Doorschodt BM, Dinant S, de Graaf W, van Gulik TM. Machine perfusion preservation of the pig liver using a new preservation solution, polysol. *Transplant Proc* 2006; **38**: 1238-1242 [PMID: 16797272 DOI: 10.1016/jtransproceed.2006.02.063]

51 **Hata K**, Tolba RH, Wei L, Doorschodt BM, Büttner R, Yamamoto Y, Minor T. Impact of polysol, a newly developed preservation solution, on cold storage of steatotic rat livers. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: 114-121 [PMID: 17117434 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20957]

52 **Yagi S**, Doorschodt BM, Afify M, Klinge U, Kobayashi E, Uemoto S, Tolba RH. Improved preservation and microcirculation with POLYSOL after partial liver transplantation in rats. *J Surg Res* 2011; **167**: e375-e383 [PMID: 21392801 DOI: 10.1016/jjss.2010.12.040]

53 **Bruinsma BG**, Berendsen TA, Izamis ML, Yeh H, Yarmush ML, Uygun K. Supercooling preservation and transplantation of the rat liver. *Nat Protoc* 2015; **10**: 484-494 [PMID: 25692985 DOI: 10.1038/nprot.2015.011]

54 **Malhotra R**, Valuckaite V, Staron ML, Theccanat T, D'Souza KM, Alverdy JC, Akhter SA. High-molecular-weight polyethylene glycol protects cardiac myocytes from hypoxia- and reoxygenation-induced cell death and preserves ventricular function. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol* 2011; **300**: H1733-H1742 [PMID: 21335476 DOI: 10.1152/ajpheart.01054.2010]

55 **Xu X**, Philip JL, Abdur Razzaque Md, Lloyd JW, Muller CM, Akter SA. A new strategy to limit ischemia-reperfusion injury Akhter. *Thorac Cardio-vasc Surg* 2015; **149**: 588-593 [DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2014.10.074]

56 **Bejaoui M**, Pantazi E, Folch-Puy E, Panisello A, Calvo M, Pasut G, Rimola A, Navasa M, Adam R, Roselló-Catafau J. Protective Effect of Intravenous High Molecular Weight Polyethylene Glycol on Fatty Liver Preservation. *Biomed Res Int* 2015; **2015**: 794287 [PMID: 26543868 DOI: 10.1155/2015/794287]

57 **Bejaoui M**, Pantazi E, Calvo M, Folch-Puy E, Serafín A, Pasut G, Panisello A, Adam R, Roselló-Catafau J. Polyethylene Glycol Preconditioning: An Effective Strategy to Prevent Liver Ischemia Reperfusion Injury. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2016; **2016**: 9096549 [PMID: 26981166 DOI: 10.1155/2016/9096549]

P- Reviewer: Machado MCC **S- Editor**: Qi Y **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6509

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6509-6519
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

c-Jun N-terminal kinase-mediated Rubicon expression enhances hepatocyte lipoapoptosis and promotes hepatocyte ballooning

Akiko Suzuki, Keisuke Kakisaka, Yuji Suzuki, Ting Wang, Yasuhiro Takikawa

Akiko Suzuki, Keisuke Kakisaka, Yuji Suzuki, Ting Wang, Yasuhiro Takikawa, Division of Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine, Iwate Medical University, Morioka 0208505, Japan

Author contributions: Suzuki A performed *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies and wrote the paper; Kakisaka K designed the experiments. Suzuki Y and Wang T analyzed the data; Takikawa Y supervised the study and revised the paper; all authors drafted the article and made critical revisions related to the intellectual content of the manuscript, and approved the final version of the article to be published.

Supported by KAKENHI Grant, No. 16K21307.

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: All of the animal experiments were approved by the Animal Care and Use Committee of Iwate Medical University (Morioka, Japan; 25-025).

Conflict-of-interest statement: There is no conflict-of-interest.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Keisuke Kakisaka, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor, Division of Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine, Iwate Medical University, 19-1 Uchimaru, Iwate, Morioka 0208505, Japan. keikaki@iwate-med.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-19-6515111
Fax: +81-19-6526664

Received: April 5, 2016
Peer-review started: April 6, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 24, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016
Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To clarify the relationship between autophagy and lipotoxicity-induced apoptosis, which is termed "lipoapoptosis," in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis.

METHODS: Male C57BL/6J mice were fed a high-fat diet (HFD) for 12 wk, after which the liver histology and expression of proteins such as p62 or LC3 were evaluated. Alpha mouse liver 12 (AML12) cells treated with palmitate (PA) were used as an *in vitro* model.

RESULTS: LC3-Ⅱ, p62, and Run domain Beclin-1 interacting and cysteine-rich containing (Rubicon) proteins increased in both the HFD mice and in AML12 cells in response to PA treatment. Rubicon expression was decreased upon c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) inhibition at both the mRNA and the protein level in AML12 cells. Rubicon knockdown in AML12 cells with PA decreased the protein levels of both LC3-Ⅱ and p62. Rubicon expression peaked at 4 h of PA treatment in AML12, and then decreased. Treatment with caspase-9 inhibitor ameliorated the decrease in Rubicon protein expression at 10 h of PA and resulted in enlarged AML12 cells under PA treatment. The enlargement of AML12 cells by PA with caspase-9 inhibition was canceled by Rubicon knockdown.

CONCLUSION: The JNK-Rubicon axis enhanced

lipoapoptosis, and caspase-9 inhibition and Rubicon had effects that were cytologically similar to hepatocyte ballooning. As ballooned hepatocytes secrete fibrogenic signals and thus might promote fibrosis in the liver, the inhibition of hepatocyte ballooning might provide anti-fibrosis in the NASH liver.

Key words: Ballooned hepatocyte; Caspase 9; c-Jun N-terminal kinase; Rubicon; SP600125

Core tip: Autophagy is interrupted in both *in vivo* and *in vitro* non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) models, and impaired autophagy is mediated by Run domain Beclin-1 interacting and cysteine-rich containing (Rubicon) protein expression *via* c-Jun N-terminal kinase phosphorylation. Rubicon expression appears prior to apoptosis and enhances palmitate toxicity in the hepatocytes, and caspase-9 decreases Rubicon at the protein level during lipoapoptosis. Caspase-9 inhibition with Rubicon expression induces both hepatocyte enlargement and endoplasmic reticulum stress accumulation. The present study extends our knowledge on the precise balance between lipoapoptosis and autophagy *via* Rubicon expression in NASH and reveals a possible pathophysiology of ballooned hepatocytes in NASH.

Suzuki A, Kakisaka K, Suzuki Y, Wang T, Takikawa Y. c-Jun N-terminal kinase-mediated Rubicon expression enhances hepatocyte lipoapoptosis and promotes hepatocyte ballooning. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6509-6519 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6509.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6509

INTRODUCTION

The prevalence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is drastically increasing in the Western countries[1]. In some NAFLD patients, persistent inflammation and progressive fibrosis develop in the liver, a condition termed non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH)[2]. As NASH will progress to liver cirrhosis and end-stage liver disease, its pathogenesis needs to be clarified[3]. NASH is histologically characterized by lipid accumulation with inflammation in the liver, which is considered to be a result of lipotoxicity-induced hepatocyte apoptosis[2]. Infiltration of immune cells following hepatocyte death activates hepatic stellate cells, inducing the generation of collagen fiber and the development of liver fibrosis[2]. Therefore, hepatocyte apoptosis is considered to be an important step in development of NASH[4,5].

Lipid-induced apoptosis, which is termed "lipoapoptosis," has been established to cause NASH[6,7]. Saturated free fatty acids (FFAs), such as palmitate (PA), induce hepatocyte lipoapoptosis *via* endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress, c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) phosphorylation, and mitochondrial dysfunction[8,9]. Recently, it has been reported that saturated FFAs can inhibit autophagy[10] which is a process of cellular self-digestion[11]. In addition, it has been demonstrated that autophagy is inhibited in the NASH liver[12]. As autophagy removes both aggregated proteins and damaged organelles, it maintains organelle quality and prevents apoptosis[11]. It has been reported that impaired autophagy is associated with lipoapoptosis and that chemical agent-induced apoptosis inhibits autophagy[10,13]. Accumulating evidence suggests that inhibition of autophagy is associated with hepatocyte apoptosis in the NASH liver. However, the underlying mechanism remains unclear, and gaining a clearer understanding of the inhibition of autophagy by lipoapoptosis may lead to the development of novel therapeutic strategies for NASH. In line with the above concept, we focused this study on a molecule associated with autophagy inhibition: Run domain Beclin-1 interacting and cysteine-rich containing (Rubicon)[14]. Rubicon has been found to inhibit the fusion of lysosomes to autophagosomes. However, whether Rubicon is expressed in the NASH liver and which role it would play in NASH has not been elucidated yet.

Another histopathological hallmark of NASH is the presence of ballooned hepatocytes. The number of ballooned hepatocytes generally correlates with the severity of liver inflammation and fibrosis in NASH[15-17]. Therefore, the prevalence of ballooned hepatocytes is considered to be a marker of NASH activity. Ballooned hepatocytes can be histologically identified on the basis of several features, such as swelling, central nuclei, rarefied cytoplasm, and Mallory-Denk bodies[18]. Mallory-Denk bodies contain several proteins, such as keratin, chaperones, kinases, and protein degradation machinery[19]. Although proteins in Mallory-Denk bodies should be decomposed *via* the protein degradation pathway, they are accumulated in ballooned hepatocytes. These findings indicate that the protein degradation pathway related to autophagy may be impaired in ballooned hepatocytes.

The aims of the present study were as follows: (1) to confirm the presence of an autophagic state in an *in vivo* NASH model using mice fed a high-fat diet (HFD); (2) to evaluate the intracellular signaling associated with both autophagy and lipoapoptosis; and (3) to clarify the relation between autophagy inhibition and ballooning of hepatocytes during lipoapoptosis.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals

Male 5-wk-old C57BL/6J mice were obtained from Charles River Laboratories (Charles River, Yokohama, Japan) and were maintained on a 12-h light/12-dark cycle in humidity-controlled rooms at 22 ℃ with *ad libitum* access to drinking water. After 1 wk of

habitation, 5 mice were assigned to each of normal chow and HFD (HFD-60, Oriental Yeast CO., Tokyo, Japan) groups and were fed their respective diets for 12 wk. All of the mice were sacrificed using isoflurane anesthesia after overnight fasting at 20 wk of age. All of the animal experiments were approved by the Animal Care and Use Committee of Iwate Medical University (Morioka, Japan; 25-025).

Cells

Alpha mouse liver 12 (AML 12) cells, a hepatocyte cell line from a mouse transgenic for human transforming growth factor α, were kindly supplied by Professor Itaru Kojima, Gunma University. Because autophagic status was confirmed in the NASH mouse model, we employed a cell line generated from the same species, AML 12, to investigate autophagic status in NASH in detail.

Antibodies and reagents: The antibodies used in this study were obtained from the following sources: anti-p62 (1:1000; #5114), anti-LC3 (1:1000; #4108), anti-Rubicon (1:1000; #8465), anti-cleaved caspase-3 (1:1000; #9661), and rabbit anti-phospho-JNK (1:1000; #9251) were obtained from Cell Signaling Technology, Tokyo, Japan; mouse anti-C/EBP homologous protein (CHOP) (1:500; sc-575), mouse anti-phospho-c-Jun (1:1000; sc-822), and goat anti-β-actin (1:1000; sc-1616) were obtained from Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Santa Cruz, CA, United States). Alexa Fluor 488-conjugated IgG was from Life Technologies (Tokyo, Japan). The JNK inhibitor SP600125 (#420119) was obtained from Calbiochem (San Diego, CA, United States). Caspase-9 inhibitor Z-LEHD-FMK (ab142026), and pan-caspase inhibitor QVD-OPh (ab141421) were obtained from Abcam Biochemicals (Tokyo, Japan).

Histological analysis: Liver tissues were collected from the mice, fixed in 10% neutral buffered formalin, paraffin-embedded, and sectioned. Liver specimens were stained with hematoxylin and eosin according to standard procedures. All samples were evaluated in a blinded manner by single pathologist, who scored inflammation, steatosis, and ballooning using non-alcoholic steatohepatitis activity scores[20].

Hepatocyte treatments: Palmitate (PA; #P5585, Sigma Aldrich, Tokyo, Japan), dissolved in isopropanol at a stock concentration of 160 mmol/L, was used to investigate signal transduction during lipoapoptosis. AML12 cells were treated for the indicated time periods or with the indicated concentrations of PA. For inhibition studies, AML12 cells were treated with PA (400 μmol/L or 800 μmol/L) for 4 h or 10 h in the presence or absence of 30 μmol/L SP600125, 20 mol/L z-LEHD-fmk, or 20 μmol/L QVD-OPh. All inhibitors simultaneously added with PA treatment.

Biochemical analysis of the *in vivo* NASH model: Blood samples were obtained from the mice by cardiac puncture. Serum was obtained from the blood by centrifugation at 3000 × *g* for 10 min. The serum levels of alanine transaminase (ALT) were analyzed using an autoanalyzer (JCA-BM2250; JEOL, Tokyo, Japan).

Cell proliferation assay

For AML12 proliferation studies, WST-8 [2-(2-methoxy-4-nitrophenyl)-3-(4-nitrophenyl)-5-(2,4-disulfophenyl)-2H-tetrazolium monosodium salt] (Nacalai Tesque, Kyoto, Japan) incorporation experiments were performed using a microplate reader (Multiskan FC; Thermo Fisher Scientific, Yokohama, Japan). All proliferation assays were performed at least 4 times for each group. The results are presented as the ratio of incorporation in the cells that received the indicated treatment to that in vehicle-treated cells.

Immunocytochemistry for p62

AML12 cells seeded in 6-well plates were fixed with 4% paraformaldehyde in PBS and permeabilized with 0.0125% (w/v) CHAPS in PBS. The primary antibody for anti-p62 was used at a dilution of 1:500. The secondary antibody was Alexa Fluor 488-conjugated IgG, and ProLong Antifade with DAPI (Molecular Probes, Eugene, OR, United States) was used as the mounting medium. Images were acquired using an EVOS microscope (AMF 4300; Life Technologies) with excitation and emission wavelengths of 488 nm and 507 nm, respectively. The experiments were repeated three times.

Measurement of cell size

AML12 cells seeded in 6-well plates received the indicated treatments. Images were acquired with the AMF 4300 microscope. Individual cells were identified and the sizes of 25 randomly selected cells were measured using the Image J software program ver. 1.47 (NIH, Bethesda, MD, United States). The results were presented as the ratio of the size of treated cells to that of control cells.

Quantitative real-time PCR

Total cellular RNA of AML 12 cells was extracted using an RNeasy Mini Kit (Qiagen, Tokyo, Japan) and was reverse-transcribed into complementary (c) DNA with Moloney murine leukemia virus reverse transcriptase (Invitrogen, Camarillo, CA, United States) and random primers (Invitrogen, Camarillo, CA, United States) as described previously[21]. Quantification of the cDNA template was conducted on a 7500 Real-Time PCR system (Applied Biosystems, Waltham, MA, United States) and analyzed using the 7500 Software program. The PCR primers were as follows: for mouse p62 (NM_011018): forward 5'-GAAGCTGCCCTATACCCACA-3' and reverse

5′-TGGGAGAGGGACTCAATCAG-3′ (65 bp); for mouse Rubicon (NM_001200038): forward 5′-GATGGGGAGCGTCTGCTA-3′ and reverse 5′-TCCACAGTCGTCTTCAAATTACC-3′ (74 bp). Mouse Actin (NM_007393.4), amplified with the following primers: forward 5′-TAAGGCCAACCGTGAAAAG-3′ and reverse 5′-ACCAGAGGCATAGGGACA-3′ (104 bp), was used as an internal control. The target mRNA expression levels were expressed relative to Actin for each sample as described previously[21]. The experiment was repeated three times.

Small interfering RNA transfection

The small interfering RNAs (siRNAs) used for the knockdown of endogenous Rubicon protein and the negative control siRNA were purchased from Life Technologies. siRNA (5 pmol) was transfected into cells using Lipofectamine RNAiMAX (Life Technologies), according to manufacturer's instructions. The examinations were performed after 30 h of transfection.

Immunoblotting analysis

Whole cell lysates were prepared as described previously[21]. Equal amounts of protein (10-50 μg) were resolved by sodium dodecyl sulfate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis on 4%-12% acrylamide gels, transferred to polyvinylidene difluoride membranes, and incubated with primary antibodies. Then, the membranes were incubated with the appropriate horseradish peroxidase-conjugated secondary antibodies (BioSource International, Camarillo, CA, United States). Bound antibody was visualized using a chemiluminescent substrate (ECL Prime; Amersham, Buckinghamshire, United Kingdom).

Statistical analysis

All data represent the results of at least three independent experiments and are expressed as the mean ± SD. The differences between the groups were compared using Student's *t*-test and one-way analysis of variance with a *post-hoc* Dunnett's test. *P*-values < 0.05 were considered to be statistically significant.

RESULTS

Autophagic process is inhibited in mice with steatohepatitis

The mice were divided into 2 groups: those fed a normal chow diet (CT, $n = 5$) and those fed an HFD diet (HFD, $n = 5$). After 12 wk, all mice were sacrificed, and liver histology, serum ALT levels, and protein expression in the liver were examined. Body weight, ALT measurement, and histological scores were evaluated in 5 mice per group. Protein expression was evaluated in 3 mice per group. The body weight of the HFD mice was significantly higher than that of the CT mice (Figure 1A). The ALT level was significantly higher in the HFD mice than in the CT mice (Figure 1A; 77 ± 11.0 IU/mL *vs* 25 ± 1.4 IU/mL). Histological analysis revealed the accumulation of lipid droplets in the liver (Figure 1B and C) and an increase in the number of ballooned hepatocytes (Figure 1C) in HFD mice as compared to CT mice. These findings confirmed that the HFD mice in the present study were compatible with a NASH model.

To confirm impairment of the autophagic process in this model, we evaluated autophagic marker protein expression in the liver by immunoblotting analysis. When protein was decomposed through autophagy, p62 was induced, and both p62 and LC3-Ⅱ were subsequently degraded *via* the autophagic process. The expression of p62 in the livers of the HFD mice was higher than in those of CT mice (Figure 1D). However, the expression of both LC3-I and LC3-Ⅱ was also increased in the HFD mice (Figure 1D). Expression of the autophagy inhibitor Rubicon was significantly higher in the HFD mice than in the CT mice (Figure 1D). These findings indicated that autophagy was impaired in the HFD mice. Additionally, we evaluated JNK phosphorylation, which is a key mediator of hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. Protein expression of phosphorylated JNK was increased in the HFD mice as compared to the CT mice.

PA induces cell death in a dose- and time-dependent manner

To investigate the detailed mechanism of the impaired autophagic process, we employed the mouse hepatocyte cell line AML12 in an *in vitro* study. A cell proliferation assay revealed that PA induced cell death in a dose- and a time-dependent manner, confirming PA cytotoxicity to AML12 cells (Figure 2A and C). JNK phosphorylation, ER stress, and cleaved caspase-3 were increased by PA in both a dose- and a time-dependent manner (Figure 2B and D). Therefore, we considered that PA induced apoptosis in AML12 cells.

PA inhibits the autophagic process in AML12 cells and induces Rubicon expression

Next, we evaluated autophagy-related protein expression in PA-treated AML12 cells. PA induced p62 expression after 10 h of incubation with 800 μmol/L of PA in a dose- and a time-dependent manner (Figure 2B and D). The increased p62 level indicated induction of autophagy. If the autophagic process would progress normally, LC3-Ⅱ would be expected to decrease with the decomposition of p62-associated protein aggregates. However, LC3-Ⅱ expression peaked at 6 h of incubation with 800 μmol/L of PA. These findings indicated that PA induced autophagy, but that the autophagic process was interrupted around 6 h of incubation. Since LC3-Ⅱ expression was further decreased at 10 h of incubation (Figure 2D), autophagy progressed with longer incubation times.

In the *in vitro* model, 600 μmol/L of PA and 4 h of incubation with PA increased Rubicon expression, while

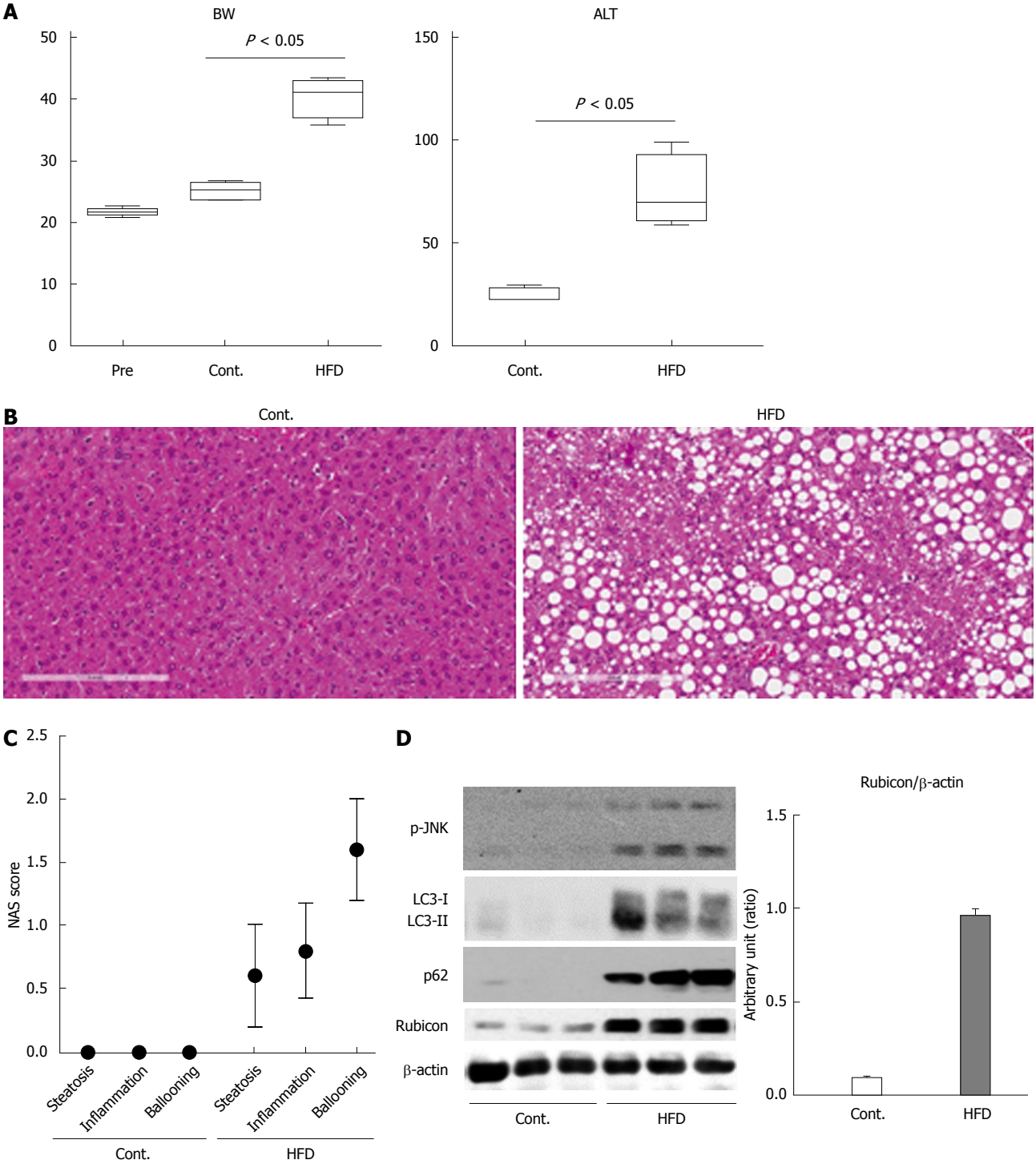


Figure 1 Mice fed high-fat diet show steatosis and inflammation of the liver, and impairment of the autophagic process. A: The body weights of mice at the start of feeding or at 12 wk after feeding with normal chow (Cont.) or high-fat diet (HFD) are presented in the left panel. The serum ALT levels after 12 wk of feeding are shown in the right panel; B: Histology of the liver of control and HFD mice is shown in the left and the right panel, respectively (Hematoxylin and Eosin staining); C: Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis activity scores (NAS) of control and HFD mice; D: Immunoblotting analyses of phosphorylated JNK, p62, LC3, Rubicon, and β-actin. Protein samples were prepared from the liver tissue of each of the control and HFD mice. All of the above experiments were repeated three times and representative results are shown. The quantitative data are presented as the means ± SD.

10 h of incubation with 800 μmol/L of PA decreased Rubicon expression in AML12 cells (Figure 2B and D). Considering the progress of apoptosis at higher dose and longer incubation time of PA, Rubicon expression would be negatively related with apoptotic signals (Figure 2B and D).

PA-induced Rubicon expression inhibits autophagy, resulting in enhanced lipotoxicity in AML12 cells

To check whether PA-induced Rubicon expression was associated with lipoapoptosis, we knocked down Rubicon in AML12 cells using siRNA (siRubicon). After incubation with 800 μmol/L of PA for 4 h, the number

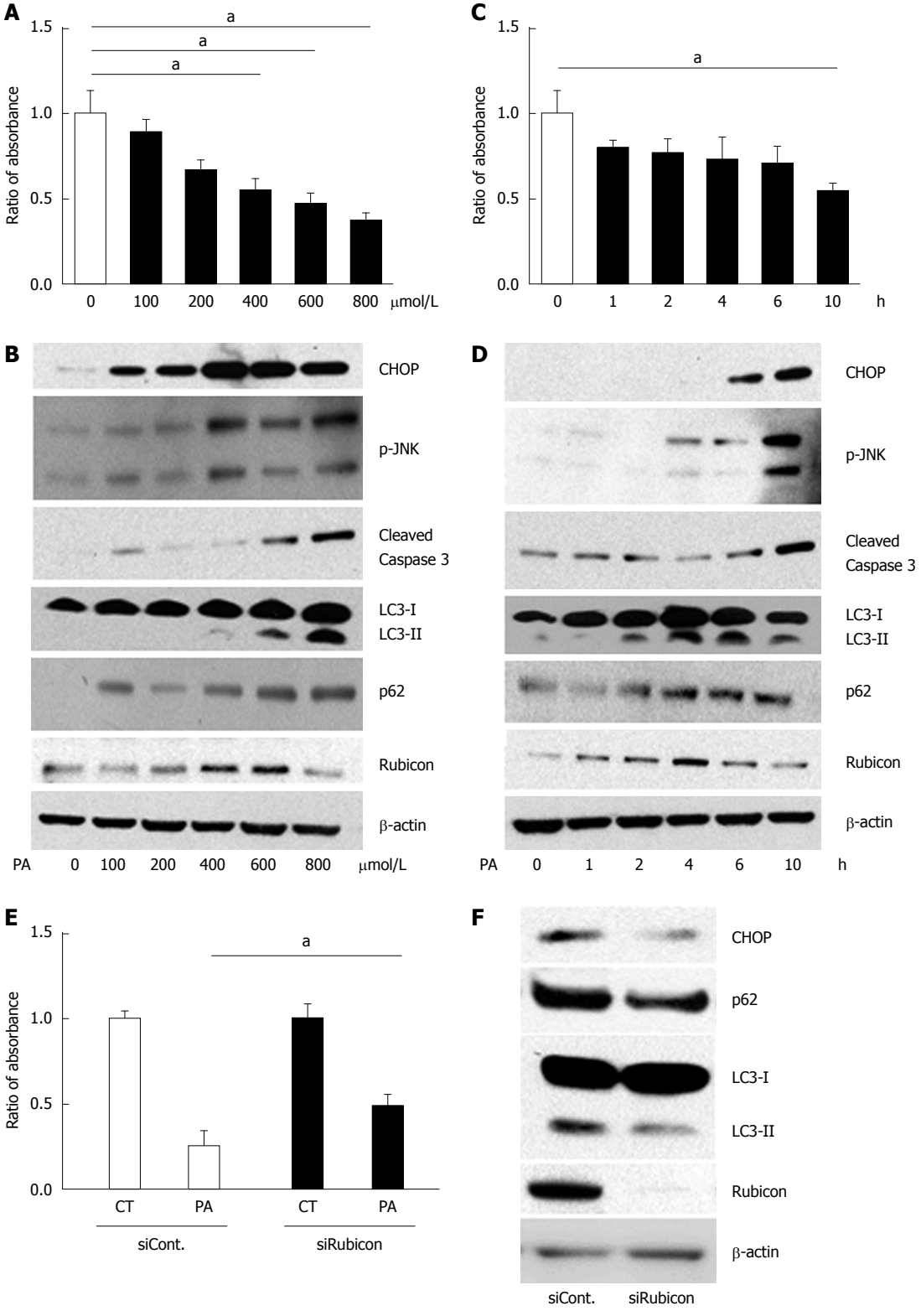


Figure 2 Treatment with palmitate induces apoptosis in a dose- and a time-dependent manner, and initiates but impairs the autophagic process in AML12 cells. A and B: AML12 cells were incubated with PA at the indicated concentrations for 10 h. Untreated AML12 cells were used as the control. A: PA cytotoxicity as evaluated by cell proliferation assay. Living cells are presented as the ratio of absorbance of cells treated with indicated conditions to that of untreated AML12 cells; B: Immunoblotting analyses of CHOP, phosphorylated JNK, cleaved Caspase-3, LC3, p62, Rubicon, and actin. Whole cell lysates were prepared from AML12 cells incubated at the indicated concentrations for 10 h; C and D: AML12 cells were incubated with 800 μmol/L of PA for the indicated periods. Untreated AML12 cells (0 h) were used as the control; C: PA cytotoxicity as evaluated by cell proliferation assay. Living cells are presented as the ratio of absorbance at the indicated incubation time to the absorbance at 0 h; D: Whole cell lysate was prepared from the AML12 cells with 800 μmol/L PA for the indicated incubation times; E and F: AML12 cells were incubated with 800 μmol/L PA for 4 h after transfection with the indicated siRNA: control siRNA (siCont) or Rubicon siRNA (siRubicon); E: PA cytotoxicity as evaluated by cell proliferation assay. Living cells are presented as the ratio of absorbance in AML12 cells with 800 μmol/L PA for 10 h (PA) to that in AML12 control (CT) cells; F: Whole cell lysate was prepared from AML12 cells treated with 800 μmol/L PA with the indicated siRNA. All of the above experiments were repeated three times and representative results are shown. The quantitative data are presented as the mean ± SD; $^{a}P < 0.05$.

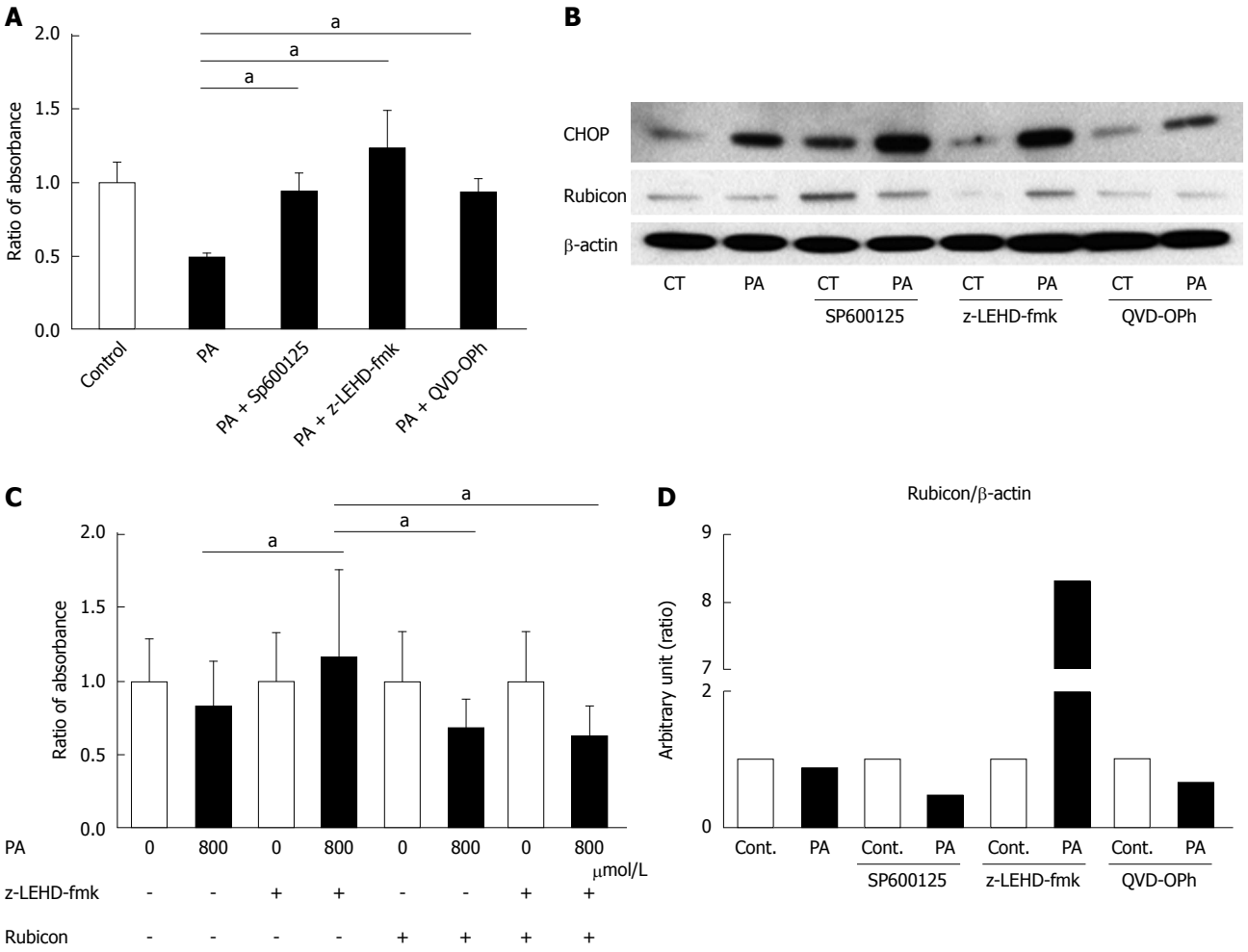


Figure 3 c-Jun N-terminal kinase inhibitor, Caspase-9 inhibitor, and Pan-Caspase inhibitor ameliorate palmitate-induced cell death, and Caspase-9 inhibition attenuates the decrease of Rubicon protein. A: AML12 cells were incubated with 800 μmol/L PA for 10 h in the presence or absence of either 30 μmol/L SP600125, 20 μmol/L LEHD-fmk, or 20 μmol/L QVD-OPh. Untreated AML12 cells were used as the control. PA cytotoxicity was evaluated by cell proliferation assay. Living cells are presented as the ratio of the absorbance at the indicated conditions to that of AML12 without PA treatment; B: Whole cell lysates were prepared from AML12 cells treated with PA (800 μmol/L) for 10 h in the presence or absence of either 30 μmol/L SP600125, 20 μmol/L z-LEHD-fmk, or 20 μmol/L QVD-OPh. Immunoblot analysis of CHOP and Rubicon. β-actin was used as the loading control; C: The size of the AML12 cells after PA treatment (800 μmol/L) for 10 h was compared to that of untreated AML12 cells using the Image J software program. z-LEHD-fmk and/or siRubicon were used for Caspase-9 inhibition or Rubicon knockdown. The difference in cell size under each treatment condition is presented as the ratio to the cell size of the respective controls. All of the above experiments were repeated three times and representative results are shown. The quantitative data are presented as the mean ± SD; $^{a}P < 0.05$.

of viable cells was significantly higher in siRubicon-treated than in control siRNA (siCont)-treated cells (Figure 2E). Expression of both p62 and LC3-Ⅱ was lower in siRubicon- than in siCont-treated cells. Furthermore, PA-induced expression of the ER stress-related transcription factor CHOP was lower in Rubicon-silenced than in control cells (Figure 2F). These results indicated that PA-induced Rubicon expression inhibited autophagy, and that Rubicon enhanced lipotoxicity *via* the impairment of autophagy.

PA-induced Rubicon expression is mediated by JNK signaling

To evaluate the mechanism of PA-induced Rubicon expression, we used pharmacological inhibitors of lipoapoptosis-related molecules: JNK inhibitor (SP600125), caspase-9 inhibitor (Z-LEHD-FMK), and pan-caspase inhibitor (QVD-OPh). All of the inhibitors ameliorated lipotoxicity in the AML12 cells (Figure 3A). Interestingly, SP600125 decreased Rubicon expression in response to PA in comparison to the control (Figures 3B and 4A). The results confirmed that PA induced Rubicon expression and indicated that Rubicon expression was mediated by JNK signaling in both AML12 cells and the human hepatoma cell line HepG2 (Figures 3B, 4A, 4C and 5). JNK inhibition ameliorated PA-induced c-jun phosphorylation and decreased PA-induced protein expression of both p62 and LC3-Ⅱ (Figure 4A). Immunohistochemical analysis revealed that p62 expression was diffuse in the cytoplasm of AML12 cells that were treated with PA, and was repressed by SP600125 inhibitor (Figure 4B). p62 mRNA expression in cells treated with PA and SP600125 was higher than that in cells treated with SP600125 alone, while it was lower than in cells treated with PA alone, as indicated by

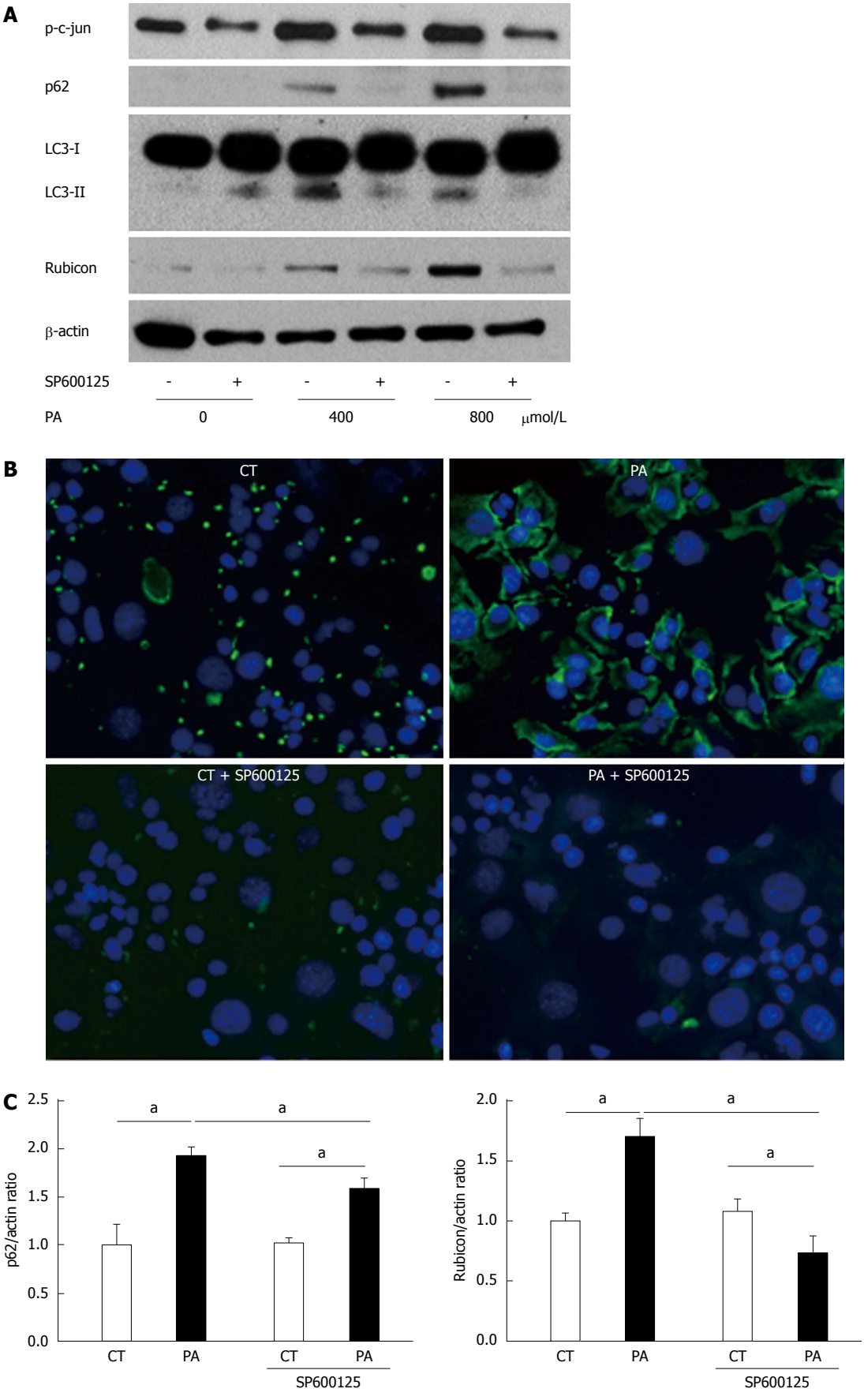


Figure 4 Palmitate induces expression of both p62 and Rubicon, and PA-induced Rubicon expression is mediated by c-Jun N-terminal kinase phosphorylation. A: Whole cell lysates were prepared from AML12 cells treated with PA (400 or 800 μmol/L) for 4 h in the presence or absence of SP600125. Immunoblotting analyses were performed for p62, LC3, and Rubicon. β-actin was used as the loading control; B: AML12 cells were incubated with 800 μmol/L PA for

4 h in the presence or absence of 30 μmol/L SP600125. p62 antibody was used as the primary antibody, and Alexa Fluor® 488-labeled secondary antibody was used for detecting p62 antibody. Samples were visualized using an EVOS microscope; C: Total RNA was prepared from AML12 cells treated with PA (800 μmol/L) for 4 h in the presence or absence of 30 μmol/L SP600125. Vehicle-treated cells were used as the control (CT). Both p62 and Rubicon mRNA were quantified by RT-qPCR, normalized to Actin, and expressed as the fold-change *vs* control cells without SP600125. All of the above experiments were repeated three times and representative results are shown. The quantitative data are presented as the mean ± SD; $^{a}P < 0.05$ *vs* control.

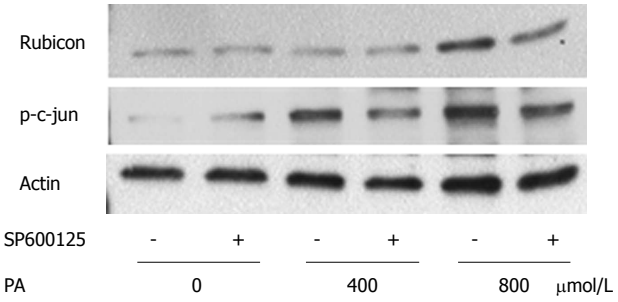


Figure 5 PA-induced Rubicon expression was mediated by c-Jun N-terminal kinase phosphorylation. Whole cell lysates were prepared from HepG2 cells treated with PA (400 or 800 μmol/L) for 4 h in the presence or absence of SP600125. Immunoblotting analyses were performed for p-c-jun and Rubicon. Actin was used as the loading control.

RT-qPCR (Figure 4C). These data indicated that p62 expression was mediated by both JNK-independent and JNK-dependent signals. When PA-induced Rubicon expression was inhibited by siRNA or JNK inhibitor, both PA-induced LC3-Ⅱ expression and p62 expression decreased (Figures 2F and 4A).

PA-induced Rubicon expression decreases with progression of lipoapoptosis, which might be affected by caspase-9 activation

We observed that Rubicon expression decreased at the protein level under the condition of lipotoxicity (Figure 2B and D). Because apoptosis was correlated with autophagy, we hypothesized that the lipoapoptosis signaling would affect Rubicon expression. When inhibitors of lipoapoptosis were used in AML12 cells that were treated with PA, Z-LEHD-fmk maintained a greater amount of Rubicon protein than both AML12 with PA alone and AML12 with other inhibitors (Figure 3B). Because the pan-caspase inhibitor QVD-OPh did not ameliorate the decreased Rubicon expression during lipoapoptosis, the cause of the decreased Rubicon expression was upstream of the executioner caspases (caspase-3 and -7). We considered that caspase-9 activation was associated with inhibition of Rubicon expression during lipoapoptosis.

Caspase-9 inhibition induces ER stress accumulation and hepatocyte enlargement, which is required for Rubicon expression

Both caspase-9 deletion and JNK phosphorylation have been previously reported to be associated with hepatocyte ballooning[22]. Therefore, we suspected that Rubicon also affects hepatocyte morphology. To test this hypothesis, the effect of lipotoxicity on cell size was evaluated under the conditions of caspase-9 inhibition and/or Rubicon knockdown. The size of PA-treated AML12 cells was significantly larger in the z-LEHD-fmk group than in the PA-alone group (Figure 3C). In contrast, Rubicon knockdown ameliorated hepatocyte enlargement in the PA-treated z-LEHD-fmk group (Figure 3C). In addition, caspase-9 inhibition induced accumulation of CHOP protein (Figure 3B).

DISCUSSION

NASH is characterized by both inflammation and fibrosis in the liver. Lipotoxic insults lead to persistent hepatocyte apoptosis, resulting in fibrosis in the liver. During these processes, ER stresses, such as the unfolding of proteins, accumulate in the hepatocytes as a result of apoptotic insults[23,24]. Autophagy can inhibit the accumulation of these insults by decomposing the aggregated proteins and removing the damaged organelles[11,25]. Therefore, autophagy can be considered not only a process of energy supply but also a survival mechanism that protects against lipoapoptosis. When the autophagic process is interrupted, insults accumulate and damaged cells are led to lipoapoptosis (Figure 2B, D and F).

JNK phosphorylation is a key signal of hepatocyte lipoapoptosis[5,9,21]. Previous studies have shown that a JNK-dependent pathway leads to inflammation and fibrosis in the NASH liver[26], and that JNK phosphorylation is associated with hepatocyte ballooning, which is a hallmark of NASH[22]. The present study demonstrated that JNK phosphorylation was involved in the induction of lipoapoptosis as well as in the inhibition of autophagy *via* Rubicon expression, revealing a new role of JNK signaling in hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. When Rubicon was knocked down, ER stress-induced lipoapoptosis was decreased. Impaired autophagy *via* Rubicon induced the accumulation of ER stress, consequently enhancing lipotoxicity. Indeed, Rubicon expression appeared before apoptosis (Figure 2B, D and F). These data suggest that impairment of autophagy occurs before lipoapoptosis. Thus, decreasing the expression of Rubicon could be an important early intervention to prevent NASH development.

As lipoapoptosis progressed, Rubicon expression decreased (Figure 2B and D). The pan-caspase inhibitor did not ameliorate the decrease of Rubicon protein (Figure 3B). In contrast, caspase-9 inhibitor Z-LEHD-fmk attenuated the decrease of Rubicon expression (Figure 3B). Thus, we speculate that caspase-9 might decompose Rubicon. Interestingly, caspase-9 has been suspected to be a key molecule in hepatocyte

ballooning. Levels of caspase-9 were found to be lower in ballooned than in normal hepatocytes in the NASH liver[22]. Furthermore, caspase-9-knockdown Huh-7 cells showed biological similarities with ballooned hepatocytes, such as intracellular lipid accumulation, accumulation of ER stress, and lipotoxic insult-induced sonic hedgehog signaling *via* JNK phosphorylation[22]. PA treatment upon caspase-9 inhibition in AML12 induced the accumulation of CHOP protein (Figure 3B). In contrast, a recent report demonstrated that pan-caspase inhibitor improved inflammation and fibrosis in the liver, and decreased the number of ballooned hepatocytes in HFD mice[27]. These data indicate that caspase-9 might play an important role in the formation of ballooned hepatocytes. According to the present study, caspase-9 inhibition has cytological effects reminiscent of hepatocyte ballooning, such as hepatocyte enlargement and accumulation of ER stress. Interestingly, knockdown of Rubicon counteracted the caspase-9 inhibition-induced hepatocyte enlargement. These data indicate that Rubicon expression and caspase-9 inhibition are required for the enlargement of hepatocytes. We hypothesize that caspase-9, JNK, and Rubicon are key molecules for hepatocyte ballooning in the NASH liver.

The present study revealed a number of significant findings: (1) autophagy is interrupted in both *in vivo* and *in vitro* NASH models; (2) PA-induced lipoapoptosis inhibits autophagy by Rubicon expression *via* JNK phosphorylation; (3) Rubicon expression appears prior to apoptosis and enhances PA toxicity in the hepatocytes; (4) Caspase-9 decreases Rubicon at the protein level during lipoapoptosis; and (5) Caspase-9 inhibition with Rubicon expression induces hepatocyte enlargement. We conclude that PA-induced JNK phosphorylation directly induced apoptosis and indirectly enhanced apoptosis *via* the inhibition of autophagy by Rubicon expression, and that Rubicon, caspase-9, and JNK are key molecules for lipotoxic insult-induced hepatocyte ballooning.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Asako Watanabe for western blotting and Koko Motodate for providing excellent secretarial support.

COMMENTS

Background

Lipoapoptosis in hepatocytes leads to infiltration of immune cells, activation of hepatic stellate cells, and generation of collagen fibers in the liver. Thus, prevention of hepatocyte apoptosis is considered to be a therapeutic strategy for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH). As apoptosis and autophagy negatively interact with each other, we focused this study on the Rubicon protein, a negative regulator of autophagy, in the NASH liver.

Background

Ballooned hepatocytes, which are a well-known hallmark of NASH disease severity, accumulate toxic insult. Hepatocytes in which caspase-9 was knocked down with lipotoxicity demonstrated a number of similarities with ballooned hepatocytes, such as accumulation of protein degradation machinery or secretion of fibrogenic signal. The interaction between exceeded apoptosis, impaired autophagy, and ballooning of hepatocytes has never been elucidated. The detailed interaction between these signals may be a therapeutic target of the NASH liver.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This is the first report to show that Rubicon is overexpressed in hepatocyte lipoapoptosis, Rubicon enhances lipotoxicity, caspase-9 decomposes Rubicon protein, and caspase-9 inhibition leads to ballooning of hepatocytes. Although interactions between apoptosis and autophagy have been previously reported elsewhere, the present study demonstrates the role of each of Rubicon and caspase-9 during hepatocyte lipoapoptosis.

Applications

Rubicon is induced during lipoapoptosis by c-Jun N-terminal kinase phosphorylation and enhances apoptosis *via* autophagy inhibition. Since caspase-9 inhibition and Rubicon overexpression led to hepatocyte ballooning, Rubicon may be associated with ballooning in hepatocytes. As the prevalence of ballooned hepatocytes correlates with disease severity in the NASH liver, control of Rubicon has potential for NASH therapy.

Terminology

Lipoapoptosis is a term for lipotoxicity-induced apoptosis. Lipoapoptosis in hepatocytes induces the infiltration of immune cells into the NASH liver, which leads to the generation of collagen fibers. Thus, lipoapoptosis is considered a leading cause of NASH development.

Peer-review

This manuscript contains fascinating and novel data for understanding of pathophysiology of NASH.

REFERENCES

1 **Rinella ME**, Sanyal AJ. NAFLD in 2014: Genetics, diagnostics and therapeutic advances in NAFLD. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **12**: 65-66 [PMID: 25560844 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2014.232]

2 **Yeh MM**, Brunt EM. Pathological features of fatty liver disease. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **147**: 754-764 [PMID: 25109884 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.07.056]

3 **Wong RJ**, Cheung R, Ahmed A. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis is the most rapidly growing indication for liver transplantation in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma in the U.S. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 2188-2195 [PMID: 24375711]

4 **Guicciardi ME**, Malhi H, Mott JL, Gores GJ. Apoptosis and necrosis in the liver. *Compr Physiol* 2013; **3**: 977-1010 [PMID: 23720337 DOI: 10.1002/cphy.c120020]

5 **Malhi H**, Bronk SF, Werneburg NW, Gores GJ. Free fatty acids induce JNK-dependent hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 12093-12101 [PMID: 16505490 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M510660200]

6 **Cazanave SC**, Gores GJ. Mechanisms and clinical implications of hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. *Clin Lipidol* 2010; **5**: 71-85 [PMID: 20368747 DOI: 10.2217/clp.09.85]

7 **Unger RH**, Orci L. Lipoapoptosis: its mechanism and its diseases. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2002; **1585**: 202-212 [PMID: 12531555 DOI: 10.1016/S1388-1981(02)00342-6]

8 **Ibrahim SH**, Akazawa Y, Cazanave SC, Bronk SF, Elmi NA, Werneburg NW, Billadeau DD, Gores GJ. Glycogen synthase kinase-3 (GSK-3) inhibition attenuates hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 765-772 [PMID: 21147505 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.09.039]

9 **Cazanave SC**, Elmi NA, Akazawa Y, Bronk SF, Mott JL, Gores GJ. CHOP and AP-1 cooperatively mediate PUMA expression during lipoapoptosis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2010; **299**: G236-G243 [PMID: 20430872 DOI: 10.1152/

ajpgi.00091.2010]
10 **González-Rodríguez A**, Mayoral R, Agra N, Valdecantos MP, Pardo V, Miquilena-Colina ME, Vargas-Castrillón J, Lo Iacono O, Corazzari M, Fimia GM, Piacentini M, Muntané J, Boscá L, García-Monzón C, Martín-Sanz P, Valverde ÁM. Impaired autophagic flux is associated with increased endoplasmic reticulum stress during the development of NAFLD. *Cell Death Dis* 2014; **5**: e1179 [PMID: 24743734 DOI: 10.1038/cddis.2014.162]
11 **Jiang P**, Mizushima N. Autophagy and human diseases. *Cell Res* 2014; **24**: 69-79 [PMID: 24323045 DOI: 10.1038/cr.2013.161]
12 **Amaravadi RK**, Yu D, Lum JJ, Bui T, Christophorou MA, Evan GI, Thomas-Tikhonenko A, Thompson CB. Autophagy inhibition enhances therapy-induced apoptosis in a Myc-induced model of lymphoma. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 326-336 [PMID: 17235397 DOI: 10.1172/JCI28833]
13 **Del Bello B**, Toscano M, Moretti D, Maellaro E. Cisplatin-induced apoptosis inhibits autophagy, which acts as a pro-survival mechanism in human melanoma cells. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e57236 [PMID: 23437349 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0057236]
14 **Matsunaga K**, Saitoh T, Tabata K, Omori H, Satoh T, Kurotori N, Maejima I, Shirahama-Noda K, Ichimura T, Isobe T, Akira S, Noda T, Yoshimori T. Two Beclin 1-binding proteins, Atg14L and Rubicon, reciprocally regulate autophagy at different stages. *Nat Cell Biol* 2009; **11**: 385-396 [PMID: 19270696 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1846]
15 **Caldwell S**, Ikura Y, Dias D, Isomoto K, Yabu A, Moskaluk C, Pramoonjago P, Simmons W, Scruggs H, Rosenbaum N, Wilkinson T, Toms P, Argo CK, Al-Osaimi AM, Redick JA. Hepatocellular ballooning in NASH. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 719-723 [PMID: 20624660 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.04.031]
16 **Matteoni CA**, Younossi ZM, Gramlich T, Boparai N, Liu YC, McCullough AJ. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a spectrum of clinical and pathological severity. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116**: 1413-1419 [PMID: 10348825 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(99)70506-8]
17 **Guy CD**, Suzuki A, Abdelmalek MF, Burchette JL, Diehl AM. Treatment response in the PIVENS trial is associated with decreased Hedgehog pathway activity. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 98-107 [PMID: 24849310 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27235]
18 **Brunt EM**, Tiniakos DG. Histopathology of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 5286-5296 [PMID: 21072891 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i42.5286]
19 **Zatloukal K**, French SW, Stumptner C, Strnad P, Harada M, Toivola DM, Cadrin M, Omary MB. From Mallory to Mallory-Denk bodies: what, how and why? *Exp Cell Res* 2007; **313**: 2033-2049 [PMID: 17531973 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexcr.2007.04.024]
20 **Kleiner DE**, Brunt EM, Van Natta M, Behling C, Contos MJ, Cummings OW, Ferrell LD, Liu YC, Torbenson MS, Unalp-Arida A, Yeh M, McCullough AJ, Sanyal AJ. Design and validation of a histological scoring system for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 1313-1321 [PMID: 15915461 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20701]
21 **Kakisaka K**, Cazanave SC, Fingas CD, Guicciardi ME, Bronk SF, Werneburg NW, Mott JL, Gores GJ. Mechanisms of lysophosphatidylcholine-induced hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **302**: G77-G84 [PMID: 21995961 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00301.2011]
22 **Kakisaka K**, Cazanave SC, Werneburg NW, Razumilava N, Mertens JC, Bronk SF, Gores GJ. A hedgehog survival pathway in 'undead' lipotoxic hepatocytes. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 844-851 [PMID: 22641094 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.05.011]
23 **Akazawa Y**, Cazanave S, Mott JL, Elmi N, Bronk SF, Kohno S, Charlton MR, Gores GJ. Palmitoleate attenuates palmitate-induced Bim and PUMA up-regulation and hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: 586-593 [PMID: 20206402 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.01.003]
24 **Cazanave SC**, Mott JL, Elmi NA, Bronk SF, Werneburg NW, Akazawa Y, Kahraman A, Garrison SP, Zambetti GP, Charlton MR, Gores GJ. JNK1-dependent PUMA expression contributes to hepatocyte lipoapoptosis. *J Biol Chem* 2009; **284**: 26591-26602 [PMID: 19638343 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109.022491]
25 **Yoshii SR**, Mizushima N. Autophagy machinery in the context of mammalian mitophagy. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2015; **1853**: 2797-2801 [PMID: 25634658 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamcr.2015.01.013]
26 **Seki E**, Brenner DA, Karin M. A liver full of JNK: signaling in regulation of cell function and disease pathogenesis, and clinical approaches. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 307-320 [PMID: 22705006 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.06.004]
27 **Barreyro FJ**, Holod S, Finocchietto PV, Camino AM, Aquino JB, Avagnina A, Carreras MC, Poderoso JJ, Gores GJ. The pan-caspase inhibitor Emricasan (IDN-6556) decreases liver injury and fibrosis in a murine model of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 953-966 [PMID: 24750664 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12570]

P- Reviewer: Kucera O **S- Editor**: Qi Y **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6520

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6520-6526
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Case Control Study

TCF7L2 rs7903146 polymorphism is associated with gastric cancer: A case-control study in the Venezuelan population

Keila Torres, Luis Labrador, Elvis Valderrama, Miguel Angel Chiurillo

Keila Torres, Luis Labrador, Elvis Valderrama, Miguel Angel Chiurillo, Laboratorio de Genética Molecular "Dr. Jorge Yunis-Turbay", Decanato de Ciencias de la Salud, Universidad Centroccidental Lisandro Alvarado, Barquisimeto 3001, Venezuela

Keila Torres, Postgrado en Ciencias Biológicas, Departamento de Biología Celular, Universidad Simón Bolívar, Caracas 1081-A, Venezuela

Elvis Valderrama, Departamento de Anatomía Patología, Hospital Antonio María Pineda-UCLA, Barquisimeto 3001, Venezuela

Miguel Angel Chiurillo, Departamento de Patologia Clínica, Universidade Estadual de Campinas, Campinas 13083, São Paulo, Brazil

Author contributions: Chiurillo MA and Valderrama E designed the research; Valderrama E collected material and clinical data from patients; Torres K and Labrador L performed the assays; Chiurillo MA, Torres K and Labrador L analyzed the data; Chiurillo MA wrote the paper.

Supported by CDCHT-UCLA grant 001-CS-2013.

Institutional review board statement: The study protocol was approved by the Bioethics Committee of the School of Health Sciences, Universidad Centroccidental Lisandro Alvarado.

Informed consent statement: Informed consent was obtained from each patient.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No potential conflicts of interest relevant to this article were reported.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Miguel Angel Chiurillo, MD, PhD, Departamento de Patologia Clínica, Universidade Estadual de Campinas, Campinas 13083, São Paulo, Brazil. mchiurillo@ucla.edu.ve
Telephone: +55-19-35217370
Fax: +55-19-35219434

Received: March 14, 2016
Peer-review started: March 15, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 25, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016
Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To explore the association between *TCF7L2* rs12255372 and rs7903146 single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and gastric cancer risk in Venezuelan patients.

METHODS: We performed a case-control study including 122 paraffin-embedded archived intestinal-type gastric cancer samples and 129 biopsies obtained by superior endoscopy from chronic gastritis patients. Gastric cancer samples were classified according the degree of carcinoma differentiation. Genomic DNA was extracted from tissues, and the two SNPs of *TCF7L2* gene (rs12255372 and rs7903146) were genotyped by polymerase chain reaction-restriction fragment length polymorphism reactions. Multiple regression analysis with adjustments for age and gender were performed and best-fitting models of inheritance were determined.

Statistic powers were post-hoc calculated.

RESULTS: After adjusting for age and sex the *TCF7L2* rs7903146 TT genotype was associated with gastric cancer risk under the recessive genetic model (OR = 3.11, 95%CI: 1.22-7.92, *P* = 0.017). We further investigated the distribution of rs12255372 and rs7903146 genotypes according gastric cancer stratified by degree of differentiation, and we observed that carriers of rs7903146 T allele (CT + TT *vs* CC) had a significantly increased risk of moderate/well differentiated gastric cancer (dominant model, OR = 2.55, 95%CI: 1.35-4.80, *P* = 0.004), whereas the rs7903146 TT genotype was associated with poorly differentiated gastric cancer in the recessive model (OR = 3.65, 95%CI: 1.25-10.62, *P* = 0.018). We did not find association between rs12255372 SNP and the susceptibility of developing gastric cancer.

CONCLUSION: *TCF7L2* rs7903146 polymorphism is associated with gastric cancer risk in the Venezuelan population, and could be related to determine the degree of differentiation of tumor cells.

Key words: Gastric cancer; Wnt/β-catenin pathway; *TCF7L2*; Single nucleotide polymorphism; Genetic susceptibility

Core tip: TCF7L2 transcription factor plays an important role in transcriptional activation induced by the Wnt/β-catenin pathway, which is reported to be associated with human carcinogenesis and it is found activated in 30%-50% of gastric cancers. *TCF7L2* polymorphisms rs12255372 and rs7903146 are associated with a significant risk of type 2 diabetes and in the development of several types of cancer. This is the first report of association of these *TCF7L2* variants with the risk of gastric cancer. We conducted a case-control study including samples of Venezuelan patients in which the rs7903146 T allele was found associated with the risk of gastric cancer, suggesting its use as potential diagnosis biomarker in patients with this malignance.

Torres K, Labrador L, Valderrama E, Chiurillo MA. *TCF7L2* rs7903146 polymorphism is associated with gastric cancer: A case-control study in the Venezuelan population. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6520-6526 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6520.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6520

INTRODUCTION

The transcription factor 7-like 2 (*TCF7L2* or *TCF-4*) gene, is located on the long arm of chromosome 10q25.3[1]. Moreover, the TCF7L2 protein is a high mobility group box-containing transcription factor, which acts as an effector of the Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway, therefore playing a pivotal role in cell development and growth regulation[2-4].

The TCF7L2 protein is also involved in blood glucose homeostasis, and their gene variants rs7903146 (C>T) and rs12255372 (G>T) [it is in high linkage disequilibrium (LD) with rs7903146] are among the most significant genetic factors influencing the risk for type 2 diabetes (T2DM)[5-7]. Although the specific role of TCF7L2 in the development of T2DM is still being investigated, evidence indicates that alterations in the Wnt signaling pathway affect insulin secretion through the reduction of the GLP-1 production[8,9]. Moreover, aberrant Wnt signaling is involved in the pathogenesis of numerous types of human cancers[10], and particularly to the development and progression of gastric cancer[11].

Although with contradictory conclusions, several studies have studied the association between *TCF7L2* rs7903146 and rs12255372 single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP) with susceptibility to several types of cancer, including in the prostate, breast, colon, rectum, lung and ovary[11-21]. However, to the best of our knowledge, the participation of these SNPs in the susceptibility of gastric cancer has not been evaluated yet.

Here, we present a case-control study carried out to evaluate the role of rs7903146 and rs12255372 polymorphisms in the risk of gastric cancer in the Venezuelan population where gastric cancer is the leading cause of death due to cancer (http://www.mpps.gob.ve/).

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Subjects

A total number of 122 gastric cancer cases and 129 controls were included in this study. The group of cases consisted of paraffin-embedded intestinal-type gastric cancer samples according to Laurén's classification, which were obtained from the Pathology Department Service of the Hospital Antonio María Pineda (HAMP), Barquisimeto, Venezuela. Tumor samples were classified into well differentiated, moderately differentiated and poorly differentiated cancer depending on the degree of differentiation of the cancerous cells[22].

Patients diagnosed with chronic gastritis without evidence of gastric cancer constituted the control group. Chronic gastritis samples obtained from patients with criteria for indication of endoscopy (Gastroenterology Service of the HAMP) were evaluated according to the Sydney classification system in regard to the presence and degree of atrophic gastritis, granulocytic infiltration and lymphocytic infiltration. Two independent experts in pathology from the Department of Pathology (HAMP) evaluated all biopsies. The Bioethics Committee of the School of Health Sciences, Universidad Centroccidental

Table 1 Characteristics of the study population *n* (%)

Variables	Controls	Gastric cancer
Overall	129	122
Sex[a]		
Male	63 (48.8)	88 (72.1)
Female	66 (51.2)	34 (27.9)
Age[a], mean ± SD (yr)	58.81 ± 9.99	62.32 ± 14.29
Histological differentiation		
Well		14 (11.5)
Moderated		56 (45.9)
Poor		52 (42.6)

[a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* control.

Lisandro Alvarado (UCLA) approved this study, and all patients gave their written informed consent to participate in the study.

Genotyping

Genomic DNA was extracted from paraffin sections of patients' tissues by MagneSil® Genomic Fixed Tissue System (Promega, United States), and from endoscopic biopsies using the Wizard Genomic DNA Purification kit (Promega, United States) following the manufacturer's instructions.

SNPs genotyping was achieved by polymerase chain reaction-restriction fragment length polymorphism (PCR-RFLP) method. We designed primers to detect both polymorphisms using software DNAMAN version 7.212 (Lynnon Corporation) in order to amplify shorter DNA fragment, which resulted more efficient when DNA extracted from paraffin-embedded tissues was used as template. The primer sets included in the reactions to amplify the rs7903146 and rs12255372 polymorphisms were: forward 5'-ACAATTAGAGAGCTAAGCACTTTTTAGGTA-3'[23], reverse 5'-CTAAGTTACTTGCCTTCCCTG-3, and forward 5'-GAAAGTGTATTGCTATGTCCAG-3', reverse 5'-CAGAGGCCTGAGTCATTATCA-3', respectively.

PCR reactions were performed in 25 μL reaction volume containing 1-2 μL of genomic DNA, 1 × Green GoTaq® Flexi Buffer, 1.5 μmol/L $MgCl_2$, 0.2 μmol/L dNTPs, 0.6 μmol/L of each primer and 1.25 U of GoTaq DNA Polymerase (Promega, United States). The amplification conditions were: 3 min at 95 ℃; then 35 cycles of 20 s at 95 ℃, 30 s at 59 ℃ (for rs12255372)/ 57 ℃ (for rs7903146), and 30 s at 72 ℃; followed by a final extension cycle of 5 min at 72 ℃. To perform the allelic assignment PCR products were incubated at 37 ℃ overnight with a restriction enzyme, *Rsa*I (New England Biolabs, United States) for rs7903146 and *Tsp*509I (New England Biolabs, United States) for rs12255372. For rs7903146, the *Rsa*I enzyme produces two fragments of 81-bp and 29-bp with the C allele, whereas the T allele is not cleaved, and its PCR products remains of 110-bp. Fragments with the rs12255372 G allele are not cleaved and remains of the original size (119-bp), moreover, the T allele PCR product results in two fragments of 85-bp and 34-bp after incubating with *Tsp*509I enzyme. PCR products and restriction fragments were analyzed on 3% agarose gel electrophoresis with ethidium bromide staining. To validate the RFLP-PCR assays we randomly select 20% of the samples to carry out DNA nucleotide sequencing. Furthermore, 30 samples of each genotype were re-genotyped and a concordance of 100 was observed.

Statistical analysis

P values and ORs with 95%CI were calculated using multiple regression analysis adjusted by age and gender. A *P* value of < 0.05 was considered statistically significant when comparing differences among groups, and the analyses were carried out using the SPSS 11.0 package software (SPSS Inc., United States). We used two-sided χ^2 test to determine if genetic distributions were in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium. The analysis for LD was estimated using the Arlequin software version 3.5.1.2. The comparisons of genotype distributions of polymorphisms were performed following the codominant, dominant and recessive inheritance models, taking into account known risk alleles. To determine the best-fitting models we used the Akaike information criterion (AIC). Post-hoc power analyses were calculated using G*Power software (version 3.1). A biomedical statistician from the UCLA performed statistical review of the study. All authors accessed the data of the study and agreed final version of the manuscript.

RESULTS

The characteristics of the cases and controls are summarized in Table 1. Gastric cancer tissues included 14 well- (11.5%), 56 moderately (45.9%), and 52 poorly (42.6%) differentiated carcinoma. As shown in Table 2, the genotype distributions of rs7903146 and rs12255372 SNPs in the control group were in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium ($P > 0.05$). The differences between the groups with respect to the distribution by age and sex were significant; therefore we adjusted for these variables in the subsequent analyses of the relationship between polymorphisms and gastric cancer susceptibility. Rs7903146 and rs12255372 SNPs were in moderate LD ($D' < 0.644$; $r^2 < 0.33$). Among gastric cancer cases five samples did not amplify with the rs12255372 primer set.

The rs7903146 TT genotype was significantly associated with increased risk of gastric cancer under both the codominant (OR = 3.61, 95%CI: 1.36-9.61, $P = 0.01$) and the recessive model (OR = 3.11, 95%CI: 1.22-7.92, $P = 0.017$), after adjustment for age and gender (Table 2). However, the recessive model of inheritance was suggested as the best-fitting one by the AIC score.

Furthermore, we evaluated the genotype distribution of rs7903146 and rs12255372 SNPs in the

Table 2 Association of *TCF7L2* rs7903146 and rs12255372 polymorphisms with gastric cancer *n* (%)

SNP	Risk allele	HWE (control), *P* value	Inheritance model	Genotype	Control	Gastric cancer	OR (95%CI)[1]	*P* value[1]
rs7903146	T	0.741			*n* = 129	*n* = 122		
				CC	73 (56.6)	56 (45.9)	1	
			Codominant	CT	49 (38.0)	48 (39.3)	1.30 (0.75–2.25)	0.345
				TT	7 (5.4)	18 (14.8)	3.61 (1.36–9.61)	0.010
			Dominant	CC	73 (56.6)	56 (45.9)	1	
				CT + TT	56 (43.4)	66 (54.1)	1.58 (0.94–2.64)	0.082
			Recessive	CC + CT	122 (94.6)	104 (85.2)	1	
				TT	7 (5.4)	18 (14.8)	3.11 (1.22–7.92)	0.017
rs12255372	T	0.053			*n* = 129	*n* = 117		
				GG	85 (65.9)	78 (66.7)	1	
			Codominant	GT	35 (27.1)	32 (27.3)	1.06 (0.59–1.92)	0.841
				TT	9 (7.0)	7 (6.0)	1.11 (0.38–2.25)	0.849
			Dominant	GG	85 (65.9)	78 (66.7)	1	
				GT + TT	44 (34.1)	39 (33.3)	1.06 (0.61–1.83)	0.839
			Recessive	GG + GT	120 (93.0)	110 (94.0)	1	
				TT	9 (7.0)	7 (6.0)	1.02 (0.36–2.90)	0.972

[1]Adjusted by age and gender; Statistical power (1-β) was calculated for all observed *P* values. HWE: Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium; SNP: Single nucleotide polymorphism.

Table 3 Distribution of *TCF7L2* rs7903146 and rs12255372 single nucleotide polymorphisms according to the degree of histological differentiation of gastric cancer *n* (%)

SNP	Inheritance model	Genotype	Control	M/W GC	OR (95%CI)[1]	*P* value[1]	P GC	OR (95%CI)[1]	*P* value[1]
rs7903146			*n* = 129	*n* = 70			*n* = 52		
		CC	73 (56.6)	25 (35.7)	1		31 (59.6)	1	
	Codominant	CT	49 (38.0)	36 (51.4)	2.33 (1.20–4.51)	0.012	12 (23.1)	0.57 (0.26–1.23)	0.152
		TT	7 (5.4)	9 (12.9)	5.70 (1.60–20.3)	0.007	9 (17.3)	2.99 (0.99–8.92)	0.050
	Dominant	CC	73 (56.6)	25 (35.7)	1		31 (59.6)	1	
		CT + TT	56 (43.4)	45 (64.3)	2.55 (1.35–4.80)	0.004	21 (40.4)	0.88 (0.45–1.71)	0.708
	Recessive	CC + CT	122 (94.6)	61 (87.1)	1		43 (82.7)	1	
		TT	7 (5.4)	9 (12.9)	2.93 (0.99–8.68)	0.053	9 (17.3)	3.65 (1.25–10.6)	0.018
rs12255372			*n* = 129	*n* = 66			*n* = 51		
		GG	85 (65.9)	38 (57.6)	1		40 (78.4)	1	
	Codominant	GT	35 (27.1)	24 (36.3)	1.44 (0.39–5.36)	0.589	8 (15.7)	0.51 (0.21–1.21)	0.129
		TT	9 (7.0)	4 (6.1)	1.63 (0.83–3.21)	0.156	3 (5.9)	0.81 (0.20–3.26)	0.770
	Dominant	GG	85 (65.9)	38 (57.6)	1		40 (78.4)	1	
		GT + TT	44 (34.1)	28 (42.4)	1.58 (0.84–3.00)	0.158	11 (21.6)	0.56 (0.26–1.22)	0.145
	Recessive	GG + GT	120 (93.0)	62 (93.9)	1		48 (94.1)	1	
		TT	9 (7.0)	4 (6.1)	1.15 (0.33–4.05)	0.823	3 (5.9)	0.87 (0.22–3.43)	0.844

[1]Adjusted by age and gender; Statistical power (1-β) was calculated for all observed *P* values. W/M: Well and moderately differentiated gastric cancer; P GC: Poorly differentiated gastric cancer; SNP: Single nucleotide polymorphism.

gastric cancer samples divided according to the degree of histological differentiation of tumors (Table 3). To conduct these analyses, samples of well and moderately differentiated gastric carcinoma were gathered in a single group (57.4%; 70/122). Compared with CC genotype, rs7903146 CT heterozygous and TT homozygous genotypes, as well as the combined genotype CT + TT, had a significantly increased risk for moderate/well differentiated gastric cancer (ORs = 2.33, 5.70 and 2.55, respectively), adjusted by age and gender (Table 3).

Moreover, rs7903146 TT genotype was associated with poorly differentiated gastric cancer in the recessive model (OR = 3.65, 95%CI: 1.25-10.62, *P* = 0.018). However, in these analyses the AIC score suggested the dominant model (CT + TT *vs* CC) as the best-fitting one in the comparisons of gastritis samples with both groups of gastric cancer. Importantly, the post-hoc analysis revealed that the study has acceptable statistical power (1 - β > 0.80 at type I level of 0.05) to support the observed significant associations for rs7903146 genotypes. Finally, we did not identify any significant difference in genotype frequencies of rs12255372 SNP between gastric cancer and gastritis groups, even taking into account the degree of tumor differentiation (Tables 2 and 3).

DISCUSSION

Gastric cancer is a multifactorial disease that results

from the complex interplay of several host, bacterial, and environmental factors acting at gastric mucosa, that lead to the deregulation of many oncogenic signaling pathways[24]. Among them, the Wnt/β-catenin pathway is observed active in 30% to 50% of gastric cancer tissues and in several types of gastric cancer cell lines[25-27].

Available data confirmed that gain-of-function mutations in Wnt activators, as *CTNNB1* (the gene that encodes β-catenin protein), and/or inactivating mutations and promoter hypermethylation in tumor suppressor genes (*e.g.*, *APC*) lead to nuclear β-catenin accumulation and constitutive activation of the Wnt pathway in gastric cancer[11]. In the nucleus, free β-catenin binds TCF7L2 transcription factors, thereby modulating expression of genes (*e.g.*, *c-myc*) implicated in proliferation, inhibition of apoptosis, tissue invasion and metastasis[28]. It is known that alterations in *TCF7L2* gene and its expression, which also have a role in T2DM susceptibility, mediate carcinogenic effects through increased expression of *c-myc* and *cyclin D*[12,29]. Moreover, while several mutations in Wnt pathway components, such as *APC*, *CTNNB1*, *β-TrCP*, *Axin1* and *Axin2* have been implicated in gastric cancer[11,30], the only *TCF7L2* alterations so far reported in gastric tumors are somatic frameshift mutations in the exon 14 of the gene[31,32].

In our work the rs7903146 TT genotype was related with the risk of gastric cancer in the codominant and recessive models (OR = 3.61 and 3.11, respectively). Interestingly, the T allele at rs7903146 *TCF7L2* is the most correlated genetic variant with T2DM susceptibility, which has also been associated with the risk for several types of cancer.

Although, case-control studies involving *TCF7L2* rs7903146 and rs12255372 polymorphisms and cancer susceptibility have shown contradictory results, recent meta-analyses revealed that the *TCF7L2* rs7903146 SNP is associated significantly with the risk of breast, prostate and colon cancer, as well as between the rs12255372 polymorphism and the susceptibility of breast cancer[33-36]. Moreover, the rs12255372 SNP was not found associated with gastric cancer risk in this work.

The mechanism involving *TCF7L2* gene polymorphisms with cancer risk remains unclear, however the fact that *TCF7L2* gene product participates in Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway allows to envisage their participation in carcinogenesis. Moreover, recent evidence suggests that *TCF7L2* polymorphisms may be related with changes in expression levels of its gene product. Gaulton *et al*[37] showed that the *TCF7L2* intronic SNP rs7903146 is located in an islet FAIRE (Formaldehyde-Assisted Isolation of Regulatory Elements)-enriched site and affects chromatin state and enhancer function. Furthermore, *TCF7L2* rs7094463, rs10749127, and rs11196224 SNPs, which correlate with recurrence of prostate cancer in patients that were treated with radical prostatectomy, are located in potential transcriptional regulatory regions[38]. It is suggested that these DNA polymorphisms can alter the transcription factor binding sites and thus affect the *TCF7L2* expression level.

Our results also suggest that the rs7903146 polymorphism (T allele) may be involved in defining the degree of differentiation of tumor cells. However, we cannot rule out that the small number of gastric adenocarcinoma samples with the *TCF7L2* rs7903146 TT genotype could drive the observed association with the degree of differentiation of tumor cells when it was used codominant and recessive models. The association of genetic and epigenetic alterations with subtypes of gastric carcinoma suggests particular interactions for the development of a gastric tumor with specific degree of differentiation[39-41]. Furthermore, due to the aggressiveness of gastric cancer has been associated with the degree of differentiation of tumor cells, the evaluation of this aspect should be considered in the management of gastric cancer[22,42].

In conclusion, this is the first study that examines the role of *TCF7L2* rs7903146 and rs12255372 SNPs related to susceptibility of gastric cancer in a Venezuelan high-risk population. Moreover, after adjustment for age and gender, we found that the rs7903146 polymorphism was significantly associated with the genetic susceptibility to gastric cancer in the Venezuelan population. This work gives additional support to understanding the participation of alterations in the Wnt/β-catenin pathway in the gastric carcinogenesis, and could represent a contribution to the identification of novel biomarkers for detection and/or monitoring progression or recurrence of gastric cancer. However, although the post-hoc analysis indicates that there was enough statistical power to support the observed associations, analysis of a larger sample size is needed to corroborate the participation of the *TCF7L2* polymorphisms in the risk of gastric cancer.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Granda N and Armanie E for the management of patients at Gastroenterology Service of the HAMP. We would also like to thank Camargo M and Mendoza L for their technical assistance. To Dr. Lander N for revising the English of the text.

COMMENTS

Background

TCF7L2 is an effector of the Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway, whose deregulation can result in human carcinogenesis. *TCF7L2* variants rs12255372 and rs7903146 besides being associated with risk of type 2 diabetes have been involved in the development of several cancers.

Research frontiers

Gastric cancer continues being one of the leading causes of cancer-related death in the world. *TCF7L2* variants rs12255372 and rs7903146 have been

related to the development of some types of cancer, but their participation in the susceptibility of gastric cancer has not been evaluated yet.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Its results indicate that the rs7903146 T allele is associated with gastric cancer risk in Venezuelan population, suggesting its use as potential diagnosis biomarker in patients with this malignance.

Applications

Potential use of rs7903146 as diagnosis biomarker in patients with this gastric cancer.

Peer-review

The paper is well organized and the results are very straightforward and clear.

REFERENCES

1 **Duval A**, Busson-Leconiat M, Berger R, Hamelin R. Assignment of the TCF-4 gene (TCF7L2) to human chromosome band 10q25.3. *Cytogenet Cell Genet* 2000; **88**: 264-265 [PMID: 10828605 DOI: 10.1159/000015534]

2 **Cavallo RA**, Cox RT, Moline MM, Roose J, Polevoy GA, Clevers H, Peifer M, Bejsovec A. Drosophila Tcf and Groucho interact to repress Wingless signalling activity. *Nature* 1998; **395**: 604-608 [PMID: 9783586 DOI: 10.1038/26982]

3 **Ravindranath A**, O'Connell A, Johnston PG, El-Tanani MK. The role of LEF/TCF factors in neoplastic transformation. *Curr Mol Med* 2008; **8**: 38-50 [PMID: 18289012 DOI: 10.2174/156652408783565559]

4 **MacDonald BT**, Tamai K, He X. Wnt/beta-catenin signaling: components, mechanisms, and diseases. *Dev Cell* 2009; **17**: 9-26 [PMID: 19619488 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2009.06.016]

5 **Zhang C**, Qi L, Hunter DJ, Meigs JB, Manson JE, van Dam RM, Hu FB. Variant of transcription factor 7-like 2 (TCF7L2) gene and the risk of type 2 diabetes in large cohorts of U.S. women and men. *Diabetes* 2006; **55**: 2645-2648 [PMID: 16936216 DOI: 10.2337/db06-0643]

6 **Bodhini D**, Radha V, Dhar M, Narayani N, Mohan V. The rs12255372(G/T) and rs7903146(C/T) polymorphisms of the TCF7L2 gene are associated with type 2 diabetes mellitus in Asian Indians. *Metabolism* 2007; **56**: 1174-1178 [PMID: 17697858 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2007.04.012]

7 **Grant SF**, Thorleifsson G, Reynisdottir I, Benediktsson R, Manolescu A, Sainz J, Helgason A, Stefansson H, Emilsson V, Helgadottir A, Styrkarsdottir U, Magnusson KP, Walters GB, Palsdottir E, Jonsdottir T, Gudmundsdottir T, Gylfason A, Saemundsdottir J, Wilensky RL, Reilly MP, Rader DJ, Bagger Y, Christiansen C, Gudnason V, Sigurdsson G, Thorsteinsdottir U, Gulcher JR, Kong A, Stefansson K. Variant of transcription factor 7-like 2 (TCF7L2) gene confers risk of type 2 diabetes. *Nat Genet* 2006; **38**: 320-323 [PMID: 16415884 DOI: 10.1038/ng1732]

8 **Yi F**, Brubaker PL, Jin T. TCF-4 mediates cell type-specific regulation of proglucagon gene expression by beta-catenin and glycogen synthase kinase-3beta. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 1457-1464 [PMID: 15525634 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M411487200]

9 **Shu L**, Sauter NS, Schulthess FT, Matveyenko AV, Oberholzer J, Maedler K. Transcription factor 7-like 2 regulates beta-cell survival and function in human pancreatic islets. *Diabetes* 2008; **57**: 645-653 [PMID: 18071026 DOI: 10.2337/db07-0847]

10 **Polakis P**. Wnt signaling in cancer. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2012; **4**: pii a008052 [PMID: 22438566 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a008052]

11 **Chiurillo MA**. Role of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway in gastric cancer: An in-depth literature review. *World J Exp Med* 2015; **5**: 84-102 [PMID: 25992323 DOI: 10.5493/wjem.v5.i2.84]

12 **Burwinkel B**, Shanmugam KS, Hemminki K, Meindl A, Schmutzler RK, Sutter C, Wappenschmidt B, Kiechle M, Bartram CR, Frank B. Transcription factor 7-like 2 (TCF7L2) variant is associated with familial breast cancer risk: a case-control study. *BMC Cancer* 2006; **6**: 268 [PMID: 17109766 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-6-268]

13 **Folsom AR**, Pankow JS, Peacock JM, Bielinski SJ, Heiss G, Boerwinkle E. Variation in TCF7L2 and increased risk of colon cancer: the Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities (ARIC) Study. *Diabetes Care* 2008; **31**: 905-909 [PMID: 18268068 DOI: 10.2337/dc07-2131]

14 **Hazra A**, Fuchs CS, Chan AT, Giovannucci EL, Hunter DJ. Association of the TCF7L2 polymorphism with colorectal cancer and adenoma risk. *Cancer Causes Control* 2008; **19**: 975-980 [PMID: 18478343 DOI: 10.1007/s10552-008-9164-3]

15 **Goode EL**, Szabo C, Prokunina-Olsson L, Vierkant RA, Fredericksen ZS, Collins FS, White KL, Schmidt M, Fridley BL, Couch FJ. No association between a candidate TCF7L2 variant and risk of breast or ovarian cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2009; **9**: 312 [PMID: 19732438 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-9-312]

16 **Meyer TE**, Boerwinkle E, Morrison AC, Volcik KA, Sanderson M, Coker AL, Pankow JS, Folsom AR. Diabetes genes and prostate cancer in the Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities study. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2010; **19**: 558-565 [PMID: 20142250 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-09-0902]

17 **Connor AE**, Baumgartner RN, Baumgartner KB, Kerber RA, Pinkston C, John EM, Torres-Mejia G, Hines L, Giuliano A, Wolff RK, Slattery ML. Associations between TCF7L2 polymorphisms and risk of breast cancer among Hispanic and non-Hispanic white women: the Breast Cancer Health Disparities Study. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2012; **136**: 593-602 [PMID: 23085767 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-012-2299-7]

18 **Machiela MJ**, Lindström S, Allen NE, Haiman CA, Albanes D, Barricarte A, Berndt SI, Bueno-de-Mesquita HB, Chanock S, Gaziano JM, Gapstur SM, Giovannucci E, Henderson BE, Jacobs EJ, Kolonel LN, Krogh V, Ma J, Stampfer MJ, Stevens VL, Stram DO, Tjønneland A, Travis R, Willett WC, Hunter DJ, Le Marchand L, Kraft P. Association of type 2 diabetes susceptibility variants with advanced prostate cancer risk in the Breast and Prostate Cancer Cohort Consortium. *Am J Epidemiol* 2012; **176**: 1121-1129 [PMID: 23193118 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kws191]

19 **Sainz J**, Rudolph A, Hoffmeister M, Frank B, Brenner H, Chang-Claude J, Hemminki K, Försti A. Effect of type 2 diabetes predisposing genetic variants on colorectal cancer risk. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2012; **97**: E845-E851 [PMID: 22419714 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2011-2565]

20 **Alanazi MS**, Parine NR, Shaik JP, Alabdulkarim HA, Ajaj SA, Khan Z. Association of single nucleotide polymorphisms in Wnt signaling pathway genes with breast cancer in Saudi patients. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e59555 [PMID: 23516639 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0059555]

21 **Páez D**, Gerger A, Zhang W, Yang D, Labonte MJ, Benhanim L, Kahn M, Lenz F, Lenz C, Ning Y, Wakatsuki T, Loupakis F, Lenz HJ. Association of common gene variants in the WNT/β-catenin pathway with colon cancer recurrence. *Pharmacogenomics J* 2014; **14**: 142-150 [PMID: 23817222 DOI: 10.1038/tpj.2013.20]

22 **Crawford J**. The gastrointestinal tract. In: Robbins SL, Kumar V, Schoen FJ, editors. Pathologic Basis of Disease. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Co, 1994: 755-783

23 **Marquezine GF**, Pereira AC, Sousa AG, Mill JG, Hueb WA, Krieger JE. TCF7L2 variant genotypes and type 2 diabetes risk in Brazil: significant association, but not a significant tool for risk stratification in the general population. *BMC Med Genet* 2008; **9**: 106 [PMID: 19055834 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2350-9-106]

24 **Wu WK**, Cho CH, Lee CW, Fan D, Wu K, Yu J, Sung JJ. Dysregulation of cellular signaling in gastric cancer. *Cancer Lett* 2010; **295**: 144-153 [PMID: 20488613 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2010.04.025]

25 **Clements WM**, Wang J, Sarnaik A, Kim OJ, MacDonald J, Fenoglio-Preiser C, Groden J, Lowy AM. beta-Catenin mutation is a frequent cause of Wnt pathway activation in gastric cancer. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 3503-3506 [PMID: 12067995]

26 **Ikenoue T**, Ijichi H, Kato N, Kanai F, Masaki T, Rengifo W, Okamoto M, Matsumura M, Kawabe T, Shiratori Y, Omata M. Analysis of the beta-catenin/T cell factor signaling pathway in 36

gastrointestinal and liver cancer cells. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 2002; **93**: 1213-1220 [PMID: 12460462 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2002]

27 **Ooi CH**, Ivanova T, Wu J, Lee M, Tan IB, Tao J, Ward L, Koo JH, Gopalakrishnan V, Zhu Y, Cheng LL, Lee J, Rha SY, Chung HC, Ganesan K, So J, Soo KC, Lim D, Chan WH, Wong WK, Bowtell D, Yeoh KG, Grabsch H, Boussioutas A, Tan P. Oncogenic pathway combinations predict clinical prognosis in gastric cancer. *PLoS Genet* 2009; **5**: e1000676 [PMID: 19798449 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1000676]

28 **Duval A**, Rolland S, Tubacher E, Bui H, Thomas G, Hamelin R. The human T-cell transcription factor-4 gene: structure, extensive characterization of alternative splicings, and mutational analysis in colorectal cancer cell lines. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**: 3872-3879 [PMID: 10919662]

29 **Hurlstone A**, Clevers H. T-cell factors: turn-ons and turn-offs. *EMBO J* 2002; **21**: 2303-2311 [PMID: 12006483 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/21.10.2303]

30 **Pan KF**, Liu WG, Zhang L, You WC, Lu YY. Mutations in components of the Wnt signaling pathway in gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 1570-1574 [PMID: 18330950 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.1570]

31 **Duval A**, Iacopetta B, Ranzani GN, Lothe RA, Thomas G, Hamelin R. Variable mutation frequencies in coding repeats of TCF-4 and other target genes in colon, gastric and endometrial carcinoma showing microsatellite instability. *Oncogene* 1999; **18**: 6806-6809 [PMID: 10597289 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1203287]

32 **Kim MS**, Kim SS, Ahn CH, Yoo NJ, Lee SH. Frameshift mutations of Wnt pathway genes AXIN2 and TCF7L2 in gastric carcinomas with high microsatellite instability. *Hum Pathol* 2009; **40**: 58-64 [PMID: 18755497 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2008.06.006]

33 **Chen J**, Yuan T, Liu M, Chen P. Association between TCF7L2 gene polymorphism and cancer risk: a meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e71730 [PMID: 23951231 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0071730]

34 **Wang Z**, Zhang Q, Chen F, Wang Y, Nie W, Yang B, Guan X. TCF7L2 rs12255372 (G>T) polymorphism contributes to breast carcinogenesis: evidence from a meta-analysis. *Crit Rev Eukaryot Gene Expr* 2013; **23**: 309-316 [PMID: 24266846 DOI: 10.1615/CritRevEukaryotGeneExpr.2013007820]

35 **Lu XP**, Hu GN, Du JQ, Li HQ. TCF7L2 gene polymorphisms and susceptibility to breast cancer: a meta-analysis. *Genet Mol Res* 2015; **14**: 2860-2867 [PMID: 25867435 DOI: 10.4238/2015.March.31.16]

36 **Wang F**, Jiang L, Li J, Yu X, Li M, Wu G, Yu Z, Zhou K, Chu H, Zhai H. Association between TCF7L2 polymorphisms and breast cancer susceptibility: a meta-analysis. *Int J Clin Exp Med* 2015; **8**: 9355-9361 [PMID: 26309596]

37 **Gaulton KJ**, Nammo T, Pasquali L, Simon JM, Giresi PG, Fogarty MP, Panhuis TM, Mieczkowski P, Secchi A, Bosco D, Berney T, Montanya E, Mohlke KL, Lieb JD, Ferrer J. A map of open chromatin in human pancreatic islets. *Nat Genet* 2010; **42**: 255-259 [PMID: 20118932 DOI: 10.1038/ng.530]

38 **Chen CS**, Huang CY, Huang SP, Lin VC, Yu CC, Chang TY, Bao BY. Genetic interaction analysis of TCF7L2 for biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy in localized prostate cancer. *Int J Med Sci* 2015; **12**: 243-247 [PMID: 25678841 DOI: 10.7150/ijms.10953]

39 **Yasui W**, Sentani K, Motoshita J, Nakayama H. Molecular pathobiology of gastric cancer. *Scand J Surg* 2006; **95**: 225-231 [PMID: 17249269]

40 **Yu J**, Zeng Z, Wang S, Tian L, Wu J, Xue L, Lee CW, Zhang M, Goggins WB, Chen M, Hu P, Sung JJ. IL-1B-511 polymorphism is associated with increased risk of certain subtypes of gastric cancer in Chinese: a case-control study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 557-564 [PMID: 19904240 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.644]

41 **Labrador L**, Torres K, Camargo M, Santiago L, Valderrama E, Chiurillo MA. Association of common variants on chromosome 8q24 with gastric cancer in Venezuelan patients. *Gene* 2015; **566**: 120-124 [PMID: 25939847 DOI: 10.1016/j.gene.2015.04.081]

42 **Zu H**, Wang H, Li C, Xue Y. Clinicopathologic characteristics and prognostic value of various histological types in advanced gastric cancer. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2014; **7**: 5692-5700 [PMID: 25337210]

P- Reviewer: Chen Y **S- Editor**: Gong ZM **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6527

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6527-6538
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Trends and predictions for gastric cancer mortality in Brazil

Angela Carolina Brandão de Souza Giusti, Pétala Tuani Candido de Oliveira Salvador, Juliano dos Santos, Karina Cardoso Meira, Amanda Rodrigues Camacho, Raphael Mendonça Guimarães, Dyego LB Souza

Angela Carolina Brandão de Souza Giusti, Federal University of Rio Grande do Norte, Graduate Program in Collective Health, Natal 59010-000, Brazil

Pétala Tuani Candido de Oliveira Salvador, Karina Cardoso Meira, Health School, Federal University of Rio Grande do Norte, Natal 59010-000, Brazil

Juliano dos Santos, National Cancer Institute, Cancer Hospital III, Rio de Janeiro, Natal 59010-000, Brazil

Amanda Rodrigues Camacho, Federal University of Rio Grande do Norte, University Hospital Onofre Lopes, Natal 59010-000, Brazil

Raphael Mendonça Guimarães, Polytechnic Health School Joaquim Venâncio, Oswaldo Cruz Foundation (FIOCRUZ), Natal 59010-000, Brazil

Dyego LB Souza, Department of Collective Health, Graduate Program in Collective Health, Federal University of Rio Grande do Norte, Natal 59010-000, Brazil

Author contributions: de Souza Giusti ACB, Meira KC and Souza DLB contributed to study conception and design; de Souza Giusti ACB, de Oliveira Salvador PTC, dos Santos J, Camacho AR and Guimarães RM contributed to data acquisition and data analysis; de Souza Giusti ACB, Meira KC and Souza DLB contributed to interpretation, and writing of article; de Souza Giusti ACB, de Oliveira Salvador PTC, dos Santos J, Camacho AR, Guimarães RM, Meira KC and Souza DLB contributed to the edition, review and final approval of article.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of the Federal University of Rio Grande do Norte, Brazil.

Informed consent statement: This is an ecological-type observational study that utilized public domain data from the Brazilian government website. All details that might disclose the identity of the subjects were omitted or anonymized.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflicting interests.

Data sharing statement: Data sharing statement is not applicable, as this is an ecological-type observational study based on public domain data from the Brazilian government website.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dyego LB Souza, PhD, Public Health, Department of Collective Health, Graduate Program in Public Health, Federal University of Rio Grande do Norte, 1787 Senador Salgado Filho Ave., Lagoa Nova, Natal 59010-000, Brazil. dysouz@yahoo.com.br
Telephone: +55-84-32154133
Fax: +55-84-32154133

Received: March 2, 2016
Peer-review started: March 3, 2016
First decision: April 1, 2016
Revised: May 18, 2016
Accepted: June 13, 2016
Article in press: June 13, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To analyze the effect of age-period and birth cohort on gastric cancer mortality, in Brazil and across its five geographic regions, by sex, in the population over 20 years of age, as well as make projections for the period 2010-2029.

METHODS: An ecological study is presented herein,

which distributed gastric cancer-related deaths in Brazil and its geographic regions. The effects of age-period and birth cohort were calculated by the Poisson regression model and projections were made with the age-period-cohort model in the statistical program R.

RESULTS: Progressive reduction of mortality rates was observed in the 1980's, and then higher and lower mortality rates were verified in the 2000's, for both sexes, in Brazil and for the South, Southeast and Midwest regions. A progressive decrease in mortality rates was observed for the Northeast (both sexes) and North (men only) regions within the period 1995-1999, followed by rising rates.

CONCLUSION: Regional differences were demonstrated in the mortality rates for gastric cancer in Brazil, and the least developed regions of the country will present increases in projected mortality rates.

Key words: Gastric neoplasms; Brazil; Projections; Mortality

Core tip: Currently there are no detailed predictions in Brazil per geographic region and this study will provide the means for the elaboration of public health actions. This study presents a high citation potential, due to the innovative methodology and to the scientific development of Brazil, which is among the countries with most publications nowadays.

de Souza Giusti ACB, de Oliveira Salvado PTC, dos Santos J, Meira KC, Camacho AR, Guimarães RM, Souza DLB. Trends and predictions for gastric cancer mortality in Brazil. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6527-6538 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6527.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6527

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer incidence has been decreasing globally since 1950[1], however its aggressiveness, malignity and, consequently, its prognosis, remain unaltered. Gastric cancer is currently one of the main causes of cancer-related deaths worldwide, and appears as the fourth most frequent cancer in men and sixth in women, being the fifth cancer-related cause of death for both sexes in the world[1].

Regarding risk factors for the development of gastric cancer, a higher incidence is verified in men than in women, in a 2:1 proportion, approximately[2]. Also, researchers remark that the main etiological factors related to the development of gastric cancer are infection by *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) and diet, as the elevated consumption of salted foods (preserved or smoked), meat, and refined carbohydrates is directly associated with the risk of developing this neoplasm, while a diet based on fiber, vegetables and fresh fruit presents the inverse association[3,4].

Gastric cancer is usually also associated with low socioeconomic conditions[5], an aspect that highlights the importance of analyzing mortality along with the geographic distribution of the population, especially in countries characterized by high socioeconomic inequalities.

Given the epidemiological importance of gastric cancer, essential measures to support public policy actions include the analysis of the age-period and birth cohort on the distribution of mortality and mortality rate projections. These analyses enable the evaluation of the role of risk factors as well as modifications in therapeutics and diagnosis methods in the evolution of mortality rates[6,7].

Brazil presents demographic and socioeconomic heterogeneity across its five geographic regions, which translates to different mortality and morbidity patterns due to non-transmissible chronic diseases. Addressing cancer, both in prevention and attention to patients, requires differentiated responses that should be adapted to each specific region. Monitoring the trends of incidence and mortality rates, as well as risk factor prevalence, is paramount for vigilance actions and planning of prevention and treatment policies. The objectives of this manuscript are to analyze the effect of age-period and birth cohort in gastric cancer mortality, for Brazil and its five geographic regions, by sex, for the population over the age of 20, and make projections for the period 2010-2029.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design and population

An ecological study is presented herein, on the distribution of deaths by gastric cancer, in Brazil and its five geographic regions, per sex. The study included deaths classified as 151 (stomach neoplasm) and C16 (malignant stomach neoplasm) in the 9th and 10th edition of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD), respectively. The study population included Brazilian men and women over 20 years of age. Mortality data were obtained from the Mortality Information System (MIS/DATASUS). Population data were obtained from the Informatics Department of the Unified Health System (DATASUS), based on the population censuses of 1980, 1991, 2000 and 2010. Inter-census projections for populations on July, 1st of the inter-census years were estimated by the Brazilian Institute of Geography and Statistics (BIGS).

Study variables

After extraction, data were corrected, redistributing 50.0% of the registries classified as ill-defined causes (codes 780-789 in ICD-9, and R00-R99 in ICD-10),

utilizing the redistribution methodology of the World Health Organization (WHO)[8]. After redistribution of ill-defined registries, deaths with incomplete diagnosis were redistributed proportionally by year and age group[9] (Mello *et al*[8], 2002). Herein gastric cancer deaths were corrected by two death groups with incomplete diagnosis: incomplete diagnosis for general cancer and incomplete diagnosis for gastric cancer. The following codes were considered as incomplete diagnosis for general cancer: C-77 to C-80 and C-97 in ICD-10; and codes 195, 197 to 199, 238 to 239 in ICD-9. For incomplete diagnosis of gastric cancer, the following codes were considered: 150 in ICD-9 and C-26 in ICD-10.

Once death data were corrected, mortality rates for gastric cancer were calculated per 100000 inhabitants, adjusted by the world population[10]. Age groups, periods and birth cohorts were grouped in five-year intervals, totaling 13 age groups (20-24 years of age to over 80 years of age), six periods (1980-1984 to 2005-2009) and 20 birth cohorts (1895-1899 to 2005-2009).

Data projections were made by sex for the periods 2010-2014, 2015-2019, 2020-2024 and 2025-2029 based on the three observed periods (1995-1999, 2000-2004 and 2005-2009), with results being presented in three age groups (0-39, 40-59 and ⩾ 60 years of age) as well as the total result.

Statistical analysis

Age-period and birth cohort (APC) effects were calculated by the Poisson regression method. In this model, effects act in a multiplicative manner on the rates and the logarithm of the expected rate value is a linear function of the effect of age, period and cohort[6,7].

$ln(E[r_{ij}]) = ln(\theta_{ij}/N_{ij}) = \mu + \alpha_i + \beta_j + \gamma_k$

Where is the mortality rate expected for age i and period j, θ_{ij} is the number of deaths for age i and period j, and N_{ij} expresses the population under risk of death in age i and period j; μ represents the average of the effect, α_i represents the effect of group age i, β_j represents the effect of period j, and γ_k is the effect of cohort k.

The greatest limitation with the estimation of APC effect parameters is the linear relationship between the factors age, period and cohort, which hinders the estimation of the complete model. Methodologies have been proposed to address this issue; however, there is still no consensus in literature[6,7]. The APC effect parameters were estimated by estimable functions: deviations, curvatures, and *drift*, a method proposed by Holford[6,7].

A reference age group was selected (50-54 years of age), along with a reference period (1990-1994), and a reference cohort (which was the median value, as central cohorts are more stable). This manuscript utilized the 1930-1934[6,7] cohort as reference. The adjustment of the model was evaluated by the statistical function deviance, defined as twice the logarithm of the likelihood of the complete model in relation to the logarithm of the likelihood function of the estimated model. The contribution of effects was evaluated by the comparison between the deviance of the model with the specific effect in relation to the complete model (age-period-cohort). The results with $P \leqslant 0.05$ were considered statistically significant.

The association measurements, respective confidence intervals (95%CI), and the adjustments of the models were calculated by statistics program R version 3.2.1, with the Epi 1.1.18 library (R Foundation for Computational Statistics, Viena, Austria http://www.r-project.org).

Projections were made for each period utilizing the age-period-cohort model of the Norpred program, inscribed within the program R. Data were compiled in 5-year blocks and the limit age group considered for analysis was the first with more than 10 cases for the combined period. The results of the projections are presented by the observed and expected deaths for each period, for each Brazilian state. Also, for each period, adjusted mortality rates were calculated based on the standard world population to enable comparison with international data, expressed per 100000 inhabitants per year (ASW/100000 inhab). Variations between the number of cases in the last projected year (2025-2029) and the last observed period (2005-2009) were calculated, considering the proportion of variation that occurred in terms of changes in risk or demographics (size and structure of population). Both components can be different from zero and present a positive or negative direction. Calculation is expressed as follows[11]:

Δ tot = Δ risk + Δ pop= (Nfff - Noff) + (Noff - Nooo)

Where Δ tot is the total change, Δ risk is change in function of risk, Δ pop is change in function of population, Nooo is the number of observed cases, Nfff is the number of projected cases, and Noff is the number of expected cases when mortality rates increase throughout the observed period.

RESULTS

Within the period 1980-2009, there were 314445 deaths registered in Brazil, corresponding to an average standardized mortality rate of 11.71 deaths per 100000 inhabitants. After correction of the number of deaths, there was an increase of 30.8% in the number of deaths (411558), representing an average mortality rate of 15.32 deaths per 100000 inhabitants for gastric cancer, in individuals over 20 years of age. It must be highlighted that, throughout the country, the highest proportion of deaths occurred in the male sex. Also, the highest mortality rates for gastric cancer were observed for the male sex in Brazil and in all geographic regions of the country.

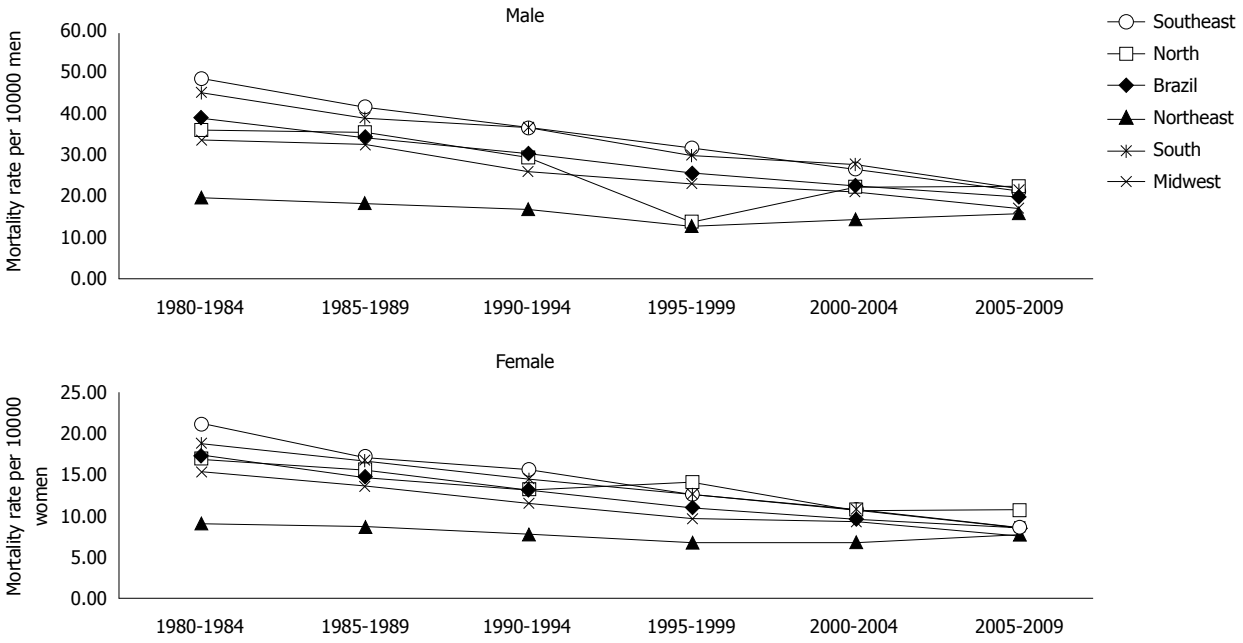


Figure 1 Mortality from gastric cancer according to sex and geographical regions, in Brazil, 1980 to 2009.

Analysis of the evolution of gastric cancer mortality rates for the last 30 years indicated a progressive decrease in rates in the 1980's, with higher and lower rates in the 2000's for both sexes in Brazil and the South, Southeast and Midwest regions. In the Northeast region, for both sexes, and in the North region for the male sex, there was a progressive decrease in mortality rates until 1995-1999, followed by rising rates (Figure 1).

In Brazil, as well as in all geographic regions and both sexes, the mortality rates for gastric cancer increased considerably after the age group 55-59 years of age. The highest mortality rates were verified in the age group over 80 years of age. Analysis of mortality according to study periods evidenced decreasing trends for both sexes in the South, Southeast and Midwest regions.

Regarding the mortality rates per age group according to birth cohorts, decreasing trends were observed in the evolution of mortality rates, for both sexes, in Brazil and in the Midwest, Southeast and South regions. This reduction occurred after the 1920 birth cohort, and was observed in all age groups. However, in the North region, increasing mortality rates were identified, for both sexes, in the age groups 75-79 years of age and over 80 years of age, starting from the 1919-1924 birth cohort. A similar profile was verified in the Northeast region, for both sexes, in individuals born after the 1910-1914 cohort for age groups after 65-69 years of age.

Regarding death risk in the analyzed periods, Brazil presented a protection risk (relative risk, RR, under 1) when compared to the reference period 1990-1994. Analysis of death risk per geographic region pointed towards disparities between the Brazilian geographic regions. The South and Southeast regions showed decreases in death risks due to this neoplasm, with a protection effect (RR $\leqslant$ 1) especially in the period 2005-2009 for both sexes. The Midwest region presented a very specific profile, as despite RR was above 1 in all periods in relation to the reference period, there was a progressive reduction in death risk due to gastric cancer in the analyzed periods (Figure 1). The North and Northeast regions presented decreases in death risks for the period 1995-1999, but in the following periods there was an increase in risk (RR $\geqslant$ 1), for both sexes (Figure 2).

Brazil and the Midwest, North, Southeast and South regions presented reductions in death risks for gastric cancer for both sexes, with a protection effect for birth cohorts after 1940-1944, when compared to the reference cohort. This reduction was more expressive in the South and Southeast regions (Figure 2).

Table 1 shows the deviance changes in the sequential construction of APC models. In the evolution of rates for both sexes, in Brazil and its geographic regions, the model with three factors (APC) presented best fit, except for the Midwest region and female sex, for which the most explanatory model was age-cohort (AC).

When comparing the evolution of standardized mortality rates for gastric cancer, increases were observed for the male sex in the North and Northeast regions, and in the female sex in the Northeast region. The projections for the Midwest, South and Southeast regions as well as the pooled analysis for Brazil indicated a reduction in mortality rates for the male sex and stability for the female sex. The number of cases per region, the adjusted rates for the observed period, and projections per sex are presented in Table 2.

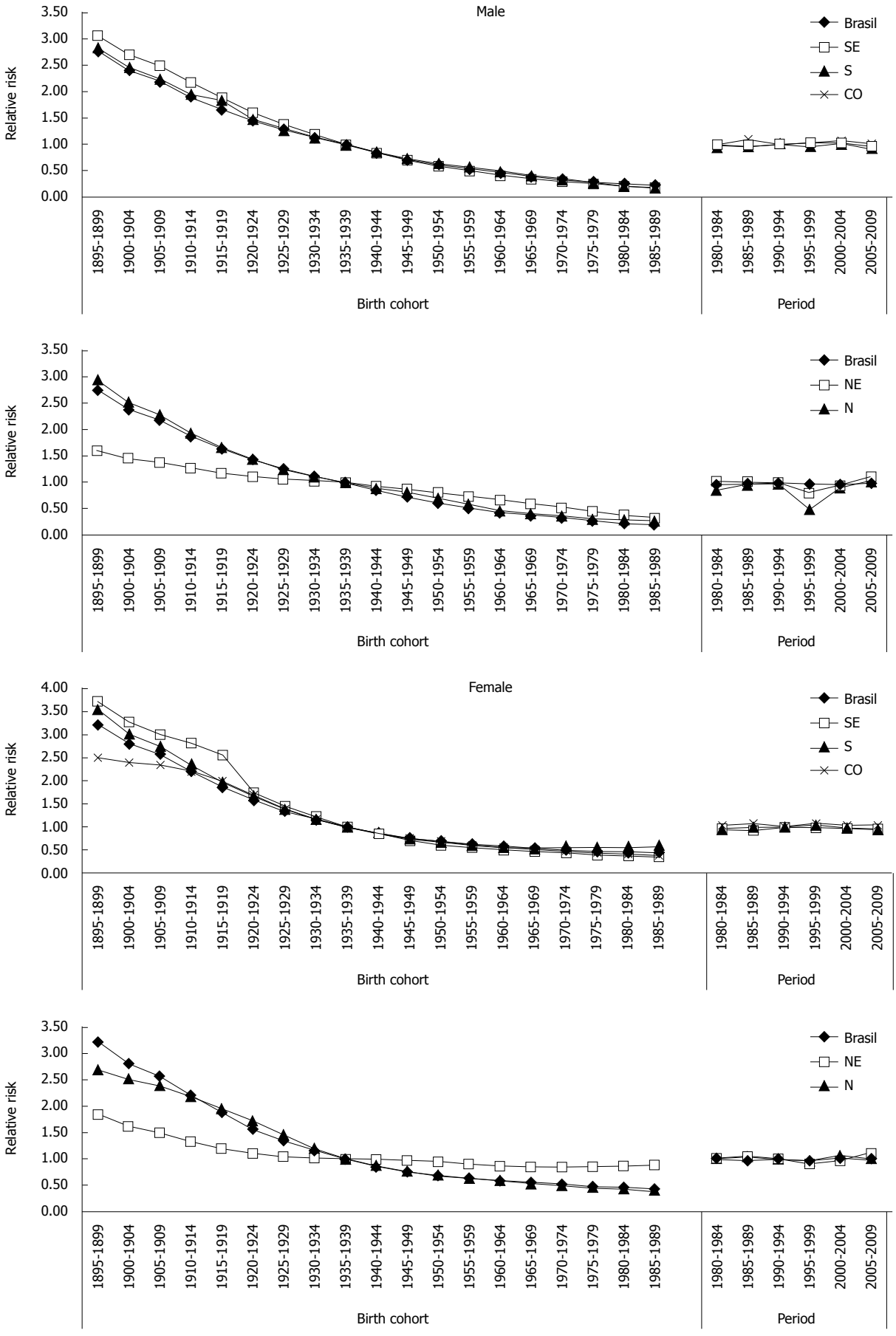


Figure 2 Results of the Age-period-cohort model, adjusted for gastric cancer mortality, according to to sex and geographical regions, in Brazil, 1980 to 2009.

Table 1 Deviance changes in the sequential construction of age-period and birth cohort models

Models	Brazil					
	Female			Male		
	Resid.DF	Res.Dev	*P* value	Resid.DF	Res.Dev	*P* value
Age	72	9069.3		72	15752.0	
Age-drift	71	661.6	< 0.00001	71	515.1	< 0.00001
Age-cohort	67	390.5	< 0.00001	67	403.0	< 0.00001
Age-period-cohort	64	372.5	0.001	64	370.6	< 0.00001
Age-period	68	642.8	< 0.00001	68	485.9	< 0.00001
Age-drift	71	661.6	0.001	71	515.1	< 0.00001
			Midwest Models			
Age	72	399.77		72	899.91	
Age-drift	71	88.88	< 0.00001	71	116.80	< 0.00001
Age-cohort	67	72.14	0.002	67	111.94	0.302
Age-period-cohort	64	66.18	0.200	64	95.83	0.003
Age-period	68	83.03	0.002	68	100.13	0.366
Age-drift	71	88.88	0.210	71	116.80	0.002
			North Models			
Age	72	325.04		72	1310.75	
Age-drift	71	140.37	< 0.00001	71	779.28	< 0.00001
Age-cohort	67	129.65	0.030	67	751.44	< 0.00001
Age-period-cohort	64	110.22	0.001	64	178.57	0.003
Age-period	68	121.64	0.022	68	194.68	< 0.00001
Age-drift	71	140.37	0.001	71	779.28	< 0.00001
			Northeast Models			
Age	72	566.75		72	1038.52	
Age-drift	71	405.46	< 0.00001	71	656.22	< 0.00001
Age-cohort	67	269.65	< 0.00001	67	597.78	< 0.00001
Age-period-cohort	64	142.85	< 0.00001	64	155.70	< 0.00001
Age-period	68	230.83	< 0.00001	68	208.92	< 0.00001
Age-drift	71	405.46	< 0.00001	71	656.22	< 0.00001
			South Models			
Age	72	1903.85		72	3090.98	
Age-drift	71	219.90	< 0.00001	71	207.96	< 0.00001
Age-cohort	67	152.41	< 0.00001	67	189.07	0.001
Age-period-cohort	64	124.92	< 0.00001	64	129.74	< 0.00001
Age-period	68	200.58	< 0.00001	68	143.44	< 0.00001
Age-drift	71	219.90	0.001	71	207.96	< 0.00001
			Southeast Models			
Age	72	6993.8		72	11604.0	
Age-drift	71	447.6	< 0.00001	71	399.5	< 0.00001
Age-cohort	67	278.8	< 0.00001	67	290.5	< 0.00001
Age-period-cohort	64	217.6	< 0.00001	64	209.5	< 0.00001
Age-period	68	389.4	< 0.00001	68	284.7	< 0.00001
Age-drift	71	447.6	< 0.00001	71	399.5	< 0.00001

For Brazilian men, an increase is expected in the number of deaths (30203) when comparing the last observed period with the last projected period, representing a 62% growth, of which 101% is due to population increase and -39% is due to reduction in risk. For women, the expected increase in the number of deaths is 20308, with 99% growth due to changes in population and -23% in reduction of risk. Figure 3 shows the changes in the number of deaths, in function of risk and population increase, when comparing the last observed period and the last projected period for gastric cancer in the Brazilian regions.

DISCUSSION

This study evidenced disparities in the evolution of mortality rates due to gastric cancer in Brazilian geographic regions, within the analyzed periods. There was an increase in death risk by this neoplasm in the North and Northeast regions starting from the 2000's, when compared to the reference period.

Gastric cancer, despite the decrease presented in incidence and mortality rates, is still one of the main cancer-related causes of death globally[12]. This disease presents a bad prognosis, with 5-year survival rates

Table 2 Observed and predicted number of deaths by age and world age-standardized rates in Brazil

Males			Observed			Predicted			
			1995-1999	2000-2004	2005-2009	2010-2014	2015-2019	2020-2024	2025-2029
Males									
North	Age	0-39	99	126	156	200	243	277	296
		40-59	700	818	929	1119	1247	1478	1670
		⩾ 60	1287	1597	2151	2792	3579	4332	5195
	Total		2086	2541	3236	4110	5069	6087	7160
	ASW		13.6	13.3	14.3	15.0	15.2	14.8	14.2
Northeast	Age	0-39	310	332	405	388	377	366	365
		40-59	1662	2041	2633	3226	3745	4135	4155
		⩾ 60	4086	5624	7020	9070	11415	14018	16827
	Total		6058	7997	10058	12685	15537	18519	21347
	ASW		7.5	8.7	9.8	10.9	11.4	11.6	11.4
Midwest	Age	0-39	94	98	102	102	105	97	92
		40-59	684	707	753	779	813	941	1126
		⩾ 60	1404	1705	1827	2039	2371	2784	3362
	Total		2182	2510	2682	2920	3289	3821	4580
	ASW		13.5	12.2	10.6	9.3	8.4	7.9	7.8
Southeast	Age	0-39	801	616	660	563	576	619	524
		40-59	6255	6404	6304	5748	5629	6052	7537
		⩾ 60	16611	16790	14648	14316	15277	17650	21598
	Total		23667	23810	21612	20627	21482	24320	29658
	ASW		18.7	15.5	12.0	9.6	8.3	7.9	8.3
South	Age	0-39	250	235	241	188	137	120	108
		40-59	2245	2356	2403	2361	2410	2444	2649
		⩾ 60	5515	6052	6062	6392	7041	8199	9745
	Total		8010	8643	8706	8941	9588	10762	12502
	ASW		18	16.2	13.6	11.5	10.3	9.7	9.5
Brazil	Age	0-39	1660	1403	1567	1796	2105	2502	2736
		40-59	13382	12196	12944	13909	15114	16962	19978
		⩾ 60	32344	31439	34145	37297	41994	48255	56146
	Total		47386	45038	48656	53002	59213	67718	78861
	ASW		16.7	13.3	12.2	11.2	10.4	10.0	10.0
Females									
North	Age	0-39	110	122	127	159	163	174	180
		40-59	324	375	460	557	659	790	909
		⩾ 60	678	792	1040	1327	1739	2244	2870
	Total		1112	1289	1627	2044	2561	3208	3959
	ASW		7.1	6.4	6.8	6.9	7.0	7.1	7.0
Northeast	Age	0-39	274	314	380	460	554	527	524
		40-59	943	1114	1394	1773	2105	2490	2754
		⩾ 60	2551	3152	4318	5723	7392	9309	11348
	Total		3768	4580	6092	7955	10051	12326	14626
	ASW		4	4	4.7	5.2	5.6	5.8	5.9
Midwest	Age	0-39	82	92	96	93	87	82	79
		40-59	277	333	382	442	547	634	717
		⩾ 60	603	771	875	1028	1217	1515	1947
	Total		962	1196	1353	1562	1850	2232	2743
	ASW		5.8	5.3	4.7	4.3	4.0	3.9	3.9
Southeast	Age	0-39	576	652	675	674	685	627	562
		40-59	2413	2778	3008	2983	3140	3569	4168
		⩾ 60	8058	9652	9619	9950	10667	12047	14398
	Total		11047	13082	13302	13606	14493	16243	19127
	ASW		6.8	6.4	5.4	4.6	4.2	4.1	4.2
South	Age	0-39	215	217	258	257	280	238	220
		40-59	984	949	1052	1150	1283	1546	1857
		⩾ 60	3005	3106	3143	3268	3578	4111	4939
	Total		4204	4272	4453	4675	5142	5895	7016
	ASW		7.6	6.2	5.3	4.7	4.4	4.4	4.6
Brazil	Age	0-39	1313	1376	1511	1811	2107	2268	2515
		40-59	5540	5458	6274	7075	8168	9879	11902
		⩾ 60	16991	17450	18982	20635	23267	27116	32678
	Total		23844	24284	26767	29522	33542	39263	47095
	ASW		6.9	5.6	5.2	4.8	4.7	4.7	4.9

ASW: Age-standardized rates.

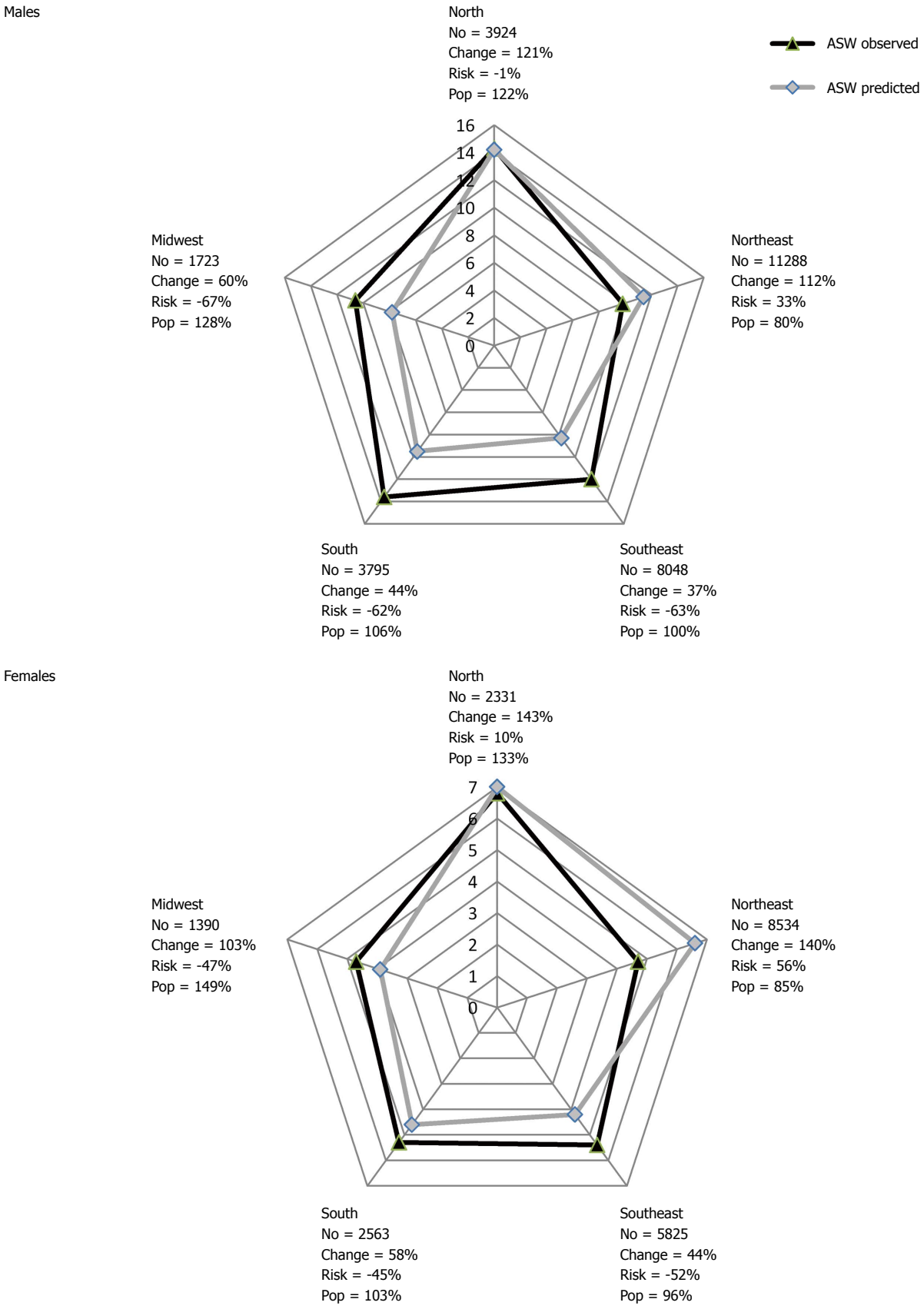


Figure 3 World age-standardized rates, changes in numbers of deaths relative change due to risk and changed population, between 2005-2009 (observed) and 2025–2029 (predicted) of gastric cancer mortality in Brazil. ASW: Age-standardized rates; Pop: Population.

under 20%[13].

The mortality rates presented in Brazil, in all regions and for both sexes, are located at intermediate levels, similar to the rates of Venezuela and Argentina, but still superior to those of developed countries such as the United States, Spain, France and Canada. However, Brazilian rates are lower than the mortality rates verified for China, Japan and South Korea[12-20].

This neoplasm can be classified according to its location, in cardia and non-cardia gastric cancer. These diseases present different risk factors and population distributions. While non-cardia gastric cancer presents main risk factors such as *H. pylori* infection, consumption of salt-preserved food, low consumption of fruit and vegetables, consumption of alcohol and use of tobacco, cardia gastric cancer (esophagogastric junction adenocarcinoma) is a pathology related to obesity, gastroesophageal reflux and Barrett esophagus. Besides, this disease is more common in developed countries and white race individuals, while non-cardia gastric cancer is more incident in Afro-Americans and in developing countries[19,21,22]. There have been important global reductions in incidence and mortality rates for non-cardia gastric cancer; however, an increasing trends have been observed for esophagogastric junction adenocarcinoma, which represents currently 50% of new diagnosed cases of gastric cancer. The prognosis of this type of cancer is worst than non-cardia gastric cancer, as esophagogastric junction adenocarcinoma can disseminate to the abdominal region as well as to the lymph nodes of the thoracic region. Due to the absence of symptoms at the beginning of the disease, esophagogastric junction adenocarcinoma is usually diagnosed in advanced stages[23].

As in other parts of the world, the Brazilian and per region rates for the male sex were approximately twice higher than mortality rates for the female sex[19,21,22]. Some authors believe that this difference is due to the co-existence of other risk factors and that there is unequal exposition according to sex[5,21]. Other authors mention that this reality is related to the fact that women are more aware of health issues than men[18].

Mortality due to this neoplasm in Brazil and in the Midwest, South and Southeast regions presented decreasing trends, along with France, Italy, Spain, Germany, South Korea, Japan and China[1,14]. In the United States and United Kingdom, half of gastric cancers are located in the cardia area, and in the last 30 years, globally, incidence of this disease has increased between 5 and 6 times[22].

A reduction in death risk was evidenced in Brazil and in the South and Southeast regions, starting from the 1990's, and increased risk was observed in the North and Northeast regions after the 2000's. Changes in mortality rates of diseases can reflect changes in exposition to risk factors (environmental and/or associated with lifestyle), as well as improvements in diagnosis, treatment, verification and certification of deaths. The differences presented between the North-Northeast regions and other regions of Brazil, especially in the 2000's, can be a result of the period effect, due to improvement in death registry data and better access to health services. Due to an increase in the possibilities of diagnosing this neoplasm, even if in advanced stages of the disease, these regions presented higher mortality rates in the 2000's.

Regarding birth cohorts, a progressive reduction in death risk was verified starting in the XX century, in all regions and for both sexes. This result was similar to the results of South Korea, Japan, United States, and Spain[15,17,24,25]. This reality can be explained by the prevalence reduction of *H. pylori* infection, use of refrigerators (which increased the consumption of fruit and vegetables)[26-29], besides the reduction in the consumption of salt-preserved foods[30] and better sewage collection and treatment, which contributes to reducing the transmission of *H. pylori*, especially in children and teenagers[19,22]. Reduction of mortality can also be related to new therapeutic strategies implemented within the last decade for the treatment of gastric cancer. These are based on neoadjuvant/adjuvant chemotherapy treatment, which can be associated with radiotherapy[31]. A literature review study with meta-analysis evidenced that patients treated with adjuvant chemotherapy presented better global survival (HR = 0.82; 95%CI: 0.76-0.90; $P < 0.001$) and disease-free survival (HR = 0.82; 95%CI: 0.75-0.90, $P < 0.001$) when compared to patients submitted to surgical treatment only[32]. However, there is still no consensus within literature on the best treatment to be utilized, and no studies were found in Brazil that evaluated the implementation of these new therapeutic measures on the survival of patients.

Survival rates are affected by early diagnosis, standardized surgery techniques, nutritional therapy, availability of beds in intensive care units, and the existence of specialized health teams for cancer treatment[13,17]. In this way, the pronounced inequity between Brazilian geographic regions (large urban centers *vs* the interior) regarding access to cancer diagnosis and treatment services can influence the evolution of mortality rates for this disease. The study by Oliveira *et al*[33] evidenced sanitary gaps related to breast cancer treatment, especially in North Brazil, with half of health assistance concentrated in few capital cities. The cities of Rio de Janeiro and São Paulo (Southeast Brazil) were responsible for one fifth of attendances, mostly for the resident population. Brazil has a public and universal health system that faces limitations regarding funding and access to diagnosis and treatment services. This reality should not be exclusive to breast cancer treatment and highlights the difficult access to health services that most cancer patients suffer in Brazil[34].

The projections indicated that the least developed

regions of Brazil (North and Northeast) will present increments in gastric cancer mortality rates. These regions present structural challenges in oncology services[34-36]. Also in the North and Northeast regions of the country, the increased mortality can be explained by higher difficulty in the access to diagnosis and treatment services. The ratio medical doctor/inhabitant is lower in the North and Northeast regions (in 2010, approximately 1 doctor per 1000 inhabitants) than in the South and Southeast regions (respectively 2.5 and 2.0 doctors per 1000 inhabitants). The distribution of oncology specialists and oncology hospitals is also unbalanced[37]. Also, there is concentration of oncology services in large urban centers, as a consequence of internal migration and development of these areas. The search for appointments with specialists and access to diagnosis and treatment services generates dislocation from rural areas to large urban centers, which delays diagnosis and therefore, entail in worst prognosis for these patients[32].

A limitation to be considered in the study is the impossibility of separating cardia and non-cardia locations for gastric cancer, which seem to present different behaviors according to most recent studies, as the Brazilian Mortality Information System does not differentiate gastric cancers according to histological type[21]. Another important fact to consider is the lack of historical series for risk factor prevalence, which could aid in the analysis of the observed changes. Finally, it must be highlighted that this is an ecological population study, and intra-regional differences can be found in Brazil due to its large continental dimensions, especially regarding the quality of death registries, which the authors attenuated after correcting death data. Limitations related to the APC models must also be mentioned, as these are still under development and there is no consensus in literature on the best methodology to correct the issue of non-identification of the complete model[6,7].

The projections made must be interpreted with caution, as the diagnostic and therapeutic conditions can change in the future, and consequently the mortality trends could be slightly modified. The projection of mortality rates is very important to support the planning of public health measures, as well as to control modifiable risk factors at short and long terms, on the burden of the disease to the population[33]. The main objective of the projections made herein was to provide the required information for health planning purposes, aiming at the selection of vigilance actions for gastric cancer.

COMMENTS

Background

The evolution of gastric cancer mortality has evidenced decreasing trends for Brazil in the South, Southeast and Midwest regions of the country, for both genders. However, after the 1990's, increasing trends were observed in the Northeast (both genders) and North (in men only) regions. After the 1940-1944 birth cohort, reduction in death risk was observed for this neoplasm, in both genders, for Brazil and its South, Southeast and Midwest regions. The opposite situation was verified for the Northeast region, which presented a progressive death risk for cohorts born from the 1940-1944 cohort. Regarding mortality projections until 2030, increased mortality rates were evidenced for both genders, in the North and Northeast regions of the country.

Research frontiers

The study evidenced a progressive reduction in risk of death from gastric cancer in birth cohorts after the 1940's, in the most developed regions of Brazil, with the opposite occurring in the poorer geographic regions. These findings are similar to those in studies carried out in South Korea, Denmark, Japan, United States, England, Italy, Switzerland and Spain, and evidences the important role played by basic sanitation and access to health services in gastric cancer mortality.

Innovations and breakthroughs

In most epidemiological studies, trend analysis of mortality rates is based on the evaluation of mortality by age group and death date. The present study analyzed the effect of age-period-birth cohort on the evolution of gastric cancer mortality rates and enabled the evaluation of factors related to age and period as well as whether modifications in mortality trends for this disease were associated to changes in exposition to long-term risk factors (birth cohort effect).

Applications

The results suggest flaws in gastric cancer prevention and control measures in the North and Northeast regions of Brazil. The findings will help plan Brazilian public policies directed to the promotion of primary, secondary and tertiary prevention, to reduce mortality rates for gastric cancer in Brazil and its geographic regions.

Terminology

South region: this Brazilian geographic region presents the best human development indices. This region includes the states of Rio Grande do Sul, Santa Catarina and Paraná. Southeast region: this is the most populous and rich region of the country, and 85% of industry-related jobs are located in this region. This region comprehends São Paulo, Minas Gerais, Rio de Janeiro and Espírito Santo. Midwest region: the main economic activity of this region is farming and livestock. This region presents the second lowest demographic density of the country, and is constituted by Mato Grosso, Mato Grosso do Sul, Goiás and Distrito Federal. Northeast region: this Brazilian region presents one of the worst human development indices, and is characterized by the presence of a semi-arid region within its territory, and is one of the poorer areas of the country. This region comprises nine states: Alagoas, Bahia, Ceará, Maranhão, Paraíba, Pernambuco, Piauí, Rio Grande do Norte and Sergipe. North region: this Brazilian region presents the lowest demographic density, as well as the second worst human development index. This region spans the Amazon Forest, which is an important ecosystem for the world, and includes the states of Amazonas, Amapá, Pará, Tocantins, Roraima and Rondônia. Age effect: evaluates the influence of age on the evolution of mortality rates. Period effect: evaluates the impacts of changes in diagnostic methods, treatment protocols, as well as changes in death certification and improvement of mortality information systems on the evolution of mortality trends. Birth cohort effect: analyzes whether modifications in mortality trends were associated with changes in exposition to long-term risk factors.

Peer-review

In this study the authors report trends in the incidence and mortality of gastric cancer over the last decades and make a prediction on the mortality in the upcoming years. All in all the study is well conducted and has interesting results, needs some minor revisions.

REFERENCES

1 **Ferlay J**, Soerjomataram I, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, Parkin DM, Forman D, Bray F. Cancer incidence and mortality worldwide: sources, methods and major patterns in GLOBOCAN

2012. *Int J Cancer* 2015; **136**: E359-E386 [PMID: 25220842 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.29210]
2 **Ferlay J**, Shin HR, Bray F, Forman D, Mathers C, Parkin DM. Estimates of worldwide burden of cancer in 2008: GLOBOCAN 2008. *Int J Cancer* 2010; **127**: 2893-2917 [PMID: 21351269 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25516]
3 **Compare D**, Rocco A, Nardone G. Risk factors in gastric cancer. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2010; **14**: 302-308 [PMID: 20496539]
4 **Matsuzaka M**, Fukuda S, Takahashi I, Shimaya S, Oyama T, Yaegaki M, Shimoyama T, Sakamoto J, Nakaji S, Umeda T. The decreasing burden of gastric cancer in Japan. *Tohoku J Exp Med* 2007; **212**: 207-219 [PMID: 17592208]
5 **Crew KD**, Neugut AI. Epidemiology of gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 354-362 [PMID: 16489633 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v12.i3.354]
6 **Holford TR**. Understanding the effects of age, period, and cohort on incidence and mortality rates. *Annu Rev Public Health* 1991; **12**: 425-457 [PMID: 2049144 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.pu.12.050191.002233]
7 **Robertson C**, Gandini S, Boyle P. Age-period-cohort models: a comparative study of available methodologies. *J Clin Epidemiol* 1999; **52**: 569-583 [PMID: 10408997 DOI: 10.1016/S0895-4356(99)00033-5]
8 **Mello JMH**, Gotlieb SLD, Laurenti RO. Sistema de informações sobre mortalidade: problemas e propostas para o seu enfrentamento I-mortes por causas naturais.Rev. bras. *Epidemiol* 2002; **5**: 197-211
9 **Mathers CD**, Bernard C, Iburg KM, Inoue M, Fat DM, Shibuya K, Stein C, Tomijima N, Xu H. Global Burden of Disease in 2002: data sources, methods and results. Global Programme on Evidence for Health Policy Discussion Paper No. 54. Geneva: World Health Organization, 2004
10 **Doll R**, Payne PM, Waterhouse JAH. Cancer incidence in five countries. International Union Against Cancer. Berlin: Springer-Verla, 1966 [DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-85849-9]
11 **Møller B**, Fekjaer H, Hakulinen T, Tryggvadóttir L, Storm HH, Talbäck M, Haldorsen T. Prediction of cancer incidence in the Nordic countries up to the year 2020. *Eur J Cancer Prev* 2002; **11** Suppl 1: S1-96 [PMID: 12442806]
12 **Ferlay J**, Steliarova-Foucher E, Lortet-Tieulent J, Rosso S, Coebergh JW, Comber H, Forman D, Bray F. Cancer incidence and mortality patterns in Europe: estimates for 40 countries in 2012. *Eur J Cancer* 2013; **49**: 1374-1403 [PMID: 23485231 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2012.12.027]
13 **Guimarães RM**, Muzi CD. Trend of mortality rates for gastric cancer in Brazil and regions in the period of 30 years (1980-2009). *Arq Gastroenterol* 2012; **49**: 184-188 [PMID: 23011239 DOI: 10.1590/S0004-28032012000300003]
14 **Yako-Suketomo H**, Katanoda K. Comparison of time trends in stomach cancer mortality (1990-2006) in the world, from the WHO mortality database. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2009; **39**: 622-623 [PMID: 19713318 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyp107]
15 **García-Esquinas E**, Pérez-Gomes B, Polláns M, Boldo E, Férnandez-Navarro P, Lopez V. Gastric cancer mortality trends in Spain, 1976-2005, differences by autonomous region and sex. *BMC Cancer* 2009; **9**: 1-9
16 **Song M**, Kang D, Yang JJ, Choi JY, Sung H, Lee Y, Yoon HS, Choi Y, Kong SH, Lee HJ, Yang HK, Kim WH. Age and sex interactions in gastric cancer incidence and mortality trends in Korea. *Gastric Cancer* 2015; **18**: 580-589 [PMID: 25091081]
17 **Ito Y**, Ioka A, Nakayama T, Tsukuma H, Nakamura T. Comparison of trends in cancer incidence and mortality in Osaka, Japan, using an age-period-cohort model. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2011; **12**: 879-888 [PMID: 21790220]
18 **Cavaleiro-Pinto M**, Peleteiro B, Lunet N, Barros H. Helicobacter pylori infection and gastric cardia cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Cancer Causes Control* 2011; **22**: 375-387 [PMID: 21184266 DOI: 10.1007/s10552-010-9707-2]
19 **El-Serag HB**, Mason AC, Petersen N, Key CR. Epidemiological differences between adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus and adenocarcinoma of the gastric cardia in the USA. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 368-372 [PMID: 11839716 DOI: 10.1136/gut.50.3.368]
20 **Wang C**, Weber A, Graham DY. Age, period, and cohort effects on gastric cancer mortality. *Dig Dis Sci* 2015; **60**: 514-523 [PMID: 25274157 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-014-3359-0]
21 **Inoue M**, Yamamoto S, Kurahashi N, Iwasaki M, Sasazuki S, Tsugane S. Daily total physical activity level and total cancer risk in men and women: results from a large-scale population-based cohort study in Japan. *Am J Epidemiol* 2008; **168**: 391-403 [PMID: 18599492 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kwn146]
22 **Eslick GD**. Helicobacter pylori infection causes gastric cancer? A review of the epidemiological, meta-analytic, and experimental evidence. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 2991-2999 [PMID: 16718777 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v12.i19.2991]
23 **Gronnier C**, Piessen G, Mariette C. Diagnosis and treatment of non-metastatic esophagogastric junction adenocarcinoma: what are the current options? *J Visc Surg* 2012; **149**: e23-e33 [PMID: 22341763 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviscsurg.2012.01.003]
24 **Seoane-Mato D**, Aragonés N, Ferreras E, García-Pérez J, Cervantes-Amat M, Fernández-Navarro P, Pastor-Barriuso R, López-Abente G. Trends in oral cavity, pharyngeal, oesophageal and gastric cancer mortality rates in Spain, 1952-2006: an age-period-cohort analysis. *BMC Cancer* 2014; **14**: 254 [PMID: 24725381 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-14-254]
25 **Brown LM**, Devesa SS. Epidemiologic trends in esophageal and gastric cancer in the United States. *Surg Oncol Clin N Am* 2002; **11**: 235-256 [PMID: 12424848 DOI: 10.1016/S1055-3207(02)00002-9]
26 **Xue FB**, Xu YY, Wan Y, Pan BR, Ren J, Fan DM. Association of H. pylori infection with gastric carcinoma: a Meta analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2001; **7**: 801-804 [PMID: 11854905 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v7.i6.801]
27 **Riboli E**, Norat T. Epidemiologic evidence of the protective effect of fruit and vegetables on cancer risk. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2003; **78**: 559S-569S [PMID: 12936950]
28 **Huang JQ**, Sridhar S, Chen Y, Hunt RH. Meta-analysis of the relationship between Helicobacter pylori seropositivity and gastric cancer. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 1169-1179 [PMID: 9609753 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(98)70422-6]
29 **Eslick GD**, Lim LL, Byles JE, Xia HH, Talley NJ. Association of Helicobacter pylori infection with gastric carcinoma: a meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 2373-2379 [PMID: 10483994 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1999.01360.x]
30 **Shikata K**, Kiyohara Y, Kubo M, Yonemoto K, Ninomiya T, Shirota T, Tanizaki Y, Doi Y, Tanaka K, Oishi Y, Matsumoto T, Iida M. A prospective study of dietary salt intake and gastric cancer incidence in a defined Japanese population: the Hisayama study. *Int J Cancer* 2006; **119**: 196-201 [PMID: 16450397 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.21822]
31 **Miceli R**, Tomasello G, Bregni G, Di Bartolomeo M, Pietrantonio F. Adjuvant chemotherapy for gastric cancer: current evidence and future challenges. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 4516-4525 [PMID: 24782604 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i16.4516]
32 **Paoletti X**, Oba K, Burzykowski T, Michiels S, Ohashi Y, Pignon JP, Rougier P, Sakamoto J, Sargent D, Sasako M, Van Cutsem E, Buyse M. Benefit of adjuvant chemotherapy for resectable gastric cancer: a meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2010; **303**: 1729-1737 [PMID: 20442389]
33 **Oliveira EX**, Melo EC, Pinheiro RS, Noronha CP, Carvalho MS. [Access to cancer care: mapping hospital admissions and high-complexity outpatient care flows. The case of breast cancer]. *Cad Saude Publica* 2011; **27**: 317-326 [PMID: 21359468 DOI: 10.1590/S0102-311X2011000200013]
34 **Curado MP**, de Souza DL. Cancer burden in Latin America and the Caribbean. *Ann Glob Health* 2014; **80**: 370-377 [PMID: 25512152 DOI: 10.1016/j.aogh.2014.09.009]
35 **Barbosa IR**, de Souza DL, Bernal MM, do C C Costa Í. Cancer mortality in Brazil: Temporal Trends and Predictions for the Year 2030. *Medicine* (Baltimore) 2015; **94**: e746 [PMID: 25906105 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000000746]
36 **Souza DL**, Jerez-Roig J, Cabral FJ, de Lima JR, Rutalira MK, Costa JA. Colorectal cancer mortality in Brazil: predictions

until the year 2025 and cancer control implications. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2014; **57**: 1082-1089 [PMID: 25101604 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000000186]

37 Demografia Médica no Brasil, v. 2/Coordenação de Mário Scheffer; Equipe de pesquisa: Alex Cassenote, Aureliano Biancarelli. São Paulo: Conselho Federal de Medicina, 2013

P- Reviewer: Cho JY, Schmidt T, Velasco I **S- Editor**: Yu J
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6539

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6539-6546
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Prospective Study

Can optical diagnosis of small colon polyps be accurate? Comparing standard scope without narrow banding to high definition scope with narrow banding

Hassan Ashktorab, Firoozeh Etaati, Farahnaz Rezaeean, Mehdi Nouraie, Mansour Paydar, Hassan Hassanzadeh Namin, Andrew Sanderson, Rehana Begum, Kawtar Alkhalloufi, Hassan Brim, Adeyinka O Laiyemo

Hassan Ashktorab, Firoozeh Etaati, Farahnaz Rezaeean, Mehdi Nouraie, Mansour Paydar, Hassan Hassanzadeh Namin, Andrew Sanderson, Rehana Begum, Kawtar Alkhalloufi, Hassan Brim, Adeyinka O Laiyemo, Department of Medicine and Cancer Center, Howard University College of Medicine, Washington, DC 20060, United States

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this work.

Supported by the National Institute on Minority Health and Health Disparities of the National Institutes of Health (in part), Award No. G12MD007597.

Correspondence to: Hassan Ashktorab, PhD, Department of Medicine and Cancer Center, Howard University College of Medicine, 2041 Georgia Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20060, United States. hashktorab@howard.edu
Telephone: +1-202-8066121
Fax: +1-202-6671686

Received: March 4, 2015
Peer-review started: March 5, 2015
First decision: April 24, 2015
Revised: August 24, 2015
Accepted: September 30, 2015
Article in press: September 30, 2015
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To study the accuracy of using high definition (HD) scope with narrow band imaging (NBI) *vs* standard white light colonoscope without NBI (ST), to predict the histology of the colon polyps, particularly those < 1 cm.

METHODS: A total of 147 African Americans patients who were referred to Howard University Hospital for screening or, diagnostic or follow up colonoscopy, during a 12-mo period in 2012 were prospectively recruited. Some patients had multiple polyps and total number of polyps was 179. Their colonoscopies were performed by 3 experienced endoscopists who determined the size and stated whether the polyps being removed were hyperplastic or adenomatous polyps using standard colonoscopes or high definition colonoscopes with NBI. The histopathologic diagnosis was reported by pathologists as part of routine care.

RESULTS: Of participants in the study, 55 (37%) were male and median (interquartile range) of age was 56 (19-80). Demographic, clinical characteristics, past medical history of patients, and the data obtained by two instruments were not significantly different and two methods detected similar number of polyps. In ST scope 89% of polyps were < 1 cm *vs* 87% in HD scope (P = 0.7). The ST scope had a positive predictive value (PPV) and positive likelihood ratio (PLR) of 86% and 4.0 for adenoma compared to 74% and 2.6 for HD scope. There was a trend of higher sensitivity for HD scope (68%) compare to ST scope (53%) with almost the same specificity. The ST scope had a PPV and PLR of 38% and 1.8 for hyperplastic polyp (HPP) compared to 42% and 2.2 for HD scope. The sensitivity and

specificity of two instruments for HPP diagnosis were similar.

CONCLUSION: Our results indicated that HD scope was more sensitive in diagnosis of adenoma than ST scope. Clinical diagnosis of HPP with either scope is less accurate compared to adenoma. Colonoscopy diagnosis is not yet fully matched with pathologic diagnosis of colon polyp. However with the advancement of both imaging and training, it may be possible to increase the sensitivity and specificity of the scopes and hence save money for eliminating time and the cost of Immunohistochemistry/pathology.

Key words: High definition colonoscopy; Narrow band imaging; Polyp detection; Colon cancer screening

Core tip: This study analyzed the size of polyps and stated whether the polyps being removed were hyperplastic or adenomatous polyps using standard colonoscopes or high definition colonoscopes with narrow band imaging (NBI), suggests that high definition scope was more sensitive in diagnosis of adenoma than standard white light colonoscope without NBI scope. Hence we save money for eliminating time and the cost of immunohistochemistry/pathology.

Ashktorab H, Etaati F, Rezaeean F, Nouraie M, Paydar M, Namin HH, Sanderson A, Begum R, Alkhalloufi K, Brim H, Laiyemo AO. Can optical diagnosis of small colon polyps be accurate? Comparing standard scope without narrow banding to high definition scope with narrow banding. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6539-6546 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6539.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6539

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer is one of the most common cancers in the United States[1]. Early detection of colon cancer by colonoscopy and polyp removal is likely to decrease mortality from the disease. Colonoscopy is now established as the gold standard for the identification of both colorectal cancer and polyps[2]. It is estimated that up to 15 million colonoscopies are performed annually in the United States[3,4].

On the other hand, most polyps, which are either biopsied or removed, are non-neoplastic in nature, which provide additional burden to the pathologist[5] as well as the cost associated with unnecessary biopsies and the risk with polypectomies[6]. Also the colonoscopic miss rate of adenomas, which are considered to be precursors of colorectal cancer, is as high as 24%[7]. Therefore, the distinction between non-neoplastic and neoplastic colorectal polyps *in vivo* with a suitable technique can improve the accuracy of colonoscopy, particularly as a higher adenoma detection rate, could be cost saving by eliminating the need for routine pathology on every polyp < 1 cm removed during colonoscopy.

Improvements in the resolution of imaging techniques in colonoscopy over the years have resulted in a substantial increase in the polyp detection rate in the colon. One of these new imaging techniques is narrow band imaging (NBI). NBI is a relatively new endoscopic technique that increases the accuracy of diagnosis using narrow-band width filters in a red-green-blue (RGB) sequential illumination system[6]. This results in enhancement of the surface mucosal morphology, so improves the detailed visualization of the micro vascular and micro structural pit patterns[7].

A number of randomized trials comparing narrow band imaging colonoscopy with white light colonoscopy for detection of colorectal polyps reported variable results. This discrepancy in results is related to inadequately powered studies due to difference in the number and experience of endoscopists involved in the studies, as well as small sample size[8].

The first study was from Japan[9]. They examined thirty four patients and they found statistically significant difference between NBI (sensitivity 100%, specificity 75%) compared to standard scope (sensitivity 83%, specificity 44%, $P < 0.05$ for specificity). In the current study, we present a comparison of polyp detection rate and accuracy, using standard scope without NBI and high definition scope with NBI.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

A total of one hundred forty seven African Americans (AAs) patients who were referred to Howard University Hospital (HUH) for screening or, diagnostic or follow up colonoscopy, during a 12-mo period in 2012, were prospectively recruited. All patients were consented based on approved HUH IRB. Their colonoscopies were performed by 3 experienced endoscopists (more than 2000 colonoscopies each) at the same endoscopy center, who determined the size and stated whether the polyps being removed were hyperplasic or adenomatous polyps, using standard colonoscope or high definition colonoscope with NBI. Patients were assigned to undergo colonoscopy using either standard scope without NBI or high definition (HD) scope with NBI.

Data collection

Data collected for this survey include: Date of procedure, patient's date of birth, gender, and race, height (Ht), weight (Wt), education, associated condition, reason for colonoscopy, past history of colon polyps, family history of colon cancer, smoking, alcohol consumption, colon preparation quality, number of polyps, polyp size, polyp

Table 1 Comparing the characteristics of patients underwent standard scope *vs* high definition scope with narrow band imaging *n* (%)

Parameters	Standard scope (1) (*n* = 68)	HD scope (*n* = 72)	*P* value
Female	41 (60)	48 (67)	0.40
Age (yr), median (IQR)	56 (52-61)	57 (53-64)	0.70
Education			0.40
High school and lower	31 (46)	38 (54)	
> High school	37 (54)	34 (47)	
H/o previous colonoscopy	25 (37)	19 (26)	0.20
H/o previous colon polyp	6 (9)	7 (10)	0.80
Family h/o colon cancer	22 (22)	12 (17)	0.40
Indication			0.20
Screening	34 (50)	45 (63)	
Diagnostic	18 (26)	19 (26)	
Follow up	16 (24)	8 (11)	
Colon preparation			0.08
Good	63 (93)	71 (99)	
Moderate	5 (7)	1 (1)	
Number of patient with polyp diagnosis	41 (60)	49 (68)	0.30
Total number of polyps detected, median (IQR)	1 (1-2)[1]	2 (1-3)[2]	0.20
Adenoma detection rate	23 (34)	32 (44)	0.20
Advanced adenoma detection rate	7 (10)	8 (11)	0.90
Hyperplastic polyp detection rate	19 (28)	21 (29)	0.90
Proportion of patients with multiple polyps	17 (41)[1]	28 (57)[2]	0.10

[1]*n* = 41; [2]*n* = 49. HD: High definition.

location, type of scope, endoscopist name, duration of colonoscopy, colonoscopy diagnosis, pathologist name and histology diagnosis. Adenomatous polyps with tubulovillous histology or size > 1 cm or with high grade dysplasia were define as advance adenoma.

Endoscopy procedure

Among 140 patients with recorded endoscopy type, 49% of patients had colonoscopy with standard scope. All three endoscopists performed procedure using both scopes at the same rate (9 min median normal withdraw time as quality standard). Data and the predicted diagnosis were collected from patients who had colonoscopy by the same three endoscopists. Bowel preparation was good and moderate in 95% and 5% of patients, respectively. The procedures were performed under a nurse administered standard sedation with Fentanyl and Midazolam. Colonoscopy withdrawal times were recorded by the nursing staff. Polyps were removed using forceps biopsy, and sent for histological analysis by the pathologist who was not aware of the endoscopic diagnosis.

Statistical analysis

We compared the demographic and clinical characteristics between a group of patients who underwent standard colonoscopy *vs* NBI by Student's *t*-test to χ^2 whichever was appropriate. For each method sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value (PPV), negative predictive value (NPV) and, positive likelihood ratio (PLR) of colonoscopy diagnosis was calculated with comparison to pathologic diagnosis as gold standard. Calculation of 95% confidence interval and statistical comparison between two instruments was performed by established methods. All statistical analyses were performed using Stata 12.0 (Stata Corp., College park, TX, United States).

RESULTS

Patients and endoscopy

One hundred and forty seven adult patients were recruited and underwent colonoscopy during a one year period. Among them 55 (37%) were male and median (range) of age was 56 (19-80). Among the patients "screened with" underwent standard scope, 31 (46%) had high school or lower education, while 37 (54%) had higher education, compared to 38 (54%) and 34 (46%) who underwent HD scope, respectively. Among the patients who underwent standard scope, 25 (37%) had previous colonoscopy, which 6 of them (9%) had previous history of polyp, while these numbers for the patients underwent HD scope were 19 (26%) and 7 (10%) respectively. Also 22 patients (22%) underwent standard scope had a family history of colon cancer, while this number for HD scope with NBI was 12 (17%). The most common reason for colonoscopy with both scopes was screening, 50% of the patients underwent standard scope and 62% of the patients underwent HD scope. Table 1 compares the characteristics of patients underwent standard scope *vs* HD scope with NBI.

Colonoscopies were done by standard (49%) and HD (51%) scopes. Among 147 patients, 57 patients (39%) had normal colonoscopy. Number of patients diagnosed with any type of polyp were 41(60%) using standard scope and 49 (68%) using HD scope (P = 0.3). Among all 90 patients with polyps, 179 polyps were removed. The median (range) of polyp number in a patient was 2 (1-5) and was not significantly different between two scopes (P = 0.2). Among the polyps removed by standard scope, 89% were < 10 mm, compare to 87% for HD scope with NBI (P = 0.7). In lesions, the most frequent anatomic location was ascending colon (29%), followed by descending colon (18) and rectum (each 16%). This distribution was not different between both scopes (P = 0.5). The most frequent clinical diagnoses were hyper plastic polyp (HPP; 46%), adenoma (43%) and diminutive (11%). Tables 2 and 3 indicate the clinical value of colonoscopy diagnosis for adenoma and HPP when compared to the corresponding pathologic diagnosis.

Diagnostic ability of adenoma by the type of scope

Adenoma detection rate and advanced adenoma

Table 2 Clinical diagnostic value of adenoma by scope

	Sensitivity (%)	Specificity (%)	PPV (%) (true positive/all positive)	NPV (%) (true negative/all negative)	PLR (%) (true positive/false positive)
ALL	61 (51-70)	79 (69-86)	78 (68-86)	62 (53-71)	2.9 (1.8-4.5)
Scope 1	53 (39-67)	87 (70-95)	86 (69-94)	55 (41-69)	4.0 (1.5-10.4)
Scope 2	68 (55-79)	74 (60-84)	74 (60-84)	69 (55-79)	2.6 (1.6-4.3)
P value for two scopes	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.1	

Numbers in parentheses indicate 95%CI. PPV: Positive predictive value; NPV: Negative predictive value; PLR: Positive likelihood ratio.

Table 3 Clinical diagnostic value of hyper plastic polyp by scope

	Sensitivity (%)	Specificity (%)	PPV (%)	NPV (%)	PLR (%)
All	73 (59-84)	63 (55-71)	40 (30-51)	88 (79-93)	2.0 (1.5-2.6)
Scope 1	74 (51-88)	59 (46-71)	38 (24-54)	87 (73-94)	1.8 (1.2-2.7)
Scope 2	74 (54-86)	66 (55-76)	42 (29-57)	88 (77-94)	2.2 (1.5-3.2)
P value for two scopes	0.9	0.4	0.7	0.9	

Numbers in parentheses indicate 95%CI. PPV: Positive predictive value; NPV: Negative predictive value; PLR: Positive likelihood ratio.

Table 4 Comparison of clinical characteristics of all polyps in standard scope vs high definition scope with narrow band imaging *n* (%)

Parameters	Standard scope (1) (*n* = 75)	HD scope (2) (*n* = 103)	*P* value
Polyps < 10 mm in size	67 (89)	89 (87)	0.7
Adenoma detection rate	45 (60)	53 (51)	0.3
Hyperplastic polyp detection rate	19 (25)	26 (25)	0.9

HD: High definition.

detection rate were not significantly different between two scopes (Table 1). Standard scope has a sensitivity of 53% and specificity of 87% in detecting adenoma, compared to 68%, 74% for HD scope with NBI, respectively. Standard scope has a higher specificity, but HD scope with NBI has a higher sensitivity in detecting adenoma. Positive likelihood ratio for standard scope is higher than HD scope with NBI (4 compare to 2.6; Table 2).

Diagnostic ability of HPP by the type of scope

HPP detection rate for standard scope and HD was 28% and 21%, respectively (*P* = 0.9, Table 1). Standard scope has a sensitivity of 74% and specificity of 59% in detecting HPP, compared to 74% and 66% for HD scope, respectively. Both scopes don`t show significant difference in detecting HPP. Positive likelihood ratio for HD scope with NBI is slightly higher than standard scope (2.2 compare to 1.8; Table 4).

Diagnostic ability of adenoma by endoscopists

Endoscopist 1 has a higher sensitivity in detecting adenoma (70%) followed by endoscopist 2 (60%) and endoscopoist 3 (52%) regardless of the type of scope. Endoscopist 1 also has a higher accuracy in detecting adenoma (PLR = 6.3%) compared to the other two endoscopists (2.8 and 1.8 for endoscopists 2 and 3 respectively) regardless of the type of scope (Table 5).

Diagnostic ability of HPP by endoscopists

Endoscopist 1 has lower sensitivity (53%) but higher accuracy (PLR = 3.4%) in detecting HPP compared to the other two endoscopists, regardless of the type of scope. Endoscopist 2 has the highest sensitivity (91%) in detecting HPP, regardless of the type of scope (Table 6).

Polyp detection rate using standard scope without NBI

Out of 28 adenoma "diagnosed in real time" pre-diagnosis using standard scope without NBI, 24 were matched to the histology report (PPV = 86%). For HPP, these numbers were 37, with 14 matched to the histology report (PPV = 38%; Figure 1).

Polyp detection rate using standard scope with NBI

Out of 49 adenoma prediagnosis using HD scope with NBI, 36 were matched to the histology report (PPV = 74%). For HPP, these numbers were 45, with 19 matched to the histology report (PPV = 42%; Figure 2).

DISCUSSION

The standard white light colonoscopy does not have the ability to accurately distinguish between adenomatous and hyperplastic polyps[10]. This distinction has an important clinical impact as adenomatous polyps are considered neoplastic whereas hyperplastic polyps are benign and don't have a malignant potential. Although the removal of adenomatous polyps is recommended since it disrupts the adenoma-carcinoma sequence and prevents from the development of colorectal cancer, hyperplastic polyps can safely be left behind without significant consequences[10]. The removal of

Table 5 Comparasion of adenoma detection between endoscopists

Parameter	Sensitivity	Specificity	PPV	NPV	PLR
Endoscopist 1	75 (55-88)	88 (70-96)	86 (65-95)	79 (61-90)	6.3 (2.1-18.5)
Endoscopist 2	60 (46-74)	78 (58-90)	84 (67-93)	51 (34-67)	2.8 (1.2-6.3)
Endoscopist 3	52 (35-68)	72 (55-84)	64 (45-80)	61 (45-74)	1.8 (0.4-1.0)
P value for three endoscopists	0.2	0.3	0.1	0.1	

PPV: Positive predictive value; NPV: Negative predictive value; PLR: Positive likelihood ratio.

Table 6 Comparison of hyper plastic polyp detection between endoscopists

Parameter	Sensitivity	Specificity	PPV	NPV	PLR
Endoscopist 1	53 (32-73)	83 (66-93)	67 (42-85)	74 (57-85)	3.2 (1.3-7.8)
Endoscopist 2	91 (62-98)	56 (43-69)	29 (17-46)	97 (84-99)	2.1 (1.5-3.0)
Endoscopist 3	87 (62-96)	58 (44-71)	39 (25-56)	93 (79-98)	2.1 (1.4-3.1)
P value for three endoscopists	0.026	0.033	0.049	0.008	

PPV: Positive predictive value; NPV: Negative predictive value; PLR: Positive likelihood ratio.

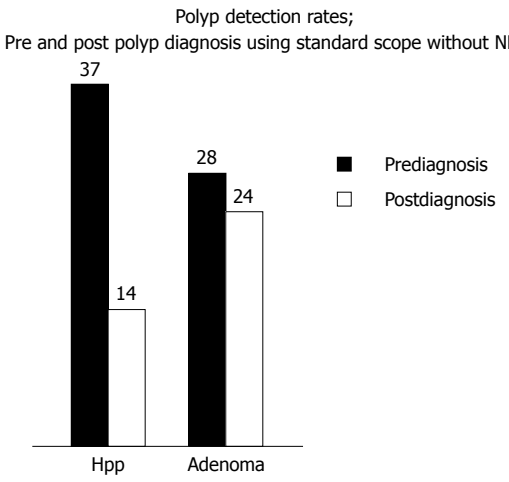


Figure 1 Pre- and post-polyp diagnosis using standard scope without narrow band imaging. HPP: Hyper plastic polyp.

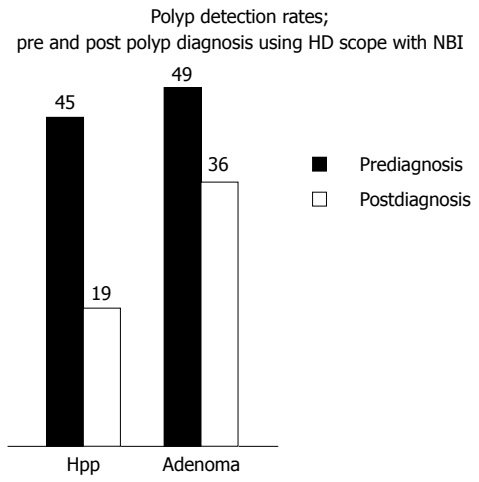


Figure 2 Pre- and post-polyp diagnosis using high definition scope with narrow band imaging. HPP: Hyper plastic polyp.

hyperplastic polyps could be avoided with real-time identification of polyp type during colonoscopy, leading to a decrease of the procedure duration, costs and risk of complications[10]. Studies found a conflicting results comparing the accuracy of standard scope *vs* NBI scope in detection of polyps and prediction of histology in real time[8,11-13]. Some trials findings favored the standard scope, others the NBI scope whereas some studies did not reveal any difference between both scopes.

Sabbagh *et al*[11] conducted a randomized controlled trial and meta-analysis of published studies comparing the narrow-band imaging to conventional colonoscopy in detection of colorectal polyps. A total of 482 patients were included, 241 into the intervention (NBI) colonoscopy and 241 into the conventional colonoscopy group[11]. No significant difference was found in the mean number of polyps when comparing the conventional procedure to the NBI system (0.41 *vs* 0.29). The overall detection rate of lesions (*n* = 174) and polyps (*n* = 169) by histological examination per patient in the entire study group were 36.1% and 35.1% respectively, with adenomas and hyperplastic polyps found, respectively, in 55.0% (*n* = 93/169) and 37.9% (*n* = 64/169) of all patients. In this study[11], the overall rate of polyp detection was significantly higher in the conventional group compared to the NBI group (RR = 0.75, 95%CI: 0.60-0.96). The results of Sabbagh *et al*[11] are different than our results. In our study, there was no difference in the rate of polyps detection between the standard scope and NBI with 41 (60%) patients diagnosed with any type of polyp using standard scope and 49 (68%) using HD/NBI scope (*P* = 0.3). The median (range) of polyp number in a patient was 2 (1-5) and was not significantly different between two scopes (*P* = 0.2), this difference could be attributed to the sample size and study population. In our trial included a total of 147 patient and all were African Americans, also the white-light group, in Sabbagh *et al*[11]'s study, could have had better

mucosal visualization during the withdrawal phase compared to that of the NBI group because of the darkening of the image associated with the use of NBI. This may have led to the finding of significantly greater number of polyps found in the white-light group. In addition, one third of patients had less than excellent colon preparation, which may have contributed to the poorer performance of the NBI visualization. Sabbagh *et al*[11] also performed a systemic review of the current evidence including 7 randomized control trials which showed no significant differences among groups in the mean number of polyps, the mean number of adenomas, and the rates of patients with at least one polyp or one adenoma. Two randomized control trials revealed a significant difference in the mean rate of adenomas detection in favor of the NBI group[14,15]. One trial reported a significantly higher detection in the mean number of flat adenomas in the NBI group[16], while other study demonstrated the opposite[17] and two other trials did not find any significant difference between the standard scope and the NBI[18,19].

Another metanalysis of 9 randomized control trials compared the yield and miss rate of narrow band imaging and white light endoscopy in patients undergoing screening or surveillance colonoscopy[8]. There was no significant difference between high-definition narrow-band imaging (HD-NBI) and high-definition white light endoscopy (HD-WLE) for the detection of adenomas (OR = 1.01, 95%CI: 0.74-1.37; I^2 = 60%; six RCTs) or for the detection of patients with polyps, patients with adenomas, the detection of adenomas over 10 mm, flat adenomas and flat adenomas per patient[8]. There was no significant difference for HD-NBI *vs* HD-WLE in polyp miss rate (OR = 1.17, 95%CI: 0.80-1.71; I^2 = 50%; three randomized control trials) or adenoma miss rate (OR = 0.65, 95%CI: 0.40-1.06; I^2 = 10%; three randomized control trials)[8]. These results are consistent with ours, however, our study did not evaluate the miss rate.

A prospective trial of 302 patients compared standard broadband white light colonoscopy with narrow-band imaging for the differentiation of colorectal polyps during real-time colonoscopy by using a modified Kudo pit pattern classification and vascular color intensity grading[20]. Overall, NBI accuracy was 80% compared with 77% for white light alone[20]. NBI performed significantly better than white light in diagnosing adenomas (sensitivity 80% *vs* 69%), particularly for adenomas ≤ 5 mm (75% *vs* 60%)[20]. There was no difference between NBI and white light for nonadenomatous polyps[20]. These findings are consistent with our results (sensitivity 68% *vs* 53% for NBI and Standard scope respectively). The diagnostic accuracies in this study[20] were better for larger polyps. Compared with white light, however, NBI did not significantly improve accuracy in any size or shape category, nor for any segment of the colon. In our study the most frequent anatomic location of the lesions was ascending colon (29%), followed by descending colon (18%) and rectum (each 16%). This distribution was not different between two scopes as well (P = 0.5). The researchers in this study[20] repeated the trial after training the endoscopists in detection and differentiation between different types of polyps. An equal number of polyps were analyzed in each of the two study periods (133 and 132, respectively). NBI accuracies significantly improved from 74% to 87% between the two study periods however, white light accuracies did not change (78% first half and 79% second half). After the learning curve was reached, NBI was significantly more accurate than white light[20]. The studies demonstrated that there is a learning curve with regard to NBI assessment of colorectal polyps, and that NBI performs better than the ordinary broadband white light once this "learning" is achieved[20].

A recent systematic review and meta-analysis on the real-time diagnostic operating characteristics of NBI colonoscopy included 28 studies with a total of 6280 polyps diagnosed in 4053 patients[13]. Endoscopic diagnosis of colorectal polyps with NBI showed highly accurate diagnostic performance, the area under the HSROC curve was 0.92 (95%CI: 0.90-0.94). The overall sensitivity of NBI diagnosis was 91.0% (95%CI: 87.6%-93.5%) and specificity was 82.6% (95%CI: 79.0%-85.7%) compared with histology[13]. The sensitivity and specificity of diagnosis of diminutive polyps, made with high confidence was 93.4% (95%CI: 87.4%-96.7%) and 84.0% (95%CI: 76.6%-89.3%), respectively[13]. The findings of this meta-analysis suggest that real-time endoscopic diagnosis of colorectal polyps performed using NBI has a high diagnostic performance[13]. Endoscopic diagnosis correctly characterized 91% of neoplasms and 83% of non-neoplastic polyps. This study addressed the standards set forth by the American Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ASGE) for the "resect and discard" strategy[12]. The summary agreement was 92.6% in this study[13], supporting the clinical use of such a strategy. In our study the sensitivity 68% and specificity 74% of the NBI were much lower as compared to the findings of McGill *et al*[13] meta analysis. This discrepancy could be related to the size of the population studied, however our project studied only a minority population African Americans.

The findings of our study have some limitations: the total number of polyps was relatively small 179 as compared to higher number in other studies. A sub group analysis for polyps ≤ 5 mm was not performed, the "resect and discard" strategy has been proposed by the ASGE for adenomas ≤ 5 mm in size without pathologic assessment when the endoscopic diagnosis provides a ≥ 90% agreement in assignment of postpolypectomy surveillance intervals compared with decisions based on pathology[12]. Interobserver variations were also noted, a possible training of the endoscopists prior to the use of the NBI could have improved the outcome. The cost saving for

this approaches is substantial and was confirmed by Kessler *et al*[21]'s study. Based on the annual volume of colonoscopy in the United States, the annual up-front cost savings of forgoing the pathologic assessment would exceed a billion dollars[21].

Overall, the colonoscopy diagnosis is not yet fully matched with pathologic diagnosis of colon polyp. However with the advancement of both imaging and training, it may be possible to increase the sensitivity and specificity of the scopes and hence save money for eliminating time and the cost of Immunohistochemistry/pathology.

COMMENTS

Background

High definition colonoscopy (HD) with narrow band imaging (NBI) scope has advantage to detect vascular or mucosal characteristics so that any abnormal growth could be better visualized and diagnosed than standard colonoscopy.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Diagnostic accuracy using HD scope with NBI is cost saving as it eliminates and/or decreases the volume of specimens that need pathology assessment and diagnosis, especially for polyps < 1 cm.

Applications

The results of present study indicate that HD-NBI scope more sensitive for adenoma diagnosis than standard scope colonoscopy.

Terminology

High definition with narrow band imaging scope correspond to improvements in the resolution of imaging techniques in colonoscopy, that increases the accuracy of diagnosis using narrow-band width filters in a red-green-blue sequential illumination system. It improves the detailed visualization of the micro vascular and micro structural colon pit in patterns.

Peer-review

The present study presents the differences between two advanced explorations with different levels of viewing the pathological target, which are colon polyps. The exposure mode, of the differences between the two techniques is in accordance with the standards of a well written article.

REFERENCES

1 **Jemal A**, Simard EP, Dorell C, Noone AM, Markowitz LE, Kohler B, Eheman C, Saraiya M, Bandi P, Saslow D, Cronin KA, Watson M, Schiffman M, Henley SJ, Schymura MJ, Anderson RN, Yankey D, Edwards BK. Annual Report to the Nation on the Status of Cancer, 1975-2009, featuring the burden and trends in human papillomavirus(HPV)-associated cancers and HPV vaccination coverage levels. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2013; **105**: 175-201 [PMID: 23297039 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djs491]

2 **Schrock TR**. Colonoscopy for colorectal cancer: too much, too little, just right. ASGE Distinguished Lecture 1993. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1993; **39**: 848-851 [PMID: 8293920]

3 **Seeff LC**, Richards TB, Shapiro JA, Nadel MR, Manninen DL, Given LS, Dong FB, Winges LD, McKenna MT. How many endoscopies are performed for colorectal cancer screening? Results from CDC's survey of endoscopic capacity. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 1670-1677 [PMID: 15578503]

4 **Seeff LC**, Manninen DL, Dong FB, Chattopadhyay SK, Nadel MR, Tangka FK, Molinari NA. Is there endoscopic capacity to provide colorectal cancer screening to the unscreened population in the United States? *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 1661-1669 [PMID: 15578502]

5 **Butterly LF**, Chase MP, Pohl H, Fiarman GS. Prevalence of clinically important histology in small adenomas. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 343-348 [PMID: 16527698 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2005.12.021]

6 **Singh R**, Owen V, Shonde A, Kaye P, Hawkey C, Ragunath K. White light endoscopy, narrow band imaging and chromoendoscopy with magnification in diagnosing colorectal neoplasia. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **1**: 45-50 [PMID: 21160650 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v1.i1.45]

7 **Rex DK**, Cutler CS, Lemmel GT, Rahmani EY, Clark DW, Helper DJ, Lehman GA, Mark DG. Colonoscopic miss rates of adenomas determined by back-to-back colonoscopies. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 24-28 [PMID: 8978338]

8 **Pasha SF**, Leighton JA, Das A, Harrison ME, Gurudu SR, Ramirez FC, Fleischer DE, Sharma VK. Comparison of the yield and miss rate of narrow band imaging and white light endoscopy in patients undergoing screening or surveillance colonoscopy: a meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 363-370; quiz 371 [PMID: 22186978 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.436]

9 **Machida H**, Sano Y, Hamamoto Y, Muto M, Kozu T, Tajiri H, Yoshida S. Narrow-band imaging in the diagnosis of colorectal mucosal lesions: a pilot study. *Endoscopy* 2004; **36**: 1094-1098 [PMID: 15578301 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-826040]

10 **Rastogi A**, Keighley J, Singh V, Callahan P, Bansal A, Wani S, Sharma P. High accuracy of narrow band imaging without magnification for the real-time characterization of polyp histology and its comparison with high-definition white light colonoscopy: a prospective study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2422-2430 [PMID: 19584829 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.403]

11 **Sabbagh LC**, Reveiz L, Aponte D, de Aguiar S. Narrow-band imaging does not improve detection of colorectal polyps when compared to conventional colonoscopy: a randomized controlled trial and meta-analysis of published studies. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2011; **11**: 100 [PMID: 21943365 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-11-100]

12 **Rex DK**, Kahi C, O'Brien M, Levin TR, Pohl H, Rastogi A, Burgart L, Imperiale T, Ladabaum U, Cohen J, Lieberman DA. The American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy PIVI (Preservation and Incorporation of Valuable Endoscopic Innovations) on real-time endoscopic assessment of the histology of diminutive colorectal polyps. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 419-422 [PMID: 21353837 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.01.023]

13 **McGill SK**, Evangelou E, Ioannidis JP, Soetikno RM, Kaltenbach T. Narrow band imaging to differentiate neoplastic and non-neoplastic colorectal polyps in real time: a meta-analysis of diagnostic operating characteristics. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1704-1713 [PMID: 23300139 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-303965]

14 **Kaltenbach T**, Friedland S, Soetikno R. A randomised tandem colonoscopy trial of narrow band imaging versus white light examination to compare neoplasia miss rates. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 1406-1412 [PMID: 18523025 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2007.137984]

15 **Inoue T**, Murano M, Murano N, Kuramoto T, Kawakami K, Abe Y, Morita E, Toshina K, Hoshiro H, Egashira Y, Umegaki E, Higuchi K. Comparative study of conventional colonoscopy and pan-colonic narrow-band imaging system in the detection of neoplastic colonic polyps: a randomized, controlled trial. *J Gastroenterol* 2008; **43**: 45-50 [PMID: 18297435 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-007-2125-x]

16 **East JE**, Ignjatovic A, Suzuki N, Guenther T, Bassett P, Tekkis PP, Saunders BP. A randomized, controlled trial of narrow-band imaging vs high-definition white light for adenoma detection in patients at high risk of adenomas. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: e771-e778 [PMID: 22958651 DOI: 10.1111/codi.12014]

17 **Adler A**, Aschenbeck J, Yenerim T, Mayr M, Aminalai A, Drossel R, Schröder A, Scheel M, Wiedenmann B, Rösch T. Narrow-band versus white-light high definition television endoscopic imaging for screening colonoscopy: a prospective randomized trial. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 410-416.e1; quiz 715 [PMID: 19014944 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.10.022]

18 **Paggi S**, Radaelli F, Amato A, Meucci G, Mandelli G, Imperiali G, Spinzi G, Terreni N, Lenoci N, Terruzzi V. The impact of narrow

band imaging in screening colonoscopy: a randomized controlled trial. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 1049-1054 [PMID: 19577008 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.06.028]

19 **Rex DK**, Helbig CC. High yields of small and flat adenomas with high-definition colonoscopes using either white light or narrow band imaging. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 42-47 [PMID: 17631129 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.04.029]

20 **Rogart JN**, Jain D, Siddiqui UD, Oren T, Lim J, Jamidar P, Aslanian H. Narrow-band imaging without high magnification to differentiate polyps during real-time colonoscopy: improvement with experience. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 1136-1145 [PMID: 18691708 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.04.035]

21 **Kessler WR**, Imperiale TF, Klein RW, Wielage RC, Rex DK. A quantitative assessment of the risks and cost savings of forgoing histologic examination of diminutive polyps. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43**: 683-691 [PMID: 21623556 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256381]

P- Reviewer: Porumb V **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6547

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6547-6558
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

Epidemiology of functional gastrointestinal disorders in infants and toddlers: A systematic review

Ana Paula Ferreira-Maia, Alicia Matijasevich, Yuan-Pang Wang

Ana Paula Ferreira-Maia, Yuan-Pang Wang, Institute and Department of Psychiatry (LIM-23), University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo 01060-970, SP, Brazil

Alicia Matijasevich, Department of Preventive Medicine, University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo 01246-903, SP, Brazil

Author contributions: All authors equally contributed to this paper with conception and design of the study, literature review and analysis, drafting and critical revision and editing, and final approval of the final version.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No potential conflicts of interest. No financial support.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Manuscript Source: Invited manuscript

Correspondence to: Yuan-Pang Wang, MD, PhD, Institute and Department of Psychiatry (LIM-23), University of São Paulo Medical School, R. Dr. Ovídio Pires de Campos, 785, São Paulo 01060-970, SP, Brazil. gnap_inbox@hotmail.com
Telephone: +55-11-26616976
Fax: +55-11-26616976

Received: March 29, 2016
Peer-review started: April 4, 2016
First decision: May 12, 2016
Revised: May 26, 2016
Accepted: June 28, 2016
Article in press: June 29, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

AIM: To assess the functional gastrointestinal disorders (FGID) prevalence in infants and toddlers.

METHODS: PubMed, EMBASE, and Scopus were searched for original articles from inception to February 2016. The literature search was made in accordance with Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA). For inclusion, each study had to report epidemiological data of FGID on children up to 4 years old and contain standardized outcome Rome Ⅱ or Ⅲ criteria. The overall quality of included epidemiological studies was evaluated in accordance to Loney's proposal for prevalence studies of health literature. Two reviewers assessed each study for inclusion and extracted data. Discrepancies were reconciled through discussion.

RESULTS: It was identified a total of 101 articles through the databases and two through the manual search. A total of 28 articles fulfilled the eligibility criteria. After reading the full articles, 13 of them were included in the present review. Twelve studies were written in English and one in Chinese, and published between 2004 and 2015. Eight articles (61.5%) were performed in Europe, three (23.1%) in America and two (15.4%) in Asia. Sample size varied between 45 and 9660 subjects. Cross-sectional frequency was reported in majority of studies (k = 9) and four studies prospectively followed the subjects. 27.1% to 38% of participants have met any of Rome's criteria for gastrointestinal syndromes, of those 20.8% presented two or more FGID. Infant regurgitation and functional constipation were the most common FGID, ranging from less than 1% to 25.9% and less than 1% to 31%, respectively. Most included studies were of moderate to poor data quality with respect to absence of confidential interval for prevalence rate and inadequate sampling methods.

CONCLUSION: The scarcity and heterogeneity of FGID data call for the necessity of well-designed epidemiological research in different levels of pediatric practice and refinement of diagnostic.

Key words: Infant; Functional gastrointestinal disorders; Epidemiology; Prevalence; Toddler

Core tip: Epidemiological studies on functional gastrointestinal disorders in infants and toddlers provide variable prevalence rates in both pediatric outpatient and inpatient practice. A number of investigations and reviews have been conducted using Rome's criteria for functional disorders to depict the magnitude of the problem, however, few investigations have reported meaningful results with adequate methodology. The current literature review suggested higher impact of pediatric feeding and defecation problems that affect very young children, respectively infant regurgitation and functional constipation.

Ferreira-Maia AP, Matijasevich A, Wang YP. Epidemiology of functional gastrointestinal disorders in infants and toddlers: A systematic review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6547-6558 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6547.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6547

INTRODUCTION

Functional symptoms are corporal manifestations that arise in the absence of anatomic abnormality, inflammation, or tissue damage. Historical descriptions and theories on complex interaction between biological, psychological and social factors that predispose, precipitate and/or perpetuate brain-gut axis disorders are accounted in psychosomatic and neuroscience literature[1]. Common complaints that often determine visits to pediatric practices are feeding and eating symptoms and elimination problems in infants and toddlers, such as: regurgitation, nausea, vomiting, heartburn, abdominal pain and bellyaches, abdominal distension, bloating, belching, chronic diarrhea or constipation, fecal soiling, retching, or food refusal. Most of them lack biological ground to guide the recovery process.

Gastrointestinal (GI) disorders in childhood are major reasons that drive caregivers to consult healthcare settings[2-5]. As such, functional gastrointestinal disorders (FGID) stand as a group of conditions that include a mixture of age-dependent, chronic or recurrent symptoms without evident structural or biochemical abnormalities affecting GI functioning. Recent report of Kids' Inpatient Sample Database on hospitalization and cost has indicated the increasing burden of childhood FGID in the United States from 1997 to 2009[6]. Abdominal pain and constipation in childhood were the most common discharge diagnoses. However, good quality epidemiological data on FGID in infants and toddlers to guide the reorganization of pediatric practice are scant.

Many pediatric caregivers lead to misuse primary care and GI specialized care, driving to unnecessary investigations and pharmacological treatments. While several GI symptoms without obvious causal explanation are distressing for small children and their caregivers, these burdensome conditions are not life threatening when parental concerns are properly addressed. Therefore, accurate estimates of prevalence and consequences in agreed description of GI syndromes are required for defining the need for treatment in overloaded healthcare settings.

Purposing public health policy and resource provision, epidemiological studies might show similar frequency for common GI conditions across countries in varied levels of development. Projected proportion of pediatric FGID cases in the community, and different levels of healthcare setting, would help a better allocation of financial support and organize health service delivery.

The aim of this literature review is to critically examine current evidence of knowledge on FGID in infants and toddlers, through systematic search of prevalence data on common functional GI problems.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Search strategies

A literature search was conducted in following databases: PubMed, EMBASE, and Scopus in accordance with Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA)[7]. The search terms were "functional gastrointestinal disorder" OR "functional gastrointestinal symptoms" AND "epidemiology" OR "prevalence" OR "incidence". In addition, for each seven specific category of FGID in infants and toddlers, new search was performed with the disorder's nomenclature and equivalent synonyms. For example, "infant regurgitation" AND "gastroesophageal reflux" were combined with epidemiological terms (Appendix in the Supplementary materials).

There was no language restriction and the period covered was from inception to February 22, 2016. For inclusion, each study had to report epidemiological data on children up to 4 years old and contain standardized outcome criteria (Rome Ⅱ or Ⅲ)[8,9]. Case report, letter, editorial, intervention studies, case-control studies, treatment guidelines, review, and duplicate articles were eliminated. "Similar articles" option and manual search of reference list of review articles, book chapter, and gray literature completed the investigation. Experts in pediatric gastroenterology

Table 1 Classification of functional gastrointestinal disorders in infants and toddlers

	Rome Ⅲ nomenclature	Age	Frequency	Duration	Synonym or approximate terms
G1	Infant regurgitation	3 wk-12 mo	⩾ 2 regurgitations/d	⩾ 3 wk	Gastroesophageal reflux
G2	Infant rumination syndrome	3-8 mo[1]		⩾ 3 mo	Childhood feeding and eating disorders[2]
G3	Cyclic vomiting syndrome		⩾ 2 vomiting episodes	hours - days	Periodic vomiting
G4	Infant colic	0-4 mo	⩾ 3 d/wk for ⩾ 1 wk	⩾ 3 h/d	Infantile colic; abdominal pain syndrome Wessel's criteria: irritability, fussing or crying
G5	Functional diarrhea	6-36 mo[1]	⩾ 3 painless stools/d	⩾ 4 wk	Infantile diarrhea
G6	Infant dyschezia	< 6 mo	⩾ 10 min straining		Straining and crying
G7	Functional constipation	⩽ 4 yr	⩽ 2 defecations/wk ⩾ 1 incontinence/wk	⩾ 4 wk	Classic Iowa criteria Functional defecation disorder Functional fecal retention[3]

[1]Onset of symptoms; [2]International Classification of Disease and Diagnostic and Statistical Manual systems; [3]Rome Ⅱ nomenclature.

were contacted to request full text or unpublished data. Two reviewers (Ferreira-Maia AP, Wang YP) assessed each study for inclusion and extracted data. Discrepancies were reconciled through discussion.

Afterward data extraction from studies included in qualitative synthesis, a review summarized main epidemiological findings in two broad sections to cover main Rome foundation's categories (Table 1): (1) feeding and eating disorders; and (2) colic and defecation problems.

Major measurement instruments for assessment of FGID, such as Questionnaire on Pediatric Gastrointestinal Symptoms (QPGS)[10,11] and Pediatric Quality of Life (PedsQL) Inventory[12] were discussed.

Critical appraisal of research literature on childhood GI problems

The overall quality of included epidemiological studies was evaluated in accordance to Loney's proposal for prevalence studies of health literature[13]. All studies were scored on eight criteria: (1) sample size; (2) sampling adequacy; (3) unbiased sampling frame; (4) measures of outcomes; (5) unbiased assessors; (6) response rate with refusals described; (7) prevalence with confidence intervals and by relevant subgroups; and (8) appropriate description of study subjects for the research question. The study receives one point for each criterion met, which possible score ranges from zero to eight. The higher score indicates better study quality.

The sample size criterion was not used to exclude studies. However, we considered an appropriate sample size if it was based on local population estimates or if it was higher than 500. This minimum sample size was calculated to permit outcome assessment using simple random sampling, with a conservative estimate of distinct FGID of 20% in the age bracket of infant and toddler[14], confidence level of 95%, and precision of 1.8%, resulting in a sample of 494 subjects.

Two reviewers (Ferreira-Maia AP and Wang YP) performed the evaluation and final results were discussed one by one.

Methodological issues

In evaluating studies of the epidemiology of FGID in infants and toddlers, the following methodological questions must be considered: (1) the case definition and evaluation of FGID conditions; (2) the comparability of FGID assessments across studies; (3) the assessment of FGID prevalence and incidence; and (4) the comparability of FGID data drawn in different settings.

What is a case of FGID?

Current diagnoses of FGID are symptom-based criteria defined by a mixture of chronic or recurring GI symptoms with no structural or biochemical explanation. The increasing recognition of FGID has been ascribed to the efforts to operationalize clear-cut categories by Rome foundation (http://www.romecriteria.org/). The accomplishment to legitimize and update knowledge on FGID has subjected scientists and clinicians around the world to classify and appraise the science of GI function and dysfunction. Bringing together extensive consensus debates and field studies, this foundation has included a pediatric committee since 1999[15]. Nonetheless, the classification of FGID in infants and toddlers remains largely unexplored and poorly understood.

For Rome Ⅲ, published in 2006, a working team committed to discuss the case definition of a FGID occurring in children up to 4 years[16]. Under chapter G, four Rome Ⅱ criteria remained the same in Rome Ⅲ - regurgitation, rumination, diarrhea, and dyschezia. By consensus, infant colic (G4) was included in Rome Ⅲ and broader criteria for cyclic vomiting syndrome (G3) and functional constipation (G7) were amended (Table 1). Some duration and frequency requirements were relaxed.

The infant regurgitation (G1) is a common feeding manifestation in infants below the age of 1 year and the frequent reasons of counseling to general practitioners and pediatricians[16]. Whereas common complaints include overfeeding, air swallow during feeding, crying or coughing, physical exam generally reveals no abnormality or weight gain delay.

The infant rumination (G2) is an uncommon feeding

disorder and difficult to differentiate from commoner conditions causing vomiting and weight loss. In general, the symptoms start between 3 and 8 mo of age[16]. In infancy or early childhood, avoidance of food or restricted food intake, can include a wide spectrum of feeding disorder, for example pica, rumination disorder, and other presentations that are listed in International Classification of Disease (ICD)[17] and Diagnostic and Statistical Manual (DSM) system[18].

The cyclic vomiting syndrome (CVS; G3) is described as recurrent, stereotypic episodes of severe nausea and vomiting lasting hours to days that are separated by symptom-free intervals[19]. The CVS is most observed in toddlers than infants[20,21]. The attacks can occur at regular intervals or sporadically in typical episodes that begin at the same time of day, commonly during early morning or night. Thereafter, vomiting tends to wane, although complaint of nausea persists until the end of episode. In order to facilitate early recognition and mitigate patient suffering, the working committee of Rome Ⅲ has modified the number of vomit episodes to two for the diagnosis of CVS, instead of three episodes in Rome Ⅱ[16].

The infant colic (G4) is a condition that usually prompts parents to seek medical care. Classical Wessel's criteria defined fussing or colic as "crying for three hours or more on at least three days in at least three weeks"[22]. Since infants with colic are often referred to pediatric gastroenterologists, the Rome Ⅲ working group achieved consensus to include infant colic as FGID. "Paroxysms of irritability, fussing or crying lasting three hours per day and occurring three days each week" is the amended symptomatic description of colic[16]. Although this condition improves with time (for most infants, crying and irritability begin to decrease by four months of age), it causes significant parental distress, involving long crying bouts and hard-to-soothe behavior[23].

The functional diarrhea (G5) is defined by daily painless, recurrent passage of three or more unformed and large amount of stools for more than four weeks, and with onset between ages of 6 and 36 mo. The important point is no failure to thrive neither inadequate diet. The child feel unworried about the loose stools, and the symptom remit spontaneously by school age[16].

The infant dyschezia (G6) is categorized by a minimum 10 min of straining and crying before successful passage of soft stools in an otherwise healthy infant under 6 mo of age[16]. When occurring several times daily, these episodes are exhausting for the infant and anxiety provoking for the caregivers. The parents usually seek medical help for their child during the first 2 to 3 mo of life with concerns that their child is constipated. In general, the parents describe a healthy infant who cries for 20 to 30 min, turns red in the face, and screams, seemingly in pain, before defecation takes place[24].

The functional constipation (G7) is one of most common reasons that lead parents to visit gastroenterological services[4,14]. Rome Ⅱ criteria for functional constipation were modified in Rome Ⅲ, in terms of symptom duration and frequency: from 12 wk to 1 mo and from ⩽ three defecations to ⩽ two defecations per week[16]. This change was based on data showing that the longer functional constipation goes unrecognized, the less successful treatment is[25].

Generally, along with frequency and duration of the symptoms for diagnosis of a separate syndrome, the Rome criteria operationalized the age range according to the probable occurrence of functional symptoms. Almost all FGID listed in Rome Ⅲ use monothetic classification rule, which is definition terms of characteristics are both necessary and sufficient to identify members of that condition. One exception is the functional constipation (G7) that is polythetic rule, applied to minimal number of two out of six defining characteristics, *i.e*., none of the features has to be found in the category in terms of a set of criteria that are neither necessary nor sufficient. For instance, this prototypical description requires that each case of constipation only must possess certain characteristics, allowing identification of broad varieties of the syndrome.

Most exclusionary requirements of Rome Ⅲ emphasize the benign nature of the FGID in infants and toddlers, with inter-episodic normal health or no failure in thrive. Hierarchical rules of organic exclusion are not always specified, in order to attain the stringent definition of "functional" disorders, where structural or biochemical abnormalities affecting GI functioning must be ruled out. Since around 5% of colic symptoms[26] and 7.7% of constipation symptoms[27] may be consequence of organic etiology, some heterogeneous conditions may be mislabeled as FGID.

Despite of mounting interest for searching causal explanations and applicability of these criteria in pediatric settings, few epidemiological data have strengthened the face validity and clinical utility of symptom-based Rome Ⅲ criteria. Lack of sensitivity for constipation in Rome Ⅱ[25,28] and high restrictiveness for dyschezia in Rome Ⅲ[24] were claims raised by researchers. While some researchers regard Rome Ⅲ functional constipation more sensitive than Rome Ⅱ in population under 18 years[29], its applicability in infants and toddlers remains dubious. Similar low rates of constipation in children fewer than 5 years were reported by a study comparing these two criteria in Thailand[30].

Recent efforts to build a multidimensional strategy for establishing the diagnosis of FGID following the approach of DSM for psychiatric syndromes[18] may provide a more thorough description of GI syndromes. Psychosocial and behavioral aspects of the GI problems should be included in future criteria to supplement the complexity of childhood FGID. Although the successive editions of DSM may serve as roadmap to construct more robust categories of FGID, available studies using reliable Rome Ⅲ criteria have insufficient data to move

forward. Large and well-designed epidemiological studies with unbiased sampling are required to document all aspects of natural history of FGID, such as clinical manifestations, pattern of comorbidity, impairment, disability, service use, laboratory study and exclusion of organic disorders, parent-child interaction, family study of genetic aspects, and therapeutic response to different types of intervention. Systematic assessments with validated standardized inventories or structured interviews can improve the nosological validity of FGID in childhood.

Comparability of assessment of FGID in infants and toddlers across the studies

Subjective appraisals of GI symptoms through parental reports are unavoidable in small children, because complaints that occur among infants and toddlers depend largely on observation of their caregivers, as well as the decision to set medical appointment. As such, the tendency for FGID to cluster within families was highlighted in previous researches[3,5]. Potential psychosocial mechanisms that may contribute to the intergenerational transmission of illness behaviors were case-control tested in mothers of irritable bowel syndrome children[31]. Parental reinforcement or modeling of symptoms, coping, psychological distress, and exposure to stress were adult responses to child symptoms that might influence the reporting of children's GI and non-GI symptoms[32].

The implications of inheritance or social learning in the family of FGID are unclear[33]. Studies in children aged 4 or more years have demonstrated that the parent-child concordance was largely poor[11]. In addition, the increased frequency of psychopathology in parents who reported data for their children and overlap with FGID should emerge as potential threat to information bias[3,34].

The QPGS was originally proposed as both a parent report and child self-report for the assessment of child and adolescent GI symptoms[10,11]. Recently, the group of University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill has translated the Rome Ⅲ FGID diagnostic criteria for infant and toddler into a symptomatic questionnaire (QPGS-RIII) to be answered by their parents or guardians, showing satisfactory face and content validity[34]. For instance, this tool was tested among 332 respondents under 4 years who attended a gastroenterology clinic and agreement between parent and physician was poor to acceptable (κ = 0.18-0.76).

Infant rumination and functional diarrhea were the two categories with poor overlap between parents and physicians. Since over half of new pediatric GI clinic patients met Rome Ⅲ criteria for one or more FGID[4], a standardized questionnaire with high specificity that satisfy explicit criteria may enhance diagnosis before specialized gastroenterological care appointment.

The impact of pediatric diseases and treatments is increasingly assessed from the perspective of quality of life. In accordance with World Health Organization, health-related quality of life should measure dimensions of physical, emotional (including psychological and cognitive), social, and school/day care functioning. Either pediatric patients or their parents should be asked to report validated measure of quality of life. The Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory (PedsQL; http://www.pedsql.org/) 4.0 Generic Core Scales has been used to assess children with several health conditions, as well as healthy populations[35,36]. The respondents who met Rome's criteria for FGID presented worse quality of life and more likely have used health care service[5]. Recently, the PedsQL4.0 has been intensively used to investigate FGID[35-38]. The development of the PedsQL GI symptoms was reported[39] and examined in cross-cultural settings[40]. Psychometric properties and construct validity for its applicability in infants up to 24 mo have been accepted[41].

Comparability of prevalence and incidence rates of FGID

Great variation of prevalence rates can be attributable to sampling methods and population frame. Many of studies on FGID have selected children of different or large age range, from early childhood to late adolescence, hampering comparisons between similar FGID occurring below 4 years. Recruitment methods and settings were varied, but most investigations used data on consecutive treatment-seeking samples in tertiary care, threatening the validity of estimates due to selection bias of hospital-based data[4]. Representativeness of recruited sample and comparability of estimated prevalences are issues of upmost concern. Prospective assessment for organic exclusion was not always reported in studies.

A study to determine the incidence of functional diseases must have a prospective or longitudinal design, and should include children known not to have the disease, who may be observed over an appropriate time period. This type of study is onerous and long time consuming, demanding intense planning and large number of trained researchers. Only two incidence studies were identified for FGID[42,43], their data were drawn from Irish Pediatric Surveillance Unit for CVS in Ireland and Danish National Patient Registry for eating disorders in Denmark. Respectively, case definition has used criteria from the First International Symposium on CVS and the ICD-10 classification[17] of childhood feeding and eating disorders (F98.2 and F50.8).

After recognizing the scarcity of epidemiological data, a recent worldwide Delphi consensus study was conducted to gather data from pediatric workers and scientists to achieve a convergent expert opinion on real-world magnitude of FGID in infants less than 12 mo[14]. In general, the expert panel agreed that good quality data in pediatric gastroenterology were lacking, but the most common FGID in this age range were regurgitation, colic, and constipation, with expected prevalence around 30%, 20%, and 15%, respectively.

Functional diarrhea and dyschezia were under-investigated conditions and the likely prevalence was estimated as around 5% for both FGID.

Comparability of FGID data drawn in different settings

The appropriateness of study design and sampling method for the research question is crucial to determine prevalence of a particular health outcome. An observational study (survey) is the appropriate study design to determine the prevalence of a target condition, by covering the whole population of interest. When the specific population is small, *e.g*., single pediatric service or private practice, some studies survey the whole population and cannot generalize the results to other populations. Notably, potential selection bias may emerge in accordance with the level of health care specialization, producing overestimated proportion of GI diseases[4,28]. Characteristics of children attending well-baby clinics, immunization center and primary care may differ greatly from the population who visit pediatric gastroenterologist or are referred to a tertiary care for further investigation. In addition to presence of real distressing FGID, this differential probability of service contact depends of caregiver's own characteristics (*e.g*., previous history of GI disorders) and socio-economic features, as well as the availability of healthcare services. Taking all bias into account, the comparability of frequency of health outcome diagnosed in different levels of pediatric practice should be avoided.

Since service use sample was referred from lower level of pediatric healthcare, the prevalence rates were likely higher than the sample recruited from community. The appropriate type of sampling frame or list for study recruitment from which subjects are selected is critical for the sample representativeness. Studies of whole, narrowly defined communities are usually done as door-to-door surveys, but this limits the generalizability of the findings outside that community. In large surveys, groups of individuals (*e.g*., families or children living in defined geographical areas) are selected as the survey units.

Census data can provide data sets from which one can draw a sample that is deemed to have minimal bias, since specific groups of persons are not excluded as they might be in a healthcare service, Internet use or telephone list[4,5,28,44]. When it is not possible to cover the total population, the best sampling technique is probability (simple random) sampling of persons from a defined subset of the population.

In some instances, stratification may be necessary to correctly represent subgroups, in order to ensure representativeness of the population and validate the generalizability of the results for the entire population. For example, exclusive school lists may underrepresent the institutionalized children (hospital, orphanage, correctional communities) or those who are homeless. In relation to the aim of reviewing FGID prevalence studies, the "convenience" sample could be importantly biased in the way that sizable proportion of children with FGID could be missed (because the "cases" of diseases were hospitalized or in home), thus reducing the prevalence of GI diseases in the sample. Population-based surveys offer superior epidemiological data than studies that have recruited children from community, school, well-baby clinic, primary care or specialty care.

RESULTS

Literature search and general description of included studies

The search flow diagram is displayed in Figure 1. It was identified a total of 101 articles through the three databases and two through the manual search. Of these, after removing duplicate records and reading the title and abstract, a total of 28 articles fulfilled the eligibility criteria. After reading the full articles, 13 of them were included in the present review. The 15 studies excluded were listed in the Supplementary materials (Appendix).

Regarding to 13 included articles, 12 studies were written in English and one in Chinese, and published between 2004 and 2015. Eight articles (61.5%) were performed in Europe (Italy, the Netherlands and Turkey), three (23.1%) in America (United States and Brazil) and two (15.4%) in Asia (China and Thailand).

The total sample size varied between 45 and 9660 subjects. In cross-sectional studies, the sample size ranged from 264 to 5030 participants[3,5] among community dweller or attenders of primary care level (*e.g*., well-baby clinic, immunization center). In Italian formal primary care service, the surveyed population ranged from 2642 to 9660 children[45-47], all enrolled in National Health Service. No routine indication of loss or exclusion was reported in treatment seeking or referred sample to specialty gastroenterological clinic, and the number of participants ranged between 45 and 402[4,44].

Cross-sectional frequency was reported in majority of studies (k = 9), although several investigations followed the recruited sample to confirm diagnosis or organic exclusion. Only four studies prospectively followed infants and toddlers for describing the change of prevalence rate of target GI syndrome at different ages.

Most investigations were conducted with questionable sampling frame, in specialty gastroenterological clinic or university-based hospital (k = 4), primary care (k = 3) or well-baby clinic (k = 2). Further studies in community (k = 4), two of them reported data with debatable methodology (*e.g*., quota sampling, online panel, non-random recruitment), and only two studies were population-based prospective cohorts[48,49] and provided generalizable data of prevalence of functional constipation, respectively in Brazil and the

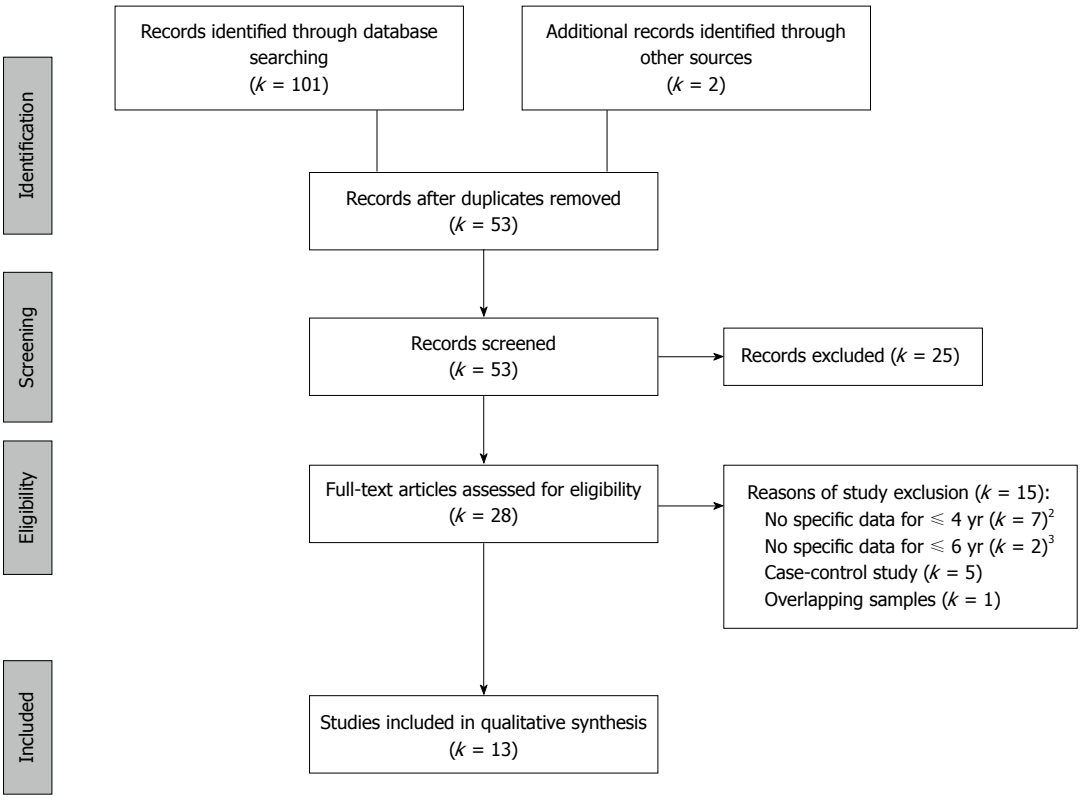


Figure 1 Flow diagram for identifying eligible articles[1]. [1]Flow diagram according to PRISMA (www.prisma-statement.org); [2]Rome III nomenclature; [3]Rome II nomenclature.

Netherlands.

Independent assessors applied the Rome foundation's criteria, either version Ⅱ or Ⅲ. Two studies[24,48] modified the Rome criteria and one study[30] compared the two versions.

No age, sex, or race differences were found in FGID diagnoses. 27.1% to 38.0% of infants and toddlers have met any of Rome's criteria for GI syndromes[3,5], of those 20.8% presented two or more FGID[5]. In pediatric specialty gastroenterological care, FGID was confirmed in 52% of treatment-seeking subjects under to 4 years, around 18% of them presented two or more FGID[4]. In comparison with those who did not meet Rome criteria, subjects with FGID had lower quality of life, delayed thrive, increased medical visits, mental health visits, and hospital stays[3,5].

The critical appraisal of 13 included studies indicated that good quality researches reporting main categories of FGID in infants and toddlers were scarce. Only five articles obtained scores seven or six according to Loney's proposal[3,24,30,48,49]. The most common quality problem was prevalence rates without confidence interval and/or no detail by subgroup (k = 12), inadequate sampling method (k = 9), inappropriate sampling frame (k = 8), refusers not described (k = 7) and/or insufficient sample size (k = 5) (Supplementary Table 1).

Below, we discussed main epidemiological investigations associated to feeding and eating problems (Table 2), and colic and elimination problems (Table 3).

Feeding and eating problems in infants and toddlers

In total, there were six studies on feeding and eating problems. All of them used questionnaire on FGID to assess the symptoms and half of them were performed in Italy[45-47].

All studies had information about infant regurgitation. The rates ranged from less than 1% in primary care[45,47] to over 25% by online panel in community[5]. Further rate of 13.2% was described in specialty care in United States[4] and 17.9% in Chinese community[3].

Only two studies reported frequency of infant rumination, both from United States, as 4.3% by online panel in community[5] and 3% in specialty care[4].

Based on Rome Ⅲ, a rate of online parental report of 3.4% was estimated for cyclic vomiting syndrome among children between 1 and 3 years[5] and 10.2% for children under 4 years in a single tertiary care[4], both studies from United States.

Colic and defecation problems in infants and toddlers

Eleven studies described data about colic and defecation problems. Six of them used questionnaire on FGID to assess the symptoms. Three studies were conducted in the Netherlands; two in Italy; two in United States; and the remaining from Thailand, Turkey, China and Brazil.

Three studies had information about frequency of infant colic in children between zero and 4 years. One study reported 4.2% in a specialty care[4], and the

Table 2 Prevalence or frequency of functional gastrointestinal disorders: Eating and feeding problems in infants and toddlers

Author, year, country	Study design, setting	Sample size (participation %)	Age bracket	Case definition	Case ascertainment	Score	FGID prevalence %		
							Regurgitation	Rumination	Cyclic vomiting
Van Tilburg, 2015, United States	Cross-sectional, community	264 (82.5)	0-3 yr	Rome Ⅲ	Online panel w/mothers QPGS-RIII PedsQL4.0	2	25.9	4.3	3.4
Rouster, 2015, United States	Cross-sectional, specialty care	332 (91.0)	0-4 yr	Rome Ⅲ	Parental interviews QPGS-RIII	4	13.2	3.0	10.2
Liu, 2009, China	Cross-sectional, community	5030 (99.4)	0-2 yr	Rome Ⅲ	Parental interviews Parental questionnaire on GI symptoms	6	17.9		
Primavera, 2009, Italy	Cross-sectional, primary care	9291 (NR)	0-14 yr	Rome Ⅱ	Interviews w/parents and children FGID questionnaire	4	0.44		
Campanozzi, 2009, Italy	Cross-sectional, primary care	2642 (NR)	1-12 mo	Rome Ⅱ	Interviews w/parents and children I-GERQ	4	12.0		
Miele, 2004, Italy	Cross-sectional, primary care	9660 (NR)	1-12 mo	Rome Ⅱ	Interviews w/parents and children FGID questionnaires	4	0.74		

Score = Methodological strength of study (maximum 8) by Loney's criteria. PedsQL4.0: Pediatric Quality of Life version Inventory 4.0; I-GERQ: Infant Gastroesophageal Reflux Questionnaire; QPGS-RIII: Questionnaire on Pediatric Gastrointestinal Symptoms - Rome Ⅲ; FGD: Functional gastrointestinal disorders; NR: Not reported; w: With; GI: Gastrointestinal.

others reported 5.9%[5] and 1.4%[3], both carried out in community sample.

The overall rates of functional diarrhea across four studies ranged from 0.07% in primary care[45] to 12.3% in community[3]. The only that used Rome Ⅱ criteria was also the one with the lowest rate (0.07%).

Concerning to frequency of infant dyschezia through three studies: two cross-sectional studies, with children aged until 4, reported frequency of 2.4% in community[5] and 3.3% in specialty care[4]; one prospective cohort study in well-baby clinics, with children between 1 and 9 mo of age, reported rates 3.9% (Rome Ⅲ) and 17.3% [Modified-Rome Ⅲ (M-Rome Ⅲ)] at age of 1 mo, and 0.9% (Rome Ⅲ) and 6.5% (M-Rome Ⅲ) at age of 3 mo[24].

Ten studies reported data about infant constipation. To definition of cases: four articles used Rome Ⅲ criteria; other four Rome Ⅱ; one M-Rome Ⅱ; and one study compared Rome Ⅱ and Rome Ⅲ.

For those articles that used Rome Ⅲ criteria, the frequency of constipation varied between 11.6% at age of 3 mo in a healthy newborns sample[44] to 29.2% in children under 4 years from a specialty care[4].

Rates from 64% in children below 6 years from a tertiary care[28] to 0.68% in infants aged less than 12 mo from a primary care[45] were reported through the studies that used Rome Ⅱ criteria.

There was only one population-based birth-cohort study[49] that used Rome Ⅱ criteria; it reported prevalence rates of 11.2%, 15.7% and 14.2% at age of 2, 3 and 4 years respectively.

The Brazilian population-based birth-cohort study[48] used M-Rome Ⅱ criteria and described prevalence rates of 27.3% at age of 2 years and 31% at age of 4 years.

The last study[30], reported frequencies of 1.9% and 1.6%, respectively for Rome Ⅱ and Ⅲ criteria in children under 5 years.

DISCUSSION

This review, relied on data from 13 articles, showed a vast variation in the FGID prevalence in infants and toddlers. The majority of studies (k = 7) recruited participants from primary care or specialty care. Further studies were 4 cross-sectional ones in community and 2 in well-baby clinics. Good quality epidemiological data reporting main categories of FGID in infants and toddlers were limited. Based on current review, it is suggested that there is an increasing burden attributed to FGID in pediatric practices. However, generalizable information is restricted in terms of community studies and well-assessed diagnosis that might support observed differences across pediatric care levels.

Infant regurgitation and functional constipation are the most investigated disorders in FGID and might have public health impact.

More conclusive recommendation should be avoided as the rates vary greatly across studies. Although the broad variation in the infant regurgitation prevalence may reflect the poor quality of epidemiological data (recruitment and sampling frame), expert respondents to a recent consensus survey according to Rome Ⅲ criteria reported an average worldwide prevalence of 29%[14]. This rate is similar to the rate reported in the included study with a community sample. For instance,

Table 3 Prevalence or frequency of functional gastrointestinal disorders: Colic and defecation problems in infants and toddlers

Author, year, country	Study design, setting	Sample size (participation %)	Age bracket	Case definition	Case ascertainment	Score	FGID prevalence %			
							Colic	Diarrhea	Dyschezia	Constipation
Tharner, 2015, the Netherlands	Population-based birth-cohort, community	4823 (61)	2-4 yr	Rome Ⅱ	Interviews w/parents and children, CEBQ - parental	7				2 yr: 11.2 3 yr: 15.7 4 yr: 14.2
Van Tilburg, 2015, United States	Cross-sectional, community	264 (82)	0-3 yr	Rome Ⅲ	Online panel w/mothers QPGS-RIII PedsQL4.0	2	5.9	8.8	2.4	14.1
Kramer, 2015, the Netherlands	Prospective cohort, well-baby clinics	1292 (87)	1-9 mo	Rome Ⅲ M-Rome Ⅲ	Interviews w/parents and children Parental questionnaire	6			1 mo: 3.9/17.31 3 mo: 0.9/6.51	
Rouster, 2015, United States	Cross-sectional, specialty care	332 (91)	0–4 yr	Rome Ⅲ	Parental interviews QPGS-RIII	4	4.2	0.3	3.3	29.2
Osakatul, 2014, Thailand	Cross-sectional, hospital's catchment area	3010 (97.1)	4 mo-5 yr	Rome Ⅱ Rome Ⅲ	Parental interviews Laboratory exams	7				1.9 (Rome Ⅱ) 1.6 (Rome Ⅲ)
Turco, 2014, Italy	Prospective birth-cohort, university-based hospitals	402 (86.4)	0-12 mo	Rome Ⅲ	Telephone interview w/parents	4				3 mo: 11.6 6 mo: 13.7 12 mo: 10.7
Mota, 2012, Brazil	Population-based birth-cohort, community	3799 (92)	0-4 yr	M-Rome Ⅱ	Interviews w/mothers	7				2 yr: 27.31 4 yr: 31.01
Liu, 2009, China	Cross-sectional, community	5030 (99.4)	0-2 yr	Rome Ⅲ	Parental interviews Parental questionnaire on GI symptoms	6	1.4	12.3		13.7
Aydoğdu, 2009, Turkey	Cross-sectional (retrospective), university-based hospital and specialty care unit	193 (NR)	0-5 yr	Rome Ⅱ Iowa criteria	Medical records Laboratory exams	3				51.9
Miele, 2004, Italy	Cross-sectional, primary care	9660 (NR)	1-12 mo	Rome Ⅱ	Interviews w/parents and children FGID questionnaires	4		0.07		0.68
Voskuijl, 2004, the Netherlands	Cross-sectional, tertiary care	45 (65.7)	≤ 6 yr	Rome Ⅱ Iowa criteria	Patient diary Medical interviews w/ parents and children Physical examination	3				64.0

Score = Methodological strength of study (maximum 8) by Loney's criteria. CEBQ: Child Eating Behavior Questionnaire; QPGS-RIII: Questionnaire on Pediatric Gastrointestinal Symptoms - Rome Ⅲ; PedsQL4.0 Pediatric Quality of Life version Inventory 4.0; I-GERQ: Infant Gastroesophageal Reflux Questionnaire; NR: Not reported; w: With; M-Rome: Modified Rome criteria.

three surveys from Italy used the National Health Service registry in different regions of the country and reported frequencies as low as less than 1% to 12% of children in primary care.

As a pathology liable to affect all ages, most of included studies provided data on functional constipation. The Dutch Generation R study and the Brazilian study investigated the entire pediatric population and provided unbiased information on functional constipation of higher external validity. The first study reported prevalence similar to that estimated by experts (around 15%)[14], but the second study described a two times larger prevalence. This finding might be due the use of modified Rome Ⅱ, with broader criteria.

The colic symptom is common and leads one in six families (17%) with children to seek a health professional[50], although there was a wide variation in the frequency of functional infant colic in community and specialty setting, highlighting the necessity of studies with rigorous design and diagnostic criteria to promote a adequate prevalence.

The true prevalence related to infant rumination, CVS, diarrhea and dyschezia remains changeable and uncertain. In view of scarce data on these FGID, it is hard to know how they develop in infants and toddlers. Therefore, better training of pediatricians and investigators and clearer descriptions of disorders may refine clinical utility and endorse research of Rome Ⅲ category.

Limitation

The lack of well-conducted studies has imposed us to compare existing studies that have consistently used reliable criteria for functional disorders. Therefore, the epidemiological knowledge on FGID in infants and toddlers still has to resort to few surveys that have ensured the reproducibility of case definition. In this direction, summary meta-analysis is not performed due to insufficient studies conducted with similar methodology.

The observed heterogeneity of frequency rates is likely beyond those features attributable to chance. The difference has arisen because of clinical dissimilarities between studies (for example, setting, types and age of participants, respondents or assessors) or methodological differences (such as diagnostic criteria, assessment tool, sampling frame). Our qualitative appraisal revealed that most included studies were of moderate or below average standard of generalizability. Notwithstanding, non-eligible articles (without data on FGID, non-reliable Rome criteria, non-specific data to infants and toddlers) were excluded to avoid spuriously inflated frequencies of FGID.

Reporting bias in cross-sectional data is most related to delay in publication (file drawer bias) and selective language bias. However, we have actively contacted experts to inquire on non-published data (such as poster presentation, conference paper, local journals) and non-English surveys. We were able to get access to one additional study not covered in initial search[48] and another non-English study[3]. In summary, it is judicious to state that the abovementioned heterogeneity must be more related to the quality of existing investigations than to publication bias.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank Alexandre Canon Boronat, MD, for the linguistic revision of the manuscript.

COMMENTS

Background

Unremitting gastrointestinal symptoms wane and wax in a significant proportion of infants younger than 48 mo. The pathophysiology of the functional gastrointestinal disorders (FGID) remains unclear, but likely involves a complex interplay of autonomic, psychosocial, dietary, microbial, and gastric sensorimotor disturbances. FGID in infants and toddlers seem to be related to an increasing healthcare burden, though, valid epidemiological data are scarce. The aim of this review is to examine current evidence of knowledge on FGID in infants and toddlers, through systematic search of prevalence data on common functional GI problems.

Research frontiers

Until nowadays, there is no laboratorial test for diagnoses of FGID and clinicians must rely on the patients' symptoms for identification of the clinical pictures. In the case of infants and toddlers, careful assessment to establish threshold of the parental/caregiver report is required. The validity of explicit diagnostic criteria and reliability of psychometric tools is still limited. Strategies to avoid excessive hospitalizations and unnecessary investigative testing are needed. While global recognition and legitimization of FGID can expand the pathophysiological understanding of brain-gut axis dysfunction to further optimize clinical management for these patients, adequate epidemiological studies - with reliable and valid case definition, appropriate design, sufficient sample size, correct sampling, and data collection - can shed light from the black box of FGID in infants and toddlers.

Innovations and breakthroughs

FGID in infants and toddlers seem to be common in pediatric outpatient and inpatient practice, mainly infant regurgitation and functional constipation. Conversely, few population-based studies on epidemiology issue were conducted so far, and, good quality epidemiological data to support diagnostic criteria are lacking. The update of Rome criteria (Rome Ⅳ) is launched in 2016, but few reformulations for FGID in infants and toddlers are made. Nevertheless, the important advantage of this new version is to merge scientific investigation and clinical practice to improve the diagnostic classification system. For this purpose, predefined fields of interest have been created since 2013 such as gut microflora, the role of food and diet, the nature of severity for FGID, the development and validation of Rome Ⅳ questionnaire, the management of FGID in primary care setting and the multi-dimensional clinical profile.

Applications

This review highlights future directions for research: (1) well-designed epidemiological studies should be conducted in different levels of pediatric practice, in terms of sample recruitment, representativeness, sample size, and clinical assessment; (2) a new classification system of early childhood FGID must be simple, easy to understand (especially by primary care physicians and nurses), and must include age-dependent gastroenterological features recognizable by parents; (3) research agenda of comprehensive studies on course and associated disability of FGID should be set to refine its definition and classification; and (4) multidimensional approach can improve the current symptom-based classification of Rome criteria.

Terminology

FGID comprise chronic or recurrent symptoms that arise in the absence of anatomic abnormality, inflammation, or tissue damage. The symptoms are variable and age-dependent.

Peer-review

In this systematic review, the authors have presented a carefully designed study on the epidemiology of FGID in infants and toddlers. Based on the overall data the authors indicated future directions in the field of epidemiological studies concerning FGID.

REFERENCES

1 **Van Oudenhove L**, Vandenberghe J, Demyttenaere K, Tack J. Psychosocial factors, psychiatric illness and functional gastrointestinal disorders: a historical perspective. *Digestion* 2010; **82**: 201-210 [PMID: 20588034 DOI: 10.1159/000269822]

2 **Infante Pina D**, Badia Llach X, Ariño-Armengol B, Villegas Iglesias V. Prevalence and dietetic management of mild gastrointestinal disorders in milk-fed infants. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 248-254 [PMID: 18186563 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.248]

3 **Liu W**, Xiao LP, Li Y, Wang XQ, Xu CD. [Epidemiology of mild gastrointestinal disorders among infants and young children in Shanghai area]. *Zhonghua Er Ke Zazhi* 2009; **47**: 917-921 [PMID: 20193144]

4 **Rouster AS**, Karpinski AC, Silver D, Monagas J, Hyman PE. Functional Gastrointestinal Disorders Dominate Pediatric Gastroenterology Outpatient Practice. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2016; **62**: 847-851 [PMID: 26513617 DOI: 10.1097/mpg.0000000000001023]

5 **van Tilburg MA**, Hyman PE, Walker L, Rouster A, Palsson OS, Kim SM, Whitehead WE. Prevalence of functional gastrointestinal disorders in infants and toddlers. *J Pediatr* 2015; **166**: 684-689 [PMID: 25557967 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2014.11.039]

6 **Park R**, Mikami S, LeClair J, Bollom A, Lembo C, Sethi S, Lembo A, Jones M, Cheng V, Friedlander E, Nurko S. Inpatient burden of childhood functional GI disorders in the USA: an analysis of national trends in the USA from 1997 to 2009. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2015; **27**: 684-692 [PMID: 25809794 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12542]

7 **Moher D**, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. *PLoS Med* 2009; **6**: e1000097 [PMID: 19621072 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000097]

8 **Rasquin-Weber A**, Hyman PE, Cucchiara S, Fleisher DR, Hyams JS, Milla PJ, Staiano A. Childhood functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Gut* 1999; **45** Suppl 2: II60-II68 [PMID: 10457047 DOI: 10.1136/gut.45.2008.ii60]

9 **Rasquin A**, Di Lorenzo C, Forbes D, Guiraldes E, Hyams JS, Staiano A, Walker LS. Childhood functional gastrointestinal disorders: child/adolescent. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1527-1537 [PMID: 16678566 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.08.063]

10 **Caplan A**, Walker L, Rasquin A. Development and preliminary validation of the questionnaire on pediatric gastrointestinal symptoms to assess functional gastrointestinal disorders in children and adolescents. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2005; **41**: 296-304 [PMID: 16131984 DOI: 10.1097/01.mpg.0000172748.64103.33]

11 **Caplan A**, Walker L, Rasquin A. Validation of the pediatric Rome II criteria for functional gastrointestinal disorders using the questionnaire on pediatric gastrointestinal symptoms. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2005; **41**: 305-316 [PMID: 16131985 DOI: 10.1097/01.mpg.0000172749.71726.13]

12 **Varni JW**, Seid M, Knight TS, Uzark K, Szer IS. The PedsQL 4.0 Generic Core Scales: sensitivity, responsiveness, and impact on clinical decision-making. *J Behav Med* 2002; **25**: 175-193 [PMID: 11977437 DOI: 10.1002/art.10095]

13 **Loney PL**, Chambers LW, Bennett KJ, Roberts JG, Stratford PW. Critical appraisal of the health research literature: prevalence or incidence of a health problem. *Chronic Dis Can* 1998; **19**: 170-176 [PMID: 10029513]

14 **Vandenplas Y**, Abkari A, Bellaiche M, Benninga M, Chouraqui JP, Çokura F, Harb T, Hegar B, Lifschitz C, Ludwig T, Miqdady M, de Morais MB, Osatakul S, Salvatore S, Shamir R, Staiano A, Szajewska H, Thapar N. Prevalence and Health Outcomes of Functional Gastrointestinal Symptoms in Infants From Birth to 12 Months of Age. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2015; **61**: 531-537 [PMID: 26308317 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000949]

15 **Drossman DA**. The functional gastrointestinal disorders and the Rome III process. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1377-1390 [PMID: 16678553 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.03.008]

16 **Hyman PE**, Milla PJ, Benninga MA, Davidson GP, Fleisher DF, Taminiau J. Childhood functional gastrointestinal disorders: neonate/toddler. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1519-1526 [PMID: 16678565 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.11.065]

17 **World Health Organization**. The ICD-10 classification of mental and behavioural disorders: clinical descriptions and diagnostic guidelines. Geneva: World Health Organization, 1992

18 **American Psychiatric Association**. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (DSM-5®). American Psychiatric Pub, 2013

19 **Li BU**, Issenman RM, Sarna SK. Consensus statement--2nd International Scientific Symposium on CVS. The Faculty of The 2nd International Scientific Symposium on Cyclic Vomiting Syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1999; **44**: 9S-11S [PMID: 10490032]

20 **Fleisher DR**. The cyclic vomiting syndrome described. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 1995; **21** Suppl 1: S1-S5 [PMID: 8708859 DOI: 10.1097/00005176-199501001-00003]

21 **Fleisher DR**, Matar M. The cyclic vomiting syndrome: a report of 71 cases and literature review. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 1993; **17**: 361-369 [PMID: 8145089 DOI: 10.1097/00005176-199311000-00005]

22 **Wessel MA**, Cobb JC, Jackson EB, Harris GS, Detwiler AC. Paroxysmal fussing in infancy, sometimes called colic. *Pediatrics* 1954; **14**: 421-435 [PMID: 13214956]

23 **Wake M**, Morton-Allen E, Poulakis Z, Hiscock H, Gallagher S, Oberklaid F. Prevalence, stability, and outcomes of cry-fuss and sleep problems in the first 2 years of life: prospective community-based study. *Pediatrics* 2006; **117**: 836-842 [PMID: 16510665 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2005-0775]

24 **Kramer EA**, den Hertog-Kuijl JH, van den Broek LM, van Leengoed E, Bulk AM, Kneepkens CM, Benninga MA. Defecation patterns in infants: a prospective cohort study. *Arch Dis Child* 2015; **100**: 533-536 [PMID: 25539766 DOI: 10.1136/archdischild-2014-307448]

25 **Loening-Baucke V**. Functional fecal retention with encopresis in childhood. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2004; **38**: 79-84 [PMID: 14676600 DOI: 10.1097/00005176-200401000-00018]

26 **Freedman SB**, Al-Harthy N, Thull-Freedman J. The crying infant: diagnostic testing and frequency of serious underlying disease. *Pediatrics* 2009; **123**: 841-848 [PMID: 19255012 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2008-0113]

27 **Aydoğdu S**, Cakir M, Yüksekkaya HA, Arikan C, Tümgör G, Baran M, Yağci RV. Chronic constipation in Turkish children: clinical findings and applicability of classification criteria. *Turk J Pediatr* 2009; **51**: 146-153 [PMID: 19480326]

28 **Voskuijl WP**, Heijmans J, Heijmans HS, Taminiau JA, Benninga MA. Use of Rome II criteria in childhood defecation disorders: applicability in clinical and research practice. *J Pediatr* 2004; **145**: 213-217 [PMID: 15289770 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2004.04.050]

29 **Burgers R**, Levin AD, Di Lorenzo C, Dijkgraaf MG, Benninga MA. Functional defecation disorders in children: comparing the Rome II with the Rome III criteria. *J Pediatr* 2012; **161**: 615-20.e1 [PMID: 22578584 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2012.03.060]

30 **Osatakul S**, Puetpaiboon A. Use of Rome II versus Rome III criteria for diagnosis of functional constipation in young children. *Pediatr Int* 2014; **56**: 83-88 [PMID: 23937604 DOI: 10.1111/ped.12194]

31 **van Tilburg MA**, Levy RL, Walker LS, Von Korff M, Feld LD, Garner M, Feld AD, Whitehead WE. Psychosocial mechanisms for the transmission of somatic symptoms from parents to children. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 5532-5541 [PMID: 25987776 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i18.5532]

32 **Walker LS**, Zeman JL. Parental response to child illness behavior. *J Pediatr Psychol* 1992; **17**: 49-71 [PMID: 1545321 DOI: 10.1093/jpepsy/17.1.49]

33 **Buonavolontà R**, Coccorullo P, Turco R, Boccia G, Greco L, Staiano A. Familial aggregation in children affected by functional gastrointestinal disorders. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2010; **50**: 500-505 [PMID: 20639707 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3181b182ef]

34 **van Tilburg MA**, Rouster A, Silver D, Pellegrini G, Gao J, Hyman PE. Development and Validation of a Rome III Functional

Gastrointestinal Disorders Questionnaire for Infants and Toddlers. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2016; **62**: 384-386 [PMID: 26308319 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000962]

35 **Varni JW**, Bendo CB, Denham J, Shulman RJ, Self MM, Neigut DA, Nurko S, Patel AS, Franciosi JP, Saps M, Verga B, Smith A, Yeckes A, Heinz N, Langseder A, Saeed S, Zacur GM, Pohl JF. PedsQL gastrointestinal symptoms module: feasibility, reliability, and validity. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2014; **59**: 347-355 [PMID: 24806837 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000414]

36 **Varni JW**, Bendo CB, Denham J, Shulman RJ, Self MM, Neigut DA, Nurko S, Patel AS, Franciosi JP, Saps M, Yeckes A, Langseder A, Saeed S, Pohl JF. PedsQL™ Gastrointestinal Symptoms Scales and Gastrointestinal Worry Scales in pediatric patients with functional and organic gastrointestinal diseases in comparison to healthy controls. *Qual Life Res* 2015; **24**: 363-378 [PMID: 25148757 DOI: 10.1007/s11136-014-0781-x]

37 **Hartman EE**, Pawaskar M, Williams V, McLeod L, Dubois D, Benninga MA, Joseph A. Psychometric properties of PedsQL generic core scales for children with functional constipation in the Netherlands. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2014; **59**: 739-747 [PMID: 25111224 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000527]

38 **Varni JW**, Bendo CB, Shulman RJ, Self MM, Nurko S, Franciosi JP, Saps M, Saeed S, Zacur GM, Vaughan Dark C, Pohl JF. Interpretability of the PedsQL™ Gastrointestinal Symptoms Scales and Gastrointestinal Worry Scales in Pediatric Patients With Functional and Organic Gastrointestinal Diseases. *J Pediatr Psychol* 2015; **40**: 591-601 [PMID: 25682210 DOI: 10.1093/jpepsy/jsv005]

39 **Varni JW**, Kay MT, Limbers CA, Franciosi JP, Pohl JF. PedsQL gastrointestinal symptoms module item development: qualitative methods. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2012; **54**: 664-671 [PMID: 22008958 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e31823c9b88]

40 **Buck D**. The PedsQL™ as a measure of parent-rated quality of life in healthy UK toddlers: psychometric properties and cross-cultural comparisons. *J Child Health Care* 2012; **16**: 331-338 [PMID: 23248332 DOI: 10.1177/1367493512448127]

41 **Varni JW**, Limbers CA, Neighbors K, Schulz K, Lieu JE, Heffer RW, Tuzinkiewicz K, Mangione-Smith R, Zimmerman JJ, Alonso EM. The PedsQL™ Infant Scales: feasibility, internal consistency reliability, and validity in healthy and ill infants. *Qual Life Res* 2011; **20**: 45-55 [PMID: 20730626 DOI: 10.1007/s11136-010-9730-5]

42 **Hvelplund C**, Hansen BM, Koch SV, Andersson M, Skovgaard AM. Perinatal Risk Factors for Feeding and Eating Disorders in Children Aged 0 to 3 Years. *Pediatrics* 2016; **137**: e20152575 [PMID: 26764360 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2015-2575]

43 **Fitzpatrick E**, Bourke B, Drumm B, Rowland M. The incidence of cyclic vomiting syndrome in children: population-based study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 991-995; quiz 996 [PMID: 18070235 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01668.x]

44 **Turco R**, Miele E, Russo M, Mastroianni R, Lavorgna A, Paludetto R, Pensabene L, Greco L, Campanozzi A, Borrelli O, Romano C, Chiaro A, Guariso G, Staiano A. Early-life factors associated with pediatric functional constipation. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2014; **58**: 307-312 [PMID: 24145619 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000209]

45 **Miele E**, Simeone D, Marino A, Greco L, Auricchio R, Novek SJ, Staiano A. Functional gastrointestinal disorders in children: an Italian prospective survey. *Pediatrics* 2004; **114**: 73-78 [PMID: 15231910 DOI: 10.1542/peds.114.1.73]

46 **Campanozzi A**, Boccia G, Pensabene L, Panetta F, Marseglia A, Strisciuglio P, Barbera C, Magazzù G, Pettoello-Mantovani M, Staiano A. Prevalence and natural history of gastroesophageal reflux: pediatric prospective survey. *Pediatrics* 2009; **123**: 779-783 [PMID: 19255002 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2007-3569]

47 **Primavera G**, Amoroso B, Barresi A, Belvedere L, D'Andrea C, Ferrara D, Cascio AL, Rizzari S, Sanfilippo E, Spataro A, Zangara D, Magazzù G. Clinical utility of Rome criteria managing functional gastrointestinal disorders in pediatric primary care. *Pediatrics* 2010; **125**: e155-e161 [PMID: 20008416 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2009-0295]

48 **Mota DM**, Barros AJ, Santos I, Matijasevich A. Characteristics of intestinal habits in children younger than 4 years: detecting constipation. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2012; **55**: 451-456 [PMID: 22383030 DOI: 10.1097/mpg.0b013e318251482b]

49 **Tharner A**, Jansen PW, Kiefte-de Jong JC, Moll HA, Hofman A, Jaddoe VW, Tiemeier H, Franco OH. Bidirectional associations between fussy eating and functional constipation in preschool children. *J Pediatr* 2015; **166**: 91-96 [PMID: 25443999 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2014.09.028]

50 **Lucassen PL**, Assendelft WJ, van Eijk JT, Gubbels JW, Douwes AC, van Geldrop WJ. Systematic review of the occurrence of infantile colic in the community. *Arch Dis Child* 2001; **84**: 398-403 [PMID: 11316682 DOI: 10.1136/adc.84.5.398]

P- Reviewer: Mulak A, Pearson JS **S- Editor**: Yu J **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6559

World J Gastroenterol 2016 July 28; 22(28): 6559-6564
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

CASE REPORT

Systemic mastocytosis: A rare cause of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension

Cláudio Martins, Cristina Teixeira, Suzane Ribeiro, Daniel Trabulo, Cláudia Cardoso, João Mangualde, Ricardo Freire, Élia Gamito, Ana Luísa Alves, Isabelle Cremers, Cecília Alves, Anabela Neves, Ana Paula Oliveira

Cláudio Martins, Cristina Teixeira, Suzane Ribeiro, Daniel Trabulo, Cláudia Cardoso, João Mangualde, Ricardo Freire, Élia Gamito, Ana Luísa Alves, Isabelle Cremers, Ana Paula Oliveira, Department of Gastroenterology, Setúbal Hospital Center - São Bernardo Hospital, 2910 Setúbal, Portugal

Cecília Alves, Department of Pathology, Setúbal Hospital Center - São Bernardo Hospital, 2910 Setúbal, Portugal

Anabela Neves, Department of Hematology, Setúbal Hospital Center - São Bernardo Hospital, 2910 Setúbal, Portugal

Author contributions: Martins C, Cardoso C, Mangualde J, Freire R, Alves AL and Neves A designed the report; Martins C, Teixeira C, Ribeiro S and Trabulo D colected the patient's clinical data; Alves C performed histopathology examination; Martins C, Gamito E, Cremers I and Oliveira AP analyzed the data and wrote the paper.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Setúbal Hospital Center Institutional Review Board.

Informed consent statement: The informed consent statement was waived because the patient has died.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no conflict of interests related to this work.

Manuscript Source: Unsolicited manuscript

Correspondence to: Dr. Cláudio Martins, Resident of Gastroenterology, Department of Gastroenterology, Setúbal Hospital Center - São Bernardo Hospital, Camilo Castelo Branco Street, Setúbal 2910, Portugal. cmartins1@campus.ul.pt
Telephone: +35-126-5549000
Fax: +35-126-5238066

Received: April 8, 2016
Peer-review started: April 8, 2016
First decision: May 27, 2016
Revised: June 7, 2016
Accepted: June 28, 2016
Article in press: June 28, 2016
Published online: July 28, 2016

Abstract

Mastocytosis is a clonal neoplastic disorder of the mast cells (MC) that can be limited to the skin (cutaneous mastocytosis) or involve one or more extracutaneous organs (systemic mastocytosis). The clinical manifestations of mastocytosis are heterogeneous ranging from indolent disease with a long-term survival to a highly aggressive neoplasm with survival of about 6 mo. Although liver involvement in aggressive systemic mastocytosis (ASM) is relatively common, the development of portal hypertension with or without cirrhosis is rare. We report a case of ASM without skin involvement in a 72-year-old caucasian male who presented with non-cirrhotic portal hypertension based on clinical, analytical, imagiological and endoscopic findings. Given the hematological picture, the correct diagnosis was established based on ancillary tests for MC using bone marrow aspirates and biopsy. Extensive involvement of the liver and gastrointestinal tract was histologically documented. The disease progressed rapidly and severe pancytopenia and recurrent upper gastrointestinal bleeding became the dominant problem. This case illustrates the challenge

in establishing a diagnosis of ASM especially when the clinical picture is atypical and without skin involvement. Gastroenterologists should consider infiltrative disease, particularly systemic mastocytosis, as a differential diagnosis in a clinical case of portal hypertension of unknown etiology.

Key words: Systemic mastocytosis; Mast cells; Non-cirrhotic portal hypertension; Upper gastrointestinal bleeding; Cladribine

Core tip: This clinical case describes an interesting and uncommon case of aggressive systemic mastocytosis with hepatic and gastrointestinal involvement. It illustrates not only a rare cause of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension, but also an atypical gastrointestinal involvement. The aim of this case report is to demonstrate the challenge in establishing a diagnosis of systemic mastocytosis especially when the clinical picture is atypical and without skin involvement, and alert Gastroenterologists to consider infiltrative diseases, as differential diagnosis in a clinical case of portal hypertension of unknown etiology.

Martins C, Teixeira C, Ribeiro S, Trabulo D, Cardoso C, Mangualde J, Freire R, Gamito É, Alves AL, Cremers I, Alves C, Neves A, Oliveira AP. Systemic mastocytosis: A rare cause of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; 22(28): 6559-6564 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v22/i28/6559.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v22.i28.6559

INTRODUCTION

Mastocytosis, a myeloproliferative neoplasm characterized by an abnormal proliferation of MC, is an uncommon, heterogeneous and progressive disease[1].

The vast majority of cases are confined to the skin (urticaria pigmentosa), but approximately 10% involve extracutaneous sites, most commonly bone, liver, spleen, gastrointestinal tract and lymph nodes[1,2]. The clinical manifestations are related to the release of MC mediators (*e.g.,* facial flushing, urticaria, itching, diarrhea) and to uncontrolled growth and infiltration of clonal MC in different organs (*e.g.,* hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, pancreatic insufficiency). Although most of the symptoms are not life-threatening, they may induce a significant impairment of quality of life. Nevertheless, when infiltration results in organ function impairment, the disease is considered aggressive and decrease life expectancy.

A diagnosis of mastocytosis has to fulfill the World Health Organization (WHO) diagnostic criteria[3] in which the demonstration of neoplastic MC infiltrates is the *sine qua non* condition. SM is diagnosed when the major and at least one minor or three minor criteria are satisfied (Table 1). Its signs and symptoms are divided into two groups: *B symptoms* ("borderline benign - be watchful") and *C symptoms* ("consider cytoreductive therapy"). The diagnosis of ASM can be made when one or more *"C"* findings are present. *"C"* findings include anemia (Hb < 10 g/dL), thrombocytopenia (< 100000/mm^3), neutropenia, hepatopathy with portal hypertension or ascitis, splenomegaly with hypersplenism, malabsorption with weight loss and osteolysis with pathological bone fractures.

Table 1 World Health Organization criteria for SM (adapted from Valent *et al* 2001)[4]

Major Criteria
Multifocal dense infiltrates of mast cells (> 15 mast cells in aggregates) at bone marrow biopsy and/or in sections of other extracutaneous organ(s)
Minor Criteria
> 25% of mast cells in bone marrow are atypical cells or spindle-shaped mast cells in infiltrates detected on sections of extracutaneous organ(s)
c-kit point mutation at codon 816 in the bone marrow or in another extracutaneous organ(s)
Mast cells in the bone marrow or in the another extracutaneous organ(s) expressing CD2 and/or CD25 with CD117
Serum tryptase levels > 200 ng/mL

Overlapping symptoms and heterogeneous clinical scenarios make early diagnosis extremely difficult. An absence of skin lesions at the time of diagnosis has been reported in up to 40%-50% of patients with ASM[5]. The liver is frequently involved, but only a minor percentage of ASM patients develop portal hypertension and/or cirrhosis.

In this paper we report a rare case of ASM without skin lesions who presented with non-cirrhotic portal hypertension. Bone, liver and gastrointestinal involvements were observed and histologically documented. The extensive bone marrow and gastrointestinal infiltration with the development of severe pancytopenia and recurrent upper gastrointestinal bleeding, respectively, were responsible for the poor prognosis and fatal outcome.

CASE REPORT

We report a 72-year-old caucasian male referred to our hospital due to severe anemia. The patient presented with a 3-mo clinical picture of significant involuntary weight loss, anorexy, astenia, night sweats, low-grade fever and, more recently, melena. The remaining patient's history was uneventful. He reported no history of smoking, alcohol or drugs consumption. Physical examination showed pallor, painless hepatomegaly and splenomegaly. Skin lesions, superficial lymphadenopathy, ascitis and jaundice were absent.

Initial laboratory tests showed normocytic and normochromic anemia (hemoglobin 6.1 g/dL),

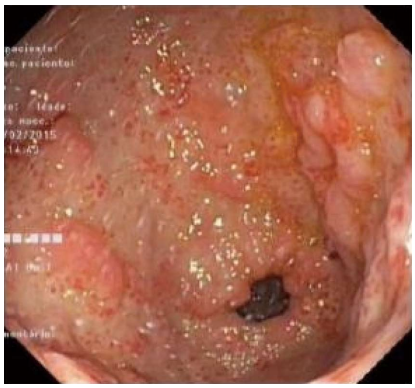


Figure 1 Gastric antral vascular ectasia observed on upper gastrointestinal endoscopy.

normal total white blood cells count (7.1 × 10^9/L) but with monocytosis (18%) and eosinophilia (10%), mild thrombocytopenia (141 × 10^9/L) and normal prothrombin time. Liver tests were normal except for high alkaline phospatase (274 U/L). Laboratorial study of anemia revealed a multifactorial etiology with ferropenic and non-autoimmune hemolytic components.

Abdominal ultrassound showed homogeneous hepatosplenomegaly. *Doppler* ultrassonography of the liver revealed portal vein dilation (14 mm), decreased portal flow velocity, hepatofugal portal flow and high hepatic artery resistance indexes. Upper gastrointestinal endoscopy showed small esophageal varices and gastric antral vascular ectasia (GAVE) treated with argon plasma coagulation (Figure 1). Total colonoscopy was normal.

In order to clarify the etiology of portal hypertension additional investigations were performed. Serum protein electrophoresis revealed low albumin but normal gammaglobulin levels. Serological testing for hepatitis B and C virus, HIV and autoimmune markers were negative. Serum copper, ceruloplasmin and alpha-fetoprotein were normal. Ferritin was moderately high (497 ng/mL).

Given the hematologic changes in a patient with wasting syndrome and a non-cirrhotic portal hypertension, to exclude hematologic disease, he underwent a thoraco-abdominopelvic computed tomography (CT) scan which confirmed homogeneous hepatosplenomegaly and showed no lymphadenopathy (Figure 2); a bone marrow aspiration and biopsy, which revealed multifocal infiltration of atypical MC (> 15 aggregates) with a spindle-shape, representing 31% of total cellularity; immunohistochemistry study identified positive staining for CD117 and CD25 (Figure 3). Serum tryptase levels were high (200 mcg/L). Liver biopsy confirmed massive infiltration by atypical MC and mild portal fibrosis but without evidence of cirrhosis (Figure 4).

These findings were fully consistent with SM fulfilling the WHO diagnostic criteria for this entity, namely the presence of the major and three minor

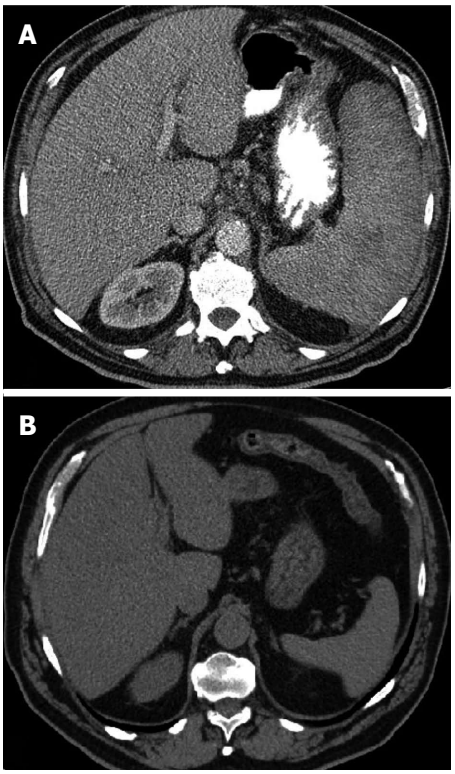


Figure 2 Images on abdominal computed tomography scan. A: Homogeneous hepatosplenomegaly; B: Normal spleen on computed tomography scan performed two years earlier.

criteria: > 25% of atypical MC in bone marrow and liver, coexpression of CD25 and CD117 by atypical MC, and high serum tryptase levels.

The patient was referred to the Hematology Department and began chemotherapy with cladribine with initial partial response. However, the disease became non-responsive to cladribine and progressed, with development of severe pancytopenia and recurrent upper gastrointestinal bleeding due to extensive involvement of the stomach (Figure 5), refractory to medical and endoscopic treatment. The patient died after one year.

DISCUSSION

Mastocytosis is a rare disorder with several studies reporting an incidence of 5-10 cases/10^6 people/year. It is recognized as a myeloproliferative neoplasm by the 2008 WHO Classification of Tumours of Haematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissues and is defined as an accumulation of clonal MC in one or more organs. The skin is involved in most patients (80%-90%), commonly presented as pigmentosa urticaria. SM is characterized by clonal MC accumulation in bone marrow and other extracutaneous organs.

ASM is an uncommon subtype of SM (12%) and occurs generally in adults. It is defined by the presence of at least one *"C"* finding, associated with constitutional symptoms and organomegaly, particularly of

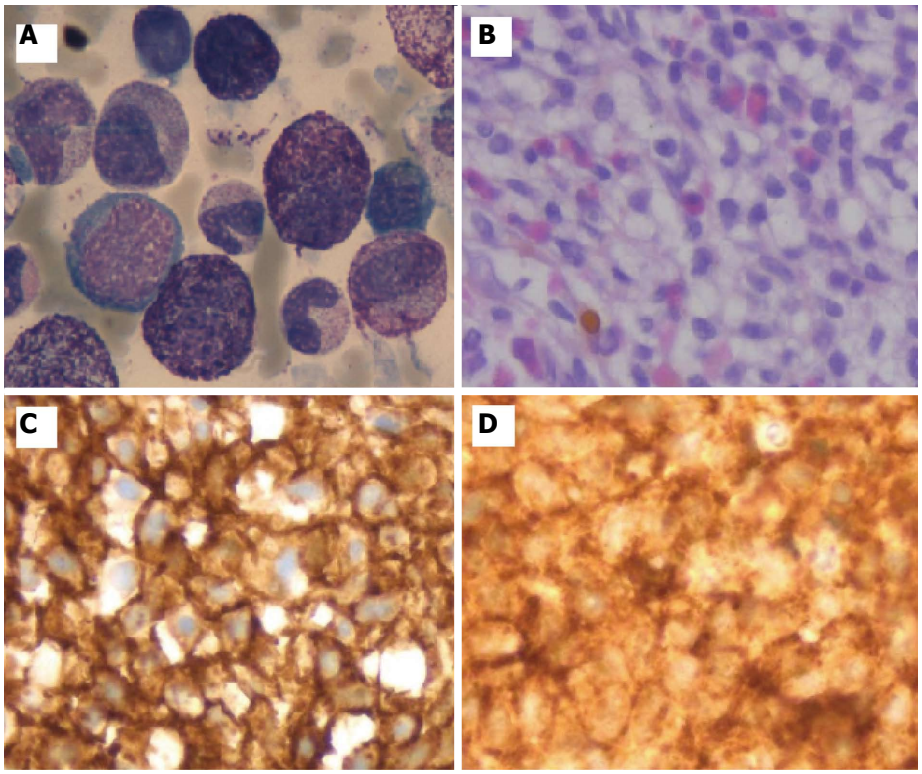


Figure 3 Immunohistochemistry study identified positive staining for CD117 and CD25. A: Atypical spindle-shaped MC on bone marrow aspirate (HE × 100); B: Hypercellularity due to infiltration by atypical MC on bone biopsy (HE × 100); C: MC were strongly positive for CD25; and D: CD117 (D) (IHC × 100).

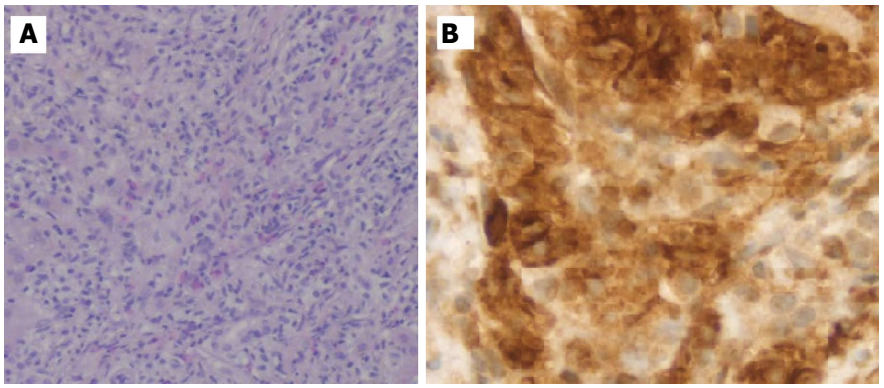


Figure 4 Microscopic images of the liver. A: Liver biopsy showed an increased number of spindled MC (HE × 40); B: The MC are highlighted by positive CD117 staining (IHC × 100)

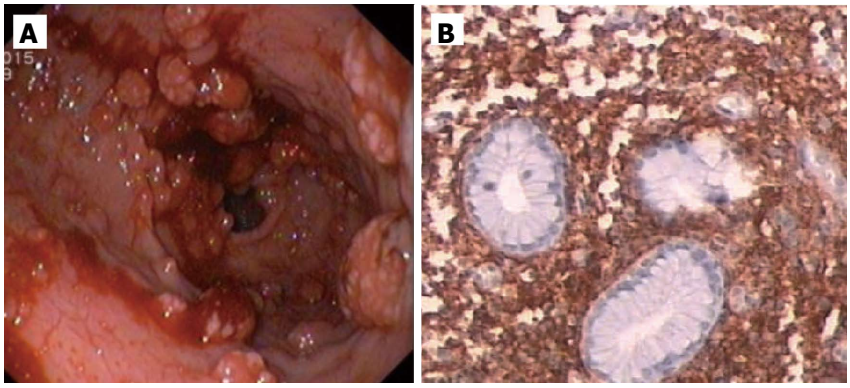


Figure 5 Extensive involvement of the stomach. A: Endoscopic image of the stomach showed diffuse polypoid lesions with active bleeding; B: Microscopic appearance of the gastric mucosa showed infiltration by atypical MC strongly positive for CD117 (IHC × 100).

liver, spleen and lymph nodes.

Regarding hematologic abnormalities in SM, the most common is mild-to-moderate anemia, which occurs in up to 50% of patients[6]. Normally, MC is not found in the circulation except in those with mast cell leukemia. Eosinophilia occurs in 25% of patients and monocytosis, when present in patients with ASM, represent a signal of advanced disease[7].

Liver involvement in ASM is common and may include abnormal liver tests, hepatomegaly, portal hypertension, fibrosis, cirrhosis and liver failure. Hepatomegaly is found in 41%-72% of patients. MC infiltrate the liver diffusely with or without portal fibrosis but rarely with cirrhosis or portal hypertension (4%). The development of portal hypertension and the lack of skin involvement are poor prognosis factors. Yoshida *et al*[8] reported a case of mast cell leukemia, a rare form of SM, complicated with rapidly progressing non-cirrhotic portal hypertension due to blocking of sinusoidal and venous flow. Despite significant hepatic involvement, liver tests are usually normal, except for alkaline phosphatase which is increased due to bone involvement[9]. Furthermore, hepatic lesion severity is not correlated with the size or the results of liver function tests[9].

Gastrointestinal involvement is seen in 70%-80% of patients with SM. Abdominal pain (51%), diarrhea (43%) and nausea or vomiting (28%) are the most common GI complaints[10]. Gastrointestinal bleeding, usually due to peptic ulcer disease, occurs in 11% of SM[10]. Other causes of upper gastrointestinal bleeding, such as GAVE, portal hypertensive gastropathy and esophageal varices, are very rare. The most common upper endoscopic features in SM patients are peptic esophagitis, peptic ulcers, thickened gastric or duodenal folds and nodular mucosa[10].

Patients with ASM are candidates for MC cytoreductive therapies, which may include interferon-alpha-2b, cladribine, glucocorticoides, tyrosine kinase inhibitors or hydroxyurea[11]. The clinical course of patients with ASM is variable, with some experiencing a rapid decline over 12 to 24 mo, while others follow a slower course with several years of survival[12].

In this case, the initial approach revealed a clinical picture of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension. The lack of skin manifestations delayed the diagnosis. The high suspicion of hematological disease due to wasting syndrome, *B* symptoms, hepatosplenomegaly and bicytopenia, led to the diagnosis, based on bone marrow aspirate and biopsy findings, which revealed infiltration by atypical MC with positive staining for CD117 and CD25. The liver biopsy confirmed massive infiltration by atypical MC but without evidence of cirrhosis. The diagnosis of ASM was established based on WHO 2008 criteria and the presence of "C" findings, particularly, anemia, hepatopathy with portal hypertension and splenomegaly with hypersplenism.

Besides the rare clinical presentation, this report describes an uncommon form of gastrointestinal involvement in SM. Unlike peptic ulcer disease, this patient showed atypical upper endoscopic findings, namely, esophageal varices, GAVE and diffuses gastric polypoid lesions. The last two were responsible for recurrent and refractory upper gastrointestinal bleeding.

In this patient, there were several poor prognosis factors, such as, older age at onset, weight loss, lack of skin involvement, severe anemia, trombocytopenia, monocytosis, hepatosplenomegaly, portal hypertension and gastrointestinal bleeding.

This report describes an interesting case of SM as a rare cause of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension with an atypical gastrointestinal involvement. Needless to say, patients with obvious dermatological findings are diagnosed by clinicians more quickly as having SM. Unfortunately, patients lacking skin manifestations have a delayed diagnosis even though they often have more aggressive disease. Therefore, Gastroenterologists should consider infiltrative disease, particularly ASM, as differential diagnosis in a clinical case of portal hypertension of unknown etiology. Presently there is no cure for SM and cytoreductive therapy and a multidisciplinary team approach are recommended.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 72-year-old male presented with a clinical picture of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension.

Clinical diagnosis

Aggressive systemic mastocytosis with liver and gastrointestinal involvement.

Differential diagnosis

Viral hepatitis, alcoholic liver disease, infiltrative diseases (lymphoma, other myeloprolipherative disorders and amyloidosis) granulomatous diseases (sarcoidosis and tuberculosis), genetic disorders (Wilson disease and hemochromatosis) and vascular diseases such as portal vein thrombosis, among others.

Laboratory diagnosis

Normocytic and normochromic anemia, monocytosis, eosinophilia, thrombocytopenia, high alkaline phospatase and high serum tryptase levels.

Imaging diagnosis

Abdominal ultrasound with *Doppler* ultrassonography of the liver revealed hepatosplenomegaly, portal vein dilation, decreased portal flow velocity, hepatofugal portal flow and high hepatic artery resistance indexes. Upper endoscopy showed esophageal varices and gastric antral vascular ectasia.

Pathological diagnosis

A bone marrow aspiration and biopsy revealed multifocal infiltration of atypical mast cells (> 15 aggregates) with positive staining for CD117 and CD25; liver biopsy confirmed massive infiltration by atypical MC but without cirrhosis.

Treatment

Chemotherapy with cladribine.

Related reports

Aggressive systemic mastocytosis without skin involvement is uncommon.

Given the hematological picture, the correct diagnosis was established based on ancillary tests for mast cells using bone marrow aspirates and biopsy. The extensive involvement of the liver and gastrointestinal tract was histologically documented.

Experiences and lessons

Infiltrative diseases, particularly systemic mastocytosis, should be considered as a differential diagnosis in a clinical case of portal hypertension of unknown etiology.

Peer-review

This paper shows a rare case of systemic mastocytosis with non-cirrhotic portal hypertension. It illustrates the challenge in establishing a diagnosis of aggressive systemic mastocytosis especially when the clinical picture is atypical and without skin involvement.

REFERENCES

1 **Patnaik MM**, Rindos M, Kouides PA, Tefferi A, Pardanani A. Systemic mastocytosis: a concise clinical and laboratory review. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 2007; **131**: 784-791 [PMID: 17488167]

2 **Akin C**, Metcalfe DD. Systemic mastocytosis. *Annu Rev Med* 2004; **55**: 419-432 [PMID: 14746529 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.med.55.091902.103822]

3 **Horny HP**, Metcalfe DD, Bennett JM, Bain BJ, Akin C, Escribano L, Valent P. Mastocytosis (mast cell disease). In: Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Pileri SA, Stein H, Thiele J, Vardiman JW, editors. World Health Organization (WHO) classification of tumours. Pathology Genetics. Tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues. Lyon, France: International agency for research on cancer, 2008: 54-63

4 **Valent P**, Horny HP, Escribano L, Longley BJ, Li CY, Schwartz LB, Marone G, Nuñez R, Akin C, Sotlar K, Sperr WR, Wolff K, Brunning RD, Parwaresch RM, Austen KF, Lennert K, Metcalfe DD, Vardiman JW, Bennett JM. Diagnostic criteria and classification of mastocytosis: a consensus proposal. *Leuk Res* 2001; **25**: 603-625 [PMID: 11377686 DOI: 10.1016/S0145-2126(01)00038-8]

5 **Kirsch R**, Geboes K, Shepherd NA, de Hertogh G, Di Nicola N, Lebel S, Mickys U, Riddell RH. Systemic mastocytosis involving the gastrointestinal tract: clinicopathologic and molecular study of five cases. *Mod Pathol* 2008; **21**: 1508-1516 [PMID: 18931652 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2008.158]

6 **Lawrence JB**, Friedman BS, Travis WD, Chinchilli VM, Metcalfe DD, Gralnick HR. Hematologic manifestations of systemic mast cell disease: a prospective study of laboratory and morphologic features and their relation to prognosis. *Am J Med* 1991; **91**: 612-624 [PMID: 1750431 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(91)90214-I]

7 **Horny HP**, Ruck M, Wehrmann M, Kaiserling E. Blood findings in generalized mastocytosis: evidence of frequent simultaneous occurrence of myeloproliferative disorders. *Br J Haematol* 1990; **76**: 186-193 [PMID: 2128807 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1990.tb07870.x]

8 **Yoshida M**, Nishikawa Y, Yamamoto Y, Doi Y, Tokairin T, Yoshioka T, Omori Y, Watanabe A, Takahashi N, Yoshioka T, Miura I, Sawada K, Enomoto K. Mast cell leukemia with rapidly progressing portal hypertension. *Pathol Int* 2009; **59**: 817-822 [PMID: 19883434 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1827.2009.02451.x]

9 **Addada J**, Lloyd J, Bain B. Teaching cases from the Royal Marsden and St Mary's Hospitals: Case 27, ascites and oedema in a patient with systemic mastocytosis. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2004; **45**: 1713-1715 [PMID: 15370233 DOI: 10.1080/1042819042000206696]

10 **Jensen RT**. Gastrointestinal abnormalities and involvement in systemic mastocytosis. *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 2000; **14**: 579-623 [PMID: 10909042 DOI: 10.1016/S0889-8588(05)70298-7]

11 **Lim KH**, Pardanani A, Butterfield JH, Li CY, Tefferi A. Cytoreductive therapy in 108 adults with systemic mastocytosis: Outcome analysis and response prediction during treatment with interferon-alpha, hydroxyurea, imatinib mesylate or 2-chlorodeoxyadenosine. *Am J Hematol* 2009; **84**: 790-794 [PMID: 19890907 DOI: 10.1002/ajh.21561]

12 **Casassus P**, Caillat-Vigneron N, Martin A, Simon J, Gallais V, Beaudry P, Eclache V, Laroche L, Lortholary P, Raphaël M, Guillevin L, Lortholary O. Treatment of adult systemic mastocytosis with interferon-alpha: results of a multicentre phase II trial on 20 patients. *Br J Haematol* 2002; **119**: 1090-1097 [PMID: 12472593 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2141.2002.03944]

P- Reviewer: Fujino Y, Papamichael KX **S- Editor**: Qi Y
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Ma S

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 1007-9327